

THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
PORTUGAL,

From the first Ages of the World, to  
the late great REVOLUTION, un-  
der King JOHN IV. in the Year  
MDCXL.

Written in Spanish,  
By Emanuel de Faria y Sousa,  
Knight of the Order of CHRIST.

Translated, and Continued down to this  
present Year, 1698.

By Capt. JOHN STEVENS.

L O N D O N,

Printed for W. Rogers and Abel Roper, in Fleet-  
street; J. Harris and J. Nicholson, in Little-  
Britain; T. Newborough, in St. Paul's Church-  
Yard; and T. Cockerill, in Pater-Noster-Row,  
MDCXCVIII.

John Chapall Esq of  
Deacon Henchman

*William Deacon*

T O  
RICHARD MINSHULL,  
O F  
BOURTON,

In the COUNTY of

BUCKS, Esq;

SIR,

A Midst that great Variety of Reading, wherewith Learned Men have furnished the World, to the end that each Person may be provided of a Subject suitable to his Genius, there is none so universally pleasing, or, indeed,  
A 2 more

121457

10 APR 1891 Range 56 22 5111



## *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

more profitable than History. It is a general sort of Learning, fitted for all Capacities; the Meanest are not below, nor the Greatest above it, because it contains nothing so abstruse, that may not be easily comprehended; nor any thing so trivial, that may not be worth observing. All Arts and Sciences are purchased by much Study and Labour; and, even so, they are not attained in any Perfection, but by those whom Nature has particularly moulded to receive such an Impression. History alone delights at once, and instructs; it informs, without perplexing the Understanding; it improves, without burthening the Memory; it rectifies, without thwarting the Will; and, in short, it leads away our Affections, without misguiding them. The Advantages we reap by it are inestimable, in regard we receive a perfect Knowledge of what was before us; and are thereby enabled to make a Judgment of what will be after us: For, as the Wise Man, so many Ages since, said, *There was nothing new under the Sun*; so may we believe there neither is in our Times, nor will be in those to come: For the Lives and Actions of Men are only a continued Repetition of those that preceded them; because all this  
inferiour

## *The Epistle Dedecatory.*

inferiour World is but a perpetual Conca-  
tenation of the self-same Revolutions, how-  
ever surprizingly disguised in the Dress  
and Methods. Now, to know what pas-  
sed since the Creation, and thence judi-  
ciously to infer what is likely to ensue  
till the final Consummation; and this not  
only in one City or Kingdom, but through-  
out the vast Circumference of the Uni-  
verse, is a sort of Knowledge that appears  
to be somewhat more than Humane; or  
rather, not far removed from Divine. It  
is a Knowledge so important, that God  
himself did not disdain, for our Benefit,  
to fill up the greatest part of his Sacred  
Volume with History, whereof he himself  
was the Compiler. God himself it was,  
that, through the Mouths of the Prophets,  
transmitted down to us the History of the  
Creation, and Restauration of Mankind,  
the Genealogy of the first Patriarchs, the  
Acts of the Children of *Israel*, the Lives  
of their Judges and Kings, and all that is  
Historical in Holy Writ. Nay, to come  
nearer; What are the Four *Gospels*, and  
the *Acts of the Apostles*, but the History  
of our Blessed Saviour, and those his  
glorious Followers. Thus the Prophets  
and Evangelists seem to authorize and  
recommend History, they themselves be-  
ing

## *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

ing Sacred Historians. Nor is it only on this Religious Foundation, that its Credit is supported: To omit many things that might be urged to testify its great Value, let us only consider whence it is that we have the Knowledge of our Original, and what it is that has eternized the Memory of Great and Worthy Persons; and we shall find, it is all due to History alone. To this also must those who now live, and are ambitious of perpetuating their Memory, owe the Transmitting of their Names and Merits to Posterity. To this Kings and Princes are beholding, for the rare Examples it furnishes them with of their Illustrious Predecessors; thereby stirring up their Minds to imitate their Heroick Actions, and become Partakers of their lasting Praises. To this, States-men are obliged, for the politick Presidents it affords them to govern themselves by in all extraordinary Exigencies of State. To this, all accomplished Persons stand indebted for the Ornament of their Discourse, and for the perfecting them in the true Knowledge of the World. And, to conclude, From this, the Generality of Mankind is furnished with Variety of Instances exciting to Virtue, and deterring from Vice. But, though

too

## *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

too much cannot be said upon so deserving a Subject, let this suffice, since it is not to inform, but to obtain a favourable Acceptance, that so much has been said.

If then, Sir, the Dignity and Value of History be such as I have represented, well may it merit an Honourable Patronage from Persons of Worth. Empty Titles are not the Worth I mean; those too often are bestowed upon the vilest of Men, and even for submitting to the most infamous of Crimes. That is true Worth, which, being derived from Honourable Ancestors, though without the Addition of gaudy Epithets, is preserved unblemished, and without Stain. To ascend to those the World calls Honours, such as Lordships, Earldoms and Dukedoms, by indirect, scandalous and unjust Means, is rather to descend: To embrace them, offered under those Circumstances, is the Act of an abject, rather than a noble Spirit; and to aim at, and aspire to them through those Means, rather betokens a sordid Pride, than a generous Ambition. Such Patrons are neither capable of Receiving or Communicating Honour; their Names,  
in

## *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

in History, are branded with Infamy, not to be covered by all the Sycophant Addresses and Flatteries of a Dedication: And even the Work which seeks Shelter under them, sucks in the Infection of their poysonous Shadow. Malice may, perhaps, endeavour so to pervert my Words, as if they implied a Reflection upon Great and Honourable Persons; but it is plain, only Malice can so mis-interpret my Meaning, as to force it to such an invidious Sense. Those who are truly Noble, cannot suffer in the Character of such as only mimick their Grandeur; and they alone will find themselves affected, whose Consciences shall accuse them of having aspired to a Counterfeit Nobility, through mean and sordid Practices.

These, Sir, are the Men, whose Names I most abhor to prefix to my Labours; from them I fly to your Protection, as to one whom Envy it self cannot asperse with Want of real Honour, or with affecting that which is not such. If Illustrious Birth and Parentage be Honour, yours is too well known, to be capable of receiving any Addition by any thing my Pen can express in its behalf. If a

plentiful

## *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

plentiful Fortune be the Support and Ornament of Honour, you have received it from your Ancestors, by a Legal Inheritance; when others, to raise their Families, found Estates upon Extortion, Fraud and Oppression. But, above all, If Generous Actions and Vertuous Principles be true Honour, none that knows you, is ignorant, how great a Share you possess. Nor would I pass by this so material a Point, without enlarging upon it, but that it will not suit with your Modesty, to hear your own, though just, Commendations: Nor will the Malice and Virulency of our Times bear with the Mention of solid and real Praises. What you are, and what you merit, neither is, nor will be unknown; it may prove the Subject of an abler Pen, when those who know, shall see a fit Time to recommend your Memory to Posterity.

All that remains, Sir, is, to beg a favourable Acceptance of the Tender I make. It is the entire History of a Kingdom, from its first Plantation, to this present Time. The Original was dedicated to a King: The Translation has not, hope, so much degenerated, but it may

(a) be

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

be worthy of you. If you think it so, I have gained my Point; and shall reap a singular Satisfaction, if it gives you any. I am,

SIR,

Your most Obedient,

Humble Servant,

JOHN STEVENS.

John Stevens  
1740

## THE PREFACE.

PORTUGAL, though a Kingdom of but a small Extent, and which for these latter Years, has not furnished us with any great subject of History; yet in past Ages, it did so largely extend its Dominions, and raised such admiration throughout Europe, by its wonderful Discoveries and stupendous Conquests, that it is much to be admired, all its past Glories should be Buried under its present obscurity. Nor is it less to be wondered at, that England, which so lately received from thence a Queen, yet living, should know so little either of her Country, or Progenitors: This, I say, in regard, that till now there has not appeared abroad in the English Tongue any History of that once so famous Kingdom, unless we will reckon as such some small fragments which at several times have crept into the World, and which seem rather to stir up our curiosity to know, who those  
( 22 ) People

THE

## The Preface.

People were, than any ways to satisfy our desire of Knowledge. This fault I conceive must be chiefly imputed to the Portuguese themselves, whose care it ought to have been to deliver to Posterity and Foreigners their own honourable Actions, so methodized, that they might delight in seeing them together reduced into the form of a compleat History. But they, though furnishing so much matter for Authors to employ their Pens, were yet supinely negligent in duly recording and publishing of it. It is true, they had many Writers, who snatched their Actions from utter oblivion, by leaving that piece-meal which ought to have been reduced into one Work; but this was a labour most Men were averse to, as believing it above their strength, because those Writings were partly so voluminous, that it required almost a Man's Age to reduce them to a less compass, and partly so scattered abroad in sundry parts of the Kingdom, that they despaired of ever being able to bring them together.

Emanuel de Faria y Sousa, our Author, was the first that I can find ever undertook to digest and publish to the World, the compleat History of his Country, and give a perfect account of the Actions of his Countrymen in all parts of the World. He not only undertook, but performed it with general applause, not only of the Portuguese who are the subject of his great Enterprize, but even of the Spaniards, in whose Language he Wrote. This his labour  
was

## The Preface.

was not finished till the Year 1640. and appeared not in publick till many Tears after. He has observed a strict method of History, without running out into endless Digressions, which only serve to swell Volumes, and are no way material to the subject in hand. Being a Portuguese, I cannot affirm him to be altogether impartial, for there is no Man whom the love of his Native Country does not a little sway, yet this can be no exception against him, because, if such, all History would be lyable to the same censure; and besides he was a Man that proposed to himself no interest in flattering the great ones, living always a private retired life, which will plainly appear in that he spares not often to expose the Vices and Enormities of notable Persons for the sake of their Posterity, and no where extols any, though never so mighty for the hope of pleasing their descendants. But to be short, let the History speak for itself, for my commendation, as being a party too much concerned in it, cannot add much to its Reputation, and yet this I must say, that I cannot at all doubt of its meeting applause, because having run through the Kingdoms of Spain and Portugal, with a general esteem in its original Language, I cannot be perswaded that the Translation can have so much detracted from its first value, as to render it unacceptable to the judicious lovers of this sort of Learning.

Thus much may suffice as to the History in General, but to descend to particulars, The  
( a 3 ) first



## The Preface.

first Book contains all that hapned in Portugal, from the time it was first peopled by Tubal, the Grandson of Noah, till the time of the famous Viriatus. The second begins with Viriatus, and ends at the Birth of <sup>our</sup> Saviour. The third reaches from the Birth of our Saviour till the Conquest of Spain by the Moors: The fourth from the Moorish Conquest, till the erecting of Portugal into a particular Kingdom, under its first King, Alonso the First, or rather his Father Count Henry. The fifth from the said Count Henry, till King Sancho the second, The sixth from him till King Ferdinand inclusive. The seventh from King John the First, to King John the Second. The eighth from King Emanuel, till Henry the King and Cardinal, and the Governours left by him at his Death. The ninth Book has the lives of the three Philips Kings of Spain and Portugal, till the Year 1640. where the Author concludes, and the Supplement begins.

Having given this short account of the main History, and named the Supplement, I must not omit to say somewhat in relation to it. Emanuel de Faria having concluded, as has been said, just at the Year 1640. there ensued that very Year the great Revolution, in which the Portuguese cast off the Dominion of the Spaniards, and set up a King of their own, This mighty work was in a manner done in a day, all places submitting to the new King, and expelling the Spaniards with such success as is scarce credible,

## The Preface.

credible, but that the thing is still fresh in the memory of many persons living. However, though the Portuguese in so short a time had asserted their Liberty, and cast off the Foreign Yoke; yet the consequences of so great an Enterprize, were a continual War for the space of almost Twenty Eight Years. Now this War is the principal Subject of the Supplement, and indeed a matter well worthy to be known, as a most material Transaction of this Age. Being a thing so remarkable and near our times, I have been very particular in it, and therefore given an exact account of the Transactions of every Year apart. I have not been sparing of any labour in perusing such Authors as have writ of it, and extracting from them as much as my intended Brevity would permit, and tho' I designed to have been much shorter, the variety of accidents is such, that it has obliged me to run it out to a much greater bulk than at first I designed. Neither have I wanted information in many particulars touched in this Supplement, from Persons who were present and Eye-witnesses, to the Actions therein related. Nay one of my Authors, viz. the Count de Ericeyra, who has handled this Subject very largely, was not only a Commander in the Army, but also a Councillor of State, and therefore a most fit Man to give an account as well of the Warlike Exploits in the Field, as of the private Transactions at Court. But now to come to the last part of all, which I call the Conclusion of the History, it is so distinguished from the rest of

## The Preface.

the Supplement, in regard that therein we look back into several Tears before treated of. This, as is there said, was so ordered to avoid interrupting the series of the War, with the relation of Factions and Animosities at Court. And the Councils and Practises which tended to that extraordinary change, which was made in the Government, in the imprisoning and confining a King for many Tears, being matters meriting a special observation, I thought it better to lay the whole series of them together, so that they may appear at one view, than to interrupt them with other Narrations.

Monarchies as all other wordly things have their rise and fall, and consequently those which have once been glorious, ought to merit our esteem for what they were, no less than those which are now great, are admired for what they are. It is no disgrace to a famous General, that he is grown old and worn out with labours, nor ought it to lessen our esteem for a Kingdom, because we see it sunk under the too great Burthen of its undertakings. This has hapned to Portugal, which being of its self but a small spot of Ground, yet adventured, and that with success, to spread its Conquests into the four parts of the World, to build Cities and Forts among People before unknown to the Europeans, to traffick among Rude and Barbarous Nations, to engage Multitudes, not of naked Indians, but such as had the use of all sorts of Fire-arms, to Preach the Gospel to inhuman Infidels, who had

## The Preface.

had never heard the sacred Name of Christ, and in fine, to People the vast Ocean, if I may so call it, with their Fleets, to pierce through dangers of unknown Seas, and to discover to us the course of the Sun, by tracing his Carrier round this Terrestrial Globe. These are the mighty Actions, which gained Portugal that renown it stood possessed of, and these very exploits have helped to sink it into that obscurity, which now in a manner hides it from us. The greatness of the attempts gained them renown, but their own and their Neighbours boundless avarice proved the bane of all their Glories. Their own, because being but so small a People, they yet set no limits to their desires, but rather stretched forth their greedy hands to catch at all the Riches of the East, and turn them to their peculiar use, without considering how much easier it has always been found to acquire much, than to preserve what is so unreasonably acquired. It was their Neighbours avarice, as I said, that hastned their ruin, because there was scarce a nation of any consideration in Europe, which did not strive to pluck a Feather from them, and to gain footing, where such mighty prospect of profit appeared; and above all, the Dutch have been the Cormorants that have devoured their Lands, their Metals, and their Spice. Such was the downfall of the Portuguese Nation, raised by their Ambition and Valour to the highest pitch of Honour, and cast down by the Covetousness and Envy of their Neighbours. Nor has the late War, which involved

## The Preface.

involved the greatest part of Europe, contributed less to the obscuring of their Name, for all Mankind being wholly taken up with the thoughts of those that were active, had not leisure to cast an Eye upon a People, that lay happily obscured under the Blessed cloud of Peace. Yet tho' the calm they have of late enjoyed, may have put them by the Honour of any fresh martial Achievements, an Honour it is their greatest felicity to want; nevertheless their more glorious former Exploits are not worthy to be buried in Oblivion. The Empires of the Assyrians, Persians, Greeks and Romans, have long since perished, and still we read their Actions with Delight and Admiration. The Kingdoms of the Parthians, the Goths, the Huns, and other barbarous Nations, are now no more, and still the remembrance of their Valour, their Victories, and their success is the subject of many Volumes. Portugal still stands an independent Monarchy, and though but the skeleton of what it was, still its former Glories merit to be Recorded, either for what that Kingdom then was, or for what it may possibly be again.

But it is high time I look about for fear of transgressing in too long a Preface. Hitherto something has been said concerning the Author, concerning his Works, and concerning the Kingdom he treats of. What now remains is to remove some objections which may be raised by such as would have all Histories as infallible  
as

## The Preface.

as the Holy Scripture, both as to Time and Actions: This is what all Men may wish, but none ever yet could attain to. He that would read no History, in which there is a fault, may resolve to spare his Eyes, or apply them to some other study. The first thing I find in this Book, which may be carped at, is the account of the first planting this Kingdom, and the succeeding race of Kings, till the coming in of the Carthaginians. Nothing more can be said in defence hereof, but that all Antiquity at such a distance is obscure, every Nation has laboured to deduce it self from the nearest time to the Flood it could; and what is most, even the Ancient Josephus writes, that Jobel or Tubal, the Grandson of Noah, came into Spain, and other Greek and Latin Authors make mention of Spanish Kings here named; therefore in such a mist of Antiquity, it may be reckoned a great Happiness, that such lights as these can be found to lead us to any part of it that we may rely upon. The next objection will be against many passages of somewhat a latter date; as for example, the strange life of Abidis, the coming of Nebuchadnezer into Spain, and several other things very incredible to those who have not heard of them before. The answer is, That these things, though strange to us are not at all impossible, that they are left to us upon credit of very Authentick Authors, and that if in them there be any thing fabulous, yet that must not blast the Reputation of this History, no more than the English Chronicle ought to be wholly



## The Preface.

wholly condemned for the far fetcht History of Brutus and his Trojans, or Livy for his Poetical Nourfery of Romulus and Remus by a Wolf. What follows till the Birth of our Saviour, and some time after, will not be liable to much censure, by reason there is little in it, but what has been delivered by Roman Writers, who have for the most part passed current in the World; or, if any of them have not, it is no way the Business of this work to vindicate them. After the first Preaching of the Gospel, we shall here and there meet with some account of Miracles wrought, which perhaps, may not suite with all Palates. Most Christians do allow, that the first spreading of Christianity, was wrought with the help of stupendious Wonders, God so ordaining it for the convincing of the hardened Pains, who being carnally Educated, could never be brought to comprehend the sacred Doctrine of Christ, unless they had been convinced by the working of some supernatural Operations. Most Christians, I say, do allow of this at least in the Infancy of Christianity, and these I believe will not much reflect upon the credit of such as they shall here meet withal; and for those pretended Christians, who cry down all that is not suitable to their own Enthusiastick Notions, it is not material whether they give credit to these things or not, since many of them have had the prophane Impudence with sacrilegious Tongues and Pens, to endeavour to abolish the use of the Lord's Prayer and Creed; and it is no discredit for a Christian Author to be dis-

## The Preface.

disesteemed by those who made so little account of Christ himself, and his Apostles. However, I do not urge this to oblige the believing of all such miraculous Relations, as shall occur in this History; it will appear, I am not over-fond of them my self. Doubtless in all parts of the World, God permitted Miracles to be wrought for his own Glory, and for the Salvation of Souls, but whether the same, or in the same manner, as they are here related, is left to every one to believe or dis-believe at his pleasure. To proceed, there follows for some hundreds of years, after the Redemption of Man, a most obscure and uncertain account of what hapned not only in Portugal, but throughout all Spain. From the total Conquest made by Augustus, till the coming of the Barbarous Goths, Suevians, Vandals, Alans, and the rest, there was for the most part a continual Peace throughout Spain, which being, during that time, a Province subject to the Empire, either yielded no matter worth the Writing, or else wanted Writers to transmit it to Posterity. The barbarous Nations above mentioned, were so far from the thoughts of recording their own Acts, that their greatest care was to root out and destroy all Learning and Civility; for which reason, their History is transmitted to us so interrupted and imperfect, that scarce any Connection can be found in it. But when these Savage People by the receiving of Christianity had been somewhat Civilized, and it might have been hoped the Clouds of ignorance would

## The Preface.

would have been dispersed, then their grievous Sins called upon them a heavy Judgment from Africk, which was an inundation of Moors, who in the space of eight Months, overran all Spain, destroying not only Books, but all Monuments of Antiquity that were then remaining, and driving the miserable Christians into Dens and Caves upon the Mountains; whence afterwards issuing out, they had so much continual employment for the Sword, that none had time to perpetuate with the Pen, what the Sword performed. Hence followed such a profound ignorance in this Kingdom of Portugal, the perpetual Wars taking away all thoughts of Learning, that for many Tears after it had Kings of its own, yet it wanted Writers to perpetuate their Memory.

These are in short the defects of this History, if they may be termed such, since as we have said before, there is none perfect in the World, and those I think are sufficiently answered to satisfy such reasonable persons as will not expect impossibilities. Of the Supplement it will be needless to add more than has been already said, unless it be a word touching the conclusion of it, and in relation to the account there given, of the hard usage of the unfortunate King Alphonso. Yet because I think, as much has been said there, as is requisite to justify what I have Written, I will not tire the Reader's patience, only once for all, assure him,

## The Preface.

him, that nothing has been there Writ by me for Favour or Affection, since I may rather expect to be condemned than rewarded for any thing that seems to vindicate that unhappy Prince. I must confess, I could not without Concern, read a Book published here in the Year 1677. and Entituled, The Portugal History: Or, a Relation of the Troubles that hapned in the Court of Portugal in the Years 1667. and 1668. For in that Treatise, I find King Alphonso treated in so cruel a manner, that it would afflict the hardest Heart that has any remorse or consideration for the Majesty of Kings. It was not the imprisoning and dethroning of that poor Prince, which was the hardest part of his Misfortunes; this Book I mentioned, and others like it, have yet gone farther, by blasting his Memory to posterity, and representing of him as a Monster, rather than a Man. These enormities I have laboured the best I could, to rectify by giving the truest Character of that Prince I could, and the most impartial account of his Misfortunes. In this part I have made use of other impartial Authors, and also of authentic informations, from such persons as knew that King, and were Witnesses to the whole contrivance of his Deposition and Imprisonment.

Thus much may suffice to inform, not to prepossess the Reader. All Books that appear in publick are exposed to Censure, and few or none

## The Preface.

none escape it, even the best are not exempted, and therefore I cannot hope this should. But let it take its Chance, there are sundry sorts of tastes among Men, what one likes, another loaths; and even so it falls out in Books, some Men extoll, and others cry them down; this cannot be so unfortunate, as not to please somebody. Those who like it, will have their reward in pleasing themselves, and such as are disgusted with it, will have no recompence for their Dissatisfaction.

THE

( 1 )

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

The First BOOK.

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Dispersion of the People after the Deluge: The Coming of Tubal into Spain: His Life, Death and Burial. The Succession of Iberus, Jubalda, Brigus, Tagus, Gerion, and his Sons.*

**A**FTER the World had suffered the just Punishment of its Guilt in the Universal Deluge, the Wrath of Heaven being appeased, and the Elements restored to their first Harmony, the Ark that for the space of a Year had preserved in its Bosom the Hopes of the Propagation of Human Kind on the vast Ocean of the over-flowed Earth, at length sent on the top of the famous Mount *Ararat*, in *Armenia* Noah coming out, offered Sacrifice to GOD, to incline him to bestow new Bounties and Mercies upon him. Having received a Promise, he descended from that un-  
der the Heighth, to a Plain called *Sennaar*, at that time  
B covered

## The Preface.

none escape it, even the best are not exempted, and therefore I cannot hope this should. But let it take its Chance, there are sundry sorts of tastes among Men, what one likes, another loaths; and even so it falls out in Books, some Men extoll, and others cry them down; this cannot be so unfortunate, as not to please some body. Those who like it, will have their reward in pleasing themselves, and such as are disgusted with it, will have no recompence for their Dissatisfaction.

THE

( 1 )

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

The First BOOK.

## CHAP. I.

*Of the Dispersion of the People after the Deluge: The Coming of Tubal into Spain: His Life, Death and Burial. The Succession of Iberus, Jubalda, Brigus, Tagus, Gerion, and his Sons.*

**A**fter the World had suffered the just Punishment of its Guilt in the Universal Deluge, the Wrath of Heaven being appeased, and the Elements restored to their first Harmony, the Ark that for the space of a Year had preserved in its Bosom the Hopes of the Propagation of Human Kind on the vast Ocean of the over-flowed Earth, at length arrived on the top of the famous Mount Ararat, in Armenia. Noah coming out, offered Sacrifice to GOD, to incline him to bestow new Bounties and Mercies upon him. Having received a Promise, he descended from that un-  
der the Heighth, to a Plain called Sennaar, at that time covered

covered with Carcases; an horrid Scene of Humane Vanity. Those few Restorers of Mankind, and small Remnant of that wonderful Desolation, cleansed the Place, and laid the Foundation of the first City in the World, after its Destruction. That it was called *Saga Albina* (as the Rabbies will have it, whom some learned Authors follow) is very uncertain, as are all other Things depending on Humane Faith, which is very fallible, though depending on the Credit of that very Age; much more, when delivered so long after. The Infallible, as being Divine, Historian clears this Doubt, when he calls it *Babel*; for this Name belonged to the City before the Erecting of the Tower, which was no more than a part of the other. It is no less uncertain that *Araxa*, a Daughter of *Noah*, (according to the same Authors) remained as Sovereign of that City; when the Inhabitants, being grown too numerous, were obliged to divide, and spread themselves farther about the Earth.

When the  
of Noah  
dispersed.

2. It was not so much their Multitude that obliged them to separate, as the Discord that began to grow among them; and even their Vices; for they all rather chose to follow the Example of their wicked Ancestors, who had suffered, than to take Warning by their Punishment. Even the Memory of that Chastisement, instead of reclaiming, served only to make them the more guilty: For, after having begged and obtained Mercy from God, they proudly attempted to raise Works against Heaven, and brave his Omnipotence. They had the Presumption to believe they could secure themselves against another Deluge, without the Assistance of God: And whereas the surest Fence Mortals have against the just Indignation of the Almighty, is his Mercy, when humbly sued for; yet they began that so famous Tower; which, as it was a Work prodigious for Men in that Infancy of their Reparation, so it proved so meer a Nothing to GOD, that He made use of no other Engines to destroy it, but the Tongues of the Builders. Hence, many Ages after, sprang that Creek Fable, Of the Giants destroyed with Lightning, for attempting to climb up to Heaven by laying Mountains upon Mountains. Thus the most favoured Part of the Creation, in Heaven and on Earth, both Men and Angels, gave themselves up to Pride and Rebellion.

3. *Nimrod*, Grandson to the wicked *Cham*, was the Founder of this fond Structure, which perished before it could be finished. Wherefore, finding now, that GOD needed no other Power against the Machinations of Men, but themselves; and Discord still increasing more than the People, which yet multiplied to Excess, Life being granted for so long a Term of Years; they concluded there was no Way to escape the Hand of GOD, without they could find out Means to avoid one another; the greatest Grievance being then, to tolerate themselves. This made them resolve to spread themselves farther than the narrow Bounds of the adjacent Provinces, to seek the remote Parts of the Earth, and commit themselves to the Sea, in Vessels made after the Pattern of the Ark. So they marched into distant Countries, and touched remote Shores; still stretching farther and farther, till they had filled the Circumference of this Terrestrial Globe. The Heads of this first Transmigration were, the Sons of our Second Father, *Sem*, *Cham* and *Japhet*. Some say, *Asia*, *Africk* and *Europe* were their three Portions, which were called the Three Parts of the World, till Experience taught us they were but one of the two Continents which divide this Lower World, and may seem to have been divided into three Parts, in respect to them three.

4. After these three first Universal Planters had separated themselves, and inhabited the nearer Regions, the Multitude still increasing, their Children thought of subdividing, and travelling to find out some remoter Habitations, where every Head of a Family might erect himself a Sovereignty. Among these, *Tubal*, the fifth Son of *Japhet*, sailing the *Mediterranean*, passed out of the Mouth of the *Streight*; and leaving the Cape formerly called *Promontorium Sacrum*, now Cape *St. Vincent*, behind, landed in the most Western Part of *Europe*; and being invited by the Pleasantness of the Soil, and Sereneness of the Air, founded on the Edge of the Sea, not far from the Mouth of *Tagus*, the City *Setubal*. Other Countries pretend he first built Cities among them; I will not dispute it with them, so I be allowed he came hither. This happened about the Year of the World (not to be too precise in such dark Antiquities) 1800, about 150 Years after the Deluge, and 1070 before Christ; and, till the time that the Divine



WORD was made Flesh, we will reckon thus, diminishing still the Years.

5. These first Antiquities to most Men seem fabulous, and therefore I will lightly run them over, till those Times that afford us more Light of History; there being no solid Grounds to fix the Credit of what passed before the Time of the Romans and Carthaginians. Only, as for the first Peopling of Spain, by Tubal, we have the Authority of Josephus; who says, That of Jobel came the Jobeli, afterwards called Iberi, Celtiberi and Spaniards.

6. The first Form of Government, as the most perfect, was Monarchical; and that not confined, or restrained, as, since, the Insolence of Subjects has made it; but absolute. There were no Laws to bind the Sovereign, or People; the Will of the Monarch was positive Law. Princes at first studied rather how to maintain, than enlarge their Dominions. In this manner Tubal the first King of Tubal governed Spain the Term of an Hundred Years, and then gave them a Form of Law, or rather Advice, in Verse, to be transmitted to Posterity. He also settled a Form of Divine Worship; as knowing, that The Fear of GOD is the Beginning of Wisdom. Tubal having

2009.

reigned 155 Years, died, and was buried in that farther Part of Spain, which, in respect to his Ashes, was called *Premontorium Sacrum*; and which, for many Ages, the Natives thought it profane to tread: And this Name continued, till the first King of Portugul, Don Alfonso Enriquez, changed it to that of Cape St. Vincent.

Iberus the second King

1972.

7. By the Death of Tubal, the Monarchy of Spain devolved upon his Son Iberus; of whom, some say, the River Ebro took Name; and Spain, that of Iberia. He invented the Art of Fishing, reigned 37 Years, and died in the Year 1972. before Christ. Observe, always, that the Year one died, the other commenced his Reign.

Jubelus the third King.

8. Jubelus, Jubalda, or Idubeda, Son and Successor to Iberus, spent most of his time in the Study of Astrology, or Natural Magick, and ended his Days, having reigned 64 Years.

1907. Brigus the fourth King

9. Upon the Death of his Father, Brigus took upon him the Sovereignty, who built many Towns and Fortresses which still preserve his Name, as appears in *Lacoberiga*, *Conimbriga*, *Medoberiga*, *Brigancia*, and others.

From

From his erecting so many Castles, it is supposed Castile still retains a Castle for its Arms. He reigned 32 Years. 1875.

10. Tagus succeeded his Father Brigus, and bent all his Cares to the extending and improving his Dominions. Hence he was surnamed *Orma*, which signifies a Building, or Monument. From him the River Tagus took its Name, and in his time the Portuguese began to stretch themselves through the yet uninhabited Country, and to People and till many at that time waste Mountains and Valleys. His Reign lasted 29, or 30 Years.

Tagus the fifth King.

11. His Successor was Betus, which signifies Happy or Fortunate. Of him Spain was called *Betica*, which Name is still continued to the Province of *Andaluzia*, and in the famous River *Betis*. The Multitude being now greater than Portugal could bear, they spread themselves into *Andaluzia*, where Betus founded several Towns, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Betuli*, or *Bastuli*. Till this time the Portuguese acknowledged one only God, without worshiping Idols, or following other Superstitions, which then were rife in other parts of the World.

12. This was the happy Estate of *Lusitania*, when Gerion a wicked and vicious Man came out of *Africk* into *Portugal*. Spain, his Name was *Gerion*, which, in the *Chaldean* Tongue, signifies a Stranger; and with him came others. He durst not at first enter *Lusitania*, but fix'd his Abode near it in the Island *Eritbrea*, *Ernea*, or *Junonia*, lying in the Western Sea, which in the Year of Grace 580. overflowed it. The Piece of Land called *Eritbrea* (which Name fell afterwards to the Island of *Cadiz*) afforded such rank Pasture, that the People were obliged at certain times to bleed the Cattle, lest they should die being overflowed with Blood. Gerion passing over from thence to the Continent, began to commit Violences, carrying away some Cattle, which the Portuguese, unskilled in Arms, had no way to prevent, but by removing their Habitations. He growing bolder, committed so many Robberies, till he was forced to enlarge his Territory to contain his Flocks, which, in the Infancy of the World, was the greatest Treasure. But being taken with the Delightfulness of the Island, he only watched the Death of Betus, which happened the 31th Year of his Reign.

1830.

Gerion be- comes K. of Portugal. 12. Gerion lost not the Opportunity he had wished for, but immediately, upon the Death of *Betus*, passing over into *Portugal*, and bountifully bestowing upon the Natives what he had got by his Robberies, so far gained upon them, that they suffered him to assume the Title of King. He, to establish his Sovereignty, introduced a new Superstition and Sacrifice never before known to the People; and they, looking upon him as more than Man, took him for their Legisslator. All other parts of *Spain* followed the Example of the *Portuguese*, and received him as their Sovereign. Of him it is thought the City *Girna* took its Name. But he having usurped the Crown, held it like a Tyrant; and the People, feeling the Oppression, wished, but knew not how, to get rid of their unsupportable new Lord.

He introduces Idolatry.

1794.

14. The People of *Andaluzia* meditating how to deliver themselves from this Oppression of the Usurper, and hearing that *Osiris* victoriously ranged the World, making it his business to assist the distressed, gave him an Account of their miserable Condition, worse in the Apprehension of what was like to follow, than even in their present Sufferings; for the Dread of what a known Tyrant may do, is a greater Calamity than what he does really act. *Osiris* soon accepted the Invitation, and flew with Diligence to the Relief of that Distressed People. *Gerion* understanding the Danger that threatened him, sent before his three Sons, with some chosen Troops, to give a Check to *Osiris*, while he came up with the main Body of his Army. The two Hosts met upon the Banks of the River *Guadiana*, where they charged one another with such Fury, that *Osiris* was near losing the Honour he had before gained by so many notable Victories. For *Gerion* and his Sons were brave, and the *Lusitanians*, though not then used to handle Weapons, were strong of Body, and bore the Brunt with Resolution. But the Fortune of *Osiris* never failing, and *Gerion* being slain, his Men despairing of Success, placed all their Hope of Safety in Flight. *Osiris* used this Victory with such Clemency, (a Quality inherent to such as fight for Justice, and do not conquer to tyrannize,) that he appeared to the Conquered, rather as a merciful Judge of their Differences, than an haughty and successful Commander; and therefore yielded the Crown of *Spain* to the three Sons of the Deceased *Gerion*, who were called *Lominii*.

*Osiris* comes into Spain, kills Gerion, and gives the Crown to his three Sons.

15. This was the End of *Gerion*, such will that of all Tyrants be. Some Authors are of Opinion he was slain by *Hercules* the *Grecian*; and the reason of this Mistake is, that then the Name of *Hercules* was rather titular to all Heroes, than peculiar to any one. *Gerion* was the first in *Spain* that made Account of any Treasure besides Cattle, discovered Mines of Gold, and taught the Value of it. From the Riches he thus gathered he got the Name of *Chryseus* or *Deabus*, which, in the *Lybian* Language signifies a Man of Gold, or Lord of great Riches. This Humanity of *Osiris*, in restoring the Sons of *Gerion* to the Crown, so far gained upon the *Portuguese*, that in return they gave up their very Souls, receiving the new Worship which the Idolatrous *Osiris* brought among them. Of him they learnt to make their Year but of Four Months, after the manner of the *Egyptians*; which Custom continued in *Spain*, till the *Romans*, having subdued it, reduced the Account to their own Form. *Osiris* is allowed to have taught the People an easier way of Tilling and Sowing than they used before. *Gerion* reigned 34 years, and was the first that oppressed and fleeced the People, the Property of Usurpers, who when they do best, treat their Subjects with more Cruelty than Lawful Princes do at worst. *Osiris* returned to *Egypt*, leaving behind him some of his Companions, who were ~~one~~ of those called *Sce-* *nites*, and took their Seats near the Mouth of the River *Guadiana*. From them *Cape St. Vincent* was also called *Promontorium Scenicum*. This Battle fought between *Osiris* and *Gerion* near the place where *Tarifa* now stands, was the first that ever happened in *Spain*. *Gerion* was buried by his Sons in the Island *Erethrea*, in the same manner as is used at present, and was the first so interred in *Spain*. Some will have the Family of *Osorios* to be descended from *Osiris*; but that is hard to prove, and no Task of mine.

*Osiris* returns into Egypt.

## C H A P. II.

Of the Lominii, Hispalus, Hispanus, Hercules, Italus, Sic-Orus, Sic-Anus, Sic-Celeus, Lufus, Sic-Ulus, Lisias, Licinius, Palatuus, Gargoris, Abidis, Argentorius, and Baucius Capetus, Kings of Lusitania.

1780. *The Lominii, three Sons of Gerion, reign.* 1. THE three *Gerions*, or *Lominii*, began their Government with such Brotherly Love, and such perfect Union, that they gave occasion to the Fable, That *Spain* was ruled by a King with three Heads. Such was the Entrance of their Sway, that it seemed they were resolved to preserve with Justice, what their Father had gained with Violence: But it was not long before it appeared they had rather be thought Sons of such a Father, than Fathers of their Subjects. They were good no longer, than till they had the Power to be wicked; which was, till *Osiris* was removed. Then remembring the People of *Andaluzia*, *Aragon* and *Valencia* had been the Cause of their Father's Death, by calling in *Osiris*, they removed towards those parts, on pretence of Affection, but in reality to wreak their Revenge.

2. *Osiris*, being basely Murdered by his Brother *Typhon*, his Son *Orus Lybicus* succeeded him, having slain the Murderer. The People of *Andaluzia*, now again oppressed by the Tyranny of the *Lominii*, who upon the departure of *Osiris*, were exercising their revenge on those their Subjects, sent for and to *Orus Lybicus*, called also *Hercules*, who speedily came to their relief, as his Father had done out of *Africk*, where he had killed the Giant *Anteus*, and marched after the Enemy who were retired to the Fastnesses of *Lusitania*, and there resolutely waited his approach. The *Lominii* had posted themselves in a secure place, called formerly *Salus Tercenorum*: *Hercules*, seeing them in place almost inaccessible, resolved to save his Men, and avoid the hazard of a Battle, by challenging the three Brothers to fight him hand to hand, which he did, and they accepting of it, were all

all three slain successively. The *Portuguese* seeing their Princes slain, began to move to revenge their Death; but *Orus* making use of persuasions, rather than force, appeased them, and calling the Nobles to him, he made a Sacrifice of Thanksgiving. This done, he advanced as far as the *Promontorium Sacrum*, where he built a magnificent Temple, wherein the *Egyptian* Ceremonies taught by the Founder were for many Ages after Religiously observed. The People in acknowledgment for the Benefits, received by *Hercules*, or rather swayed by fear, joyfully received his Son *Hispalus* for their King, who continued in *Lusitania* with many of his *Egyptians*.

3. *Hispalus* was installed 42 Years after the *Gerions* had begun to Reign, and being peaceably seated on the Throne, his Father *Orus Lybicus* marched away for *Italy*. The gentle Government of *Hispalus*, was the reviving of the hearts of that People after so many Calamities, but Prosperities are not durable, for he died the 17th Year of his Reign: Among the memorable Customs introduced by him, were those of Burying the Dead, and wearing Mourning for them; what sort of Mourning it was appears not, but that which many Ages after was used till the time of King *Emanuel* of *Portugal*, and *Ferdinand* of *Castile* was on the lightest occasions rough Canvass, and the deep used for Kings and such like occasions, of the coarsest Sack-cloth, and that always White, as is still used in *China*.

4. *Hispanus* succeeded his Father *Hispalus*, and was Proclaimed in the Temple of *Hercules* with great Ceremony. The *Spaniards* in those days held it a crime to look upon the setting Sun, therefore those that lived upon the Coast, used to turn their backs towards it; those who lived near the *Promontorium Sacrum*, retreated at Night far off from it, believing the Gods spent the Night there in Sport and Pastimes, not to be seen by Mortal Eyes: Only the Priests and the King on the Night of his inauguration, were permitted to stay on that point of Land, and look towards the *West*, but as soon as the Sun quite disappeared, they prostrated themselves on the Ground, and then retired to the Temple, where they continued till break of day, when the King returned to the same place, and continued there till the Sun again spread its Beams over all that part of the Country.



Country. Then he returned joyfully to the People, offered Sacrifice, and was thence forward esteemed wiser than all others, as being one that had seen Divine Secrets and Hidden Mysteries. It is a common Opinion among the vulgar, that *Hispalis* now *Sevil*, was built by *Hispalus*, and that the Name *Hispania* came from *Hispanus*, who died when he had Reigned 32 Years, leaving no Issue.

**Hercules**  
Governs  
Spain, and  
leaves the  
Crown to  
Hesperus

1650.

Hesperus  
deposed,  
and Atlas  
set up in  
his place.

1618.

He leaves  
the Crown  
to his Son  
Sicorus.

Sicanus  
Succeeds  
them, and  
Sicceus  
him.

1509.

Lusus as-  
cends the  
Throne.

5. *Hercules*, after the Death of his Grandson *Hispalus* returned to *Spain*, which he Governed Nineteen Years in Peace with singular Wisdom and Goodness, and finding his end draw on, he appointed *Hesperus*, one of his Officers, his Successor. The Funeral Obsequies being performed, *Hesperus* took upon him the Sovereignty, but the giddy People being dissatisfied with his Government, revolted from him to his Brother *Atlas Italus*, who came out of *Italy*, pretending a right as being the Elder Brother, though neither had any other Title, but the choice of *Hercules* which was of the Younger. By this desertion of the Subjects, *Hesperus* was easily deprived of the Crown, and flying into *Italy*, outlived not long his Misfortune. *Italus* having Reigned in *Portugal* the space of Ten Years, returned into *Italy*, leaving the Dominion of *Spain* to his Son *Sicorus*, during whose Reign the Noise of Arms was not heard; he left his Name to that River of *Catalonia*, that washes the Walls of *Lerida*, and is now called *Segre*, but formerly *Sicoris*, and a great part of that Country was of him long after called *Sicoria*, he Reigned 55 Years.

6. *Sicanus* the Son of *Sicorus* succeeded his Father; he is reported to have waged War in *Italy*, and thence to have passed over and conquered *Sicily*; which, of him, our Author will have to take the Name of *Sicania*, and he to have Reigned 31 Years. His Son *Sicceus* immediately entred upon the Government, and of him also is continued that Romantick Story of going into *Italy* with an Army, where also he is said to have died in the 44th Year of his Reign, 2453 from the Creation; 797 from the Flood; and 1509 before the Birth of Christ.

7. After the Death of *Sicceus* his Son *Lusus* was proclaimed King, and for the singular Affection he shewed to the Western part of *Spain*, where he spent the most of his life, that Country took his Name, being

being afterwards called *Lusitania*. Under this Name was comprehended all the Country between the Rivers *Guadiana* and *Duero*; the main Ocean bounded it on the West, and its limits on the East were formed by an imaginary line drawn almost straight from the turning of the River *Duero* near *Castrominho*, down to *Guadiana*, which River divided it from the Province *Betica*. Nothing else is recorded of *Lusus*, but that he reigned 33 Years, and dying, left the Kingdom to *Siculus*, who being born in *Lusitania*, preserved the same Affection his Father had done for that Province and People. He also is supposed to have passed over into *Italy*, and to have overthrown the *Aborigines*, whence sailing into *Sicily*, he subdued that Island, and left his Name to it, where he ended his Days, having reigned 61 Years.

*Siculus*  
the next  
King.

1416.

8. The Death of *Siculus* was so much resented by the *Spaniards*, and particularly the *Lusitanians*, that, he leaving no Heir, they resolved not to submit themselves to another King. Above an Hundred Years they lived at their Liberty, referring all Controversies to the ancientest Men, and standing to their Decision, till *Bacchus* the Son of *Semele*, with a numerous Army of sundry Nations came into *Spain*. The Fame of so mighty an Army terrified the *Spaniards*, but they were no less delighted with their Luxurious manner of living, all their Martial Exercises being intermixed with Pleasures and Delights. Hence the Sports used to this day in *Portugal*, called *Folias*, are supposed to have deduced their Original, which consists of Dancing, Taboring, and Singing: The Word is either derived from the Latin, *Folia*, or leaves, because the *Bacchanals* were so Crowned, or from the *Italian*, signifying Madness, which is proper enough to such Divertisements, and to the Feasts of the *Bacchanals*.

An inter-  
regnum for  
100 Years.

*Bacchus*  
in *Spain*.

9. *Bacchus* finding the *Lusitanians*, opposed his Command, and cut off many of his Army, retiring to the Mountains after doing the Mischief, employed his Tutor *Silenus* to work upon them by fair means, which he did so effectually, that they submitted themselves to him, only upon condition he should not use the Name of King, which they would allow to none since the Death of their beloved King *Lusus*. However, *Bacchus* finding them an Ignorant and Credulous People, perswaded them that the Soul of *Lusus* was transmigrated

**Lisias** made King. grat<sup>d</sup> unto his Son *Lisias*, who for the Love they bore him, was returned to Reign over them. This Fiction so took with the People, that they put themselves wholly into his Power, congratulating with themselves the Happiness of having recovered their admired King. *Bacchus* returned into *Italy*, and his Son remained possessed of this great part of *Europe*, which he enjoyed not full Three Years: He dying, the *Lusitanians* would not admit any other King, but chose for their Commander, one *Cacus* a bold Fellow, and one of *Lisias* his Companions; he raising a powerful Army, marched against *Palatuus* King of *Andaluzia*, whom in a Bloody Battle he overthrew, and by that means remained possessed of the greatest part of all *Spain*; puffed up with this Success, he became Insolent and Cruel, which rendred him Odious to the People.

**Hercules** the Theban in Spain overthrows *Cacus*.

10. *Palatuus*, who lay lurking in the Mountains, laid hold of this opportunity, sent some to sound the affections of the Multitude, and finding them well inclined towards him, adventured to raise Forces and march towards *Lusitania*. At the same time, *Hercules* the Theban, with the rest of the *Argonauts*, being by stress of Weather cast ashore in *Spain*, near the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, was lovingly received and entertained by *Palatuus*; this Courtesie obliged him to espouse his Quarrel, and so joining their Forces, they overthrew the Tyrant *Cacus*, or *Licinius*, who fled into *Italy*, whither presently after *Hercules* returned. Still the *Lucitanians* preserved their Liberty as before, as they did whilst *Erethreus*, whom some call the Son, others the Cousin of *Palatuus* reigned in the other parts of *Spain*. *Palatuus* seems to have Reigned 67 Years, and *Gargoris* is said to have been his Son, but for this there is no manner of Authority.

1158. **Gargoris** finds the use of Honey and its making.

11. The Tyranny of *Cacus* or *Licinius*, lasted Thirty Six Years, which are to be included in the 70 of *Palatuus* his Reign, and many more *Lusitania* remained free from any subjection, being governed only by the Rules of Reason, and some of *Tubal's* Laws which remained in Verse. It fell out accidentally, that a Man called *Gargoris* (which formerly signified a burning Coal or Flame) found a Swarm of Bees in a hollow Oak, and discovering their Honey, taught the use of it to the People. This sweet Discovery was worth a Crown,

Crown; which the Multitude, in Requit for that Benefit, freely bestowed upon him. He was afterwards, by the *Latins*, called *Melicola*, for discovering to the *Spaniards* the Use of Honey. Whilst *Gargoris* reigned, he had a Daughter got with Child by some Gallant, or, as some thought, by her own Father; for as soon as the Child was born, he caused it to be exposed to the Wild Beasts: But they, instead of destroying, nourished the Infant; of which he being informed, caused him to be cast into the Sea; and that Element, milder than the Grandfather, carried it up the River *Tagus*, as far as *Santarem*, formerly called *Scalabis*, where it was suckled by a Doe. Of her, being grown up, he took to a natural Swiftnes; so that they that hunted in the Mountains admired to see in him the Figure of a Man, and the Wildness of a Beast. *Gargoris* hearing hereof, and not imagining it was his Grandson, caused him to be taken in a Gin; and being brought before him, he, by known Signs, perceived it was the same he had exposed. His Hatred now turned into Love; he called him *Abidis*, causing him to be carefully instructed: And he was so great a Proficient, that it was he who first civilized that barbarous Multitude: He also taught them to yoke Oxen, to plow and sow.

11. Troy being reduced to Ashes, *Ulysses*, with a part of the *Grecian* Fleet, driven by Storms out of the Mouth of the *Streights*, arrived at length at the Mouth of the River *Tagus*; and entering, landed; where he found, already built, a City on the Hill; to which he left his Name, which remains to this Day, being called *Ulyssippo*, which is the famous City *Lisbon*. Here, in Memory of the Favours received of the Goddess *Minerva*, he built a stately Temple, and dedicated it to her. *Gargoris*, upon the News of his Arrival, marched towards him with an Army; but they both meeting, and conferring together, parted Friends: And not so content, *Gargoris* gave to *Ulysses* his Daughter, the Mother of *Abidis*, in Marriage. However, the *Greeks* committing several Insolences in the Country, they became odious to the People; who rising up in Arms against them, *Ulysses* stole away to Sea, leaving his new Wife behind. How long *Gargoris* reigned, cannot positively be set down; the best Guess that can be given, is, Seventy

*Abidis* exposed; Brought to Court; Teaches the People to yoke Oxen, plow and sow.

1130.

*Ulysses* in Portugal.

1105. venty seven Years. At the same time that *Ulysses* sail-  
ed out of *Tagus*, *Diomedes* enter'd the River *Mino*, in  
the North of *Portugal*: There he founded a City,  
which, after the Name of his Father *Tideus*, he called  
*Tide*; and in process of Time, by Corruption, is now  
called *Tuy*.

Abidis  
reigns.  
1038. A wonder-  
ful Dearth.  
12. The wonderful *Abidis* succeeded his fortunate  
Father *Gargoris*, in the Kingdom of *Spain*; and, in Gra-  
titude to the Mountains, where he was bred, built the  
City *Santarem*; and reigned 35 Years, much beloved  
of his Subjects. About this time happen'd that won-  
derful Dearth in *Spain*, which lasted 26 Months; du-  
ring which time it never rained. Some there are, who  
extend this, to 40 Years; others, to 30. Such it was,  
that all the Country became Desart, the Inhabitants ei-  
ther perishing for Want, or fleeing to other Places.

952. Long after this, a Multitude of the *Celte*, the ancient  
Inhabitants of *France*, came into the Southern Parts of  
*Portugal*, where they built several Towns, and re-ed-  
ified others, before ruined. They, being mixed, and  
well united with the Natives, stood them in good stead,  
when the *Phenicians* possessed themselves of the Island  
of *Cadiz*. Not content with settling their selves there,  
they began to incroach upon the People of *Andaluzia*,  
and fortified themselves at *Sidon*, now *Medina Sidonia*;  
whence they were expelled by the united Forces of  
the ancient Natives, and intruding *Celte*. Which done,  
the *Lusitanians* chose *Argantonius* for their King, who  
governed them many Years, with general Applause;  
some Authors stretching his Life to 140 Years; others,  
only to 120.

The Celte  
settle in  
Portugal.  
13. The *Celte* inhabiting *Lusitania*, being vastly in-  
creased, so that the Country they possessed, could not  
contain them, passed over the River *Tagus*, with their  
Flocks and Families, with a Design to settle along the  
Sea-Coast; beyond the Promontory of the Moon, now  
called the Rock of *Sintra*. Those People fearing their  
intruding Guests, marched out to oppose them; but be-  
ing overthrown, were forced to submit to those that  
came with Intention only to be their Companions.  
The *Turduli*, for so those People were called, joining  
with the Inhabitants of *Lisbon*, formed another Army;  
and joining Battel with the *Celte*, gained the Field;  
but with such Loss, that they had no reason to boast of  
their

their Victory. Both Parties considering the Loss sus-  
tained, came to an Agreement, and divided the Pro-  
vince betwixt them.

14. The *Turduli* thought themselves secure after this  
War with the *Celte*, when a more dangerous Enemy  
assaulted them. These were a savage Mountainous Peo-  
ple, who having, till then, lived upon the Milk of  
their Goats, and Wild Fruit, came down to seek a bet-  
ter Country to inhabit; but being defeated, they passed  
the River *Tagus*: There the *Celte* cut off a good Num-  
ber of them; which obliged the rest to march along  
the River *Tagus*, to the Sea-side, where, finding no Bo-  
dy to oppose them, they settled themselves: And from  
them, that Cape near *Serual* was called *Promontorium*  
*Barbaricum*, now *Cabo de Espichel*.

15. *Nabuchodonosor* having taken *Hierusalem*, and sub-  
dued a great part of the then known World, came at  
last into *Spain* with his mighty Army, composed of all  
Nations. Having besieged the Island of *Cadiz*, where  
the *Phenicians* inhabited, by Sea and Land, he was dri-  
ven thence by the united Forces of *Spain*; and so, with  
his whole Army, put to Sea again. He had before  
over-run the greatest part of *Spain*; and now departing,  
left behind him the greatest Plague that ever infested  
it. Thus was a great Number of Jews, dispersed in se-  
veral Parts of it; who fixing then, could never since be  
rooted out. The *Phenicians* delivered of the Danger of  
*Nabuchodonosor*, refused to pay the *Lusitanians*, whom  
they had called to their Aid; who offended thereat,  
demanded more than was their Due. The Controver-  
sie came to be decided by Blows, wherein the *Lusita-  
nians* were worsted, yet not so discouraged, but that, ga-  
thering fresh Forces, they came on again so furiously,  
that having vanquished their Enemies, they put them  
all to the Sword, without Mercy. By this Victory  
they became Masters of the greatest part of *Andaluzia*;  
so that great Numbers of them went over, to inhabit  
there, calling it *Turdetania*; where they built many  
Cities.

16. In the mean while, the *Phenicians*, shut up in the  
Island of *Cadiz*, craved Aid of the *Carthaginians*, their  
ancient Allies, against the *Lusitanians*, who Lorded it  
over all *Andaluzia*. The *Carthaginians* were not back-  
ward to undertake this Expedition, but Rigging a migh-  
ty

The Moun-  
tainous Peo-  
ple descend  
into the  
Plain.

Nabuchod-  
onosor  
in Spain.

The Car-  
thagini-  
ans come to  
relieve the  
Phenici-  
ans.

The Carthaginians defeated.

ty Fleet, sent it to their Relief, under the Command of Mezerbal, a valiant and wise Captain. At their first Landing, in some Skirmishes, our Men found their Valour would not avail against the *Africans*, without some Martial Discipline: Therefore they made Choice of one *Baucius Capetus*, (or, as others call him, *Bachus Carupus*,) a Man of a Gigantick Stature, and great Conduct, for their General. He observing the manner of the *Carthaginian* Warfare, instructed his Men accordingly. About Break of Day the two Armies joined Battel, with terrible Out-cries, and no less Effusion of Blood. Mezerbal observing his Troops disordered, and giving way, with some chosen Bands renewed the Fight, and made the Victory more bloody than it would have been, had not so great a General commanded: Yet, at last, he was forced to give way, and save his Life by Flight. Baucius having pursued the Enemy, and taken the Spoil of the Field, returned Victorious, and erected lasting Trophies in the Temples of his Idols. The future Actions of Mezerbal, being the Beginning of the *Carthaginian* Dominion in *Spain*, require a new Chapter. These Things were done about the Year of the World, 3403; after the Deluge, 1747; which is 559 Years before the Birth of Christ.

### CHAP. III.

*The Actions of the Carthaginian Governors, Mezerbal, Sappho, Hanno the First, Himilco, Gisgo, Hannibal the First, Hanno the Second, Boodes, Maherbal, Hamilcar Barcinus, Asdrubal, and Hannibal the Second: The Planting of many Colonies; and Beginning of the Roman War.*

1. **M**ezeral the *Carthaginian*, though overthrown, quitted not his Pretensions: but contrived, by Policy to compass what he had failed of by open Force. He began to treat amicably with the *Lusitanian* *Turduli*;

*Turduli*; and sped so well, that they intrusted him with several Places of Consequence; whereof being once Mezerbal possessed, he began to Lord it over them. This was the Beginning of the *African* Dominion in *Spain*. Mean while, that barbarous People who inhabited along the Coast of *Setuval*, invented a new and bloody Sacrifice, which continued for many Years: The Sea cast up a Whale, of a wonderful Bigness; whereat that ignorant People being terrified, and thinking it had been some Sea-God, they killed a Young Man and a Maid, and left them by the Whale: The Tide rising, it carried away the dead Bodies, which they looked upon as an Acceptance of their Sacrifice, and therefore they every Year after repeated it, even after the Coming of Christ.

2. About the same time 15000 of the *Turduli*, seeking new Lands to inhabit, passed into the Territories between *Cerolico* and *Trancofo*; but finding it difficult to settle in that wild Country, and among a rude, that they scarce understood one another's Language at two Miles distance, they waded over the River *Coa*, and there Peopled all that Country, building several Towns. The *Barbarians* of the Coast of *Setuval* understanding that the *Turduli* wander'd to find new Seats, they passed over the *Tagus*, to possess their Lands. Those who were left behind endeavoured to oppose them, but in vain; and finding they looked not after Towns, but lived in the open Fields, they desisted. But the *Barbarians*, with the same Ease, passed on; and crossing the River *Mondego*, settled about *Viseo*, stretching by Degrees to the River *Duero*. The *Greeks* also, that inhabited *Galicia*, attempted to pass the River *Minho*; but they were repulsed by the People of the Province, with a great Slaughter on both sides. It will not be amiss to give an Hint of the Customs of those People.

3. Their Idols were, *Mars* and *Minerva*, for the obtaining of Valour and Wisdom. To them they offer'd the Right Hands, and sometimes the Bodies, of their Enemies, taken in War. In the Entrails of the Sacrifices they made their Observations of future Events. In their Feasts, an He-Goat was a great Dainty; and they did eat upon Round Tables. Whilst the Dinner lasted, some played upon Noisy Instruments; and any Guest might



might rise, and dance. Their Sports were, Wrestling, Running, and Pitching the Bar. The Young Men sung the Praises of those that died in Battel. Their Weapons were Swords and Daggers; and they gave Battel drawn up in close Battalions. Their Apparel, in Times of Peace, was long and wide; and their Hair long. The Women wore Gowns down to the Ground, and Mantles on their Shoulders, which served them for Beds. Their manner of Dancing, was, in a Ring. Marriages were made to please the Bridegroom, not the Father, or Friends: The Portion was, a few Goats: And the Chastity of the Women was such, that Adultery was scarce to be heard of. There were no Physicians among them; But the Sick were set in a publick Place, and all that passed by advised what they thought best for them. Criminals were stoned to Death: And all Passengers were obliged to cast a Stone, to compleat the Burial of the dead Body. No Money was used; but all dealt by way of Barter. They passed Rivers, and fished, in Boats made of one Tree, hollowed, like the Indian Canoes.

480. 4. The People inhabiting between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minno*, passed over into *Gallicia*; and having, in a bloody Fight, wherein the Women, as well as the Men, shewed exceeding Valour, vanquished the *Greeks* who possessed that Country, they settled amongst them. Twelve Thousand *Spaniards* were entertained by the *Carthaginians*, in their Expedition against *Gelon*, King of *Sicily*; but they, and all that Fleet, perished. The *Carthaginians* then bent their Thoughts upon the Conquest of *Spain*, whither they sent *Sappho* General; who gathering much Gold in the Mines, enriched his Country; but was forced to return against those *Africans* who demanded a certain Tribute, which, they said, Queen *Dido* paid at the Foundation of the City. He carried with him 7000 *Spanish* Foot, and 400 Horse, who did him good Service, and returned home victorious. *Sappho* being called away, the *Carthaginians* sent in his Place *Hanno* and *Himilco*. *Hanno* coasting along *Spain*, landed at Cape *St. Vincent*, where he shewed great Reverence to the Place, to win the Hearts of the People; and having discovered the Country, and traded with the Inhabitants, returned home. *Himilco* sailed forward to Cape *Espichel*, where some of his Men landing, to get

*Sappho*  
the *Car-*  
*thaginian*  
gathers  
Gold in  
*Spain*.

get fresh Provisions, were, for the most part, cut off by the savage People. Thence they continued their Voyage, and ran up the River *Tagus*; where being well received, and furnished with Pilots, they made Cape *Cascais*, and the *Berlings*. The *Carthaginians* had some Commerce with the *Turduli*, living between the Rivers *Tagus* and *Duero*; and of them had some Information about the Inland Parts. *Himilco* continued his Course to the River *Mondego*, and by Stress of Weather was forced to put into the *Vouga*, on whose Banks he found a Colony of *Greeks*; and so continued his Discovery to the River *Minho*. After sounding all the Coast of *Lusitania*, many of his Ships perished in a Storm; the rest were put into the Port *Gaya*, so shatter'd, that several of them sunk there, but the Men were saved. Part of them put to Sea again with *Himilco*, who went away to his Brother *Gisgo*, in *Andaluzia*: The rest staid among the Natives, and afterwards founded the City *Braga*, in Memory of the River *Bragada*, in *Africk*, running through their Country. Some will have this City to be first built, and take its Name of the *Gauls*, called *Braccasi*. *Hannibal* the Elder succeeded *Himilco*, in the Government of the Affairs of *Spain*. He hearing of the new *Carthaginian* Colony, resolved himself to visit the utmost Point of *Europe*, or Cape *St. Vincent*; and there founded a City, upon a convenient Bay, which was called *Hannibal's Port*.

5. After this, the *Lusitanians* and *Andaluzians* fell at Variance; for those *Turdetani* who had settled in that part of the Country, endeavouring to extend their Limits to those Plains, which afterwards took Name of the *Vandals*, were opposed by the ancient Inhabitants, and, after much Blood spilt, put to Flight, leaving behind them a rich Booty. But they seeking Revenge, gathered a Multitude of the bordering *Lusitanians*: And the *Andaluzians*, to oppose them, called *Hannibal*, with his *Carthaginians*, to their Aid. These powerful Armies encountering, fought most obstinately the whole Day, till Night parted them; leaving the Field cover'd with 80000 dead Bodies, among which was *Hannibal* himself. This so weaken'd the *Lusitanians*, that those barbarous People living along the Sea-Coast, durst take Arms against them, and overthrew the *Celtæ*, who first offered to withstand them. The *Turdetani* re-

ting

tiring out of *Andaluzia*, and joining with the *Celte*, they fell upon the victorious *Barbarians*; of whom they made such Havock, that few returned home to carry the News of their Defeat.

403. 6. The *Carthaginians*, in their Wars with the *Agri-  
gentines*, among other *Spaniards*, used the Aid of 3000  
*Lusitanians*; by whose Valour they destroyed that City.  
With the like Number they overthrew *Dionysius*, the  
Tyrant of *Sicily*: But Sickness did what the Sword had  
not done, for none of those Men returned home. In the  
mean while, *Spain* suffered by the indignation of Hea-  
ven; for the Storms and Dearth were so excessive, that  
the Wild Beasts came out of the Desarts, to the Towns,  
to look for Shelter and Provender. *Hanno* the Second  
came from *Carthage*, to govern *Andaluzia*; and landing  
at *Hannibal's Port*, in *Lusitania*, raised 7000 *Lusitanians*,  
to subdue the *Andaluzians*, who had revolted, provoked  
thereto by the Avarice of their late Governor. Soon  
after, the *Celte* of the Province of *Alemtejo*, their Terri-  
tories being thronged by the *Turdetani* who came out of  
*Andaluzia*, resolved to move farther into the Country;  
and to that purpose made a solemn Sacrifice, and swore  
ever to continue Friends. Whilst they were busie in that  
Solemnity, they descried four Sail, which made towards  
the Shoar; and understood they came from *Laconica*, in  
*Peloponnesus*, seeking some Place to settle in: The *Celte*  
received them into their Society; and they together pas-  
sing the *Tagus*, and coming to the River *Mondego*, left  
there a Company of the *Lusitanian Turdetani*, called *Ce-  
limbrii*, or *Columbri*, who there settled a Colony, which,  
of them, was called *Colimbria*, now known by the Name  
of *Condeixa the Old*: the Ruins which still are to be seen  
about it, being a Testimony of its former Grandeur.  
Yet some will have that City to have been built by *Her-  
cules Lybicus*; others, by the *Carthaginians*. The *Lusi-  
tanians* and *Greeks* going on, they founded *Eminium*,  
now *Agenda*, a great City, and a Bishop's See in the  
time of the *Romans* and *Goths*. They also were the  
Founders of *Talabrica*, now *Aveiro*; of *Lavara*, of *La-  
mea*, or *Lacoxia*, now *Lamego*; and some other Places,  
whereof there is now no Memory. The last Place  
named was built by the *Greeks* and the *Celte*, who con-  
tinuing their Progress, fell at Variance (forgetting the  
Oath made at their Setting out) in such manner, that

Great  
Dearth and  
Storms.

Several  
Towns found-  
ed.

in

in cruel Battle among themselves the greatest part of  
them perished. Such as remained spread themselves a-  
bout that Country, and some of them are supposed to  
be the Founders of *Araduca*, now *Guimaraens*.

7. The *Lusitanians* and *Africans* about the Port of *Ha-  
nibal* were at Peace, when *Boodes* came to succeed *Han-  
no* the *Carthaginian*, Commander in *Spain*. He intro-  
duced himself politickly by fair means into the Affec-  
tions of the People, and they together sacrificed to *Her-  
cules*. Having thus settled Friendship, *Boodes*, with the  
Consent of the Natives, built a Town called *Lacobriga*  
in *Algarve*, now *Lagos*. After *Boodes* came *Maherbal*,  
who so managed the People, that he became ab-  
solute over all that part, which is now the Kingdom  
of *Algarve*; and hearing of the Greatness of the City  
*Elvas*, marched thither with a good Body of Men, and  
by Kindness so won the Hearts of the Inhabitants, that  
they wholly submitted themselves unto him. *Maherbal*  
falling sick here, was told by the Diviners, that there  
was no way to recover his Health, but building a Tem-  
ple to the God *Cupid*, which he did, and recovered.  
This Temple was famous many Ages after, and the Idol  
called *Endovellicus*. The Image had its Eyes shut, a  
Heart in its Mouth, and Wings on its Feet. The Priest  
when he sacrificed to this God stripped himself na-  
ked, and then put on a loose Garment which trailed  
on the Ground, his Back and Left Arm remaining na-  
ked; then with the Right Hand he ripped up a Lamb,  
and took out his Heart, which, with the Left Hand, he  
cast into the Fire.

8. The City *Tyre* being destroyed by *Alexander* the  
Great, 15000 of the Inhabitants were saved by the *Si-  
donians* who served in his Army. Some of them by  
means of the *Carthaginians* came into *Lusitania*, where  
they founded a Town which they called *Mirtiri*, that *Mirtiri*  
is, New *Tyre*, now *Mertola*. This same Year *Gatelus*  
sailing from *Egypt* with his whole Family, is reported  
to have landed in *Portugal*, and it is supposed it was at  
the City *Porto*. He had two Sons *Iberus* and *Humecus*,  
the first of them some will have to have sailed into *Ire-  
land*, and given the Name *Hibernia* to it; these are meer  
Suppositions. Some Years after the *Greeks* between the  
Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, encreased by the coming of  
the *Celte* and *Turdetani*, finding their Multitude too

C 3

great

359.

The pro-  
gress of the  
Carthagi-  
nians in  
Spain.

318.

The City  
built by the  
Tyrians.

319.

303. great for that Province, by common Consent sent their Sons to find new Seats. Some of them settled in the Mountains of *Asturias*, and others along the Banks of the River *Erla*. The *Carthaginians* being at War with *Pyrrhus* Prince of the *Epirots*, who was possessed of *Sicily*, drove him thence by the Assistance of the *Spanish* Auxiliaries, among whom were 2000 *Lusitanian* *Celtae*.

9. *Hamilcar Barcinus*, a Man extraordinary well-qualified, was sent from *Carthage* to promote the Interest of that Commonwealth in *Spain*. His mighty Zeal in the Worship of their Idols endeared him to the People, and the more to oblige them, he resolved to marry a Woman of the Country; by her he had *Hannibal* the Second by Name, but far the greatest in Renown. His Project of marrying a *Lusitanian* to gain the Affection of the Natives, was so highly approved of by the *Carthaginians*, that returning home he was sent back to finish what he had so well begun. He brought with him his Wife, by whom he had Five Children, *Hannibal*, *Asdrubal*, *Mago*, *Hanno*, and a Daughter. After he had settled the Affairs of *Andaluzia*, he passed thence into *Lusitania*, intending to make the Seminary of Soldiers. Having gathered a mighty Army, he set forward so fortunate, that he subdued all the Country from the Streights of *Gibraltar* to the *Pyrenean* Mountains. *Hannibal*, then a Youth, was present at these Exploits, and then learnt his first Military Rudiments. In the mean while the *Vettones*, who lived betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Coa*, down as far as *Tagus*, and were ancient Enemies to the *Celtae* of the Province of *Alentejo*, and to the *Turdetani*, considering that the Flower of these People was drawn out under *Hamilcar Barcinus*, laid hold of this Opportunity, and invaded their Territories. The *Celtae* asked leave of their General to return Home to defend their Country; and he, careful of their good Fortune, marched back with them. The *Vettones* being strengthened with Supplies, waited his coming in a convenient place, with a great number of Carts loaded with Wood before them, as if they had been upon the March. *Hamilcar* admired their Resolution, but understood not the Stratagem. He caused the *Celtae* to give the Charge; but neither their Courage nor Martial Discipline availed them; for the *Vettones* setting Fire to the

*Hamilcar*  
*subdues all*  
*Spain.*

the Wood, the Oxen being frightened, ran so furiously with the flaming Carts into the midst of them that they were put into Confusion, notwithstanding their General did all that was possible to restore the Battle. In the heat of the Action he was killed, leaving a bloody Victory to the *Vettones*. *Asdrubal* his Son-in-law and *Hannibal* gathering the Relicks of the Army, fell upon the *Phocentians*, who had assisted the *Vettones*; but these coming to their Relief, the two Generals were obliged to raise a greater Power, with which they not only subdued the *Phocentians*, but put all to the Sword that were able to bear Arms. This done, he marched towards the *Vettones*, who continued to insult the *Celtae*, and sufficiently revenged their Wrongs. But the *Celtae* not so satisfied, ceased not to destroy the Enemies Country. This obliged the *Vettones* to choose one *Tagus* for their General, under whose Conduct, for some time, they put *Asdrubal* to his Shifts, till in one Battle he cut off most of their Horse. Thus *Tagus* was constrained to make Overtures of Peace, which being admitted and sworn to, *Asdrubal*, contrary to his Oath, made *Tagus*, and many of his principal Men, Prisoners. They, resolving to sell their Lives at a dear rate, put many of the *Carthaginians* to the Sword; but, in Conclusion, were all foully murdered by *Asdrubal*. He remained Governour in *Spain*, and *Hannibal* went over into *Africa*.

10. The *Romans*, envying the Fortune of the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*, by the Mediation of the People of *Marseilles*, joined in League with the *Saguntines*, and other Cities. This made *Hannibal* haste back into *Spain*, where he found his Brother-in-law *Asdrubal* was dead, *Hannibal* as he had deserved. For a Slave to that *Tagus*, whom he perfidiously slew, stabbed him as he was sacrificing, in revenge of his Masters Death. Nor did he afterwards endeavour to escape; but, being put upon the Wrack, bore all his Torments with a Countenance unmoved. *Hannibal* made it his Business to gain the Good Will not only of the *Africans*, but of the Natives. To this intent he contracted Friendship with one *Virriatus* (not he that held War so many Years against the *Romans*) who was a principal Man, or little Prince among the *Celtae*, of the Province of *Alentejo*. Next to bind the *Andaluzians* faster, he married a Wife among them, called *Himilce*,

*milce*, born at *Castulon*, now a poor Village, known by the Name of *Carlona*. By her he had his Son *Aspar*. Having thus secured his Interest, and gathered a mighty Army from all parts, his next Thought was to break the Peace made some Years before with the *Romans*. In order to it he resolved to invade *Saguntum*, a City in League with them. By the way he subdued the *Vocci*, and other Nations. From them he marched against the *Vettones*, who had killed his Father, and laying Siege to *Salamanca*, so distressed it, that the Inhabitants were forced to buy their Peace. This Accord was broke by the *Lusitanians*, who getting into the City, violated the Conditions; whereupon the Siege was again continued. At length the Besieged capitulated to depart with only their Apparel, and unarmed. They marched out, but the Women carrying the Weapons under their Garments, and delivering them to the Men, they made such use of them, that had not *Hanibal's* Army been so numerous, it had been dubious which side should have been victorious; but the Multitude overcame Valour, and most of the *Vettones* perished. All things succeeding prosperously, *Hanibal* sets down before *Saguntum* with 150000 Foot and 20000 Horses. After a Siege of Eight Months he took and destroy'd that City, which made the War between *Rome* and *Carthage* to be no more doubted of. *Hanibal* gathered supplies from all parts, and many out of *Lusitania*; *Viriatius*, that little King, going in Person with a good Body to accompany him. *Asdrubal*, *Hanibal's* Brother, drew together considerable numbers of those rude People between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*. Nor were the *Vettones*, with whom his Father and Brother-in-law had such cruel Wars; backwards, being most willingly entertained by him for their extraordinary Valour. *Balarus* a *Lusitanian* commanded a brave Body of Light Horse.

*Saguntum destroyed.*

## CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

*Hanibal's Actions in Italy, the Romans come into Spain, the Carthaginians expelled thence. The Wars between the Romans and Lusitanians from the Expiration of the Carthaginian Command, till Viriatius began to Sway.*

1. **H**anibal having subdued *Spain*, leaves his Brother *Asdrubal* there with 12000 *African* Foot and 2500 Horse; he sends 15000 *Spanish* Foot and 1200 Horse to *Carthage*, and marches himself over the *Pyreneans* with 102000 Fighting Men. Five Months he spent, in his long and tiresome march through *France*, and over the *Alps*, with the loss of 36000 Men: With the rest he enters *Lombardy*, forces the Consul *Cornelius Scipio*, who came to oppose him, to retire to *Plausencia*, and overthrows him, being joyned by *T. Sempronius*, at the River *Trebia*, killing 30000 *Romans*. This done, he passes the *Apennine*, where with watching and labour, he lost an Eye, and coming to the Lake *Trasimenus*, again Defeats the *Roman* Army under the Consuls *C. Servilius*, and *C. Flaminius*. *Quintus Fabius* sent against him with a fresh Army, tired him without Fighting; next came the Consuls *Emilius Paulus*, and *Terentius Varro*, who through the rashness of the latter, adventuring to give Battle, were totally discomfited with the loss of 50000 of their Men.

*Hanibal marches to Italy.*

216.

2. Whilst *Hanibal* victoriously traversed the best part of *Italy*, *Gneius Scipio* was sent from *Rome* into *Spain*, with him *Asdrubal* *Hanibal's* Brother had several Conflicts, and after some fortunate Successes, was forsaken by Fortune, and forced to retire into *Lusitania* to raise new Forces. there he joyned in League with a King called *Mandonius*, with whose assistance he checked the Progress of *Scipio*. Yet *Asdrubal* marching with an Army towards *Italy*, was overthrown by him, and returning again to *Lusitania*, gathered fresh Forces, with this Power he not only curbed the *Romans*, but having killed the two *Scipio's*, *Cornelius* and *Gneius*, took most of the

*The Romans come into Spain.*



the Roman Garrisons in *Catalonia* and *Andaluzia*. Besides, the Calamities of the War, *Spain* laboured under the Miseries of Plague and Famine, which principally raged in *Lusitania*: After which ensued a general Earth-quake throughout *Europe*, on the same day the Battle at the Lake *Thrasimenus* was fought, which tho' so violent, that it ruined many Towns, was not felt by the two Armies that were engaged.

The Carthaginians expelled by the Romans.

3. Such was the posture of Affairs in *Spain*, when *Claudius Nero* was sent thither from *Rome*, and after him *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, who was very successful against the Carthaginians. *Asdrubal* marched with a great power out of *Portugal*, to retrieve those losses at such time as *Massinissa* landed with a number of *Numidian* Horse, and some Elephants to joyn him; all this mighty Multitude was overthrown by the Fortune and Valour of *Scipio*. *Asdrubal* thus broke, resolved to march into *Italy*, to the assistance of his Brother *Hanibal*, leaving the Command in *Spain* to the other *Asdrubal*, the Son of *Gisco*, who as he was directed, retired with the Carthaginian Forces into *Lusitania*, and having made up a body, he broke into *Andaluzia*, but was there discomfited by *Marcus Sillanus Scipio's* Lieutenant. *Mago* understanding that *Asdrubal* his Brother, with the whole Army he led into *Italy*, had been cut off by the Consuls *Claudius Nero*, and *Livius Salinator*, and despairing of maintaining the War in *Spain*, shipped himself with his Forces at *Cadiz*, and having done much harm along the *Ligurian* shore, returned to *Carthage*: *Scipio* now in *Africk*, threatening the City *Carthage*, *Hanibal* was called home to defend his Country; there having in vain treated of Peace, he was in Battle overthrown, and flying to *Prusias* King of *Bithinia*, there Poisoned himself, fearing to be delivered up to the Romans.

196. Spain divided by the Romans.

4. When the Africans had for 300 Years lorded it in *Spain*, they were at length expelled thence and out of *Italy* by the Romans. The Senate divided *Spain* into two Provinces under as many Pretors, calling them *Citerior* and *Uterior*; the first lying between the River *Ebro* and the *Pyrenean* Mountains, the latter extending from that River to the Ocean. Several of these Pretors being unsuccessful, the Consul *Marcus Porcius Cato* was sent over with a Consular Army; he gained much among the *Lusitanians* by his Valour and Conduct, as

still

still appears by several Inscriptions on Stone, bearing his Name. *Scipio Nasica* succeeded him in the Command, and had it prolonged to him after the Expiration of his time, with the Title of Propretor: In his time the *Celtiberi* entering into Arms, persuaded the *Lusitanians* to give the Romans a Diversion in Invading their Province, and by that means forcing them to divide their Forces. *Nasica* marched first against the *Lusitanians*, whom overtaking loaded with Booty, and tired with long Marches, after a most bloody Fight, he discomfited, taking 134 of their Colours: The next year came into *Spain*, *Marcus Fulvius* as Pretor, who twice Defeated the *Lusitanian Vectones*; Encouraged with these Victories, he laid Siege to *Toledo*, where the *Vectones* assailing him, were again after a doubtful Fight overthrown. *Lucius Emilius Paulus* being come Propretor into *Spain*, the Noise of Arms began to be heard in *Portugal*; *Paulus* marching against the *Basseterani* on a sudden, found the *Lusitanians* upon him; the Battle was furious, insomuch, that had the Day lasted, none of the Romans had escaped to carry the News. But *Paulus* retiring in the Night, was again the next day assaulted by the victorious Enemy, who pursued him in great disorder, which proved his good Fortune; for he slew of them 20000, and by this Action, humbled the *Lusitanians*, so that they stirred not in two Years. After which time, on a sudden, they broke out, bearing down all that owned the Roman Government, particularly in *Andaluzia*, where the City *Asta Regia*, for fear of their power, joyned with them. Here *Caius Catinius* gave the *Lusitanians* Battle and routed them, but attempting to Scale the Walls of *Asta*, was himself killed, and the *Lusitanians* joyning with the *Celtiberi*, appeared again stronger in the Field than before.

5. *Caius Culpurnius Piso*, the Pretor, hearing of this great Power, sent to the other Pretor *Lucius Quincius Crispinus*, with all possible speed to joyn him, which he accordingly performed. Being joyned, they marched into the Province of *Carpentania*, which is about *Toledo*, where after several Skirmishes, the *Spaniards* cut off certain Roman Forragers, which the Pretors perceiving, sent speedy succour to them, and by this means, both parties still increasing, at last both Armies joyned Battle, wherein the Romans were put to Flight and lost

5000 Men.

The Romans defeated by the Spaniards.

5000 Men. Had the Spaniards known how to make use of their Victory, as well as how to obtain it, the Romans might have been expelled Spain; but they, proud of their Success, spent the time in Sports: In the mean while the Pretors gathered their dispersed Forces, and engaged the Spaniards near the River Tagus, gave them such a fatal Overthrow, that 30000 of them were put to the Sword; the Pretors returning to Rome, Triumphed over Lusitania. The Pretorships of Aulus Terentius Varro, and Publius Sempronius Longus, and of Publius Manlius, and Quintus Fulvius Flaccus were not very remarkable; at length Lucius Postumius, and Tiberius Sempronius Longus came into Spain. The first spent two years in War with the Lusitanians, sometimes Victorious, and sometimes Worsted: He understanding that the Vauci joined in League with the Interamnenses, to equal the Romans, with wonderful celerity, entred Lusitania, where finding the Enemy ready to march, he Entrenched: Then he sent out a Squadron of Horse to Skirmish with the Enemy, who received them so hotly, that the Pretor himself coming out to their relief, he was glad to secure himself in his Camp, making a disorderly retreat. Night coming on hindred any further Action, but with the day, Postumius assailing the Lusitanians, put them to flight, 35000 of them being killed this and the day before.

174.

6. The Fortune of Rome and Lusitania continued various, till Marcus Manilius came Prætor; and the Lusitanians, chiefly stirred up by the Bracarenses, began again to make head. These chose for their General one of their Citizens, whom one Author calls *Africanus*; and another, *Apimanus*. Under his Conduct they gathered, to a mighty Number; and breaking in to the Roman Provinces, they carried all before them. Manilius advanced out of Andalusia, to meet the Enemy, then loaded with Booty; which Apimanus considering would be a great Obstacle towards obtaining the Victory, he caused it to be burnt; reserving nothing but the Arms of his Soldiers, and Provision for four Days. The Lusitanians enraged at this Loss of their Plunder, so desperately charged Manilius, that they put him to flight, with the Loss of the greatest part of his Army. Calpurnius Piso being sent from Rome, to retrieve this Disgrace, he increased it with his own De-

152.  
The Roman  
twice  
defeated.

Defeat, and the Loss of 6000 Romans. This Victory made the Lusitanians so absolute Masters of the Field, that they wasted all the Country, from the River Guadiana, to the Streights of Gibraltar; and they persuaded the *Vettones* of *Estremadura* to join in League with them. Having subdued all the open Country, they next applied themselves to the Taking of Strong Holds, and leaving Garrisons in them, in Imitation of the Romans. Apimanus assailing the Town of *Blastofenizes*, was killed; and the Army wanting such a General, broke up; each Company taking its own Way home.

7. Apimanus being slain, as is before said, the Lusitanians chose for their General one *Cesaro*, a Man capable of so great a Trust. He acquitted himself well of it, recruiting the Army with which his Predecessor had been so often victorious, and invading the Roman Territories; where he raised such an Alarm, that the Senate of Rome, in great Haste, sent away the Consul, *Quintus Fulvius Nobilior*, with a great Army, to subdue the *Celiberi*, and particularly the *Numantians*, whom they began to grow jealous of. With *Fulvius*, came *Lucius Mummius*, as Prætor of *Hispania Ulterior*. In his Army were 15000 Romans, with whom he marched, thinking to oppress *Cesaro*, loaded with the Booty of *Andalusia*. *Cesaro*, to save his Prey, retired towards *Lusitania*. *Mummius*, who was still at his Heels, at length overtook him at the Ford of *Guadiana*; and he ordering the Prey, with some Troops of Light-Horse, to be conducted over the River, advanced with another Body to *Vilaviciosa*, and there kept the Prætor in play till they that had carried off the Booty returned: Then he drew out into the Plain, and there began a bloody Battel; but the Lusitanians, not able to bear the Force of the Romans, were put to flight; *Mummius* pursuing them with a mighty bloody Slaughter. *Cesaro* played all the Part of a bold Soldier, and a prudent General; sometimes facing his Enemy, and at other times calling upon his Men: At length, what with Intreaties, and what with Threats, having formed a Body, he charged the Romans, then dispersed, and out of Order, with such Gallantry that they were drove back to their Camp, with the Loss of 5000 Men. The Lusitanians taking Heart, and again gathering Strength, assaulted their

Quintus  
Fulvius  
overthrows  
the Spaniards.

The Spaniards  
return and  
take the  
Consul.

their Trenches, and beat them thence, killing 5000 more of them, but not without the Loss of 10000 of their own Men. *Casaro* returned to *Lusitania*, victorious; and *Mummius*, with 5000 Men, retired to an Eminence, strong by Nature. Thence his Men came down, and defeated some Parties of *Lusitanians*, who dragged the Colours they had taken in their fight; and several Colours, and part of the Booty was recovered. *Casaro* returned, and though he met with great Opposition, obliged the Enemy to ascend the Mountain for Safety. Then *Mummius* vowed, if he were victorious, to build a Temple in that Place to *Proserpina*; and charging the *Lusitanians*, discomfited them, killing their General *Casaro*. In pursuance of his Vow, he there built a Temple to *Proserpina*, which is supposed to have stood near the new Church of St. James the Apostle, by *Villaviciosa*, if it be not the same.

151.

8. Whilst *Mummius* was busie in building his Temple, the *Lusitanians*, nothing dismayed, chose for their General a Citizen of *Lisbon*, called *Canchenus*. He immediately marched to the City *Cunesturgi*, (situate near the Place where the Town of *Niebla* now stands) where was a Roman Garrison; and in a few Days he made himself Master of it, putting many to the Sword, and exercising great Cruelty. Proud with this Success, *Canchenus* marched to the River *Guadalquivir*, without meeting any Opposition; and thence, in like manner, to *Gibraltar*, plundering all the Country. Here the Army was divided into two Parts, one designed to make a Conquest in *Mauritania*; the other, to expel the Romans out of *Andaluzia*. Whilst the Former were employed in building Vessels to carry them over the Streights, the Latter marched into the Province: And being come to the City *Oralis*, (supposed to be *Origuela*, among the *Bastetani*, they found the Enemy encamped, and well fortified, before the Town. The Army being fate down before them, many of the Forces marched out to plunder the neighbouring Villages. *Mummius* laying hold of this Opportunity, fell upon them, laden with Booty, and killed about 15000 of them; the rest fled into *Lusitania*, robbing the open Towns as they went. The *Lusitanians*, who inhabited that part of *Estremadura* where the *Tagus* runs into *Portugal*, ravaged all the Lands of *Castile*: But *Mummius*, with

with his usual Celerity, coming upon them, and finding them dispersed, made a mighty Slaughter of them, and so ended his Prætorship with Honour. *Marcus Atilius* came from *Rome*, to command in *Lusitania*, which he found in Arms, and the neighbouring Provinces cruelly invaded. *Atilius* gave them Battel, and, though they behaved themselves with much Bravery, the Romans had the Victory. *Atilius* then laid Siege to the City *Ostraze*; and taking it by Assault, left no Creature alive that was in it: Nay, the very Stones he so dispersed, that nothing remains of that City, but the Name. This Desolation brought the *Lusitanians* to treat of Peace; and, upon tolerable Conditions, they submitted themselves to the Romans. Many others also followed their Example.

150.

*Atilius* behaved themselves with much Bravery, the Romans gain over them.

9. This Peace was not lasting; for the *Vettones* perceiving that *Atilius* was far from them, they so managed the Affair, that they prevailed with the *Lusitanians* who lived about *Ostraze* to violate the League so lately made. Winter hinder'd *Atilius* from putting a Stop to their Proceedings; and *Sergius Galba*, his Successor, was now come into *Spain*: He, jealous of the Power of the *Lusitanians*, resolved upon a piece of Treachery, which laid an Eternal Blot upon the Honour of *Rome*. But whilst the Winter passes, let us see what was done by the other half of *Canchenus's* Army, left at *Gibraltar*, to pass over into *Africk*. Their first Work was, to pillage and ransack all the open Country; then laying Siege to *Tangier*, they soon became Masters of it; but finding little to satisfy their Avarice, they embarked again, and returned over into *Spain*. At that time the Consul *Lucullus* was, with his Army, among the *Turdetani*, who inhabited along the Coast of the Ocean, from *Guadiana* to *Sevill*. He immediately marched against them, and killing some, the rest retired to a strong Hill; which the Consul finding to be inaccessible, he laid Siege to them, and they began to be pinched with Hunger: Therefore, in Despair, they came down with such Fury, that they broke through the Roman Army, but left many Prisoners behind. *Lucullus*, after this, pierced into *Lusitania*, without meeting any Opposition, it being then Winter, when the Romans used not to wage War.

Actions of the *Lusitanians* in *Africk*.

Eight thousand Spaniards slain by *Mummius*.

Galba governs the Province. 10. *Sergius Galba*, the Prætor, having taken a rich Booty, returned to *Andaluzia*. No sooner did the Spring begin to appear, but the *Lusitanians*, desirous of Revenge, broke into the Roman Province, obliging the Prætor to take the Field sooner than he had designed. He thought to have surprized them, but they received him in good Order, and a bloody Battel ensued, in which the *Lusitanians* were put to the Rout; *Galba* pursuing them with more Fury than Discretion: They that fled, observing his Army disordered, taking the Advantage, faced about with such Courage and Fortitude, that the victorious Romans were cut down, only the Prætor, with a few Horse, escaping. *Galba* gathering 20000 Men, and perceiving the Enemy followed their Husbandry in great Security, he passed the River *Guadiana*, near *Ayamonte*, and brought his Army amongst the *Turdetani* of *Algarve*, burning all before him. The People being unprovided sued for Peace; which *Galba*, with a treacherous Design, seemed to approve of; promising to admit of them as Friends, and to make an equal Distribution of Lands among them: To which purpose they were all appointed three several Places where to meet him, that each Man might receive his Proportion. Accordingly they met in three Valleys, not far distant from one another, but covered by the Mountains that encompassed them. Here *Galba*, with fair Speeches, perswaded them first to lay down their Arms; which done as was directed, and his Army divided into three parts also, he caused each of them to fall upon one of those Parties of *Lusitanians*; who being before disarmed, were slaughter'd like Sheep, to the Number of 9000. Amongst the few that escaped was *Viriatius*, afterwards the Terror of the Romans; in killing whom, *Galba* had done his Country more Service, than in the Slaughter of all the rest.

## CHAP. V.

*The Exploits of the Great Viriatius, his several Victories over the Romans, with his last Actions, Death, and place of Burial.*

1. **T**HE Renowned *Viriatius*, who as has been said, escap'd from the Massacre, committed by *Galba* in the three Vallies, was a *Lusitanian* without the mixture of any other Nation. Some Authors say, he was a common Robber, others will have him a *Car-Viriatius* rier, others a Sheperd, and lastly, others say, he went *his Origina* through all these mean Employments. Whatsoever *na-* he was before, at the time that *Galba* offered Peace to the *Lusitanians*, and Murdered so many in Cold Blood, he was one of them that were willing to hearken to his Proposals, and made his escape from the Slaughter. His mind burning with desire of Revenge, as soon as he heard that *Galba* was departed, he returned to the place of the Massacre, where causing his Companions to thrust their Hands into the yet fresh wounds of some Maidens, they swore by their Souls, not to desist from seeking Revenge as long as they were able to bear Arms. This done, *Viriatius* ranging throughout *Lusitania*, stirred up the People, raised a good Body of Men, and breaking into *Carpertania* destroy'd all as he went, and returned home with a rich Booty. Then he caused his followers to reiterate the Oath they had taken, Sacrificing one of their Prisoners, and a Horse; and so every Man passing by, thrust his Hand into the Belly of each Sacrifice, vowing to do the like to the Roman Army.

2. It was now the beginning of the Year, 148 before the coming of Christ, 3114 from the Creation, and 2281 from the Deluge, when the Pretor *Marcus Verilius*, a Man of known Valour, came to suppress the Tumults in *Lusitania*. *Viriatius* with 10000 Fighting Men was entering *Andaluzia* rather as every Mans Companion, than Commander, as not daring to chastise them; with his Example and good Words, endeavour'd to drawback those that scattered to Plunder; but his Men not subject to Command, could not be contained



He is mor- he fell upon them, and having killed a great number, easily put the rest to flight. *Viriatius* gathering the remains of his scattered Forces, fled to a City near, and there provided to oppose the Enemy: It was not long before the *Romans* came and assaulted the City, but finding they had sustained great loss, the Pretor resolved to carry it by a long Siege: So far had he prevailed, that some principal Men among the Besieged began to treat of a Surrender, without consulting *Viriatius*, for as yet, they owned him not for their Superiour. *Viriatius* understanding there was such a design, but not who were the Managers of it, having in a raging Posture ran about, and in that manner gathered the Multitude to him, so efficaciously perswaded them to stand upon their Defence, and to have no Faith in the *Romans*, that they lifted him upon their Shoulders, and carrying him about the Walls, with loud cries, Proclaimed him their General.

3. The next day after he was proclaimed General, *Viriatius* drew out 1000 Horse, which was all he had, and facing the *Romans* made show as if he designed to break through them, which *Vetilius* the Pretor perceiving, he kept his Men in a readiness to receive him. But *Viriatius's* design being only to amuze the Enemy, whilst his Foot escaped out of the City, he continued in the same Posture the greatest part of the day. At length understanding there was no Man left in the City, all his Foot being got into the Mountains, he stood the Enemies Charge, and kept them in play till Night, when through by-ways he hasted to the City *Tribola*, whether he had sent his Foot. This City stood upon the Coast between the Mouth of *Guadiana* and *Gibraltar*, whence may be inferred that the other whence he came, was not far off. *Vetilius* in the Morning followed *Viriatius*, who having by the way increased his Forces, lay in wait on the Mountains that hang over a Valley, into which there were two narrow Passes, capable of only three Horsemen going in abreast: Into this place the *Romans* entred without fear, and turning their Horses to grass, took themselves to their rest. *Viriatius* giving the Sign to his Men to fall on, the *Romans* on a sudden found themselves beset on all sides, and being un-

armed

armed, were put to the Sword without Mercy. *A-Vetilius* among them dyed the Pretor; his Questor with such as escaped the Slaughter, and some *Andaluzians*, thinking to Revenge this Disgrace, engaging with *Viriatius*, lost 10000 Men. The next Year, *Viriatius* with Fire and Sword ranged all *Carpentania* as far as *Toledo*, without meeting any Opposition. Thus was he employed when *Caius Plaucius* the Roman General, who came to Command in *Lusitania* with 10000 Foot, and 1300 Horse, thought to have surprized him and his Men, being now mostly dispersed about in burning the Country. *Viriatius* tho weak, kept the *Romans* in play still retiring till getting into the Mountains, on a sudden they had lost him. *Plaucius* sent 4000 Men to pursue and impede his March till he could come up with the rest of the Army; but he turning upon them, cut them all off before the Pretor could Relieve them, and having gained the Ford of *Tagus*, speedily passed over it, and returned into *Lusitania*. *Viriatius* having gathered Strength, encamped in a strong place, now called *Pomares*, near *Evora*, whither *Plaucius* followed him, and was so received, that his whole Army turned their Backs. The Pretor fought with much Brave-*Viriatius* ry, and with his Example brought back his Men, but all in vain, for they were again put to flight, and *Plaucius* himself, with difficulty escaped.

4. Now was *Viriatius* master of the Field, ranging about *Spain*, and the *Romans* shut up in their Garisons, when *Claudius Unimanus*, a most expert Captain, was sent by the Senate to command in *Lusitania*: *Viriatius* Marching with a strong Body of *Lusitanians*, the Pretor with a mighty Army met him, but soon found how little confidence was to be placed in a Heartless Multitude, for in the Field of *Ourique* he was overthrown, scarce any of his Army escaping Death or Bondage. This done, *Viriatius* returned Victorious into *Lusitania*. In the mean while *Unimanus* sent to *Cajus Nigidius*, the Pretor of the other Province, to give the Enemy a diversion. He entred the Territory of *Riba de Coa*, and marched along the River destroying all before him. *Viriatius* with all speed made towards him, and overtook him near to the City *Viseo*; where *Nigidius* in a plain, strongly intrenched himself. There *Viriatius* kept him besieged till Hunger forcing him to break

Nigidius break out, he with Difficulty escaped, having lost the best part of his Army, and all his Ensigns. About 1000 of those that fled, gathering together, began to plunder the Villages, as they passed; and meeting 300 *Lusitanians*, laden with Booty, fell upon them; But they were so hotly received, that having lost 300 of their Men, and killed but 70 of the Enemy, they were glad to suffer the rest to march off with their Plunder. Another Body of the *Romans*, having taken a rich Booty, led 500 Captives away, the one half whereof were Women, who observing that no great Regard was had of them, only their Hands bound behind, in the dead time of the Night they unbound one another, and afterwards the Men; then seizing the Arms of the *Romans*, buried in Sleep, put most of them to the Sword before they waked; only a few escaped by the Favour of the Night. Next Morning the Victors put the Armour of the *Romans* upon their Women. *Ormia*, a modest *Lusitanian* Woman, being taken by another Party, and long courted by her Keeper to consent to his Lust, she at length seemingly complied; wherewith being delighted, he put himself into her Power; so that she waiting her Opportunity, when he slept, with his own Sword cut off his Head, and carried away both to her Husband, as a Token that she had preserved her Chastity: Which done, not so content, she killed herself before his Face.

145. 5. *Caius Lelius*, a Man of great Valour, came Praetor into Spain; but Authors do not mention any Success he had against *Viriatius*: Perhaps it was thought enough that he lost nothing. Two Years after, *Fabius Emilianus* was sent, with a Consular Army of 18000 Men, to put an End to the War. *Viriatius*, hearing of his coming into *Andaluzia*, broke into the Roman Province, doing greater Harm than before, and took two Cities, into which he put Garrisons. *Fabius*, that the Gods might be favourable to his Undertakings, went to offer Sacrifice in the Temple of *Hercules*, at *Cadiz*; strictly charging his Officers, upon no Account to stir out of the Camp before his Return. The next Day *Viriatius* appeared before the Roman Army, at such time as certain Foragers were returning, with a Guard; of whom he cut off the greatest part: A good Body of Horse issuing out of the Camp, to relieve their Com-

nions,

nions, drove back the *Lusitanians* to their Main Body; but they were there so fiercely charged, that few of them returned back. *Fabius* coming from his Sacrifice, stormed that his Orders had been disobeyed. Some Days after, about Midnight, he marched, in great Silence, two Miles forwards, and surprizing the *Lusitanian* Camp, obliged *Viriatius* confusedly to retire to *Vecor*, a strong Place; where not thinking it safe to attack him, he marched away to recover the two Cities lately garrison'd by the *Lusitanians*. The Inhabitants of the Province between *Duero* and *Minho* took up Arms against those of *Galicia*: *Lucius Hostilius Mancinus*, the Consul, *Emilianus's* Colleague, fearing lest they should invade the *Vaccei* and *Celtiberi*, came so suddenly upon them, that he, without any Difficulty, overthrew 30000 of them, killing many, and putting the rest to flight. *Popilius* succeeded *Emilianus* in the Government of *Lusitania*, when *Viriatius* finding himself weak, made some Overtures of Peace deceitfully, for at the same time he stirred up the People about *Numantia* to make War; and he, in the Territories of *Riba de Coa*, committed all manner of Cruelties upon the *Romans*, even upon those that submitted themselves to him. *Popilius* hastening to their Relief, was in a pitch'd Battel shamefully put to flight, with the Loss of the best of his Army.

6. *Viriatius* was far enter'd into *Castile*; but understanding that the new Praetor, *Quintus Pompeius*, was marching towards *Lusitania*, he turned back to defend his own Country. The two Armies met near *Evora*, where a bloody Battel was fought; *Pompey* obtained the Victory, and *Viriatius* fled to the Mountain of *Venus*: Here he gathered new Strength; and encouraging the *Ticii*, *Vaccei* and *Beli*, who followed him, he marched again to meet the *Romans*, whom he forced to take Shelter in their Trenches, leaving behind them 27 Ensigns, and 4000 Men slain, whereof 500 were Horse. The Praetor thus shut up within his Works, *Viriatius* enter'd *Andaluzia*, and summoned *Urica*, which was kept by a strong Roman Garrison, who answered him with Scorn, calling him Robber. He, the better to compass his Revenge, marched away in great haste, as if he had fled, certain Troops of Horse, sent from the City, pursuing him in the Rear; whom he, without halting, repulsed; and so they returned to their Gar-

D 3

for:

son: But in the Dead of the Night he marched back; and crossing several Valleys, distant from the City, he left his Foot in an Ambuscade, himself, with the Horse, appearing before the City, so that many Morasses lay betwixt him and the Walls, which were impassable to any that knew them not as well as he. At Break of Day, his Party being decied from the Walls, they were supposed to be some Straglers of the *Lusitanian* Army, and therefore the Garrison sallied out upon them: *Viriatu*s at first withdrawing, as if he had fled, drew them into the Marshes, where, when they were fast stuck, he faced about, and put them all to the Sword. Those of *Urica*, after this Action, expelled the *Roman* Garrison, and received one of the *Lusitanians*. *Viriatu*s moving thence, towards the *Streights* of *Gibraltar*, wasted the Territories of the *Bastetani*, *Pompey* not offering to oppose him.

140. 7. The Consul, *Quintus Fabius Maximus Servilianus*, was sent from *Rome*, with an Army of 20000 Men, to prosecute this War; and *Micipsa*, the *African* King, came to his Aid, with 10 Elephants, and 300 *Numidian* Horse. With this Force he marched to *Urica*, where *Viriatu*s lay; who, after some Skirmishes, his Provisions failing, retired into *Lusitania*, to secure the Harvest. In the mean while, a good Body of his Men, commanded by two noted Captains, called *Curius* and *Apuleyus*, broke into *Andaluzia*. The Consul, with his whole Army, marched towards them; and for the more Expedition, left his Baggage behind him, with a small Guard. The *Lusitanians* informed thereof, took another Way; and with a Compass, deceiving the Consul, plunder'd his Baggage. He turning suddenly upon them, whilst they were busie in robbing a Convoy of Provisions, put them to flight, killing *Curius*, their Captain, and recovering the Booty. Thence the Consul moving, he took five Towns, Garrison'd by the *Lusitanians*, upon Articles, which he performed not, turning them over to the Fury of his Soldiers. *Viriatu*s hastened to revenge this Breach of Faith; and being come in sight of the Consul, he drew up his Foot in a Square Battel; with his Horse on both Wings, but far advanced before the Foot, whom he ordered not to stir till they saw how the Horse behaved themselves against the Elephants. They charged the *Roman* Horse, forcing

Fabius  
Maximus  
defeats the  
Spanish  
Army, and  
kills Cu-  
rius, their  
General.

forcing them to retire to their Elephants; at the sight of which, the *Spanish* Horse disorderly fled, the Enemy fiercely pursuing: The Foot drew back in good Order; and *Viriatu*s perceiving the Enemy's Battel broke in the Pursuit, rallying his Cavalry, he gave such a Charge, that *Servilianus*, with his Elephants, fled, leaving 6000 Men dead. Soon after this, *Servilianus* pursuing a *Lusitanian* Robber, called *Corroba*, besieged him in a strong Place, where Hunger forced him to surrender, upon Promise not only of Life, but that his Men should march off with their Arms; yet so, as to swear, never more to employ them against the *Romans*. But the Consul, unmindful of his Promise, when he had all the Troop of Robbers, consisting of 500 Men, in his Power, cut off all their Right Hands, except the Captain's.

8. Spring coming on, all *Lusitania* was full of Warlike Preparations. *Viriatu*s marched against the Consul, who had besieged the City of *Erisfana*; and with wonderful Cunning, made his Way into it; where having well encouraged the Defendants, he sallied out so furiously, that *Servilianus* was glad to retire to a Place of Advantage. Here he was so straiten'd, that he made *Viriatu*s Proposals of Peace, which were agreed upon, and *Viriatu*s allowed a Friend of the People of *Rome*. This done, the Armies parted, one into *Andaluzia*, the other into *Lusitania*. One of those who approved of the Peace concluded, was *Quintus Servilius Cypio*, the Consul's Brother; yet afterwards considering how dishonourable it was to *Rome*, he openly blamed his Brother, and by that Means obtained the Consulship, and a numerous Army, to better the Affairs of the *Romans* in *Lusitania*. *Cypio* kept his Designs so private, that the *Lusitanians* thought of nothing but their Country-Affairs. They were awaken'd by the News brought, that the Consul had, by Storm, taken the City of *Astis*, not far from *Sevil*. *Viriatu*s was then at *Valencia*, who immediately marched with some Troops towards *Lusitania*. By the Way he reduced *Segorbe*, which had revolted; when *Cypio* appeared with a mighty Army: He finding himself too weak for so powerful an Army, with his Horse amused them, till his Foot were got into the Mountains. *Cypio* pursued him, to cut off his Retreat into *Portugal*. He, as he fled into the Heart of

139.  
Another  
Defeat of  
the Ro-  
mans.

*Viriatu*s  
makes  
Peace with  
the Ro-  
mans.

The Peace  
broken.

Viriatus  
killed by  
Treachery.

Spain, used excessive Cruelty to all that bore the Roman Name: But finding this turned not to Account, he sent an Ambassador to *Cepio*, to put him in mind of the Peace, so solemnly, and so lately concluded. The Consul having heard the Ambassadors, and founded their Dispositions, with mighty Promises prevailed upon them to murder *Viriatus*. Their Names were, *Di- Etaleon*, *Minurus* and *Aulus*; all three Captains of Note among the *Lusitanians*. These three having undertaken this base Action, returned, and for some time kept *Viriatus* in hand with the Hopes of Peace, till, waiting their Opportunity, in the Dead of the Night, they enter'd his Tent, and slew him as he lay asleep. Thence they fled, to give the Consul an Account of what they had done, whose Countenance they found altered; as it generally happens to Traytors, after they have committed the Treason.

His Fun-  
eral-Pomp.

9. In the Morning, the *Lusitanians* missing their General, they went into his Tent, where finding him dead, the whole Camp was filled with Lamentation; and in Revenge of his Death, they put all the Roman Prisoners to the Sword. To perform his Funeral-Rites with all imaginable Pomp, in the midst of the Field, they raised a vast Pile of Timber, leaving a Place for the Body. The Top of the Pile was adorned with Ensigns, and other Trophies of Arms. Then their Idolatrous Priest going up to the Top, called upon the Ghost of *Viriatus*; and killing some Captives, with their Blood sprinkled the Arms; which done, he came down, and set fire to the Pile, which in a Moment consumed the Body. The Funeral-Rites thus performed, the Army chose one *Tantalus* for their General; but he wanting the Fortune and Conduct of *Viriatus*, could not so much as lead back his People into their own Country. *Servilius*, to gain the Reputation of a merciful Conqueror, was content that the *Lusitanians*, delivering up their Arms, should be dispersed into several Parts. *Viriatus*, as to his Person, was of a large Stature, strong Limbs, curled Hair, large Eyes broad Eye-brows, a stern Countenance, and a large hooked Nose. As to his Qualities, he was modest, liberal, prudent, of a ready Wit, and quick of Invention. Some of *Viriatus's* Soldiers gathering up his Ashes, brought them back into his own Country, and buried them, together with his

his Sword. In the time of King *John* the III. who reigned from the Year 1521 till 1557. in the Territory of *Belas*, two Leagues from *Lisbon*, and in the Lands of *Petr Machado Carregueyro*, in turning up certain old Ruins, was found a Stone Chest with this Inscription; *Hic Jacet Viriatus Lusitanus Dux*. In it was found a Sword, on which certain Characters were Engraven: The Prince and many other persons of Note saw it, and *Machado* offering to sell the Sword, they would give nothing for it, so he gave it to a Friend of his of the Island *Madera*, and by that means it was lost. The Chest was broke in pieces, and no part of it remains.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Actions of the Lusitanians after the Death of Viriatus, from the Year 133. before Christ till the Year 80. when Sertorius takes upon him the Command, with his Exploits till the Year 70.*

1. **T**HE *Lusitanians* not losing their Courage, 130. though they had lost their General, broke out *Tantalus* again under their new Commander *Tantalus*, but not *Commands* with the same Fortune as before, being easily suppressed by the Consul *Decius Junius Brutus*, who reduced *the Lusitanians* then to sue for Peace. It was granted upon tolerable Conditions, one whereof was, that he should assign them Lands to live upon: These Lands were along the delightful Southern Coast, upon the River *Turia*, now *Guadalquivir*, where they built the most famous City *Valencia*; the foundation whereof is therefore assigned to *Brutus* the Consul. This Army thus Disbanded, *Brutus* entred *Lusitania*, without meeting any opposition, till he came to *Eburobricium*, a City seated on the Sea-coast near to which now stands the Town of *Alfayeyran*; the Inhabitants of this place adventured to come out a League from their Walls, and give the Consul Battle. He in the heat of the Fight, vowed he would there build a Temple to *Neptune*, if he obtained



ed the Victory; and having without much difficulty overthrown his Enemy, performed his Vow: He laid Siege to the City, and soon was Master of it.

2. The next Year, *Brutus* with his victorious Army, passed over the rapid River *Ducro*, and coming unexpectedly upon the People that inhabited between that River and *Minho*, made a great slaughter of them, which obliged such as could escape to fly to the Mountains. Thence in Parties they came down, and cut off many of his Men, nay, the very Women showed such Valour, that the Consul was obliged to kill a great number of them; but perceiving the harm was done him from the Mountains, he fell to Burning all the plain Country, with such Fury, that the People were glad to beg a Peace, which was easily granted: Thus the Consul was at leisure to Besiege the City *Labrica*, the Inhabitants whereof immediately submitted, but no sooner had he turned his back, than they began to fortify themselves, and falling upon such *Romans*, as were left in their Neighbourhood, cut them in pieces. This News being carried to *Brutus*, he turned back, and encompassing the City, forced the Inhabitants to come out without Arms into the open Field; there taking them into the middle of his Army, and having severely reproved them for their Perfidiousness, when they expected nothing but present Death, he ordered them to return again to their City, and be more faithful for the future. From that time forward they continued in Subjection, but could not be brought to serve against their own Country.

125.

3. The Roman Army advanced to *Braga* plundering the Country, but the Citizens sallying out in a good Body, surprized and carried away a Convoy of Provisions that was going to the Camp. *Brutus*, in revenge, destroyed all before him, and the *Bracarenses* more offended then terrified, marched six Miles out of the City to give him Battle; the Women here played the part of most valiant Soldiers, and after the Fight had long stood doubtful, the *Romans* were put to flight: The *Bracarenses* over-secure in their Victory, lay about the Fields without any Watch, which *Brutus* imagining, having rally'd his Forces, he came upon them, and having well revenged his Disgrace with the Death of many, the rest fled to the Shelter of their Walls. He

He destroys  
the Country  
about *Bra-*  
*ga*.

assaults

assaults the City which the Inhabitants disdain, the Men sallied out, leaving the Women to guard the Walls; but they resolving not to be out-done by the Men, rushed out after them, and so together repulsed the *Romans* to their Trenches. This made the Consul give over the Attack, and changing his manner of proceeding, wasted all the Country about; in this manner the Consul came to the River *Lina*, formerly called *Lethe*. It was the common Opinion, that those who passed it, forgot their Countries; for which reason, *Brutus* his Soldiers could not be persuaded to enter the Ford. He to undeceive them, snatching an Ensign from the Bearer, set Spurs to his Horse and passed over; then calling to his Soldiers, told them many things of *Rome*, to convince them he had not forgot it, and by this means he persuaded them to venture over the River. The *Campenses* who inhabited on the other side, came to hinder their passage, but were repulsed, and the whole Army gained the farther Bank. The People of *Galicia*, to the number of 60000, coming to the relief of their Neighbours, were by *Brutus* in their passage over the River *Minho* so intirely overthrown, that the greatest part was either Drowned, put to the Sword, or made Captives. The loss of this powerful succour so discouraged the *Lusitanians*, that they suffered the victorious Army to range about at pleasure, taking many Towns without the least opposition.

N. ar  
60000 Ga-  
licians de-  
stroyed.

4. The City *Cinania* stood resolutely upon its Defence, and *Brutus* offered them Peace if they would buy it. Their Answer was, That their Ancestors had left them their Swords and Valour to maintain their Liberty, not Gold to purchase it: Certain it is, this City was many Years after destroyed by another Power. *Brutus*, spent two Years in those parts, his Command being still prolonged to him, because he was Fortunate: He now styling himself Conqueror of *Galicia* and *Lusitania*, marched against the Inhabitants of the Province of *Beira*, who being a fierce Barbarous People, put him to much trouble in passing Rivers, and piercing the uncouth Mountains, till at last coming to a Battle, he was worsted; yet recovering again, he obtained a Victory, but at so dear a rate, that he would gladly have been without it, rather than have sustained such loss. After this, he again passed over *Tagus*, and resided three Years in the City *Morus*,

122.

*Brutus*  
Conquers  
*Lusitania*  
and *Gali-*  
*cia*, and  
triumphs  
at *Rome*.

rus, then standing where now the Castle of *Almoural* is; he ended his Government with such Reputation, that the *Roman* Senate unanimously voted he should triumph over the *Lusitanians* and *Gallicians*.

5. Whilst the Proconsul *Decius Junius Brutus* triumphed, and *Rome* wasted with Civil Wars, could not carry on its Foreign Expeditions, the Senate sent Governours, who might supply their want of strength by policy and obliging the Natives. The project proved ineffectual, for a powerful Army broke out of *Lusitania*, consuming all that stood in its way belonging to the *Romans*; *Caius Marius* the Proconsul, who had gained Reputation at *Numantia*, put a stop to this Torrent. He brought not numerous but choice Forces from *Rome*, and joining them to those he found in *Spain*, marched to repress the fury of the *Lusitanians*; he worsted them, but they assembling a greater power again, gave him a considerable Defeat: Nevertheless, the Proconsul nothing terrified, as being well used to the various Fortunes of War, calling together the *Celtiberi*, and drawing his old Soldiers out of the Garrisons, in several encounters, overthrew the *Lusitanians* in such manner; that for some Years, we have no account of them. After that time of silence, they again began to disturb the Province of *Hispania Viterior*, so that *Calpurnius Piso* was sent from *Rome* against them; it is natural to guess he had no great success, because very soon after *Servius Sulpicius Galba* was sent to succeed him; neither is it likely that *Galba* sped much better, for in the Town of *Condeixa*, there is still an antient Inscription which denotes some hot piece of service, in which *Galba* lost many Men of Note. His Successor was *Quintus Servilius Cepio*, Son to him that dishonourably contrived the Death of *Viriatus*; the particulars of what he did are not known, but sure it was much, since he was allowed to triumph at *Rome*. A powerful *Roman* Army ranged in *Lusitania*, but with such ill success, that not a Man escaped to carry home the News of their loss. This fatal stroke produced a quiet Peace for four Years, which ended in a great Victory obtained over the *Lusitanians* by *Decius Junius Silanus*. Yet the vanquished gathering new Forces, made a mighty havock in all the Province of *Hispania Ulterior*. *Lucius Cornelius Dolabella* was sent in hast Proconsul from *Rome*, to remedy

120.  
The Lusitanians revolt, and are reduced

109.

107.

104.

99.

97.  
L. Corn. Dolabella again subdues them.

dy this growing Evil. He behaved himself so prudently, that the *Lusitanians* were obliged to lay down their Arms, and keep within their own Borders, for which it was granted him to triumph at *Rome*.

6. All these Calamities were not enough to subdue the *Lusitanians*, and therefore the *Romans* designing utterly to extirpate them, sent the Consul *Publius Licinius Crassus* against them. He behaved himself so well, that he was continued in that Government four Years, doing incredible harm in the Country, and at last triumphed at *Rome*: The chief service that acquired him that Honour, was the War with the People between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*. There he had first knowledge of the Islands called *Cassiterides*, which some imagine to be those of *Bayona* in *Galicia*, and others believe they were swallowed by the Sea; they were ten in Number, one of them only inhabited; the Natives of a swarthy Complexion, their cloathing a long Gown down to the Feet, girt upon the Breast, all of them carried Staves in their hands. They traded with other Nations, particularly the *Carthaginians*, for Hides, and Lead, and Tin, whereof they had great Plenty; still the Proconsul *Licinius Crassus*, by fair means, drew them to the *Roman* Friendship. The cruel Wars between *Marius* and *Sylla*, hindered the *Romans* from sending Supplies into *Spain*; the *Lusitanians* took hold of that opportunity, and with a numerous Body breaking into the *Roman* Provinces, exercised the utmost Cruelty, sparing neither Sex nor Age, and this made the *Roman* Commanders quit the weaker places, and retire to those of more safety. But in the height of this their prosperity, came *Caius Annius*, (sent by *Sylla* after *Sertorius*) who in two great Battles, though with much difficulty, overthrew the *Lusitanians*; This made them sensible, that they only wanted a General, and therefore pitched upon *Sertorius*, who was then in *Mauritania*.

7. *Sertorius* was well known in *Spain* for the share he had in the War of *Numantia*; he was born in *Italy* among the *Sabini*, of an indifferent Family, neither Great nor Despicable: His first Years he spent in the Schools, the best and last in the Army. Being ill treated at *Rome*, he fled into *Spain*, and then into *Africk*, where in the City of *Tangier*, he found the body of the Gyant *Anteus*

90.

The Islands of Bayona in Galicia.

87.

85.

83.

He comes  
into Lusitania.

His Pra-  
Eises.

His War-  
like Ex-  
ploits.

*Anteus*, and other pieces of Antiquity: Here Ambassadors sent from *Lusitania* found him, and in the Name of the People, invited him to come and Command them, which he immediately accepted, and came over with the Ambassadors. At his first Arrival, he gained the good will of all Men, by his Affability and Bounty, and chose *Ebora* for a place of Arms; when he had taken an Oath of Fidelity of the *Lusitanians*, he visited the Province, accompanied with 700 Horse and 4000 Foot, and with all possible Diligence, provided all Necessaries for War: The Neighbouring People perceiving it, offered him their Service, as did others farther off, moved by their Example. Among them the City *Oscæ*, which Tradition will have to be that in *Aragon*, a strong Place, where *Sertorius* settled an University: This he did for his own Security rather than the Instruction of the People, that he might there have the principal Youth of the Country together as Hostages; for the fixing of this University Professors of all Sciences, came from several Countries. To strengthen his Interest the more, he made use of another practice, which is, that having a Hind brought him, he made her so tame, that she followed him in the Army, amidst the Noise of Arms, and the People admiring thereat, he gave out, it was sent him by the Goddess *Diana*, to give him advice how to behave himself in the War. When he understood that any of his Captains had gained a Victory, he caused the Hind to be Crown'd with Flowers by him, he entrusted with the Secret, and as soon as let loose, she would run to him, and he putting his Ear to her Mouth, would discover what he had been told before, saying, *Diana* gave him that intelligence by the Mouth of the Hind: This Fraud made the People follow him, as if he were somewhat more than Man.

8. *Sertorius* having thus gained the Affections of the *Lusitanians*, and secured their Children, as Hostages, at *Oscæ*, ventured to take the Field, against the *Romans*, with only 8000 Men, whereof 5000 were *Lusitanians*, the rest *Italians* and *Africans*. Nine Years he maintained War against *Rome*, and against four of its best Generals, who brought over 7000 Horse, and 122000 Foot, besides the *Spanish* Auxiliaries. His first Exploit, was, the subduing most part of the Province of *Carpentania*;

*tania*; where he found little or no Resistance. Next, he defeated *Cota*, the *Roman* Admiral, who kept the *Streights* of *Gibraltar*, and hinder'd Supplies from coming to him out of *Mauritania*. Sailing victorious up the River *Guadalquivir*, he surprized, at Break of Day, the *Roman* Army, under the Command of *Didius*, who lay encamped upon the Banks of the River, and put the greatest part of it to the Sword. *Herculeus*, one of his Captains, was sent out by him, against *Lucius Domitius*, who, by Order of the Consul, *Quintus Metellus Pius*, destroyed all the Country between *Andaluzia* and the *Pyrenean* Mountains. *Herculeus* pursuing, overtook him in *Aragon*, where he overthrew his Army, and killed him. The Fame of this Defeat moved *Manilius*, Proconsul of *Gallia Norbonensis*, to pass the Mountains with a mighty Army of *Romans* and *Gauls*, in hopes to gather together the few scatter'd Remnants of *Domitius's* Army. But the Victor, flushed with his late Success, met him near *Lerida*, where a most bloody Battel was fought, and *Manilius* routed, with a terrible Slaughter of the *Roman* Legions; but, above all, of the *French* Horse. In the mean while, *Sertorius* stuck close to *Metellus*; who perceiving himself to be still upon the Losing Hand, resolved to alter his Method of Carrying on the War, and laid Siege to *Lacobriga*, now called *Lagos*, in the Kingdom of *Algarve*. Want of Water pressed the Besieged; but *Sertorius*, with great Rewards, prevailed with 2000 Soldiers to break through the *Roman* Camp, with each of them a Skin-full of Water. This Supply encouraged the *Lacobrigenses*, till *Sertorius* could come to raise the Siege: But *Metellus*, hearing of his Preparations, marched away, and left it. Want of Provisions forced him to depart: for *Sertorius* had cut off a Legion that was coming to him, with a Convoy. *Metellus* marched into *Andaluzia*, *Sertorius* keeping close at his Heels, and came to *Oscæ*, where the *Lusitanian* Youths were, designing to take that Place; but it was well provided: Besides, the *Lusitanian* Army being upon his Back, he marched away to *Cartagena*; and *Sertorius* returned to *Evora*. Thus it appears, that *Oscæ*, where the University was erected, was not in *Aragon*, as some will have it; but in *Andaluzia*. At *Evora*, *Sertorius* received Ambassadors from *Mithridates*, King of *Pontus*: He proposed to settle Amity, for the subduing of

of Italy; offered Ships, and asked some *Lusitanian* Soldiers: Besides, he offered to *Sertorius* the whole Dominion of *Asia*. *Sertorius* received the Ambassadors with Majesty, promised the Supply of Soldiers, and afterwards sent it. The Ambassadors being dismissed, *Sertorius* employed himself in making Provision for the next Campaign, and exercising his Men; knowing he could not expect long to enjoy Peace.

9. In the mean time came *Pompey* the Great, from *Rome*, and was joined by *Metellus*. *Marcus Perpenna* came also from *Sardinia*, with 30 *Veterane* Troops, to the Assistance of *Sertorius*. The *Lusitanians*, encouraged with this Aid, and lying now in sight of the *Romans*, pressed their General to lead them out to Battel: But he weighing the mighty Power of the Enemy, meditated how to gain some Advantage by Policy. Part of his Army, carried away with Heat, and forgetful of good Discipline, adventured, contrary to his Orders, to charge the *Romans*, but came off with Dishonour; which nothing displeased *Sertorius*. Here it was, that he convinced his Men, by the Example of two Horses; One, very lean and poor, he gave to a lusty Young Man, ordering him to pull out the Hair of his Main and Tail; which he attempting to draw out by Handfuls, laboured much, but profited little. The other, being a beautiful, strong Horse, he gave to an ancient Man, for the same purpose; and he plucking Hair by Hair, did that with Ease, which the other could not do with great Pains. Thus, he said, they were to proceed against the *Romans*, whom it was impossible at one Stroke to overthrow; but easie to compass at many. *Sertorius* laid Siege to *Laurona*, (now *Leiria*.) 4 Leagues from *Valencia*, on the Banks of the River *Xucar*. *Pompey* and *Metellus* came to raise the Siege, but lost 10000 Men in the Attempt; and endeavouring to gain a Rising Ground, which lay opportunely for putting of supplies in the Town, they found *Sertorius* had prevented them. Next *Pompey* designed to besiege the *Lusitanian* Army, hemming it in between his own and the Town, but *Sertorius* having left 6000 Men in Ambush, they attacked him in his approach; so that he was glad to return to his Camp, and look on whilst the City was taken and Burnt. The *Roman* Army consisted of 1000 Horse and 30000 Foot, but the *Lusitanians* were 70000 strong.

This done, *Sertorius* returned victorious to *Evora*, which Place he fortified with strong Walls, and brought Water to it from several Springs, through a stately Aqueduct. His whole Family, at this time, consisted of an old Nurse, and three Slaves: And though he was Sovereign in *Portugal* for some Years, he had no House of his own. Now it was, he built one so small, that it would not contain an ordinary Gentleman of our Times. He married at *Evora* the Daughter of a Noble Citizen, called *Firminus Liborius*; by whom he had no Children.

10. Spring coming on, *Pompey* and *Metellus* drew out of their Winter-Quarters; and marching through *Andaluzia*, separately strove to recover those Places which *Sertorius* had Garrison'd. But he, losing no Time, advanced against *Pompey*, and met him on the Banks of the River *Xucar*. *Pompey* resolved to fight, that *Metellus* might have no Share in the Honour of the Action: And *Sertorius* thought best to have to do with them apart. Thus agreed, they drew out; *Sertorius* facing *Afranius*, and *Perpenna*, *Pompey*. The Charge being given, *Sertorius* began to gain upon *Afranius*; when understanding that *Perpenna* gave way to *Pompey*, he hasted thither, and presently put the Enemy to flight. In the mean while, *Afranius*, encouraging his Men, had almost routed that Wing which *Sertorius* left near possessed of Victory; but he returning thither, soon restored the Battel. Now had *Pompey's* Army been entirely cut off, but that *Metellus* appearing, *Sertorius* stayed his Soldiers from the Pursuit, and said, *Halt, halt; for I would have sent this Boy to Rome, well scourged, had not that old Woman snatched him out of my Hands*. However, *Metellus* did not attempt any thing upon the Victors; contenting himself to have saved the flying Army. *Sertorius* returning to his Camp, missed his Hind, lost in the Hurrey of the Battel, which made him extremely melancholy: But some time after, certain Country-men bringing him Tidings of her, he ordered them to conceal the Matter; and, at a certain Time appointed, to turn her loose: Then calling together his Chief Officers, he told them, *The Goddess of the Woods had appeared to him, assuring him, that the Hind should return, with Instructions how he should behave himself*. Whilst he was yet talking, the Hind, set loose,



loose, came running to him; and laying her Head betwixt his Knees, licked his Hands.

11. It is incredible, how much the whole Army rejoiced at the Return of the Hind: And *Sertorius*, to make use of that Heat, marched towards *Valencia*, where *Metellus* was, wasting the Country. He so hemmed him up in a Plain, that he must either perish, or fight. However, he sent *Mummius*, with a Party of Horse, to conduct a Convoy of Provisions to him. *Sertorius* having Notice thereof, marched out by Night; and in the Morning, putting the Guard to the Sword, he took the whole Convoy. *Metellus* contemning *Sertorius*, marched to seek him; and *Perpenna*, after him. Thus they were soon engaged, with such ill Success on the *Romans* side, that they began to fly. The old *Metellus*, disdaining to be thus disgraced, did Wonders exceeding his Age, till he fell wounded with a Dart: And the Shame of losing their General bringing back his Men, they so fiercely charged the *Lusitanians*, disorder'd in the Pursuit, that they recovered the Day; putting them to the Rout, with great Slaughter. *Sertorius* did all that *Metellus* had done before, to stay his Men; but could only stop the victorious *Romans*, till his Army escaped: Which done, he followed after, to a strong City, standing on an Hill. *Metellus* encompassed the Place, thinking to starve it; but *Sertorius* had before laid in sufficient Stores. A few Days after, with a Party of Light Horse, he made his Escape, deceiving the *Roman* Guards, and returned safe into *Lusitania*, where he was received with unexpressible Joy.

*Sertorius*  
routed by  
*Metellus*.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VII.

*The remaining Actions of Sertorius, from the Year 70, before the Birth of Christ, till his Death, which was in the Year 68. What else happen'd in Lusitania, till the Coming of Julius Cæsar; and his Exploits, till the Year 57, before Christ.*

1. **T**HE following Year *Sertorius* put to Sea with a Fleet, resolving to destroy all the Ships he found in the *Roman* Harbours; and in a short time, scouring the *Mediterranean*, he did great Harm. This was a great Loss to *Pompey* and *Metellus*; but a greater they sustained by the Means of *Herculeius*, a *Lusitanian* Captain, who cut off six Troops of Horse and a Legion, which, under the Command of *Procius Emilianus*, were conducting a great Convoy of Provisions. This put the *Roman* Generals upon taking new Methods; *Pompey* went away to *Navarre*, whilst *Metellus* gave an Account of his Losses to the Senate of *Rome*, and pressed for considerable Supplies. They came accordingly; and the two Generals took the Field again. *Metellus* marching apart from *Pompey*, near *Italica*, (which was not far from *Sevil*,) was met by *Herculeius*, and so pressed, that he betook himself to a Mountain. The *Lusitanian* Army lay at the Foot of the Hill, daring the *Romans* to give Battel. *Metellus* waiting an Opportunity, took it so aptly, that he killed and made Prisoners 20000 of *Herculeius*'s Army, driving the rest out of the Field; and was so delighted with this great Success, that he caused Images of Victory, as he came into every Town, to be let down artificially, with Garlands of Flowers to crown himself; as also, his Praises to be publickly sung. *Sertorius* immediately marched to seek the Victor, who was on his Way to *Catalonia*: He did not overtake him, but cut off a Party of Horse that was carrying the News of the Victory, and some of the Prisoners, to *Pompey*. *Herculeius* was so much ashamed of his Defeat, that he absconded, and

70.  
The Ro-  
mans sus-  
tain great  
Losses by  
*Sertorius*.

69.



would not be seen; but *Sertorius* comforted him, and, with much Difficulty, prevailed with him to appear again.

2. *Sertorius* leading a mighty Army against *Metellus*, who was in the Kingdom of *Murcia*, by the Way destroyed all the Province of *Andaluzia*; *Metellus* retiring to *Valencia*, where *Pompey* then was; who sent a Party of Light-Horse, to discover the Strength of *Sertorius*, and found his Army numerous, and in good Order. He passed the River *Guadalaviar*, near whose Banks the two Roman Generals lay encamped, on an advantageous high Ground. Both Armies being resolved to give Battel, and being drawn out in order to it, they stopped to see the Event of a single Combat between two Soldiers, who had challenged one another: *Pompey's* Soldier having killed him of *Sertorius*, taking off his Helmet to cut off his Head, he found it was his own Brother; whereupon, he immediately killed himself. This strange Accident put off the Battel for that Day; but the next Day after, they engaged with great Resolution; when, in the Heat of the Action, a Soldier telling *Sertorius* that the General of the Horse was killed, he struck him through the Body, that he might not terrifie others with that News: Yet neither this, nor all he could do, was enough to prevent his being put to the Rout, with the Loss of 6000 of his Men. It was no less Grief to *Sertorius*, than the Loss of the Battel, that the City *Valencia* submitted to the victorious Romans; and much more, when other Places followed the Example of it; amongst which was *Guadalaxara*. Hither he marched with Speed; but the Inhabitants being fled to a Place almost inaccessible, full of many great Caves, they scoffed at him, asking whether he had Wings to come at them. He tried all Stratagems to reduce them, but nothing succeeded. At length he raised great Heaps of Sand and Dust opposite to the Mouths of the Caves; and waiting till a strong North Wind blew directly in upon them, caused his Men, with Shovels, to cast up the Sand; which being so shaken, was by the Wind carried into the Caves so violently, that those within, being almost stifled, were glad to cry for Mercy. *Sertorius* forgave them all, and took nothing from them, but some necessary Provisions for his Army.

3. This

3. This last Action gained *Sertorius* great Reputation, as well of Policy to overcome, as of Clemency towards the vanquished; but his Forces being very much broken, some of the principal Romans that followed him, proposed to come to an accommodation with *Pompey*. *Sertorius* utterly rejected their Advice, saying, *Since the Romans would not treat with him in his Prosperity, he would never condescend to sue to them in his Adversity*. And that his Actions might fute with his Words, tho' then weak and lately overthrown, hearing that *Pompey* had distressed *Palencia*, he hastened to the relief of the Besieged, and without loosing time, he Assaults the Romans, and his Men being much disordered in the Confusion, he was got so far among his Enemies, that his Horse being killed, he had inevitably perished, had not a Body of *Lusitanians* offered to Sacrifice their own lives for the defence of his. They desperately forced their way to the place where he was Fighting, and taking him into the midst of them, carried him off in safety. He thus brought back to his Men, to encourage them with his presence, that they obliged *Pompey* to quit his Camp, and with it his Tents and Engines: Had not the Night been so near, few Romans had escaped, but they under the shelter of it, got away to places of safety. In the mean while *Metellus* laid hard Siege to *Calahorra*, but the victorious *Sertorius* drove him thence by main force, with the Slaughter of 3000 of his Men, and entering the Town, Commended the Fidelity of the Inhabitants. Here he was informed, that *Metellus* and *Pompey* joyning their Forces, lay before *Osca* or *Huesca* his University; thither he hastened and Encamped at a small distance from them, so carelessly, that *Metellus* forced him to take shelter in the Besieged City in great Confusion, leaving behind him many Armes and Horses, and much Ammunition: This frown of Fortune moved the Romans, who had hitherto followed *Sertorius*, to conspire against him. Here by the way, it is to be observed, That doubtless there were two *Osca's*, since we Read, that before this time, they Fought in *Andaluzia* near *Osca*, and now again being in the Territories of *Aragon*, *Sertorius* fled to *Osca*.

4. *Perpenna*, that Roman who had hitherto so faithfully served *Sertorius*, now tempted by the promised rewards, undertook to kill him: *Sertorius* himself in

E 3

some

Metellus  
and Pompey again  
overthrow  
Sertorius.

Here comes  
and morsis  
the Ro-  
mans.

Sertorius  
Murdered.

some measure forwarded his Design, by putting to death the Sons of many Spaniards, who had revolted from him to the Romans, which rendered him odious to the People, and ministred an opportunity to *Perpenna* to compass his intended Treachery. *Sertorius* understanding there was a Conspiracy against him, gave an account thereof to the *Lusitanians*, who were his Guard, and they immediately put to Death Ten of the Conspirators. None seemed more to commend this Execution, than *Perpenna*, who as it were, to divert *Sertorius*, invited him to a Supper, whither he, suspecting nothing, went; and, in the height of his Mirth, was killed with 21 Wounds. The first that struck him was a Roman, called *Antony*: There was no less mourning at his Death among the *Lusitanians*, than had been for *Viriatius*, and many killed themselves at his Funeral. The Hind that had always followed *Sertorius*, seeing him Dead, smelling to him, and heavily Groaning, at length forbearing all Sustenance, fell down Dead by his side. The *Lusitanians* gathering his Ashes into an Urn, returned to *Evora*, where they were Honourably Entombed. The Magistrates of *Evora*, then the chief Government of *Lusitania*, consulting how to secure the Common-wealth, resolved not to alter any thing, till they saw what was done by *Perpenna*, with whom was the greatest part of *Sertorius* his Army, tho' many had forsaken him, seeing *Pompey* pressing upon them with a mighty Power.

68.

5. *Perpenna* failing of the promised Reward of his Treachery from *Metellus*, was not content to have Murdered his General, unless he also usurped his Command. Therefore calling together the Heads of the Army, after inveighing against the Cruelty and Perfidiousness of *Sertorius*, he offered himself for their Leader: Many of them before bribed by him, easily consented, and others seeing *Pompey* so near, complied with necessity least they should want a Head in that time of Danger. *Pompey* resolving the first thing he did to make an end of *Perpenna*, accordingly marched hastily towards him, and he nothing Daunted, advanced to meet him: Both Armies being in sight of one another, fell to Fortifying their Camps. The Work ended, they spent the time in Skirmishes before they would hazard a pitched Battle; but *Perpenna's* Forces decreased much,

*Perpenna*  
chosen General of the  
*Lusitanians*.

much, many by night Deserting, which obliged him to offer the Enemy Battle before he was quite forsaken: Tho' *Pompey* doubted not of the Victory, yet to make it secure, he laid an Ambush, and retiring, drew *Perpenna* into the Danger of it. Thus when he thought himself Victorious, he was fallen into the Snare, and immediately put to the Rout; he himself fled, and was as much afraid of his own Men, as of the Enemy. The Romans followed the Chace without giving any Quarter; certain Horsemen carried on with this heat, found *Perpenna* among the Shrubs and Bryars. He falling down, begged his Life, assuring them, He would make great Discoveries of principal Men in Rome, who kept Correspondence with *Sertorius*, which he could prove under their hands. The Captain of those Horse acquainted *Pompey* therewith, who ordered his Head to be immediately struck off, and those Papers to be brought to him: This being accordingly performed, Men of Note, whom their Conscience accused, were in a great Consternation in *Pompey's* Army, for that they had secretly favoured *Sertorius*; But, he fearing the ill consequence of such a Discovery, publicly Burnt all those Papers, and so quieted their Apprehensions.

He is van-  
quished by  
*Pompey*,  
and put to  
Death.

6. *Afranius*, a most Valiant Captain, by *Pompey's* Order, entred *Lusitania*; but finding the *Camponeses* were fled to the Mountains, and left all the plain Country Desert, he suspected rather Policy than Fear, had carried them; wherefore he returned to inform *Pompey*, *Pompey* and both of them came before the City *Caucia*, which *subdu-* offered to embrace the Friendship of the Romans; but many pla- refused to admit a Garrison. *Pompey* requested, that ces. whilst they could agree upon Articles, his sick Men might be admitted into the City, which being granted, he sent in a Number of his best Soldiers privately Armed, who being let in, possessed themselves of the Walls, and so the Town was obliged to receive a Garrison, and pay a Sum of Money: With such like Arts, *Pompey* gained admittance into many Towns of *Lusitania*: Both *Pompey* and *Afranius* laid Siege to *Oxama* (now *Oisma*) where no fair means prevailing, the place was furiously Battered, then Undermined, and a sufficient Breach being made, it was pertinaciously defended as long as any of the Inhabitants were left alive. They all

died to the last Man, and *Pompey* having none left to kill, vented his passion upon the Buildings, leaving the place in a confused heap of Rubbish; then the Army marched to *Calahorra*, but whilst they lay before it, *Metellus* sent to Advise *Pompey*, it concerned him more to return to *Rome*, than linger the time there: He leaving *Afranius* to continue the Siege, in his way, laid the Foundation of *Pamplona*, in *Navar*, and so went away to *Rome*, where it was allowed him to Triumph, as he had well deserved. *Afranius* left at *Calahorra*, tho' he suffered much by the Weather, it being then Winter, and also for want of Provisions, yet he reduced the Besieged to that extremity, that having eaten all the Leather and Hides in the City, they killed and eat their Wives and Children. Nevertheless, *Afranius* broke in upon them, and found many Inhabitants looking rather like Ghosts than Men, and many quarters of Women and Children hanging up for Food.

67.

7. The Roman Senate thought the Victories of *Pompey* and *Metellus*, had sufficiently secured *Spain*; therefore they sent thither *Publius Piso* Pretor, a Man more addicted to Peace than War. He found all things quiet, but after a while, understanding that Warlike preparations were making in several parts of *Spain*, he sent his Questor *Lucius Flaccus*, to visit and put all Garrisons into a posture of Defence; in the mean while he gathered an Army of Romans and *Andaluzians*, and taking the Field in several places, Defeated the *Spaniards*; but Authors do not mention the particulars. Certain it is, he vanquished a Body of *Lusitanians*, that had been plundering the Country and killed 5000 of them. His success was doubtless more considerable, since it appears he triumphed at *Rome*. *Cneus Piso* succeeded *Publius*, he by his ill Government lost the Affections, not only of the Natives, but of the Romans, and marching into *Lusitania*, had his Legate cut off by some Light Horse of the Country, none of his Army stirring to rescue him. The next Pretor was *Quintus Calidius*, who defeated several Parties of *Lusitanians*, that Plundered the Country; after him came *Tubero*, who brought with him as his Questor *Julius Caesar*, to whom his future Fortune was foretold at *Cadix*; For visiting the Temple of *Hercules*, and falling asleep in it, he Dreamed that he lay with his Mother. This the *South-sayers* interpreted

5000 *Lusitanians*  
slain by  
*Pub. Piso*.  
63.

61.

interpreted to Denote his becoming Sovereign of *Rome*, his Mother-Country, which he should deprive of its Ancient Liberty. There also seeing the Picture of *Alexander* the Great, he wept considering that mighty King had subdued so considerable a part of the World, at that Age which he then was of, and had yet done nothing worthy of Fame. These considerations made him quit his Employment and return to *Rome* to aim at greater, About this time hapned on the Coast of *Galicia* and *Portugal*, so terrible an Earthquake, that many Buildings being overthrown, the People fled to the Mountains for Safety. The Sea also broke in and drowned several places. At Cape *St. Vincent*, a Mare brought forth a Monster with the Head, Breast, and Fore-feet of a Bull, the Body of a Horse, and the Hind-feet like a Man's: This Monster was thought to foreshew the Calamities that afterwards befell *Lusitania*.

60.

A great  
Earth-  
quake.

8. Some Years passed, that the Romans sent no Commander of Note into *Spain*, which the *Lusitanians* observing, they broke into *Castile* with a great Power, putting all the Country to Fire and Sword. The chief among these People were the *Herminii*, inhabiting the deep Valley and high tops of the Mountain *Herminius*, now called *Serra de Estrella*, which crosseth the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Portugal*. The next great Man that came was *Julius Caesar*; he to spread a Terror spared none of the *Lusitanians* that ranged in *Castile* and *Andaluzia*, but put all to the Sword, which made those that escaped home, give the Alarm to prepare the People for the Storm that threatened them. *Caesar* over-running all the Province of *Alenteio*, with his Victorious Army, used the utmost severity; the *Andaluzians* that followed him, revenging the wrongs before done to them by the *Lusitanians*; only the inhabitants of the Mountain *Herminius* perplexed *Caesar*. Tho' this Mountain, as was said, runs almost through the Kingdom, the chief habitation of those People was about the place where now stands *Haramenha*, which is near *Portalegre* and *Marvan*. The place of it self was inaccessible, and the People resolute, therefore *Caesar* sent Ambassadors to persuade them to come down and inhabit the plain: they kept these Ambassadors till they had shown them their Weapons, the strength of the Place, and number of the Defendants, and then dis-

*Julius Caesar*  
comes  
into *Lusitania*.

dismissed them, with assurance that they would trust only to their Weapons and Courage. *Cæsar* disdain- ing to be Braved by those Mountaineers, to appease the other *Lusitanians*, much offended for that his Soldiers had plundered the Temple of the God *Endovelicus*, caused all that had been taken thence to be restored.

He subdues  
the Herminii.

9. This done, he marched against the *Herminii*, who were in a readiness to receive him, and found the place much more difficult than it had been represented to him. Understanding that the *Herminii* had placed their Wives, Children and weak People in a remote place of safety, he with great Gifts perswaded certain *Lusitanians* Enemies to the *Herminii*, to lead a number of Men thro' a private path to that place. Whilst they upon Hands and feet climbed the rough Rocks, he drew out his Army, and began to ascend so as to divert the Defendants from minding those that were sent about. An advanced party was so hotly received by the Mountaineers, that they were forced to quit the attempt, and fly disorderly back to the Camp, *Cæsar* never offering to relieve them for fear of running more Men into the Danger. The Mountaineers, proud of this success, braved the *Romans*; but *Cæsar* trusting to those he had sent about, regarded them not: The third Night after they set forward, the Party that was sent to climb the Hill, fell in upon the Old Men, Women and Children, putting many to the Sword. But day appearing, and discovering how few had done that harm, the Women fell upon them, and their Husbands taking the Alarm, quitted the Pass they defended to protect their Wives and Children. *Cæsar* seeing the Pass clear, mounted the Hill till he came to a plain on the side of it, whilst the *Herminii* put all those *Romans* that had climbed the other side to the Sword. When they thought to return to the place they had quitted, they found *Cæsar* possessed of it, wherewith they were so terrified, that tho' they were above him, and might well have defended themselves, they sued for Peace; thereupon he commanded them to go down and inhabit the Plain, keeping 200 of their Women as Hostages.

And vents  
a vast  
Multitude.

10. The Fame of this unexpected Conquest made many of the Neighbouring People resolve to quit their Dwellings, and passing the River *Duero*, seek out new places to inhabit, if not more fruitful than their own,

at least more remote from the Enemy. This they did in such numbers, that the Province was almost unpeopled; they marched in great Order, fearing the pursuit of the victorious Army, which soon overtook them, at such time as they had passed over the River most of their Old Men, Women, Children and Baggage, on Planks, Skins blown full of Wind, Mares and Oxen. *Cæsar* gave them not leisure to follow their Families, but falling upon them, was so hotly received, that his Army began to give way, till a *Veteran* Legion coming up, the Battle a long time stood doubtful. *Cæsar* who could not be satisfied to part upon equal Terms, broke himself into the midst of his Enemies with such Resolution, that his Forces following the Example given, soon made him Master of an absolute Victory.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The remaining Actions of Julius Cæsar, the Coming and Attempts of Cneus and Sextus, the Sons of Pompey the Great, and other Occurrences from the Year 57. before the Birth of Christ, till the Year 27.*

1. *Cæsar* concluded his late Victory, had wholly put an end to the Toiles of War in that Province, when he was given to understand that the *Herminii*, or Mountaineers revolted again, had put to the Sword the *Romans* that Quartered about them, and stirring up their Neighbours to do the like, were now assembled in an infinite Number. He instantly marched towards them, and escaped all their Ambushes, being forewarned of them: The *Lusitanians* divided themselves into two Bodies, each numerous enough to maintain a long and dangerous War against a greater Power than that of the Enemy. The lesser of those Armies was sent towards the Ocean, with all the Women and Children as their Guard. The *Roman* and *Lusitanian* Armies meeting, stood a while looking upon one another, till *Cæsar* who never knew what fear was, gave

57.

The remaining  
Actions of  
Cæsar in  
Spain.



gave the Signal of Battle, and both sides gave the Charge with extraordinary Fury. *Cæsar*, tho' hard pressed a while, remained Master of the Field, but by reason of the approaching Night, could not do so much Execution as might otherwise have been. The *Lusitanians* knowing all the Passes of the Country, made their way, and soon joyned those that marched towards the Ocean. Thus the 4th Day they discovered a *Peninsula* (now called *Peniche*) into which they all passed; so that when *Cæsar* came, there was none behind on the shoar. The distance between the Island and the shoar, is at present above 500 Paces, which at low Water can be forded; *Cæsar* waiting the Ebb, sent an Officer with a choice party to gain a Post from those in the Island, who bravely defended themselves: The Tide returning, the *Romans* fought up to the middle in Water, and *Cæsar* stood on the Shoar calling upon them. When they would have returned, the Water was so high, that they were forced to land in the Island, where they were all cut off to one Soldier, who tho' Wounded, swam over to the other side. A *Spanish* Author calls him *Sceva*, but *Dio*, names him *Publius Scevius*: It was hard to gain the Island, without bringing Ships from *Cadix*, but hunger began to prick the Multitude who had made no Provision, when they retired into that place. This and the sight of the Ships made them deliver themselves to *Cæsar*, barely upon Discretion: He not only forbid any Wrong to be done them in their Persons or Goods, but supplied them with all they wanted, and so dismissed them wholly devoted to him, for this unexpected Clemency. At this time was found that wonderful Horse, which having his Feet like a Man, would afterwards suffer no body but *Cæsar* to mount him, and when he died, *Cæsar* caused him to be Buried, as if it had been a Man, and his Statue in Brass to be set before the Temple of *Venus*.

56. Pub. Cincinnatus succeeds Cæsar.

2. *Cæsar* having thus with Courtesy, as well as Force subdued *Lusitania*, departed to *Rome* to make interest for the Consulship, where we will leave him. *Tubero* left to Govern the Province, as *Proprætor*, kept it in Peace till the coming of the *Proconsul Publius Cincinnatus*, in whose time the *Lusitanians* began again to raise Arms, but Authors do not give us any par-

particular Relation of the Event of those Commotions, till the Time of the *Prætor, Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinter*. About the same time there marched a mighty Army out of *Spain*, whereof a considerable part were *Lusitanians*: The *Gauls*, oppressed by *Julius Cæsar*, had called them to their Assistance. *Publius Crassus*, *Crassus de-*  
*Cæsar's* Legate, overthrew them, killing and taking *strey; near*  
Prisoners almost 40000. Whilst this was done in 40000.  
*France*, *Quintus Cecilius Dentatus*, the *Prætor in Lusita-*  
*nia*, raised a dangerous War, by endeavouring to carry a great Quantity of Corn out of the Country, which moved the People to take up Arms; but having forced him to retire, and fortifie himself in the Mountain of *Venus*, (now called *Pomares*,) near *Evora*, they came to a Composition, he promising not to carry away the Corn. *Quintus Cecilius Metellus* was Successor to *Dentatus*, and governed both Provinces of *Spain*. The *Vectones* of *Estremadura*, and the *Vaccei* of *Old Castile*, revolting, he overthrew them; but with so little Loss on their side, that being recruited, they came upon him, then besieging *Clunia*, (now *Corunna*,) and drove him from the Siege: He, in like manner, making up his Forces, returned, and gave them a second Rout. *Tubero* succeeded *Metellus*, as *Proconsul*. He continued the War against the *Vectones* and *Vaccei*, and was by them, in Battel overthrown. The Tumults raised by the *Vaccei* and *Vectones*, moved the Senate to send *Pompey* to pacifie the Province: But whilst he prepared to set forwards with the Grandeur becoming him, three Legates came; one of them was *Petreius*, whose Province was *Lusitania*, and the Care of quelling the *Vaccei* and *Vectones*: With him joined the People of *Beyra*, and, together, they forced their Enemies to sue for Peace. After which, *Petreius* went to the Assistance of those of the Province of *Beyra*, against a great Number of the People that came from between the Rivers *Ducro* and *Minho*, who were going over to settle among them; and (though with considerable Loss) he secured the Pass, and drove them back.

3. *Julius Cæsar* having drove *Pompey* out of *Rome*, was now coming again into *Spain*: The Legates having Notice thereof, prepared to oppose him; and *Petreius* joining *Afranius*, they together made up near 60000 Men, as well *Romans* as *Spaniards*. *Cæsar* sent his

52.

51.

30.

47.

Cæsar re-  
turns, and  
expels  
Pompey's  
Party.

44.

his Legate *Caius Fabius*, to gain the Passes of the *Pyrenean Mountains*; which he performed so successfully, that *Pompey's* Party lying about *Letida*, saw *Cæsar's* Colours before they had heard of the approach of his Army. Soon after came *Cæsar* himself, who reduced the two Legates to that Necessity, that they surrender'd themselves into his Power; he using no other Severity towards them, than to order them to lay down their Arms, and depart *Spain*: And they accordingly went away to *Pompey*, then raising Forces in the East. This done, *Cæsar* returned to *Rome*, leaving the Government of *Portugal* and *Andaluzia*, with the Title of Pro-Prætor, to *Quintus Cassius Longinus*, a Man naturally cruel, and an Enemy to the *Spaniards*. He accordingly exercised his Hatred and Avarice, and at last laid Siege to the City *Mirobriga*, which offered to buy its Liberty; but he set it at so high a Rate, that they having 11 Days granted them to resolve in, chose rather privately to fly away to the Mountains. The Pro-Prætor finding the City empty, followed the Inhabitants, where he took from them all they had before saved. The *Herminii* thus plunder'd, their Number increasing, resolv'd to possess themselves of the Plains along the River *Tagus*, turning out the ancient Proprietors. A great Number of them were cut off by the Citizens of *Lisbon*, as they endeavoured to pass that River: Then the Mountaineers desisting from their first Purpose, encamped about *Lisbon*; but being there surprized in the Night, by their Enemies, almost all of them perished.

43.  
Cneus and  
Sextus, the  
two Sons of  
Pompey,  
in Spain.

4. *Cneus* and *Sextus*, the Sons of *Pompey the Great*, came into *Spain*, invited by the general Consent of the People. The Eldest was declared General at *Cartagena*, and set out thence with a good Army, Garrisoning all the strong Towns. *Sextus Pompeius* was left at *Cordova*. *Julius Cæsar's* two Legates, *Pedius* and *Fabius Maximus*, observed the Motions of the two *Pompeys*, and gave *Cæsar* an Account of all that passed; and he travelled with all possible Speed into *Spain*. In the mean time, *Philo*, a *Lusitanian*, raised Men, and joined himself to *Cneus*. The Celerity of *Cæsar* was incredible; yet came he not so soon, but that his Legates were before defeated by *Cneus Pompeius*, with a mighty Slaughter. The Legates fled to their Camp, where  
Pompey

*Pompey* assaulted them three times, and was as often repulled: At last he understood they stole away by Night, but in such good Order, that he durst not pursue them; especially, hearing that *Cæsar* was come to *Saguntum*, and that *Andaluzia* began to mutiny. Understanding that *Cæsar* marched towards *Cordova*, he directed his Course thither; and to march the lighter, he left all his Sick at *Capara*. By the Way he laid Siege to *Ulia*, (now *Montemayor*;) but it being relieved by *Cæsar*, he removed towards *Cordova*, 15 Miles distant; where he found his Enemy, expecting that the Towns-people would have delivered the Place to him; but the Vigilancy of *Sextus*, and the Arrival of *Cneus*, prevented the Design. *Cæsar* thus disappointed, removed, and laid Siege to a strong Place, which *Pompey* had made his Magazin: It was then called *Ategua*; and now, *Teba the Old*. *Pompey* marched to relieve it; but finding the Besiegers too strong, returned with Speed to *Cordova*; yet, being sent for by the Besieged, he returned again to *Ategua*, and sent in some Succour, and *Munacius Flaccus*, to govern in the City: He, seeing no Hopes to hold out, surrender'd himself and the City to *Cæsar* upon Discretion. This so enraged *Pompey*, that upon light Surmizes he put to Death almost 80 Men of Note; and by this Means made himself odious to all that followed him; whereof, many deserted.

5. In this manner their Affairs went on, till *Cæsar* and *Pompey* met at *Munda*, (now a little Town, called *Monda*,) five Leagues distant from *Malaga*. This City was Garrison'd by *Pompey*, and in it consisted all his Hopes; wherefore, he lay to secure it with 60000 Men. Hither *Cæsar* came, to engage *Pompey*; and the Battel began most furiously: *Pompey* behaved himself so gallantly, that *Cæsar* was once in doubt whether he should not kill himself, as despairing of the Victory: But considering better, he lighted off his Horse; and, snatching a Buckler from a Soldier, ran desperately into the thickest of his Enemies; saying to his own Men, *This Day will I end my Life; and you, the War: Thus lay your Arms across, since you have lost all Sense of Shame, and leave me in the hands of two Boys, after you had been victorious over all the Power of Spain.* In this manner he broke into the Body of his Enemies, where he had perished, but that his Horse coming in, rescued him, wounding

wounding *Pompey* on the Shoulder. Yet had not *Cæsar* gained any Advantage, till *Rogud*, an *African* King, who followed him with his Troops, assaulted *Pompey's* Camp. *Titus Labienus*, a brave Captain, drawing out of the Battel, to oppose *Rogud*, the whole Army of *Pompey* thought he had fled, and they immediately took to their Heels; some fled to *Munda*, others to the Camp, 30000 were slain, whereof 7000 were *Lusitanians*, *Pompey* wounded, and overthrown, fled with 150 *Lusitanians* of his Guard, that were left. Being come to *Algezira*, *Publius Calpurnius* sent him in an Horse-Litter to *Cortega*; the Inhabitants of which Place would have delivered him to his Enemies, but he escaped in a Galley. *Didius*, *Cæsar's* Admiral, pursued him so close, that he was forced to fly to Land; where he was hard chased by *Cesonius Lento*, till, not being able to go farther, he hid himself in a Cave, where he was betrayed by a Servant of his own. *Cesonius* carried his Head to *Cæsar*, then at *Sevil*, who caused it to be honourably buried.

6. Many *Lusitanians* who had escaped the Hands of *Cesonius*, in the Pursuit of *Pompey*, not knowing what had happen'd, as soon as they perceived the *Romans* were gone, returned to the Cave to look for him; and finding only the Trunk of the Body, resolved to revenge his Death. *Didius* the Admiral having left *Cesonius*, was then Carcening his Vessels on the Shoar, without suspecting any Danger; but one Night the *Lusitanians* came down upon him in three several Bodies, and firing his Ships, put the Men to the Sword, and the Head of *Didius* they sent to *Philo*, their General. As soon as *Sextus Pompeius*, at *Cordova*, understood the Death of his Brother, he marched out of the City with all his Forces; and joining with the *Lusitanians* that were dispersed thereabouts, he met *Cesonius*, who be-headed *Cneus*, and put him to flight. In the mean while, *Cæsar* went to take Possession of *Cordova*; and returning to *Sevil*, he found *Philo*, with the *Lusitanians*, in it; who was forced to fly, after massacring many of the Citizens. He fled into *Lusitania*, to raise Forces; where, in the City *Lenius*, he found *Cecilius Niger*, with a good Body: Both together got into *Sevil*, surprizing the *Roman* Army; but paid for it with the Loss of all their Men. This done, *Cæsar* peirc'd in-

to

to *Portugal*; and with his Clemency towards the con-  
quered People, won their Hearts. At *Beja* he granted  
Peace to the *Lusitanians*; whence that City was after-  
wards called *Pax Julia*. Thence, he went to *Evora*,  
which, of his Bounty towards it, took the Name of  
*Liberalitas Julia*. In like manner, he left his Name to  
other Places: *Mertola* was called *Julia Mirtilis*; *San-*  
*tarem*, before *Scalabis*, *Julium Præsidium*; and *Lisbon*, *Pax Julia*.

7. *Asinius Pollio*, a valiant and wise Man, was left  
Governor of the Provinces of *Andaluzia* and *Lusitania*,  
in *Cæsar's* Absence. He soon quelled some Troops that  
ravaged the Country about the Mountains of *Algarve*.  
About the same time *Sextus Pompeius* came out from  
among the *Lacetani*, where he had been hid after his  
Defeat, and was by *Niconius Saxo* conducted to *Hanni-*  
*bal's* Port, now *Villa-nova de Portemao*, in *Algarve*;  
where he continued in a miserable Condition, till a  
Ship of Pyrates came into that Place: They, at the In-  
stance of *Saxo*, received him for their Captain; and un-  
derstanding who he was, set out joyfully, and took  
some Prizes, plundering the Coast, he gathered  
Strength; till coming to *Cartagena*, a whole *Roman* Le-  
gion joined him, beside many Companies of *Spaniards*.  
*Cæsar* hearing hereof, sent *Carina* to crush *Pompey*; but  
he was himself overthrown. *Pompey* hearing of the  
Death of *Cæsar*, gathered all the Power he could, and  
defeated the *Prætor*, *Asinius Pollio*: But being now al-  
most Master of all *Spain*, he was called away to *Rome*  
by the Senate. After some Success at Sea, he was rout-  
ed by the *Triumviri*; and flying into *Asia*, had his  
Head cut off by *Ticius*, one of *Mark Antony's* Comman-  
ders. Whilst these Things were doing in the East, all  
*Spain*, but particularly *Lusitania*, suffered much by  
Floods, Storms, Sicknefs, and several other Calami-  
ties. Many that lived near the Coast, thinking to fly  
from these Miseries, ran headlong into greater; for,  
breaking in upon the *Moor* of Old *Castile*, they were  
repulsed with great Slaughter, by *Cneus Domitius*, Le-  
gate to *Lepidus*. Near this same time, one *Bellus*, who  
had been *Quæstor* to *Asinius Pollio*, fearing to be called  
to Account for his Extortions, fled into *Africa*, and  
perswaded King *Bogud* to invade *Spain*. He took the  
advice; and having plunder'd the Coast of *Andaluzia*,  
retired

42.

*Sextus Pompeius appears again, and makes great Com-motions.*

36.

*Great Floods, Storms and Sicknefs in Spain.*

*Bogud the African invades the Coast.*

F

33.

retired with a great Booty, upon the News that the *Romans* and *Spaniards* had assembled a great Power against him. Three Years after he returned, but was repulsed with Loss, and retired to *Tarifa*; where having recruited himself, he set Sail for *Hannibal's Port*, in *Lusitania*; which being abandoned, he plunder'd, with the Country about it. Not content with this, he turned to *Cape St. Vincent*; and coming to *Setuval*, without the least Opposition, ranfacked it, putting all he found in the Place to the Sword, and then setting fire to it. Some that fled to the Mountains, gathering more Strength, came down to revenge their Losses on the *Mauritanians*; but he was then sailing up the River of *Alcazar*, where he robbed and rased a Temple of the Goddess *Salacia*. Scarce was he returned to his Ships, when a violent Storm arising, destroyed the greatest part of his Fleet; those few Wretches that escaped the Fury of the Sea by swimming, being cut in pieces upon the Shoar.

28.

The Galicians over-  
ran the most  
part of Lu-  
sitania.

8. The Inhabitants of the City and Territories of *Tuy*, in *Galicia*, passing the River *Minho* on a sudden, thought to have made themselves Masters of the Lands then possessed by the *Bracarenfes*, and other People, between *Duero* and *Minho*. These, though surprized with the unexpected Invasion, gathered in a great Body, and went out to meet the uninvited Guests. Between them passed many Skirmishes; but at last, coming to a Battel, the *Interamnenses* were overthrown, with great Slaughter. The Victors pursuing their Fortune, without Resistance, passed on to the Banks of the River *Duero*. The Inhabitants of the City of *Porto*, terrified at the Fame of their Success, sent Ambassadors to sue for Peace, and Friendship; putting them in Mind, they were all originally *Greeks*. This took so well with the conquering *Galicians*, that they allowed of the Kindred, and so exempted the City of *Porto* from being plunder'd and burnt, as all others they came at were. But a violent Pestilence raging among the *Galicians*, so wasted them, that they were obliged to return home, carrying the Contagion with them; so that the Harm they did at home was greater than the Profit of their Expedition.

9. The *Bracarenfes* delivered from the Fear of two terrible Enemies, the Plague, and the *Galicians*, resolved

ved to be revenged on the People of *Porto*, for having joined with those of *Galicia*, only for their own Preference. War being declared, the Aggressors had the better; till in one Battel, those of *Porto* took some Prisoners, on whom they exercised their Cruelty. Many of them they tied to Stakes upon their Walls, and in the sight of their Enemies, shot them for Sport. Moved at this Sight, the *Bracarenfes* sent certain Troops to take Revenge on them; but they being either killed or taken Prisoners, served only to revive their Sorrow. Among these were a Son and a Father-in-Law, whose Death so troubled the Wife of the one, and Daughter of the other, that associating her self with some desperate Women, and a good Number of Soldiers, she, in the Night, laid an Ambush, not far from the City; and scaling the Walls, silently stole thence the two Bodies: But being discovered by the Sentinels, she was pursued by the Towns-men, whom she led to the Place of the Ambush, where most of them were killed, or made Prisoners: The Prisoners she carried in Triumph to *Braga*, and there, on the Walls, made them suffer the same Death which their Country-men had inflicted on her Friends. This done, she honourably buried her Father and Husband, and then killed her self. Now the Citizens of *Porto*, finding themselves hard beset by the *Bracarenfes*, prayed Aid of *Norbanus Calvius*, Legate to *Augustus*, in *Lusitania*; with whose Assistance they twice overthrew their Enemies. Many Cities, seeing that of *Porto* victorious, sent to congratulate and curry Favour with them. One of the Cities that followed this Counsel was *Cinnia*, lying nearer to *Braga* than *Porto*; but they had afterwards Occasion enough to repent.

War be-  
twixt the  
People of  
Braga and  
Porto.



## CHAP. IX.

*The total Conquest of all Spain, by Augustus Cæsar: With all other Occurrences, from the Year 27, before the Birth of Christ, till his Blessed Nativity.*

1. **M**ORE were the *Bracarenfes* grieved to see their Neighbours slighted them, than at the Loss they had sustained; and therefore, gathering again their Forces, they marched towards *Porto*: An Hundred and fifteen Women and 200 Men, made up a Party of Light-Horse, which, leaving the rest of their Army in Ambush, went to draw the Enemy out. *Norbanus Calvius* marched out with all his Force, that Body of Horse before-mentioned sometimes flying, and sometimes fighting, till they drew the *Romans* to the Place of Ambush, where a mighty Slaughter was made of the *Romans*, and the People of *Porto*. *Norbanus* was killed by a Woman, who returned to *Braga* with his Head and Right Hand; as did several others, with those of several Men of Note. The *Bracarenfes* used their Victory with Insolency, oppressing the City of *Porto* in the heavy Conditions of Peace they prescribed to them. Being delivered of that Enemy, they bent their Force against *Cinania*, in Revenge for their having joined with those of *Porto*; and laid Siege to the City. The Besieged were not unprovided, nor did they want Resolution; so that many brave Attempts were made on both sides. At length, Hunger beginning to pinch the Besieged, and the Besiegers being sensible thereof, the Case grew desperate: When the *Cinanians* had devoured all that was to be found in the City, rather than submit themselves to the Cruelty of their Enemies, they set open their Gates; and rushing out like hungry Lions, failed but little of obtaining the Victory; but at length, oppressed with the Multitude they were all put to the Sword, without Distinction of Sex or Age. Nor was this all, for the Victors executed their Rage upon the very Stones, overthrowing the Walls, and rasing all the Buildings to the Ground.

2. O.

The People  
of Braga  
subdue  
Porto.

2. *Octavius Cæsar* having now brought all the *Roman* Empire under his Subjection, found that only three Nations in *Spain* opposed his Authority; and those were, the *Biscainers*, *Galicians*, and *Lusitanians*, who inhabited between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*. To the subduing Augustus of these, he came in Person, with a mighty Power; but Cæsar being taken in *Biscay* with a violent Hypochondriack <sup>comes into</sup> Distemper, he left there two Legates to continue the *Spain*. War, and went away to take the delightful Air of *Andaluzia*, where he gave himself up to the Care of his Physician, *Anthony Musa*; who effecting a great Cure upon him, was magnificently rewarded. Whilst he was under Cure, his Legates overthrew the *Biscainers*, betrayed to them by the *Tragicini*. Such as escaped, fled to *Lancia*, a City near *Oviedo* in *Asturias*, where they made some Opposition, but at last were forced to submit. Thence the Victors advanced, bearing down all before them, quite through *Galicia*. We have no particular Account, how the People between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho* were subdued; whether they submitted, terrified with the Example of the others; or else were included in the Conquest of *Galicia*.

3. *Augustus*, thus become Lord of the World, to reward his old Soldiers, who had served him so many *Augusta* Years, he assigned them Lands, and founded a City, <sup>(now Merida)</sup> which he called *Emerita Augusta*, <sup>(now Merida)</sup> which he made the Metropolis of *Lusitania*, and gave it mighty Privileges. Some will not have *Augustus* to be the Founder, but rather Repairer of *Merida*. In Gratitude for this his Bounty, they raised Temples to him, and dedicated Priests to his Service. All the Cities in *Spain* followed their Example. That of *Porto* used all manner of Flattery, to oblige him to their Assistance, in order to cut off the heavy Yoke imposed upon them by their Enemies, the *Bracarenfes*. Their Ambassadors were favourably heard, and brought back an Answer, such as they could have wished, that *Caius Antistius* and *Marcus Agrippa* were upon their March, to their Assistance. This so encouraged the Inhabitants of *Porto*, that before the *Roman* Forces could join them, they not only ravaged the open Country, but entered the City of *Braga*, with great Slaughter; those Citizens suspecting no such thing: Yet, laying hold of their Weapons, they pursued them to the very Walls of *Porto*. Scarce had they encamped

F 3

encamped about the City, when they perceived the *Romans* upon them, so numerous, that they were forced to fly with all speed, and take the Shelter of their own Walls, providing for a dangerous Siege. Before the *Romans* could take their Posts about the City, the *Bracarenfes* sallied out, and much Harm was done on both sides. Among the Prisoners taken by the *Romans*, was a young Maid, who had acted like a Virago: She was taken by a Trooper; and the *Roman* General, by her Beauty; who would have set her at liberty, promising to pay her Ransom: The Trooper pressed, he might either have the Money, or Liberty to make use of his Captive: She snatching a Ponyard out of his Hand, ran to kill him; but mistaking her Stroke, stab'd her self. The *Bracarenfes* retiring, the *Romans* took their Posts; and many Skirmishes passing between them, it happen'd that *Anstius*, one of the *Roman* Generals, was taken, and fell into the Hands of the Father of that Maid above-mentioned; who, for that he had honourably buried his Daughter, sent him away free, and honourably presented. *Agrippa*, to requite the Kindness shewn to his Colleague, raised the Siege, and obtained many Favours of *Augustus*, for the City; perswading him, that those of *Porto* were in the wrong. Thenceforth it was called *Augusta Bracara*; and had the Privilege of a *Roman* Colony.

*Augustus*  
acknow-  
ledged En-  
peror of the  
World, and  
Temples e-  
rected to  
him.

4. The Emperor *Augustus* being at *Tarragona*, received there Ambassadors from all Parts of the then known World, congratulating his happy Accession to so great an Empire. Then it was, he concluded himself an absolute Monarch, being complemented, flattered and fawned upon by all Nations; in so much that they begged Leave to erect Temples to him, and give him Divine Honours. He granted their Request; and, among that Multitude, to the Ambassadors of *Lusitania*. At *Santarem* a Temple was built, in the manner of a Fort; which was afterwards thought to denote a greater Inclination to War, than to Devotion. On this Account, *Accidius Cestius*, *Augustus*'s Legate, obstructed the building of another at *Lisbon*. The People, to remove his Suspicion, erected it on the Rock of *Sintra*, upon the Ocean. No less than for these stately Structures, *Augustus* was renowned for the Computation of Time, begun from him, and commonly called *Æra*. The Reason of this Name,

is not our Affair to decide: Certain it is, it continued in *Arragon* till the Year of *Christ*, 1358; when *K. Peter IV.* ordered the Computation of Time, for the future, to be from the Birth of our Saviour. *K. John I.* of *Castile*, followed his Example, in the Year of Grace, 1383. And *King John I.* of *Portugal*, imitated them both, in 1415.

5. It was two Years before the Birth of *Christ*, when all *Portugal*, entirely subdued, enjoyed perfect Peace. *Augustus* had divided the Kingdom into four Provinces, subject to as many Courts of Judicature: These were, *Merida*, *Santarem*, *Braga* and *Beja*: In each of these was a Prætor, and other Officers of Justice. *Augustus* was still at *Tarragona*, when he published that memorable Decree for numbering of all the People in his Empire, and imposing on every Head a Tribute, or Poll-Tax; which, as some compute it, was, to the value of about 4*d.* according to others, 4*d.* half Penny; or, as others say, 9*d.* The first Court in *Lusitania*, where the Edict was published, was *Santarem*. By the Lists it appeared, that in *Lusitania* there were 5068000 Heads of Families; a wonderful Number, if true; but much to be doubted.

*Portugal*,  
how divi-  
ded by *Au-*  
*gustus*.

6. About this time, in the Province between the *Ri-* *Corocota*,  
*vers Duero* and *Minho*, there started up a *Lusitanian*, cal-  
led *Corocota*; who gathering a parcel of Outlaws toge-  
ther, after committing several Outrages, durst venture  
to give the *Romans* Battel in open Field: But being de-  
feated, they fled to *Biscay*, where they, in Warlike man-  
ner, followed the Trade of Robbing. *Octavius* the Em-  
peror promised 3000 Crowns, and a Pardon for all  
Crimes whatsoever, to any that should apprehend him.  
He fearing there could not be wanting Criminals desirous  
of Pardon, nor covetous Persons who would attempt any  
thing for Interest, resolved to gain the Reward and Par-  
don by a magnanimous, though dangerous Action: He  
presented himself to the Emperor, demanding both the  
Reward, and promised Pardon, since he delivered into  
his Hands *Corocota*, whom, perhaps, no Man else could  
have put into his Power. With which that generous  
Prince was so taken, that he proved much better than  
his Word; for he not only pardoned him, and gave  
him the Money, but admitted him into his Guards.

The 21<sup>st</sup>  
of 0<sup>th</sup> S<sup>th</sup>  
mour.


7. It was now the Year of the World 3952, according  
to *Bede*, and the *Hebrews*; according to *Eusebius*, 5199;  
according

according to *Orosius*, 5200; according to *Isidorus*, 5219; according to the Astronomers, 5328; according to King *Alphonso*, 6980; according to *John Lucidus*, 3960, (such is the Variety of Computations;) and according to others, 3962. This last being, in my Opinion, the best Account, and followed in this History, it must then be 2432 Years after the Flood, when, on the 25th of *December*, about Midnight, the REDEEMER of Mankind was born in the Stable at *Bethlehem*; wonderful Signs preceding his Birth. The Angels descended, singing, *Glory to GOD on high, and on Earth, Peace unto Men of Good Will*: They spread abroad the News of that wonderful Birth; and awaked the Shepherds, to behold the LAMB of GOD. In the mean while, the Three Kings of the *East* travelled, conducted by a miraculous STAR, to pay their Adoration to the KING of Kings.

*Signs of  
our Savi-  
our's Birth  
in Spain.*

8. Spain wanted not its particular Signs of the Blessing communicated to Mankind that happy Night. That very Night was enlighten'd with a glorious bright-shining Cloud, which not only diffused a Light equal to the Noon-day-Sun, but also an Heat nothing inferior to it. This Cloud drove away to the West, and set in the Ocean; at such time as the Morning-Beams appearing, no Distinction could be made between Day and Night. And that *Portugal* might not want some singular Tokens of the Coming of the GOD of Peace, the Idol of the false God *Endovelicus*, whose Temple was near *Villaviciosa*, fell from the Altar, to the Ground; and though of Massy Silver, it was broke into several Pieces, which, for the Rarity, were sent to *Rome*, where many other Idols had been destroyed at the same Hour. Besides this, an extraordinary Light appeared (like that which was seen all over *Spain*) upon the Promontory called *Barbaricus*, now *Serra da Arabida*.

### *The End of the First BOOK.*

 Note, That hitherto we have diminished the Years, from the Flood, till the Coming of CHRIST; henceforward we shall increase them, from his Birth, to the End of the History.

THE

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

## The Second BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

*All that hapned remarkable in Lusitania under the Roman Emperors, from the Birth of our Saviour Jesus Christ, till the Tear of Grace 260.*

1. **T**HE whole Universe being restored to Peace by the Birth of the King of Peace, *Peace* after *Augustus* Caesar caused the Gates of the Temple of *Janus* to be shut. This was the Birth of third and last time those Gates were closed, and *Augustus* the remaining part of his Life, enjoyed a wonderful Felicity. Our *Lusitania* had its share in this Tranquility, having entirely submitted it self to the Roman Yoak, and now reaping the Fruits of Peace under its Government. *Quadratus*, and *Titus Flavius Caudianus* were Legates or Pretors at this time, as appears by several Ancient Inscriptions found upon Stones. Not far

far from this time the *Lusitanians* inhabiting *Vouga*, or *Vacca*, made an expedition as far as the Cities *Affota*, and *Lacedemona*, in whose Territory they founded a Town, which of the Name of their own Country they called *Vacca*. and being delighted with the pleasantness of the Place, they added the word *Chara*, whereby it came to be called *Charavacca*. The News of the Death of the Emperor *Augustus*, being brought into *Lusitania*, his Funeral Honours were performed with no less Grandeur than they had been at *Rome*. *Hispania Ulterior* which includes *Portugal*, was at this time Governed by the Proconsul *Vibius Serenus*, whose unlimited Avarice was the cause he exercised many Cruelties towards the People; nor were the *Spanish* Mines and Rivers, yielding Yearly three Millions of Crowns in Gold, sufficient to satisfy his unmeasurable Covetousness.

Tiberius  
succeeds  
Augustus  
in the Em-  
pire.

2. *Tiberius* having succeeded *Augustus* in the Empire, appeared no less insatiable than his Lieutenant. The *Lusitanians* by their Ambassadors, asked leave to Erect a Temple to him and his Mother *Drusilla*, which he, pretending Modesty, refused: But in Reality was more desirous of their Gold, than of their Adoration. To shew that Learning was then esteemed here, several *Lusitanians* went into *Italy*, only to see the famous Historian *Titus Livius*; with them went Ambassadors from *Lisbon*, to give an Account of a Prodigy there seen. It was a perfect Man coming out of the Sea, who sitting upon the Rocks, founded a great Shell as if it had been a Horn, so loud and shrill, that it drew the People thither to see who it was. Admiring the sight of that Creature, they sent that Embassy, which is a token no such Creature had been seen before; tho' Authors affirm that several have appeared since. The *Roman* Emperors were Lords of our Kingdom of *Lusitania* for some Ages, but for Brevity sake, I will not mention them all as they succeeded one another, but only speak of those, who left something memorable among us.

Caius Caligula.

3. After *Tiberius*, the Imperial Crown was put upon the Head of *Caius Caligula*, whose horrid course of Life made the wickedness of his Predecessor be looked upon as innocence. *Caligula* in the 4th. Year of his Reign was Murthered, as had been his Predecessor: During his Reign, *St. James* the Apostle came into *Spain*, where he Preached the Gospel, and converted many by vir-

St. James  
the Apostle  
in Spain.

tue

tue of the mighty Miracles he Wrought. Among the rest, he is said to have raised to life a Citizen of *Braga* by extraction, a Jew called *Samuel* the Younger, or *Malachias* the Elder Son, to the Prophet *Urias*, who had been Buried near 600 Years; him he called *Peter*, and constituted the first Bishop of *Braga*, and the first in all *Spain*: This Bishop suffered Martyrdom at *Rates*, four Leagues from *Braga*, and is therefore called *St. Peter of Rates*. Another of his Disciples *St. James* left in the Church of *Cinania*, once a populous City, now a poor place scarce the shadow of what it was, between *Braga* and *Guimaraens* upon the River *Ave*. In this same place he was Martyred by the Neighbouring People, in memory whereof, they to this day as it were acknowledging the crime, resort to his Church barefooted, and with Cords about them. The Martyrs name was *Torquatus*, now corruptly called *Torcade*; *St. James* embarking at *Corunna*, sailed into *England*, in whose absence *Peter* the Archbishop of *Braga*, having spread the Faith made several Bishops. As the Nuptials of a little King's Son were Celebrating on the shoar of *Bouzas*, not far from *Porto*, the Bride-groom being on Horse-back among many others, suddenly there appeared a Ship at Sea; When it drew near, the Bridegroom was carried away by his Horse through the Water, and suddenly appeared upon the Ship covered with Crosses and Shells: Wondring what this should mean, he asked of those in the Ship, who told him, They brought the Body of *St. James* the Apostle, who had wrought that Miracle to convert him and the Neighbouring People; and a voice from Heaven said, it was the Will of God, that all those who went to visit the Apostle's Sepulcher, should be so adorned with Crosses. The Bridegroom returned ashore, his Horse treading the Water, as if it had been firm Land, whereupon he and all present were Baptized: Thus much may suffice as to the Preaching of *St. James* the Apostle, and the bringing of his Body after his Death into *Spain*.

44.

46.

4. After *Caligula* Reigned, *Claudius*, a Prince as foolish as his Predecessor was wicked; no Memory of him remains in *Portugal*, it had been well if there were none in the World. Of *Nero*, his Successor, there are still many Monuments in *Lusitania*, and also of his Mother *Agrippina*, for to her they Erected Statues. In

56.

The Empe-  
rors Clau-  
dius and  
Nero.

the



Galba.

Otho.

Vitellius.

Vespasian

80.

Titus and  
Domitian

the time of Nero, *Silvius Otho* Governed *Portugal*, the Emperor conferred that Honour upon him, the more freely in his absence to enjoy his Wife *Popea*, whose incontinency gave occasion for him to fall in love with her Beauty. Ten Years did *Otho* Govern this Province, with so great Equity and Moderation, that he obliged the People afterwards to assist him towards obtaining the Empire. A great number of Martyrs suffered under this cruel Emperor, as well in *Spain*, as in other parts: Next to *Nero*, *Galba* ascended the Imperial Throne, rather for the hatred all Men bore his Predecessor, than for any Merit of his own. *Otho* then Governor of *Lusitania*, in Revenge of the wrong done him in the Person of his Wife *Popea*, assisted him: Nevertheless, once possessed of the Government, he grew as odious as he had been before desirable, and therefore having held it but Eight Months was Murthered. His Death opened the way for *Otho*, who had won the hearts of all Men, with much Bounty and Clemency, to aim at the Crown. *Otho*, to gratify the Affections of the *Lusitanians*, granted great Privileges to many Towns, but particularly to *Merida*, then the Metropolis of the Province; only three Months lasted the Sovereignty of *Otho*, for understanding that *Vitellius* with the German Army, by which he was saluted Emperor, was marching against him, he in despair Slew himself; nor did *Vitellius* hold it above Eight Months.

5. *Vespasian* succeeded *Vitellius*, and by his Prudence and Moderation, cheered the hearts of all his People: *Lusitania* was particularly favoured by him, for he adorned it with noble Works; one of them was the great Road he made from *Braga* to *Orense* the space of Fifteen Leagues, which breaking through many rough and uncooth places, runs so smooth, there is not the least Ascent or Descent in it. Near to the Town of *Chaves* (of him called *Aqua Flavie*) he built a Bridge over the River *Tamaga*, with a large Inscription on it: *Vespasian* died, having Reigned Nine Years and a half, and left the Empire to his two Sons, *Titus* the Good, and *Domitian* the Wicked. During their sway, *Lusitania* was divided into three Districts, whose heads were *Merida*, *Boja* and *Santarem*. In the three were Forty Six Towns of Note, five of them were Roman Colonies,

nies, to wit, *Merida*, *Medellia*, *Norba Cesarea* near *Alcantara*, *Braga* and *Santarem*, besides others that had the Liberties of *Rome* or *Latium*, under the Name of *Municipia*. The Limits of *Lusitania* were along the Sea Coast from the Mouth of the River *Guadiana*, to that of *Duero*, and thence to the River *Minho*: Towards the inland, it ran from *Guadiana* to *Medina del Campo*, including the City *Salamanca* with all *Estremadura*, bordered by the River *Duero*. *Nerva*, the succeeding Emperor, much mended the state of *Rome* and the whole Empire, but chiefly by adopting *Trajan* the Spaniard, so that still a better Emperor followed a good one. *Portugal* retains no Monument of *Nerva*; only it appears by a Stone found in the Ruins of *Atilia*, which was between *Genoa* and *Tortona*, that several Troops of *Lusitanians* served under the Imperial Banners.

Nerva.

Trajan.

6. Tho' *Trajan* began his Reign with great moderation, yet as is usual in great Empires, many places Rebelled, which were afterwards subdued by his Generals. He adorned this Kingdom with many Publick and Majestick Structures, not laying the Burden of the Expence upon the People, but defraying it out of his own Revenue; among these Works is still famous the Bridge he Built over *Tagus*, called the Bridge of *Trajan*, till the *Moors* gave it the Name of the Bridge of *Alcantara*. It consists of six Arches, the two middlemost whereof being the largest reach over the River, when there are no Floods: The length of it is 670 Foot, the Breadth 28, and the height above 200; the Stones are all of one Bigness, four Foot in length, and two in Breadth. Between the two middle Arches on both sides, is an Inscription in Marble, to this Effect: 'To the Emperor *Cesar Augustus Nerva Trajanus*, Son to the Divine *Nerva*, Conqueror of *Germany* and *Dacia*, high Priest, Father of his Country, who was Eight times Tribune, and Six times Consul: On both sides of this Inscription, were the Names of the Towns that contributed towards the Fabrick; near to the Bridge is a Church, tho' little in it self, yet considerable in the Workmanship: It is but twenty Foot in length, and ten in breadth, but being cut out of the Rock, consists of only one Stone. It is now Dedicated to *St. Julian*, formerly to all the Gods as the *Rotunda* at *Rome*: in it is a Roman Inscription containing these Words: *Consecra-*

ted to the Emperor Nerva Trajanus, Cæsar Augustus, Germanicus, Dacicus. Another Bridge, begun by *Vespasian*, at *Chaves*, was also finished by *Trajan*; as appears by the Inscriptions upon it.

The Lusitanians revolt, and are reduced by Trajan.

7. The *Lusitanians*, under the usual Pretence of Oppression, broke out into open Rebellion, and committed many Insolencies. For the suppressing of whom, *Trajan* sent 14 Legions, which utterly destroyed many populous Towns and Cities. One of these Cities was *Lamego*, which now stands not far from its antient Seat, on the South side of the River *Duero*; and is one of the best Bishopricks in the Kingdom. In the 14 Legions were many *Lusitanians*, who, in that common Calamity, helped much to the preserving their Country from utter Exirpation. *Trajan* died a natural Death; which was then looked upon as no small Rarity. His Fleets had before sailed down the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, into the *Persian* Gulph, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean; where taking some Vessels that came from *Bengale*, he got much Information concerning those Countries: Age, and other Cares, hinder'd him from making a farther Progress in those Discoveries.

Adrian.

8. *Adrian* next ascended the Imperial Throne; who thinking it impossible to maintain all the Conquests of the Empire, he wholly abandoned them. To secure the rest of that vast Monarchy, he placed Foreign Governors over all the Provinces. Over the *Lusitanians*, he placed *Andaluzians*; and over them, *Lusitanians*: These governed so well, that two of them had Statues erected to their Memory. *Quintus Pontius Severus*, one of the two, was born at *Braga*: And *Cains Caretius Fusius*, the other, at *Chaves*. Other Monuments there are of *Adrian*, in *Portugal*, but not material to History. He reigned almost 21 Years. *Antoninus Pius*, his Successor, held the Empire 22 Years, but left no Memorial in *Portugal*. About these Times was laid the first Foundation of the City *Basto*, (afterwards *Basta*;) among the *Bastetani*: As also *Basto*, between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*; whereof only the Name is now preserved, in a miserable poor Village. Then also, or soon after, an Heretick, called *Mark*, laboured to infect the People of *Valencia*, in the same Province, between *Duero* and *Minho*; and though driven thence, failed not of some Followers among the Women, but those of the meanest

140.  
Antoninus Pius.

meanest sort; for the others abhorred him. Great 162.  
Troubles happen'd in *Spain*, but most in the Province *Marcus*  
of *Lusitania*, during the Reign of *Marcus Aurelius*. A *Aurelius*.  
vast Multitude of *Mauritanians*, being in Rebellion *The Mau-*  
against the Emperor, came over into *Spain*; and ha- *ritanians*  
ving robbed the Sea-port Towns, they boldly pierced *ravage*  
into the In-land. *Portugal* was so involved in this *Spain*.  
mity, that it came near to utter Desolation: All that  
lay along the Coast, from the Cape of *St. Vincent*, to  
the Mouth of the River *Duero*, was consumed with Fire  
and Sword: *Lisbon* held out several furious Assaults, by  
the Strength of its Situation: *Porto*, after a vigorous  
Resistance, was forced to Article. After having com-  
mitted all manner of Outrages, the *Africans* put to Sea,  
for fear of the *Roman* Legions, and *Lusitanian* Forces,  
which were upon their March towards them. For  
above 70 Years, in which 13 Emperors reigned, till  
*Maximin*, we are in Darkness as to the Affairs of *Portu-*  
*gal*: For, though there are some old Inscriptions extant,  
they only serve to prove there were such Emperors;  
which is not to our purpose, since our Subject is only  
what relates to *Portugal*.

9. The Memory of *Maximin*, the Successor of *Ale-* 239.  
*xander Severus*, is preserved in the City *Braga*, in a *Maximin*  
Street and Gate of his Name. He also made several  
Ways and Bridges in that Country, as appears by In-  
scriptions upon Stones. Some other Reigns passed,  
without any thing remarkable. In that of the careless 269.  
*Galienus*, a Plague came out of the *East*, bearing down *Galienus*.  
all to the *West*; and raged so violently in *Lusitania*,  
that the Cities were almost left desolate, and the Fields  
untilled. *Galienus*, awaken'd at this Scourge, ordered  
the Persecution against the *Christians*, which had been  
continued ever since the Time of *Decius*, to cease. This  
Persecution had filled Heaven with Martyrs; and also  
terrified others in such a manner, that they renounced *Persecution*  
the Faith. Among the latter, were, *Marcialis*, Bishop *under him*.  
of *Merida*; and *Basilides*, of *Astorga*. *Elanus*, or *Le-*  
*lius*, Deacon of *Merida*, a Man of great Learning and  
Vertue, assembled a National Council in that City;  
where the two Idolatrous Bishops were deposed. They,  
to recover their Honour, feigned Repentance: And  
*St. Stephen*, then Pope, believing the Fiction, ordered  
them to be restored; but his Command was not obey-  
ed

ed by the Council, who therein took the Advice of St. Cyprian, then Bishop of Carthage. Another Council was held at *Braga*, to decide whether the Baptism of Hereticks, done with an Intention, was valid: And it passed in the Affirmative. After the Plague, followed a no less Evil; which was, an Inundation of *Germans*, over all the Provinces of the Empire. Most Places now known in *Portugal* only by their Ruins, were by them overthrown, and not by the *Goths*: For, the *Germans* designing to return home, spoiled all they could not carry away; whereas the *Goths*, coming to settle, spared much, for their own Use. Thus ended the Empire of *Galicus*.

## CHAP. II.

*The Heresie of Priscilian. The Coming into Spain of the Vandals, Alans, Suevians and Goths. The Kingdom of the Suevians settled in Portugal. And all other Passages of Note, from the Year 271, to the Year 448.*

271. I. **C**laudius II. and Aurelianus were Successors to *Galicus*, in the Empire. The latter was he that overcame the most Warlike *Zenobia*, Queen of *Palmira*. Under these Emperors suffered Martyrdom nine Sisters, the Daughters of *Lucius Catellius*, or *Caius Atilius*, Governor of *Galicie* and *Lusitania*; as some Authors have it, born at *Braga*; but others say, he was a German. These things are very obscure, and uncertain; as are all the Affairs of *Lusitania*, till the Time of *Constantine the Great*. Only this is certain, That a great Number of Martyrs suffered under the Heathen Emperors, throughout all *Spain*; and consequently, *Portugal* had a great Share in them. The Emperor *Constantine*, after quieting the Troubles of *Spain*, the better to settle the Spiritual Government, assembled a National Council at *Toledo*: In it the Metropolitan Churches were settled; which were, *Braga* and *Merida*, for *Lusitania*;

*tania*; *Toledo*, *Sevil* and *Cordova*, for the rest of *Spain*. Another Council was afterwards held at *Illyris*, which was near *Granada*, for settling many Things relating to the Affairs of the Church. There met at it 19 Bishops, 3 whereof went out of *Portugal*; which were, *Vincentius*, of *Ossonoba*, in *Algarve*; *Januarius*, of *Alcazar de Sal*; and *Quincianus*, of *Evora*. *Constantine* regulated the Government of the Empire, reducing it to a better Form than any of his Predecessors had done. He employed Spanish Forces in remote Parts: In *Egypt* was a Body of Spanish Horse, and another of *Lusitanian* Foot: Also Spanish Horse, in *Arabia*; and others, in other Places. *Constantine* favoured *Lusitania*, bestowing great Privileges on it, and eased it of heavy Taxes. These are all the Memorials that remain of him, in this Kingdom: Nor is there any of five of his Successors.

2. In this Age, the Heresie of *Priscilian* was condemned at *Rome*, in *France*, and *Spain*; he having before suffered Death for it. This Heresie was first introduced in *Egypt*, and thence brought into *Spain*, by one *Mark*, who soon gained the Affections of some Ladies, because he allowed (among his other Tenets) that Married People might be divorced, only upon Dislike of one another. A certain Lady, called *Agape*, was the great Favourer of this new Doctrine, and in her House it was taught; one *Helpidius*, a Grammarian, being the chief Professor. *Priscilianus*, born in *Galicie*, with some Smattering he had of Rhetorick and Philosophy, and a little Skill in Magick, of a Disciple, in a few Days became so absolute a Master of this Heresie, that it ever after took Name of him. A Synod, assembled at *Zaragoza*, condemned all the Professors of this Heresie; yet they prevailed so far against this Decree, that *Priscilian* was made Bishop of *Avila*: Upon Complaint made to the Emperor *Gracian*, he ordered that *Priscilian*, and the other Heretical Bishops, should not only be expelled their Sees, but all *Spain*. After this, *Priscilian*, with Bribes, obtained an Order from one of the Emperor's Secretaries, to be himself restored to his Bishoprick; and the same for one of his Companions, the other being dead. The Catholick Bishops flying to the Emperor for Redress, *Priscilian* was not only deposed, but beheaded for his

ed by the Council, who therein took the Advice of St. Cyprian, then Bishop of Carthage. Another Council was held at *Braga*, to decide whether the Baptism of Hereticks, done with an Intention, was valid: And it passed in the Affirmative. After the Plague, followed a no less Evil; which was, an Inundation of *Germans*, over all the Provinces of the Empire. Most Places now known in *Portugal* only by their Ruins, were by them overthrown, and not by the *Goths*: For, the *Germans* designing to return home, spoiled all they could not carry away; whereas the *Goths*, coming to settle, spared much, for their own Use. Thus ended the Empire of *Galienus*.

## CHAP. II.

*The Heresie of Priscilian. The Coming into Spain of the Vandals, Alans, Suevians and Goths. The Kingdom of the Suevians settled in Portugal. And all other Passages of Note, from the Year 271, to the Year 448.*

271. I. **C**laudius II. and Aurelianus were Successors to *Galienus*, in the Empire. The latter was he that overcame the most Warlike *Zenobia*, Queen of *Palmira*. Under these Emperors suffered Martyrdom nine Sisters, the Daughters of *Lucius Catellus*, or *Caius Atilius*, Governor of *Galicia* and *Lusitania*; as some Authors have it, born at *Braga*; but others say, he was a German. These things are very obscure, and uncertain; as are all the Affairs of *Lusitania*, till the Time of *Constantine the Great*. Only this is certain, That a great Number of Martyrs suffered under the Heathen Emperors, throughout all *Spain*; and consequently, *Portugal* had a great Share in them. The Emperor *Constantine*, after quieting the Troubles of *Spain*, the better to settle the Spiritual Government, assembled a National Council at *Toledo*: In it the Metropolitan Churches were settled; which were, *Braga* and *Merida*, for *Lusitania*;

*tania*; *Toledo*, *Sevil* and *Cordova*, for the rest of *Spain*. Another Council was afterwards held at *Iliberi*, which was near *Granada*, for settling many Things relating to the Affairs of the Church. There met at it 19 Bishops, 3 whereof went out of *Portugal*; which were, *Vincentius*, of *Ossonoba*, in *Algarve*; *Januarius*, of *Alcazar de Sal*; and *Quincianus*, of *Evora*. *Constantine* regulated the Government of the Empire, reducing it to a better Form than any of his Predecessors had done. He employed Spanish Forces in remote Parts: In *Egypt* was a Body of Spanish Horse, and another of *Lusitanian* Foot: Also Spanish Horse, in *Arabia*; and others, in other Places. *Constantine* favoured *Lusitania*, bestowing great Privileges on it, and eased it of heavy Taxes. These are all the Memorials that remain of him, in this Kingdom: Nor is there any of five of his Successors.

2. In this Age, the Heresie of *Priscilian* was condemned at *Rome*, in *France*, and *Spain*; he having before suffered Death for it. This Heresie was first introduced in *Egypt*, and thence brought into *Spain*, by one *Mark*, who soon gained the Affections of some Ladies, because he allowed (among his other Tenets) that Married People might be divorced, only upon Dislike of one another. A certain Lady, called *Agape*, was the great Favourer of this new Doctrine, and in her House it was taught; one *Helpidius*, a Grammarian, being the chief Professor. *Priscilianus*, born in *Galicia*, with some Smattering he had of Rhetorick and Philosophy, and a little Skill in Magick, of a Disciple, in a few Days became so absolute a Master of this Heresie, that it ever after took Name of him. A Synod, assembled at *Zaragoza*, condemned all the Professors of this Heresie; yet they prevailed so far against this Decree, that *Priscilian* was made Bishop of *Avila*: Upon Complaint made to the Emperor *Gracian*, he ordered that *Priscilian*, and the other Heretical Bishops, should not only be expelled their Sees, but all *Spain*. After this, *Priscilian*, with Bribes, obtained an Order from one of the Emperor's Secretaries, to be himself restored to his Bishoprick; and the same for one of his Companions, the other being dead. The Catholick Bishops flying to the Emperor for Redress, *Priscilian* was not only deposed, but beheaded for his



Contumacy. The other Bishop, called *Instancius*, recanted. Some of *Priscilian's* Disciples brought his Carcase into *Spain*, where he was revered as a Saint; and their most solemn Oaths were made by him. The Emperor *Maximin* would have put them all to the Sword, but *St. Martin* opposed it, being very angry that the *Spanish* Bishops had prosecuted *Priscilian* to Death: Nevertheless, *Maximin* defended the Bishops, and was offended at *St. Martin* for opposing them. A second *Constantine* filled the Imperial Throne, in the Person of *Theodosius*; so equal was their Justice, Clemency and Religion. About this time there is some Account, that the *Lusitanians* of *Ambracia* built *Placensia*, in the Province of *Cantabria*. There is still a Town there of this Name, and we find one *Proasius* Bishop thereof, mentioned in the Fifth Council of *Toledo*. But let us come out of this Obscurity, though not into full Light, yet to somewhat more Clearness, and speak of the Coming of the *Goths* into *Spain*.

Goths, who they were.

3. The *Goths* were descended of *Magog*, one of the Sons of *Japhet*, and Brother to *Tubal*, who first planned in *Scandinavia*, that vast Northern Tract of Land which, in the manner of a *Peninsula*, contains *Sweden*, *Norway* and *Gothland*: Out of the last came the *Goths*, well known in the World, no less for their many Victories, than for their beastly Barbarities: After this, broke out the *Suevians*, driven out of *Sweden*, by the *Goths*: And lastly, came that Inundation of *Vandals*, *Alans*, *Burgundians*, *Silingi*, and other Northern Nations, out of the Countries about the River *Tanaïs* and the *Palus Meotis*. Whilst these Nations were yet employed in *Germany* and *France*, the *Roman* Army in *Great Britain* saluted two of their Generals, *Marcus*, and *Gracianus*, Emperors, successively; and then killing them both, promoted *Constantius*; who fearing the like End as the others had met with, passed over into *France*; where joining with the greatest Men, he made himself Master of most of that Country. Encouraged with this Success, he sent out several Commanders of Note to possess themselves of *Spain*, expelling those that govern'd there for the Emperor *Honorius*. There had been no Difficulty in compassing his Design, but for *Didimus* and *Verinianus*; who being then in *Lusitania*, hastened with a good Power, to secure the Passes of

of the *Pyrenean Hills*. However, *Constantius*, the Son of *Constantius*, with certain *Veterane Legions*, and some Troops of *Alans* and *Suevians*, all in Rebellion against the Empire, forced their Way: The two Brothers pursued; and overtaking him, they came to a Battel, in which the *Imperialists* were overthrown, and *Constantius* obtained a compleat Victory. Thus the *Spaniards* were forced to submit themselves to *Constantius*. The Guard of the *Pyrenean Hills* was committed to the *Suevians* and *Alans*, that they might keep out the other Barbarous Nations, dispersed throughout *France*. Thus flushed with the rich Booty they had got in *Spain*, they invited the *Vandals*, *Alans*, *Suevians* and *Silingi*, whom they were to have kept out, into *Spain*. Those People, though under several Commanders, unanimous in the same purpose, passed the Mountains: *Guadericus* was King of the *Vandals*; *Hermenericus*, of the *Suevians*; and *Resplandianus*, of the *Alans*. They over-ran all the Country, gaining several Victories; so that the *Roman* Authority was wholly abolished, and *Spain* entirely brought under that barbarous Tyranny: All the Civility and Policy learnt of the *Romans*, reduced to a Brutal Disorder; and most of the antient Natives destroyed by Sword, Pestilence and Famine.

416.

4. The *Vandals* and *Silingi* planted themselves in the Province of *Betica*: The *Alans* and *Suevians*, in *Alans and Galicia* and *Lusitania*. In this universal Desolation, *Suevians* the Relicks of the Saints being destroyed, together with in *Lusitania* the Churches, *Panoracius*, Archbishop of *Braga*, gathered a Synod of some Bishops, and ordered them to hide the Bodies of the Saints, so that some Memory of the Places might be preserved to better Times. This was the First Council of *Braga*. In the mean First Council while, the Invaders took *Lisbon*, *Coimbra*, *Idanha*, *Me-cil of Bracida*, *Astorga*, and afterwards the rest. Having divided the Lands, and *Resplandianus*, King of the *Alans*, Kings of the dying, *Attaces* succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Lusitania*, and settled his Court in the City *Merida*. *Hermenericus*, King of the *Suevians*, kept *Lisbon*, and all as far as *Algarve*, with a part of *Galicia*. Both these Nations, in process of Time, became more tractable, and joined with the Natives. *Attaces* now grown powerful, became terrible to his Neighbours; sometimes

times breaking into *Celtiberia*, and sometimes into *Car-pentania*: Lastly, he fell upon *Hermenericus*, King of the *Suevians*, residing at *Lisbon*: From him, besides other Lands, he took the City *Colimbria*, seated then where now is *Conderia* the Old. To ennoble this his Conquest, he laid the Foundation of another City, on the Banks of the River *Mondego*, which is now the University of *Coimbra*. This Prince, being an *Arian* Heretick, obliged the *Catholicks*, and even the Prelates before taken, to work at this Building. Whilst he was busie at this Structure, *Hermenericus* having gathered Forces, and joined with *Gundericus*, came as far as *Porto*, then an Heap of Ruins: But fearing lest *Attaces* should there encounter him, he fortified himself, and that so effectually, that People flocking thither, the City was re-built, and called *New Portucale*, and *Fistavole*, which, in the *Suevian* Language, signified, the New Shoar. This was the second Foundation of *Porto*. *Hermenericus* perceiving that *Attaces* came not to molest him in his new Work, marched to disturb him; but being overthrown, he was glad to sue for Peace. The Conditions were such as pleased the *Alans*; but particularly, that which contained his marrying *Cindasunda*, the Daughter of the *Suevian* King, a Lady of incomparable Beauty and Vertue. *Hermenericus* carried the Bride to the new City *Coimbra*, where the Nuptials were solemnized with the greatest Magnificence that had been seen among the *Barbarians*.

5. *Attaces*, to express to his Father-in-Law how firmly he intended to observe the new-settled Friendship, caused *Cindasunda* to be painted on his Colours, standing upon a Pedestal; with a Green Dragon on the one side, and a Red Lion on the other. By those two Creatures, were signified, the two Kings, before Competitors, now united by her: The Work-men, to flatter their King, carved the same upon many Stones; which have been so preserved, that it is now the Coat of Arms of that City: *Cindasunda*, who was a *Catholic*, privately favoured those that the King forced to labour at his Structures: But particularly, she took Compassion on the Priests and Bishops; and among them, the Bishop *Elipandus*, and the Priest *Esenus*. She, with her Beauty and Intreaties, so mollified the King,

Porto re-  
built.

Arms of  
Porto.

King, that many *Catholicks* were delivered from that Slavery. They lived some Time together very unanimously: He employed himself in endeavouring to subdue such Provinces as yet remained subject to the *Roman* Empire; but the *Romans*, joining with the *Goths*, defended themselves; as will appear by the Sequel.

6. The Emperor *Honorius*, then at *Ravenna*, seeing the mighty Decay of the Empire, for *Constantius* was possessed of a great part of *France*; while, *Ataulfus*, the *Goth*, held *Gallia Narbonensis*; and the *Vandals*, *Suevians* and *Alans*, *Spain*. Against all these Enemies, he made choice of *Constantius*, a Noble *Roman*; who besieged *Constantine* in *Arles*, and drove him, for fear, to enter into Orders: Yet this availed him not, for he was put to Death. *Constantius* designed next to turn his victorious Arms against *Constans*, but understood that he was killed by *Geronius*, who rebelling, had proclaimed Emperor a Friend of his own, called *Maximus*. This *Geronius* passed over into *France*: And hearing that *Constantius*, having slain *Constantine*, was coming upon him, he returned into *Spain*, and, in Scorn, was murder'd by the *Roman* Legions. *Maximus* fearing the like Death, fled, and ended his Days in Misery. In the mean time, *Honorius* having, by his General *Constantius*, reduced *France* and Great Britain, he employed him against *Ataulfus*, King of the *Goths*, in *Gallia Narbonensis*. The *Goth* hard pressed, by the Way of *Roussillon*, broke into *Spain*, committing greater Outrages than the *Alans*, *Vandals*, *Suevians* or *Silingi* had done. After many Events which appertain not to our History, the *Goths* came to Composition with *Honorius*. But it was not so with the *Alans*, who possessed the greatest part of *Portugal*, and continued their Conquests; treating the *Vandals* and *Suevians*, not as their Fellows in Arms, but as their Vassals. This put all *Spain* into a Flame, every one standing up for his Liberty, as *Attaces* lifted up himself, to Lord it over all. That each Nation might be the more at leisure to follow their desperate Designs, they all writ to the Emperor, to this Effect: Preserve the Peace, Sir, with us all; Take Hostages from us all: Let us fight; for if we kill one another, the Loss is our own, and yours the Fruit of the Victory, whoever

has the better: Your greatest Advantage, is, to see us all consumed. The War was accordingly begun, the *Alans* commencing it against the *Vandals* and *Silingi*. *Constantius* came to this War, bringing with him *Valia* King of the *Goths*, whose Residence was in *Catalonia*: And *Attaces*, not able to withstand that Power, fled into *Portugal*.

7. The Victors pursued, and *Attaces* giving them Battel, was overthrown, though joined by the Native *Lusitanians*: Those that escaped out of the Battel, fled; some into *Galicia*, to *Gundericus*; others to *Lisbon*, to the *Suevians*; seeking the Protection of those they had before prosecuted as Enemies. Thus they rested a while, without any King: But *Constantius* being called away, to appease other Troubles in *Italy*, the *Alans* and *Lusitanians*, before dispersed, began to take heart, and recover what they had lost, founding also many new Towns. Among these, were, *Albuquerque* and *Terabrica*; which last was rather repaired, being called *Alankerken*, which signifies The Church of the *Alans*; and now, corruptly, *Alquerque*. Whilst the *Alans*, thus without any King, only following their Generals, paid Tribute to the Emperor; *Hermenericus*, the *Suevian* King, at *Lisbon*, applied himself to the repairing of the Towns that had been destroyed; treating the Native *Lusitanians* no otherwise than his own Country-men. The *Lusitanians* having the free Liberty of their Religion, and being equally admitted to all Honours with the *Suevians*, the two Nations joined Marriage; and by that Means became so entirely one, that there was no knowing the *Suevian* from the *Lusitanian*, or the contrary. Being thus joined into one Body, they could afterwards never be parted; but notwithstanding the Invasion of the *Goths*, the Inhabitants of *Portugal* were afterwards called *Suevians*. Thus the *Portugueses* are descended from the *Suevians*, no less Noble than the *Goths*, if either of those Barbarous Nations deserve to be esteemed Honourable: And thus the Province of *Lusitania* lost that Name, and was long after called *Suevia*.

419.

8. The *Alans* enjoyed Tranquility, without any King; as did the *Suevians*, or *Portugueses*, under their Sovereign *Hermenericus*; till *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*,

The *Suevians* incorporate with the ancient *Lusitanians*.

*Vandals*, thinking it easie to subdue the *Alans* in *Lusitania*, and the *Silingi* in *Andaluzia*, if *Hermenericus* were once oppressed, he broke the Peace with the *Suevians*; and rushing suddenly, with Fire and Sword, into their Territories; *Hermenericus*, though surprized at this unexpected Invasion, gathering his Forces together, received the Enemy so successfully, that he sent him to seek new Seats in the Islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca*; where we will leave him, to be spoken of by those Historians to whom it belongs. *Genfericus*, the Brother of *Gundericus*, succeeded him: Who understanding that *Etius*, *Honorius's* General, was coming into *Spain*, to revenge the Wrongs done by his Brother, he joined in League with *Hermenericus* King of the *Suevians*, and with the *Alans* and *Silingi*; believing none would dare to oppose their United Power. At *Merida* they Mustered their Forces, *Etius* dreading their Multitude; but much more surprized at the death of the Emperor, attempted nothing upon them. Thus *Genfericus* was left at leisure to pass over into *Africk*, where he utterly abolished the Name of the Roman Empire, and *Hermenericus*, whilst the *Vandals* were employed in *Africk*, enlarged the Borders of his Kingdom to almost the same extent it now bears.

9. *Valentinian* the Emperor, who succeeded *Honorius*, understanding the *Vandals* were gone over into *Africk*, Commanded his General *Sebastian* to invade the *Alans* left in *Lusitania*. *Merida* and all that Territory was easily taken from them, as was *Lisbon* and *Estremadura* from the *Suevians*. *Sebastian* now Victorious, forgetting his Duty, caused himself to be Proclaimed King of what part he had recovered of *Lusitania*; yet his Friends failing him, he was soon killed, and by his Death the *Alans* and *Suevians* had an opportunity of recovering *Merida* and *Lisbon*. *Hermenericus* grown Old and Infirm, caused his Son *Richila* to be Proclaimed King, who proved one of the most fortunate Princes of the *Suevians*; whilst *Hermenericus* rejoiced in the hopes of surviving in the Person of his Son, *Andebalus* the Imperial General was on his march to recover what *Sebastian* had lost. *Richila* to begin his Reign honourably, gathered a mighty Power, and meeting *Andebalus* on the Banks of the River *Xenil*, then called *Silingus*, slew him and the greatest part of his Army.

G 4

10. All

\* 420.  
The *Suevians*, *Alans* and *Silingi* join in League against the Romans.

423.

427.

Wars between the Romans and *Suevians*.



Richila makes himself Master of Lusitania and Andalusia. 10. All *Andalusia* easily submitted to the Victorious King, as did also *Merida*, where there had been an Imperial Garrison ever since *Sebastian* took it. All *Lusitania* in like manner was brought under, and *Richila* became absolute in *Andalusia* and *Lusitania*. Old *Hermenicus* died contentedly, leaving such an Heir, in the Town of *Britonium* near *Viana de Caminha* on the mouth of the River *Minho*. Another Author who calls him Monarch of *Spain*, says, he was drowned in the River *Guadiana* near unto *Merida*. *Richila* being sensible how much more easie it is to gain, than to preserve too large a Dominion, voluntarily resigned up *Cartagena* and *Carpentania* to the *Romans*, and entering into League with them, by that means established a large and peaceable Kingdom. He died Eight Years after his Father, and left his Son *Ricciarius* to succeed him, being equal to him in valour, but more fortunate in the true knowledge of the Evangelical Law, which he professed living, and adhered to at his death.

## CHAP. III.

*The Kingdom of the Suevians subdued by the Goths, two Kings set up by their consent, all again reduced under one with the other remarkable occurrences between the Years of Grace 448 and 560.*

448. *Ricciarius* succeeded his Father *Richila*, not only in the Kingdom of *Portugal*, but the greatest part of *Spain*. The beginning of his Reign was disturbed with some Conspiracies of the Great Men, but he privately took off many of them, and by that means secured his Life and Kingdom. He Married a Daughter of *Theodoredus*, King of the *Goths*; her Name is not known: *Ricciarius* after his Marriage, raising a great Army, made War upon those parts of *Navarre*, which were yet subject to the *Roman* Jurisdiction, and through them he forced his way into *France*, to see his Father-in-law *Theodoredus*. The old Man perceiving his aspiring

ring Spirit, gave him considerable supplies for the carrying on of his Designs. In his return, he conquered the Province of *Tarragona* and *Carpentania*, which his Father had abandoned to the *Romans*. In *Aragon*, he took *Zaragoza*, and *Lerida* in *Catalonia*; after plundering the Province of *Cartagena*, he returned loaded with Booty and Honour into *Lusitania*. *Ricciarius* being now at rest, his Father-in-law *Theodoredus* died, and *Theodoricus* his Son succeeded him: Him *Ricciarius* thought to have been no less forward toward his Assistance, than the Father had been, and upon this conceit, he resolved to conquer the other Lands of the Empire. The *Goth* who was in League with the *Romans*, and feared the Ambition of his Brother-in-law might involve him in his own Ruin, advised him to moderate his extravagant desires. *Ricciarius* offended at this wholesome advice, marched against his Brother-in-law with a powerful Army; *Theodoricus* was not backward to meet him, being strengthened with Succours from the Kings of *France* and *Burgundy*. The two Armies furiously engaged in the Plains about *Astorga*, both Kings were present in all places, where the greatest Danger was, Encouraging their Soldiers, and the Men fought as those who had their Kings to be Spectators of their Valour. At last *Ricciarius* was utterly overthrown with the Slaughter of all the flower of the *Suevians*.

2. *Ricciarius* after this rout fled to the Sea-side, and Embarking, thought to have got over into *Africk*, to call the *Vandals* and *Alans* to his assistance, but by a violent Storm was drove to the River of *Porto*. Those People to gain the Favour of the Conqueror, who was now subduing the Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, secured and delivered him up to *Theodoricus*. He Governed by Passion, cut off his Head, and in him perished the Glory of the *Suevian* Kingdom, so that it never after rose to any Grandeur: His Death was the more lamented, for that he was a Prince zealous of the true Religion. Accordingly in his life-time, he assembled a National Synod at *Aque Celene*, a Town in *Galicia*, now called *St. George of Codeseda*; here several Heresies were Condemned, and particularly that of *Priscilian*. The Victorious *Theodoricus* laid Siege to *Braga*, which was soon Surrendered to him: Here

451.

He is overthrown by Theodoricus King of the Goths.

us his end.



Here he left one *Aliulfus* Governour, whilst he crossing the River *Duero*, went on to conquer all that had been subject to the *Suevian* King; all yielded to him without any opposition, except the City *Merida*, the Garrison and Inhabitants of which place were so hardy, as to meet the *Goths* in the Field, which *Theodoricus* so highly resented, that he promised to rase the City, but the Virgin St. *Eulalia* is said to have appeared to him in a Dream, and deterred him from putting his design in Execution.

Theodor-  
icus ha-  
ving con-  
quered  
Spain, puts  
it under Go-  
vernours.

3. *Theodoricus* was upon his return to *France*, when he had intelligence, that *Aliulfus* whom he had made Governour of *Braga*, had assumed the Title of King, and raised a considerable Army to maintain it. But giving Battle to *Nepocianus* *Theodoricus* his General, lost his life: From that time the *Suevians* remained subject to the *Goths*. All things being thus quieted, *Theodoricus* went away to *France*, leaving Governours over all his Conquests. The People considering the oppression they lay under, by the ill Administration of these Governours, and wanting the power to Revolt, had recourse to the Bishops and Clergy, praying them to intercede with *Theodoricus*, that he would appoint a King over them, whom they might obey, and who yet might be subordinate to him. The Bishops undertook the Business, and *Idacius* Prelate of *Lamego*, having proposed the matter of the Embassy to *Theodoricus* in *France*, he tho' an *Arrian*, respecting the Character of the Embassadors, not only granted their request, but allowed the People to choose a King among themselves, to Govern them according to their Ancient Laws, only paying some small acknowledgment to the Kings of the *Goths*. As soon as the Bishops returned to *Braga*, joining with the Laity, they chose for their King one *Masdra* the Son of *Masila*. This, which was intended for the peace of the Country, proved its greatest Confusion, for some of the Nobility who were not present at the Election, set up for their King one *Franta*, who presently possessed himself of all the Lands along the Coast of *Galicia*, with the Cities of *Astorga*, *Orense* and *Iria Flavia*. *Masdra* held all *Lusitania*, and was accounted King of the *Suevians*; he thought by his submission and paying the Tribute, to gain the favour of *Theodoricus*, and obtain Aid against his Competitor:

But,

But, the *Goth* politickly thinking it better the Kingdom should be divided, as being thereby the less capable of Rebelling against him, accepted of the submission of them both; for *Franta* had sent to pay his obedience with no less speed than the other.

4. The Kingdom of the *Suevians* thus divided, fell into those Calamities which commonly attend States that depend between Competitors. Two Years the Wars continued very furious, during which time so many Towns about the Frontiers were subverted, as might well have contented either party; but at last both of them grown weary, gave over the strife. *Masdra* who had the better Title died, and left a Son called *Remismundus* his Successor; he considering how little had been gained on either side by the War, not only made Peace, but entered into League with his Competitor. Thus with their united Forces, they conquered several parts of *Lusitania*, which owned neither of them, but either followed their own Captains, or had again put themselves under the *Roman* Empire. Thus done, they both returned home satisfied, having enlarged their Dominions, which they would have wasted by waging War upon one another. Two Years *Franta* enjoyed Peace, at the end whereof he died, leaving the Crown to his Brother *Frumarius*: At this time hapned a Prodigy in the Territory of *Braga*, which was the Birth of two Children, each of them having two heads like one another, and of two several Sexes. *Remismundus* and *Frumarius* falling at variance about Precedency, took up Arms by force, whereof the latter gained of the other the City *Flavia*, now *Chaves*, in which and all its Territory, he spared not even the Stones, all the Country was consumed with Fire and Sword. *Remismundus* was satisfied with doing as much harm in his Enemies Country, as he received in his own; he took by open force the Cities of *Orense* and *Lugo*, in which he exercised the utmost Efforts of his Fury.

5. This Desolation continued for the space of two Years, when Death put a stop to it by taking away *Frumarius*, and his subjects having left him, for whom before they had forfeited their quiet, submitted themselves to *Remismundus*, who thus became absolute and sole King of the *Suevians*. He presently thought of recovering all that remained of *Lusitania*, and passing o-

457.

460.

A prodigious Birth.

464.

The Suevian Kingdom again united under Remismundus.

ver

Two Kings  
set up in  
Lusitania.

ver the River *Duero* with his Army, marched to the Ancient *Coimbra*, now *Condeixa*, which the *Romans* had Rebuilt and Fortified. It was then a place impregnable, and accordingly put a stop for a while to *Remismundus*; but he persisting before it, had it at last surrendered upon Honourable Conditions; though, contrary to his Faith given, he broke the Conditions, robbing the Garrison, and rasing the City. *Lisbon* made such a vigorous Defence, that he began to despair of carrying it; but a Citizen called *Lusidius* privately, gave him Entrance into it, so that he was within before the Townsmen could put themselves in order to oppose him. *Remismundus* thus possessed of all those Dominions before divided, fearing least *Theodoricus* the *Goth* might grow jealous of his great power, sent him an account of his Victories with the best of the spoiles, assuring him of the continuance of his Fidelity to the *Gothish* Kings. *Theodoricus* overcome with this Generosity, sent him his Daughter for Wife, with a great Mass of Treasure, under the charge of his Ambassador *Salanus*.

He Marries the Daughter of Theodoricus.

The Arian Heresie first spread in Lusitania.

6. This was an unhappy Match for *Lusitania*, for the *Suevians* being before true Sons of the Catholick Church, were now infected with the *Arian* Heresie, taught them by one *Ajax* a *Galatian*, whom the Queen being her self an *Arian* brought with her. The love of the Queen, and the persuasions of *Ajax*, wrought upon the King so effectually, that he not only gave his Subjects the Example of embracing that Heresie, but persecuted those that continued firm in the Faith. All the care of the Prelates for repressing of this current was fruitless, for it spread it self during the space of 100 Years, in which time the Catholicks suffered Oppression, Banishment, and cruel Deaths. There is no further memory of the Actions of *Remismundus*, after his Marriage till his Death; nor much of his Successors, *Theodulus*, *Varamundus*, *Mirus*, *Faramirus* and others, till *Theodomirus*, during the 100 Years that the *Arian* Heresie continued. In the Year 490, some Fishes were taken in the River *Minho*, which on their Scales had certain Characters, expressing that same number of Years. Not long after came into *Spain*, *Euricus* King of the *Goths*, with a design to subdue all the Country, and began with *Lusitania*, where having made great havoc, he returned Victorious into *France* and died at *Arles*.

490.

497.

les. *Amalaricus*, Grandson to *Theodoricus*, succeeded *Euricus*, he being Married to *Crofilda* the Daughter of *Clouis*, and Sister to *Childebert*, *Clotarius*, and *Clodomirus* Kings of *France*, treated her ill, because she was a Catholick, he being an *Arian*. She complained her Brothers by the means of *Ausbertus* Archbishop of *Braga*; *Childebert* hereupon came into *Lusitania*, and having overthrown and slain his Brother-in-law, returned into *France* laden with Booty, and carrying away his Sister, who died by the Way.

7. In the Year 549, *Agila* was Proclaimed King of the *Goths*, he being overthrown at *Cordova*, retired into *Lusitania*. There he raised new Forces to withstand *Athanasildus*, a valiant ambitious Captain, who being possessed of *Sevil*, stiled himself King of *Spain*: He was supported by *Roman* Forces, under the Command of *Patricius Liberius*, a General in esteem with the Emperor *Justinian*. Near to *Sevil* they came to a Battle, wherein *Agila* was otherthrown, and afterwards Murdered by his own Subjects at *Merida*. *Athanasildus* thus became Sovereign of all that part of the Kingdom of the *Goths*, which lies between the Mouth of *Tagus* and Cape *St. Vincent*. The greatest part of this Dominion was again recovered by the *Romans*, notwithstanding that *Athanasildus* did all he could to oppose them, till he died at *Toledo* in the Year 567. In these times were famous for Piety and Learning, the Bishops *St. Julian* of *Evora*, *Lucenius* of *Coimbra*, *Aprigius* of *Beja*, *Idacius* of *Lamego* and *Ausbertus* of *Braga*, a *Fleming* by Birth: Also the famous *Orosius* born at *Tarragona* in *Catalonia*, flourished at *Braga*. The Prelates of *Spain* finding it not only convenient, but necessary to consult with *St. Augustin* then Bishop of *Hippo* in *Africk*, for the better settling and adjusting of matters of Religion, then much perplexed with Doubts and Controversies; *Baleonius* at that time, Bishop of *Braga*, made choice of *Orosius* to be sent to him with this Message. The chief point given him in charge, was about the means of extirpating the Heresies then spread about *Spain*; *St. Augustin* having therein given his own Opinion, ordered *Orosius* to pass over into the Holy Land, there to take the advice also of the other Pillar of the Church *St. Hierome*, who resided there at that time. There *Orosius* found the Priest *Avitus* a *Lusitanian*, who for the love he bore

530.

531.

549.

554.

555.

567.

Men famous for Learning.

bore his Country, sent by *Orosius* at his return some relicks of the Protomartyr *St. Stephen*, whose body had been about that time miraculously found out. This may be supposed to be the same that was held in Veneration at *Offel*, which Town some will have to be in the Territory of *Beja* and others of *Bajadoz*.

## CHAP. IV.

*The Reigns of the Tributary Suevian Kings, from the Year 560, till 585, when Lusitania was again subdued by Leovigildus, the Goth. And the Government of the Gothish Kings, till the Year 672.*

1. **W**E are now come to the End of the 100 Years, which Historians pass over, without any considerable Mention of our Portuguese, or Suevian Kings. In *Theodemirus*, the Memory of our Princes is happily renewed, since through his Means most of the Subjects returned to the true Faith. At the Beginning of his Reign he was an *Arrian*, but miraculously converted. He removed his Court to the City *Braga*, where his Son being desperately sick, and no Medicines availing, he asked, one Day, which had been the Religion of *St. Gregory of Tours*; this Saint being then famous for Miracles: It was told him, he had been a *Catholick*. Immediately four Gentlemen were sent, with as much Gold and Silver as the sick Person weighed, besides other Gifts, to offer at the Shrine; with a Promise, That if the Prince recovered, he should embrace the *Catholick* Religion. The Sickness hereupon decreased, yet the Prince recovered not perfect Health: Whereupon, the King begged some Relick of the Saint; promising to renounce his Heresie. The Relick was refused the Ambassadors; and they, at Night, spreading a thin Veil over the Sepulchre, said, *They would reverence it as a Relick, if in the Morning its Weight were considerably increased.* Accordingly, the next Morning they found

550.  
Conversion  
of the Lu-  
sitani-  
ans  
from Ari-  
anism.

found it as heavy as if it had been made of some weighty Metal. This Veil the Ambassadors brought with them; and the same Day they landed, the Prince perfectly recovered. The King performed his Promise, embracing the Faith; and by his Example, and the Preaching of another *St. Martin*, who then came out of *France*, according to some Authors; or, as others will have it, out of *Greece*, most of the People were converted. *Theodemirus* had before erected a Church, in Honour of *St. Martin of Tours*: Of this Church he made the other *Martin* Abbot first, and then Bishop; whence he was preferred to the Archiepiscopal See of *Braga*.

2. Two Years were spent in the Embassages, and other pious Works of the King, for his Son's Health; and all things being now in Peace, he ordered *Lucrecius*, Several Synods. Archbishop of *Braga*, to assemble a Synod, for the better regulating the Affairs of the Church. Eight Bishops being met, they again condemned the Heresie of *Priscillianus*; and took Order for the propagating of the Faith. Another Synod met after that, at *Lugo*, to appoint the Limits of every Diocese; which were afterwards confirmed, in the general Distribution made throughout *Spain*, by King *Wamba*. *Theodemirus* dying, the Crown came to his Son *Ariamirus*; who, with the Approbation of *St. Martin*, now Archbishop of *Braga*, ordered another Synod to meet in that City; which was accordingly done two Years after: Twelve Prelates assembled there; and one of the principal Matters handled, was, the fixing the due Time of Observing of *Easter*. After settling the Affairs of the Faith, the King raised Forces; and invading the People called *Rucones*, now *Ricja*, subdued them. *Luiua* was now King of the *Goths*, and took for his Companion, and Successor, his Brother *Leovigildus*: Which done, he returned into *France*, leaving *Leovigildus* in *Spain*, to secure his former Conquests, and add others to them. He victoriously traversed the greatest part of *Spain*, and at last enter'd *Galicia*, *Ariamirus* in vain striving to put a Stop to his Progress; who now perceiving how ineffectual Force proved, thought better to try if Fair Means would prevail: Therefore he sent Ambassadors to *Leovigildus*, to put him in mind of the Peace and Alliance established betwixt their Predecessors, and to de-  
fire

563.

569.

570.

572.

577.



fire the Renewing thereof. *Leovigildus*, content with this Submission, curbed his aspiring Thoughts, concluded a Peace, and retired.

3. *Leovigildus* had now two Sons, *Hermenegildus* and *Recaredus*. The first was married to *Ingunda*, Daughter of *Sigebert* King of *France*, and his Wife *Brunechilde*. Upon this Marriage, he lived apart from his Father, and had the Stile of a King given him at *Merida*. There, by the Means of his Wife, who was a *Catholick*, and of his Uncle *St. Leander*, Archbishop of *Sevil*, he embraced the *Catholick* Faith; and, in Baptism, was called *John*. His Father being an obstinate *Arian*, was so offended at his Conversion, that he deprived him of the Regal Dignity. The Prince fled into *Portugal*, and was there protected by King *Ariamirus*, who was a *Catholick*. *Hermenegildus* raised Forces; but his Father coming speedily upon him, he fled, with 3000 Men, to *Offela*, a Place, thought impregnable: But *Leovigildus*, for all that, enter'd it by Force, put all to the Sword, burnt the Town, and carried away his Son Prisoner to *Toledo*. From thence he made his Escape to *Sevil*, where he fortified himself. King *Leovigildus* laid Siege to that City, being assisted by King *Ariamirus* of *Portugal*; and having forced his Way into it, carried away *Hermenegildus* to *Tarragona*, where he was put to Death, in the Year 586. Which Passage is here related, to avoid interrupting the Narration.

583.

4. Our King *Ariamirus* died at that Siege, and his Son *Eburicus*, then very young, succeeded him in the Crown of *Portugal*, under the Protection of *Leovigildus* the *Goth*. *Endeca*, a Noble-man in great Power at the *Portuguese* Court, taking Advantage of the King's tender Years, married *Sisegunda* the Queen-Dowager; and with the Help of his Friends, possessed himself of the Government, upon pretence of managing it for the young King. But having, in Process of Time, secured his Interest, he usurped the Regal Title, and put *Eburicus* into Prison at first, and soon after obliged him to take the Habit of a Monk, that so he might forfeit his Pretensions to the Crown. The Tyrant *Endeca* fearing *Leovigildus* the *Goth*, who was Protector to the deposed King, joined in League with *Gunteranus* the *French* King. But the *Goth*, whose Courage was not to be shocked, sent his Son *Recaredus* against the *French*, and himself

*Leovigildus* the *Goth* Wars upon his Son *Hermenegildus*, on Account of Religion.

*Endeca* usurps the Crown of *Portugal*.

himself invaded the usurping *Suevian*. He soon took him Prisoner, and obliged him to take the same Habit he had before forced upon the Rightful King, and to enter into Holy Orders, banishing him to the City *Beja*, then possessed by the *Goths*. Yet *Leovigildus*, though he was thought to have conquered that Kingdom for *Eluricus*, kept it for himself; adding it to his other Dominions. Thus ended the Kingdom of the *Suevians*, after it had, with various Turns of Fortune, lasted about 180 Years: It expired in the Year 585. The People, dissatisfied with *Leovigildus*, rose up in Arms, and proclaimed a Noble-man, called *Malaricus*, King; but he being soon overthrown, and taken Prisoner by the Forces of the *Goth*, the Kingdom of the *Lusitanians*, or *Suevians*, was entirely brought under the Dominion of the *Goths*. The *Lusitanians* at this time continued firm in the Faith, and *Leovigildus* ceased not to persecute the Professors thereof; deposing the *Catholick* Prelates, and filling their Places with *Arians*, who perverted many of the People. *Leovigildus* having reigned 18 Years, died at *Toledo*, a *Catholick*, though he had lived an *Arian*. His first Wife was *Theodora*, Daughter of *Severianus*, Governor of *Cartagena*, and his Wife *Theodora*, Daughter to *Theodoricus*, King of the *Ostrogoths*, in *Italy*; and Sister to *Uldorus* and *Leander*, Archbishops of *Sevil*; and of *Fulgentius*, of *Cartagena*. By her he had *Hermenegildus*, whom he put to death; and *Flavius Recaredus*, who succeeded him.

5. *Recaredus*, born at *Sevil*, in the Year 566, now, in the 20th of his Age, inherited his Father's Throne. He proved an excellent Prince; and having embraced the *Catholick* Faith, restored all those that his Father had expelled. His pious Intention of Assembling a National Synod, was, for some time, obstructed by the Treasonable Conspiracies of the Hereticks. The first Council was held at *Merida*, under the Direction of *Claudius*, who governed the small Remainder of the *Roman* Empire along the Sea-Coast of *Lusitania*. *Suna* the *Arian* Archbishop, being now compelled to resign that See to *Mansona* the *Catholick*, before expelled by *Leovigildus*, conspired with other Hereticks, to murder him and *Claudius*. *Witericus*, who was afterwards King, now one of the Conspirators, laying his Hand upon his Sword, to execute his Purpose, he could not

He is deposed, and shorn a Monk, by *Leovigildus* the *Goth*,

585.

He persecutes the *Catholicks*, but dies one himself.

586.

*Recaredus* succeeds.

He becomes a *Catholick*.



draw it; whereat being moved he discovered the Treachery, and was therefore pardon'd. *Suna*, the Heretical Archbishop, was banished, as were the other Accomplices, and their Estates confiscated. Amidst this Confusion, *Gunteranus* King of *France* made War upon *Recaredus*; sending against him an Army, under the Command of his General *Bossus*. *Claudius*, a Man fortunate in War, marched to oppose him, and overthrew him near *Carcassonne*, with a great Slaughter. Some will have it, that *Claudius*, with only 300 Men, defeated *Bossus*, who had 60000: But let every one judge thereof as he pleases.

589. *A Synod at Toledo.* 601. *Recaredus dies.* 6. *Recaredus* having thus subdued his Enemies, both at home and abroad, was at leisure to assemble the Council he had before designed at *Toledo*. Seventy two Prelates met together there, *St. Leander*, Archbishop of *Sevil*, presiding. The King himself made an Oration at the Opening of the Council. Now the *Arian* Heresie was totally extinguished, the *Catholick* Faith triumphed, and *Recaredus*, for his singular Piety, had the Title of *Catholick*, or *Most Christian King* conferred upon him. After triumphing over his, which were the Enemies of Christ, our Religious King *Recaredus* died at *Toledo*. He was born at *Sevil*, in the Year 565; reigned 16, and lived 37. His Coin has been seen in our Age, at several Places: Some at *Lisbon*, with this Inscription on the one side, *RECAREDUS REX*; and on the Reverse, *OLISIBONA PIUS*. Others at *Evora*, with *RECAREDUS REX*; and on the Back, *ELBORA JUSTUS*. *Recaredus* had two Wives; The first, before he came to the Crown, was *Balda*, Daughter to the famous King *Arthur*, or to *Fonto*, a *Gothish* Lord. The Second was *Clodofinda*, Sister to *Ingunda*, the Wife of his Brother, Prince *Hermenegildus*. Her chiefest Portion was, the Peace established between *Spain* and *France*, then at War. By his first Wife (though some will have him to be Illegitimate) he had *Liuvva*, who succeeded him in the Throne; and was of such excellent Beauty of Person, and such amiable Behaviour, that all his Subjects rather adored than obeyed him; except *Witericus*, whom the late King had pardoned for discovering the Conspiracy at *Merida*. This Man, before enured to Treachery, now compassed his wicked Designs, apprehending

hending his natural Lord, cutting off his Right Hand, and depriving him of his Crown and Life, in the Second Year of his Reign.

7. *Witericus* thus Tyrannically possessed of the Government and Regal Throne of all *Spain*, held it seven Years; which ended in an ignominious Death, yet such as he deserved: He died, miserably dragged about the Streets of *Toledo*, by the People. *Flavius Gundemarus*, of the Blood of *Recaredus*, in that Right ascended the Throne, and proved no way inferiour to him for Valour, Moderation and Piety. He desiring to honour the Church of *Toledo*, made it the Metropolitan of all the Province of *Cartagena*: To which purpose, a Synod was held at *Toledo*, in which it was ordained, that Criminals should have the Benefit of Sanctuary. In this City Death cut him off so early, that it is doubted whether he reigned full two Years. Our *Lusitania*, then subject to the *Gothish* Kings, was governed by their Lieutenants, whereof there was one in every Province, and some *Comites*, or Counts; for then this Title began to be honoured for being rare, as now it is little regarded for being so common. It is to be observed, that at this time the Name of *Comites* was not Titular, as now; but denoted a Power and Jurisdiction over Lands of the Crown. In *Spain* there is no Title given by the Kings, that is of 400 Years standing. *Gundemarus*, though married to *Hilduara*, leaving no Heirs, *Sisebutus* was chosen his Successor, by the Prelates and Nobility. He immediately, upon his Accession to the Crown, commanded all the *Jews* to embrace the *Christian* Religion: Almost 100000 were baptized; and as many chose rather to be banished *Spain*. *Sisebutus*, though absent from *Portugal*, adorned it with many Structures: Two Towers, with his Name on them, remain still at *Evora*, of the Walls then by him built. Some of his Coin is also extant, on the Reverse whereof is a Cross, and about it, *CIVITAS EBO-RA DEUS ADJUTOR MEUS*. He ordered Ships to be built upon the Coast of *Lusitania*; and having obtained some Victories, which appertain not to our History, died when he had reigned 8 Years and an half, much lamented, as extraordinarily beloved of his Subjects.

8. *Sisebutus* left a young Son, called *Recaredus*; who dying soon after his Accession to the Crown, left it to *Flavius Suintila*, Son to the Holy King *Recaredus*; so worthy a Man, that *Sisebutus* always committed to him the Command of his Armies. No sooner had he grasped the Sceptre, but he changed it for the Sword, and soon drove out of *Portugal* the small Remains of the Roman Empire, which still, in much Variety of Fortune, had retained some small Hold there. During the first five Years of his Reign, he behaved himself with that Justice and Piety, that, among other honourable Titles, he obtained that of *Father of the Poor*. Some of his Coin, in Gold, I have seen; whereof, one Piece had this Inscription, *SUINTILA REX EBORA VICTOR*: Another, *SUINTILA REX EMERITA PIUS*. This King stained the Honour of the first five Years of his Reign, by the Lewdness of the ensuing five; which so incensed his Subjects, that he was forced to fly, and end his Days in Misery, in *Lusitania*, as some will have it; or in *Toledo*, according to others: Yet other Authors say, he and his Son *Rechimirus* were killed by *Sisenandus*, their Successor. Some Writers affirm, that *Sisenandus* was Brother to *Suintila*. Certain it is, he obtained the Crown by Election, with the Assistance of *Dagobert* King of *France*, whose Favour he had purchased with a great Summ of Money. At the Beginning of his Reign he made himself loved, and feared. He assembled a National Synod at *Toledo*, at which 72 Prelates met: Here, in regard of what *Sisebutus* had done with the *Jews*, it was ordained, That none should be forcibly constrained to embrace the Catholic Faith. *Sisenandus* died at *Toledo*, having reigned four Years.

9. It is doubtful whether *Sisenandus* was Father or Brother to *Chintila*, his Heir. Two Synods were held in his Days. He reigned three Years and an half, and died at *Toledo*, much lamented of all Men. His Son *Tulga* succeeded him; who holding the Crown but two Years, could not do so much as was expected from his Justice, Prudence and Valour. He departed this Life at *Toledo*, leaving no Issue. *Chindasuindus*, by Force of Arms, possessed himself of the Kingdom. At *Toledo* he gathered a Synod of 40 Prelates. *Rensiberga*, Daughter to *Evancius*, the Brother of *St. Eugenius* Archbishop of *Toledo*, was Wife to this King: By her he had three Sons, viz. *Reccesuindus*, *Theodofredus* and *Favila*. Having reigned 10 Years, he died at *Toledo*, and was buried in the Monastery of *St. Romanus*, founded by himself, between *Toro* and *Tordesilas*. Two Synods were assembled at *Toledo* during the Reign of *Reccesuindus*, the eldest Son of the late King: In the First were 52 Bishops, from all Parts of *Spain*. In the Second Council were first heard Debates and Disputes concerning the Primacy of all *Spain*: *Braga* pretended a Right to that Honour: It was decreed, that the Archbishop of *Braga* should be Metropolitan of all *Galicia* only. Another Council was assembled at *Merida*, to the same effect; but the Church of *Braga* still went down. About this same time the *Gascoigns* invaded *Spain*, but were overthrown, and expelled, though no Particulars of the Action are to be found in History, nor of any thing that happen'd in the Space of almost 20 Years, which end with the Life of *Reccesuindus*. He was buried in the Church of *St. Leocadia*, at *Toledo*. Some of his Coin is still to be seen. His only Son *Theodofredus* was left so young, that he was thought incapable of inheriting so great a Monarchy, as will appear in the Sequel. It is here very remarkable, that *Pontamius*, Archbishop of *Braga*, not content that he had done 9 Months private Penance, accused himself openly, in the Synod, of committing Incontinency; wherefore he was deposed from his Dignity, with extraordinary Horrour of all the Prelates who heard the Accusation, though from the Mouth of one so penitent. So rare was it then to see a Prelate guilty of any Crime; So rare now to see them endued with any Vertue.

*Evancius*, the Brother of *St. Eugenius* Archbishop of *Toledo*, was Wife to this King: By her he had three Sons, viz. *Reccesuindus*, *Theodofredus* and *Favila*. Having reigned 10 Years, he died at *Toledo*, and was buried in the Monastery of *St. Romanus*, founded by himself, between *Toro* and *Tordesilas*. Two Synods were assembled at *Toledo* during the Reign of *Reccesuindus*, the eldest Son of the late King: In the First were 52 Bishops, from all Parts of *Spain*. In the Second Council were first heard Debates and Disputes concerning the Primacy of all *Spain*: *Braga* pretended a Right to that Honour: It was decreed, that the Archbishop of *Braga* should be Metropolitan of all *Galicia* only. Another Council was assembled at *Merida*, to the same effect; but the Church of *Braga* still went down. About this same time the *Gascoigns* invaded *Spain*, but were overthrown, and expelled, though no Particulars of the Action are to be found in History, nor of any thing that happen'd in the Space of almost 20 Years, which end with the Life of *Reccesuindus*. He was buried in the Church of *St. Leocadia*, at *Toledo*. Some of his Coin is still to be seen. His only Son *Theodofredus* was left so young, that he was thought incapable of inheriting so great a Monarchy, as will appear in the Sequel. It is here very remarkable, that *Pontamius*, Archbishop of *Braga*, not content that he had done 9 Months private Penance, accused himself openly, in the Synod, of committing Incontinency; wherefore he was deposed from his Dignity, with extraordinary Horrour of all the Prelates who heard the Accusation, though from the Mouth of one so penitent. So rare was it then to see a Prelate guilty of any Crime; So rare now to see them endued with any Vertue.

## C H A P. V.

*The Succession of the other Gothish Kings in the Monarchy of Spain, till Roderick the last of them, from the Year of Grace 672 till 711.*

1. **N**OW was the Monarchy of Spain in a dangerous Condition, *Theodefredus* the Son of *Recefuindus* (if there were any such, for it is dubious) being left so Young, that he was wholly incapable of managing the Government; the Nobility consulting what was to be done, asked advice of the Pope, who by Divine Revelation, answered: *It was the Will of God that Wamba should be preferred to the Crown.* He being a Man not known, many went out in search of him, and at last found him near *Idanha*, then a famous City in *Portugal*: he was then busie at Plow with a pair of Oxen. They told him what they came about, and he taking it for Jest, or believing it impossible, answered: *That when the Goad he held in his hand Blossomed, Wamba would be a King.* The Goad accordingly shooting out Flowers, he was immediately carried away and Crown'd at *Toledo*. At the time of Anointing his Head, a Vapour like a Cloud was seen to rise from it, and in the midst thereof, a Bee which ascending into the Air, at last vanished: This is in short, what some Authors relate, as to the Election of *Wamba*. Others wholly rejecting all that is miraculous therein, say, *He was a Great Man at Court*, and others, *That he was Son to the late King Recefuindus, and proclaimed the 3d. day after his Death, so that there could not be time to repair to the Pope, and the working of the Miracles.* These latter are the most suitable Opinions to Reason, and there is nothing certain in these Antiquities; every Man may believe as he pleases.

Wamba  
his strange  
advance-  
ment to the  
Crown.

His Wars  
in France  
and Spain.

2. *Wamba* (howsoever it was) being placed on the Throne, the People of *Navarre*, and other their Neighbours, took up Arms to shake off the Gothish Yoke; but the New King taking the Field against them, soon quelled that Rebellion. In the mean while, the Count

Hif-

*Hilpericus* revolted in the City of *Nismes*, which is in *Gallia Narbonensis*, then subject to the Dominion of *Spain*; which made *Wamba* raise new Forces against that Rebel, and gave the Command of them to *Paul* a Valiant *Grecian*. He being Master of the Field, instead of punishing the Count, rebelled himself, and with him *Ranfandus* Governour of *Tarragona* and *Hildigisus* the Civil Magistrate. By these he was Proclaimed King of *Spain*, and Crowned at *Narbonne* with a rich Crown, offered by the Holy King *Recaredas* at the shrine of St. *Felix* Martyr of *Gironne*. *Hilpericus* the first Rebel, and all *Gallia Narbonensis* joined with the others; the same did *Catalonia* and *Navarre*. *Paul* strengthened with the accession of so many Provinces, had the boldness to send a Challenge in most insolent Terms to King *Wamba*. He at that time was in War with the People of *Navarre* and *Biscay*, and having caused the Challenge to be Read in an Assembly of his chief Commanders, tho' most of them advised to the contrary, he resolved to march with speed against the rebellious Enemy; none hesitated to follow the resolute Prince. They entered *Navarre*, which they entirely subdued in seven days, and being come into *Catalonia*, the King divided his victorious Army into three parts; one took the way of *Perpignan*, another that of *Ausetania*, and the third kept along the Sea Coast. The King himself stayed behind with certain choice bands to be ready to repair to the place where most Danger was. He took *Barcelona* by Force, and was peaceably received into *Gironne*, for the Tyrant believing that *Wamba* would not have the Courage to come to meet him, and that he should soon be there himself, had sent to order *Amador* the Bishop, That he should acknowledge as his Prince the first that came to the Walls. *Wamba* being the first, the Prelate did as he was ordered, and the King said to him, *Paul has Prophesied my coming hither.* Immediately he advanced to the *Pyrenean Hills*, and at the foot of them took *Colibre* and other strong places.

3. Whilst *Wamba* reduced the Rebels, *Paul* retired to *Nismes*, leaving all he had provided for his Defence behind him at *Narbonne*. All that was not sufficient to secure that City to *Witimerus*, whom he had left there as his Lieutenant; for *Wamba* to avoid the Effusion of Blood, having offered him some good Terms, and he

The Rebels  
in France  
subdued by  
him.

H 4

obst-

673.

obstinately refusing, an Assault was given, which lasted three hours, at the end whereof the City was taken, and in it *Witimerus* with others of his Associates. The same hapned at *Magalona*, *Agate* and other strong holds, all taken by force and with much Slaughter. *Nismes* held out longer despair fighting for *Paul*, but at last it submitted to *Wamba*. The *French* in the Town thinking they were betrayed by the *Spaniards* in hope of Pardon, fell upon them, and so they slaughtered one another, whilst the Besiegers breaking in, put them all indifferently to the Sword. *Paul* quitting the Royal Robes, retired to an Amphitheater, a strong Roman Work, where he stayed two days, the Victors only keeping Guard lest he should escape thence. The King coming to the City, *Arcebatius*, Archbishop of *Narbonne*, one of the followers of *Paul*, came out to meet him in his Pontifical Robes, and casting himself at his Feet, begged Pardon for himself and all the rest. This action somewhat appeaseth *Wamba*, who Pardoned him and promised to moderate his anger towards the rest. He entred the City in Triumph, where *Paul* was brought Prisoner and fell down prostrate before him, as others did; their lives were granted, but they were committed to custody till it were resolved what punishment to inflict upon them; all the *French* were set free, and the City ordered to be repaired. It was voted, that *Paul* and his Associates should have their Eyes put out, their lives being before granted them, but *Wamba* was content they should only remain perpetual Prisoners. When he entred *Toledo* in Triumph, they were all carried before him upon Camels, and *Paul* in the midst of them barefooted, with a Crown of black Leather on his Head, instead of that of Gold he had aspired to; all their Beards long, and their Heads shaved; Penalties usually inflicted on Traitors at that time, and thus Peace was restored.

675.  
The Africans invading Spain destroyed.

4. After this he assembled a National Council, where- in the bounds of all the Bishopricks of *Spain* were determined, which continued in the same form, till the *Moors* conquered *Spain*. The same Year another Synod was held at *Braga* to reform Abuses; much about this time the *Africans* with a great Fleet scouring along the Coast of *Spain*, did much harm: The King sent his Forces against them, by whom they were overthrown, their

their Fleet burnt, and all their power both by Sea and Land consumed. It is thought that one Count *Ervigius* a *Grecian*, banished by the Emperor of *Constantinople*, was the cause of their coming; he aspiring to the Crown, thought that the *Goths* thus invaded, would easily have submitted themselves to him, because he had married a Niece of King *Recesinudus*, and that *Wamba* was then very Aged. Failing of his design, he gave *Wamba* a sort of Poison that disturbed his Brain, and at the same time prevailed with him to appoint him his Successor. Besides these his Contrivances, *Wamba* desirous of himself to lay down the burden of a Crown to him grown unsupportable, voluntarily quitted the regal Authority, and took the habit of a Monk in the Monastery of *Pampliega*, betwixt *Burgos* and *Valladolid*, on the Banks of the River *Pisuerga*, where he approved himself as good a Religious Man, as he had been a King. Eight or more Years he Reigned, and lived Seven in the Monastery; it is not known that he had any Children, nor so much as a Wife, he was Buried at *Pampliega*. King *Ferdinand* the Saint, designed to Translate him to *Toledo*, and his Son *D. Alonso* the Wise, put it in Execution. There are two Tombs now in the Chappel of *St. Leocadia*, in the Cathedral of that City, one supposed to be *Wamba's*, and the other of King *Recesinudus*. King *Philip* the II. causing them to be opened in the Year 1575, one of the Bodies was found cloathed in the habit of *St. Benedict*, which was therefore concluded to be that of *Wamba*, because he wearing that Habit whilst living, was doubtless Buried in it. Some Authors will have him to be Buried at *Cinanium*, or *Citania*, a City in the Mid-way betwixt *Braga* and *Guimaraens*.

5. *Ervigius* Successor to *Wamba*, was Son to *Arde-* 681.  
*bastus*, whom Ancient Records call Count, who was *Ervigius*  
married to the Daughter of King *Chindasuindus*. Tho' *successor*  
he deserved not the Crown as being an unjust Usurper, *Wamba*.  
he afterwards seemed worthy of it for his good Govern-  
ment, his ensuing Virtues atoned for his former Crimes.  
One of his first Actions was the assembling of a national  
Council, the chief intent whereof was to secure the  
Crown he had wrongfully got. Two Years after he  
called together another Council, which confirmed all  
the Acts of the former. A third also met the follow-

682.

684.

ing



*His Actions* ing Year to receive the Decrees of the sixth General Council of *Constantinople* against the Heresy of *Apollinarus*. *Ervigius* though well settled in the Throne, the better to secure himself, married his Daughter *Cixilona* to *Egica Wamba's* Nephew, being the Son of his Sister *Ariberga*. A great part of *Portugal* was at this time Governed by *Sala*, a Noble and Valiant Commander: He repaired the Walls and Bridge of *Merida*, and other publick Structures. King *Ervigius* himself Built almost from the Ground the Walls of *Idaria*; *Ervigius* Reigned Seven Years, and died at *Toledo* the same Year as did King *Wamba* at *Pampliega*.

687. *King Egica* 6. *Egica* the Nephew of King *Wamba*, the more to express his Aversion to *Ervigius*, whom he succeeded in the Throne, put away his Daughter, whom, as was said, he had Married; whereupon her Children were as ill treated, as were those of her Father. All the Brethren felt the want of right in their Father, being cast out and not respected so much as Noble Men. However, *Egica* gave them some ease till such time as a Council could be assembled to order what ought to be done with them. This Counsel at length meeting, Decreed the King might lawfully prosecute all that were guilty of the Treason, whereby *Ervigius* ascended the Throne; Several were punished in different manners. Hereupon ensued a Conspiracy against the King, in which *Segibertus* Archbishop of *Toledo* was the principal Actor. This design being discovered, *Egica* called together another Counsel to be the better able to proceed against the Archbishop. Sixty Bishops met, among whom were Ten *Portuguese*, who gave Sentence against the Archbishop, Excommunicating, Banishing, and Deposing him from his Dignity. Some dangerous Commotions happened in *Gallia Narbonensis*, then subject to the *Spanish* Monarchs, fortune therein favouring the Rebels. These troubles were followed by Plague and Famine: The *Jews* who were then numerous in *Spain*, took occasion herefrom to conspire against the King, and for the carrying on their Designs, held correspondence with others that lived in *Africk*, and other Foreign parts. The King informed thereof, called another Counsel at *Toledo*, to punish the Guilty, excepting those of *Narbonne*, because of the Plague and Famine that consumed them. The Plot being proved, the

*The Jews conspire against the King, and are punished.*

694.

the Criminals were Condemned to serve as Slaves throughout all *Spain*, and to have their Children taken from them at Seven Years of Age, to be instructed in the Christian Faith.

7. About this time, one Count *Vitulus* rebelled in that part of *Galicia*, that joyns to *Portugal*: His design was to usurp the Monarchy of the *Goths*, but his Power being too small, he soon suffered the penalty of his Rashness. To prevent the like Practices for the future, the King gave the Kingdoms of *Portugal* and *Galicia* to his Son *Witisa*, the Grandson of *Ervigius*, being then of Age to Govern. To himself he kept the rest of *Spain* and *Gallia Narbonensis*; *Witisa* went into *Portugal*, and kept his Court in the City *Braga*, where by his unjust Actions, he raised many Troubles and much Blood was spilt, his Father having sent him thither to prevent Discord, which he seemed rather to sow. This Country was eased by his absence, for he removed to *Tuy* in *Galicia*, where he lived till the Death of his Father. It is no new thing for a vertuous Father to have wicked Children; King *Egica*, besides *Witisa*, had *Opas* Archbishop of *Toledo*, famous for assisting to the Destruction of *Spain*; he was also Father of *Fandina*, Wife to the unfamous Count *Julian*, and Mother to *Florinda*, the only cause of that lamentable Tragedy.

8. *Witisa* being possessed of the Government of all *Spain*, became so insolent, that giving way to all manner of Vice, discouraging Vertue, and laying open all places of strength in the Kingdom, he may well be stiled the *Spanish Nero*. I will not go about to relate all his Cruelties and leud Practices, but must not omit to say, he cast off all Obedience to the Pope, and gave great Priviledges to the *Jews*, so that they returned to *Spain*, and erected Synagogues: The Inhabitants of *Braga* sent *Felix* their Archbishop to *Toledo*, to Petition the King that the Walls of their City might not be Demolished, as he had ordered. He was not admitted to speak with the King, but only with Count *Julian*, then the great Favourite, of whom he obtained what he went about. This lascivious King, killed *Favila*, the Father of *Pelayus*, and Duke of *Cantabria*, thinking by that means the better to enjoy his Wife *D. Luz*; he put out the Eyes of *Theodofredus*, Father to King *Roderick* and *D. Luz*, thereby to make him incapable of inheriting

*Witisa Son to Egica Reigns in Portugal.*

701. *After his Father's Death, he is Monarch of all Spain.*

*His Cruelties.*

711. heriting the Crown; but, *Roderick* did the same by him, so that he died Blind, having Reigned Ten Years. There is no Account who was his Wife, but it appears he had two Sons, which were *Evan* and *Sisebutus*, who being Banished by King *Roderick* into *Africk*, fled to the Protection of *Requila*, Commander of *Tangier* their Father's Friend; and thence came over a Commander among the *Moore*s that destroyed *Spain*, and so died: Those Calamities require another Chapter.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Reign of King Roderick from the Year 711, till the coming of the Moores in 714; all Spain subdued by them in Eight Months; the Restauration began by Pelagius and his Successors till the Year 783.*

711. 1. **S**OME Writers who have obtained no small Credit, name *Acosta* or *Aconsta*, as Successor to *Witisa*; yet others there are who absolutely exclude him as fabulous. If any such was, he was Eldest Son to *Theodofredus*, and Brother to King *Roderick*; however it is, we have no account of his Actions, and if any were, being so dubious, they are scarce worth relating. *Roderick* then may be allowed immediate Successor to *Witisa*; he was Grandson to King *Chindasuindus*, and Son to *Theodofredus* Duke of *Cordova*, by his Wife *Recilona*: *Favila* Duke of *Cantabria* was Brother to *Theodofredus*, and had *Pelagus* or *Pelagius* by his Wife, and Niece to the Lady *Luz*. Thus the Subversion and Restauration of *Spain*, had their Authors proceeding from the same stock; for as *Roderick* was cause of the Destruction, so *Pelagus* was the first that laid his Hand to the Reparation of it. *Roderick* ascended the Throne with no small hopes, conceived by his Subjects, of a better Government than had been before, but the event made him more odious than his Predecessor had been. Count *Julian* the great Favorite and prime Master to *Witisa*, continued in the same Post under King *Roderick*: *Julian* was Father to her,

*Roderick*  
Last King  
of the  
Goths.

Count *Julian*  
Favorite  
to *Roderick*.

her, whom the vulgar calls *Cava*, and our Historians *Florinda*; of her, *Roderick* became enamoured, that so the greatest Desolation might not happen without the help of a Woman. Having chosen her for his Wife, it fortune'd that *Egilona* or *Eilata* an *African* Princess, or according to others, a *Goth* was driven by Tempest into a Port of *Spain*; she being brought to the King, her Beauty so captivated him, that forgetting *Florinda*, he took her to Wife: Thus she who thought to have been Queen, continued at Court as one of the Queen's Ladies. *Julian* her Father enraged beyond measure, immediately contrived how to be Revenged, and in order to it, perswaded the King to Dismantle all the strong places left standing by *Witisa*, and disarm his Subjects, which was accordingly done.

2. Soon after the King sent *Julian* Ambassador to *Muza* in *Africk*, to request of him not to protect *Evan* and *Sisebutus*, the Sons of *Witisa*: The more to move *Muza*, he thought it proper to send him some considerable Present, and being informed, that in a Tower near *Toledo*, great Treasures were of Antient time reported to be hid, the Doors having many locks upon them, because it was a received Opinion, that when they were opened, great Calamities would ensue, the King resolved to enter this place. In it was found nothing but a Chest, containing only a Picture representing Men a Horse-back in *Moorish* Apparel, with several sorts of Weapons, and an Inscription denoting, that when those Gates were opened, *Spain* would be Invaded and Conquered by that sort of Men. The King thought the Prediction would be Averted by locking up the place again with what it contained, but it proved otherwise. *Julian* being gone upon his Embassy, King *Roderick* relapsed into the love of *Florinda*, and courted her, but without receiving any Favour, *Francia* her Mother perceiving it, and desiring to be herself the Mistress of a King, caused one *Bigamota*, an attendant of hers, to deliver some Messages to the King as from *Florinda*, tending to meet him in some convenient place, where shrowded with Darknes, she might supply the place of her Daughter; the King encouraged by those false invitations, watched his opportunity, and finding *Florinda* alone, ravished her.

*Julian*  
sent Amb  
assador  
to *Africk*.

*Roderick*  
ravishes  
*Florinda*  
Daughter  
to *Julian*.

712.

Julian meditates Revenge.

He brings the Moors into Spain.

713.

3. *Florinda* now doubly wronged first of the Throne, and then of her Honour, was touched with the highest Resentment; her Mother soon discovered the effect, being sensible of the cause and changing her love to the King into hatred, perswades *Florinda* to acquaint her Father by Writing with the loss of her Honour. *Julian* hereupon hasts back into *Spain*, dissembling his Rage, and appearing joyful before the King, having succeeded in his Embassy, obtained fresh Favours: He begged the Government of the Towns held in *Africk*, and thither he went with his Wife, leaving his Daughter at Court to prevent all suspicion. *Julian* treated with *Muza* about betraying the Kingdom of the *Goths* unto the *Caliphs*, and he having received instructions from his Prince, agreed upon the Conditions without much difficulty; the Traitor not only encouraging the *Barbarian* to pass over into *Spain*, but drawing over many great Men in his Government to take part with them. Having settled these Affairs at *Malaga*, he came to Court and obtained leave to carry away his Daughter with him, the King nothing mistrusting any Treason. *Muza* in pursuance of what was agreed upon, sent over 6000 *Arabs* under the Command of *Tarif Abenzarca*, to make the first incursion into *Spain*; these being joyned by the like number of the Rebels, broke through *Andaluzia* into *Lusitania*, where nothing being less thought of than War, Men, Women and Children were seen in droves flying to the Mountains. King *Roderick* alarmed with this invasion, sent his Nephew *D. Inbigo Sanchez* with some number of Men armed only with Staves and Stones; yet such as they were, they had several rencounters with the Enemy, but at last their Commander being slain, and they overpowered, were put to flight. The Victorious *Arabs* returned into *Africk* with Booty and many Captives; this was the first Scene of the wicked Count's Revenge, and of the overthrow of the *Spanish* Monarchy.

4. Whilst Count *Julian* and the *Caliph* prepared for a more powerful Expedition, King *Roderick* now awake, raised the greatest number of Men he could, and with all possible speed provided Arms and Fortified his Towns. He thought the *Barbarians* would have given him more time, but they immediately passed over the streights of *Gibraltar* with a wonderful Fleet;

200000

200000 Foot and 40000 Horse of them incamped on the *Spanish* Coast. The King's Army consisted of 120000 Foot and 10000 Horse, a sufficient number had they been well Armed, and Disciplined Men; he Encamped betwixt *Xeres* and *Medina Sidonia*, leaving the Sea open at the Enemies backs, whereby they received Succours: Upon *Saturday* the 1st. of *September* in the fatal Year 714. the two Armies came in sight of one another. That day was spent in taking up their Lodgments along the River *Guadalete*; on *Sunday* with the day began the Battle, which continued very Bloody till Night parted them; all the Week the fight continued, still renewed with the Day as it was broke off by the Night. King *Roderick* appeared in all parts in his Royal Robes; over his Armour he wore a rich Garment, a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in his Hand, on his Feet Golden Buskins set with Pearl and precious Stones; he was carried in a high Ivory Chariot as was the manner of the *Gothish* Kings in Battle, and thence encouraged his Men, who the 2d. *Sunday* began to faint. The King perceiving them give way, left his Chariot, and mounting upon a Horse, he called *Orelia*, rushed couragiously into the thickest of his Enemies, making them give way to his Valour. The *Spaniards* encouraged at this sight, came on so vigorously, that the Battle for some time continued doubtful; but at *Sunsetting*, the Vigour of our Men quite failing, Victory appeared on the Enemies side, and the Darkeness gave the Christians an opportunity to fly.

5. I cannot forbear remarking how fatal the number Eight has appeared upon this occasion; Eight days the fight lasted, Eight months the *Barbarians* spent in subduing all *Spain*, and 800 Years it cost the *Spaniards* to recover it. The King seeing he laboured in vain, fled to a Mountain, where he changed his Apparel with a Shepherd: In this condition he came to the Monastery of *Cauliniana*, two Leagues from *Merida*, on the Banks of the River *Guadiana*. Here overcome with Trouble and Sorrow for his Sins, he fell into a Swoun, and was brought to himself by one *Romanus* a Holy Monk. With him he fled into *Portugal*, where they took up their Habitation on a Rock upon the Sea Coast, near the Town of *Pederneira*. They took two different Cells about a Mile from one another, where both of them

ended

200000 Foot and 40000 Horse of the Moors land in Spain.

The King's Army consisted of 120000 Foot and 10000 Horse. 714. A great and bloody Battle.

The Spaniards overthrown.

A remark upon the number Eight.

ended their Days. Here, as is said, was found an Image of our Blessed Lady, in the Time of *Alonso*, our first King; and a Tomb, with this Inscription, *HIC REQUIESCIT RUDERICUS ULTIMUS REX GOTHORUM*; that is, *Here repes Roderick, the last King of the Goths*. Thus far our Author, *Emanuel de Faria*, setting down this as an approved and undoubted Opinion: But many others, and those of good Note, reject this, as fabulous; most Men agreeing, that King *Roderick* was drowned in the River *Gundalete*, where most of his Royal Apparel was found; he being never after heard of. Many more strange Stories have been spread abroad, as it commonly happens in such Cases, where the Bodies of Princes, in such Universal Calamities, are not found; but they are rather Romantick, than Historical, and therefore not fit for any, but least of all for the Brevity of this History.

The Moors  
over-run  
all Spain.

After the Victory, the *Moors* spread themselves over all the Province, committing inhumane Barbarities; not without losing, in several Rencounters during the eight Months of their Conquest, 80000 Men, besides 20000 before slain in the great Battel. The chief Resistance was made at *Merida*: The Defendants, whereof many were *Portugueses*, that being then the supream Tribunal of *Lusitania*, were commanded by *Sacaru*, a Noble Goth. Many brave Actions passed at the Siege; but at length, there being no Hopes of Relief, and Provisions failing, the Town was surrender'd upon Articles. The Commander of the *Lusitanians*, with such as would follow him, traversing *Portugal*, came to a Sea-port Town; where gathering a good Number of Ships, he put to Sea; but to what part of the World they were carried, does not appear. There is an ancient Fable of an Island, called *Antilia*, in the Western Ocean, inhabited by *Portugueses*, which could never yet be found; and therefore we will leave it, till such time as it is discovered; but to this Place our Author supposes these *Portugueses* to have been driven. Fortune having now wholly forsaken *Spain*, the *Moors* easily over-ran all that remained, as far as the River *Minho*, under the Command of *Abdalaziz*, Son to *Muza*: Yet the *Andaluzians* and *Lusitanians*, *Muza* being absent, rose up in Arms, and put to the Sword the Moorish Garrisons

Garrisons of *Sevil*, *Beja* and *Ilipula*; which done, being assembled to a great Number, they took *Merida* by Force, killing all they found therein. *Muza*, who was then at *Zaragoza*, halted to quell this Commotion; which was easily done. *Merida* he spared; *Sevil* suffered much; at *Ilipula* there was not one Stone left upon another; but what he did at *Beja*, is not known, though it may be supposed not to have escaped, having been the Place of Rendezvous for the People of *Sevil*.

7. The famous Actions of *D. Pelayo*, or *Pelagius*, and *Pelagius* the miserable Ends of Count *Julian*, his Wife, and Daughter, the principal Actors in this Tragedy, are treated of in the Chronicles of those Kingdoms to which they appertain. *Pelagius*, during the 19 Years he reigned, had no Command in *Portugal*, where the *Moors* were so predominant, that there were as many Kings as Cities. But because the Actions of *Pelagius* were so great in themselves, and in the Consequence of them, we will give some Hints of what others write at large. *Pelagius* was in the great Battel, with his Cousin-German King *Roderick*: After which, he fled, with 1000 *Christians*, to *Asturias de Oviedo*, where he took Shelter in a vast Cave, now called *Covadonga*, among the Mountains of *Auseva*; and was, in that miserable Condition, by his Men proclaimed King of *Spain*; a mighty Title, for so poor a Beginning; and yet here began those Victories, which, in the Space of 800 Years, recovered all *Spain*. *Pelagius* had a Sister, whose Name is not known; but *Muza*, Governor of *Gijon*, in *Asturias*, being taken with her Beauty, enjoy'd her, upon Promise of Marriage. The Desire of Revenging this Wrong first moved *Pelagius* to appear in Arms: Thus it fell out, that as one Lady was the Cause of the Destruction of *Spain*, so another was the Motive of its Restauration. *Pelagius* was the Son of *Favila* Duke of *Cantabria*, Third Son of King *Chindaswindus*, and of his Wife *D. Luz*, the Daughter of *Theodofredus* Duke of *Cordova*, and Brother to *Favila*. He was born at *Toledo*, and bred at *Alcantara*, by *Grases*, Brother to the Lady *Luz*, his Mother. This was the first King that we find had the Title of *Don* annexed to his Name. His Wife was, *Gaudiosa*, of *Cantabria*; Fourth Grandchild to *Ofilon*, Brother to *Stephen*, the happy



- happy Father of the Archbishop St. *Ildefonsus*. By her he had *Favila* and *Ermefenda*, who succeeded him in the Regal Dignity. He took *Leon* in the Year 722: And hence came the Title of Kings of *Leon*, and the Bearing of a Lion for their Arms. He died at *Cangas*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Auseva*, in September, 737; and lies buried in the Church of *Covadonga*, built by himself, and his Wife, and dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*.

*Favila*  
succeeds  
*Pelagius*.

8. *Favila*, who succeeded his Father *Pelagius*, had not Time to perform any great Actions, being killed in the Second Year of his Reign, by a Bear, as he was hunting. He lies buried in the Church of the Holy Cross, founded by himself, at *Cangas*. He married *Froilivua*, and either had no Sons, or, at least, they came not to the Crown; for his Sister *Ermefenda* succeeded him, and took to Husband, and King, D. *Alonso*, Son to D. *Peter*, Duke of *Cantabria*, descended from *Reccaredus* I. During the foregoing Years, the *Christians* in *Portugal* enjoyed full Liberty of Conscience. Several *Moorish* Great Men ruled over them: *Aliboacen*, Grandson to the General *Tarif*, was Lord of the City *Coimbra*, and all the Territories betwixt the Rivers *Alva Mondego* and *Agueda*; governing with Tyrannical Power. Thus the *Portuguese* lived in Subjection, when Heaven gave them Hopes of recovering their Liberty. Happy was the Kingdom in falling to *Ermefenda*, for that she was the Mother of the Victorious and Religious King *Alonso*, who conquer'd a great part of *Castile*, *Galicia* and *Portugal*. He enter'd *Galicia* with a powerful Army, and took the Cities of *Lugo* and *Tuy*: Then passing over the River *Minho*, he overran all the Country, as far as *Duero*; entering the Cities and Towns of *Braga*, *Porto*, *Agueda*, *Viseo*, and *Chaves*; besides other Places of Importance: No Quarter was given to the *Moors*; and the *Christians* were carried away to *Asturias*, he not designing to keep all he gained. This was the first King, after the Destruction of *Spain*, that had any Jurisdiction in *Portugal*. Thus he reigned, with great Honour, 17 Years; and died at the Age of 64. His and his Wife's Bodies were buried in the Church of *Covadonga*. He had Issue, *Fruela*, who succeeded him; *Wimaranus*, *Aurelius*, and *Adofinda*. By a Slave he had *Mauregatus*, who proved more like the

King *Alonso* successful against the Infidels.

757.

757. His and his Wife's Bodies were buried in the Church of *Covadonga*. He had Issue, *Fruela*, who succeeded him; *Wimaranus*, *Aurelius*, and *Adofinda*. By a Slave he had *Mauregatus*, who proved more like the

the Mother, than the Father, as will appear in the Sequel.

9. *Fruela*, who inherited his Father's Valour, as *K. Fruela* well as his Kingdom, marched to meet a mighty Army, sent against him by *Abderramen* King of *Cordova*, kills 60000 Moors: (the first that, in *Spain*, durst cast off the Authority of the *African Caliph*;) under the Command of *Omar*, to revenge the Harm done by the late King *Alonso*, in *Portugal* and *Galicia*. He met with no Opposition in *Portugal*: But in *Galicia*, King *Fruela* discomfitted his mighty Army, killing him, and 60000 of his Men. This done, crossing *Portugal*, to besiege *Setuval*, he overthrew *Aliaben Talib*, who came to put a Stop to his Proceedings. with 1500 Horse, and 14000 Foot: Of the *Moors*, 8000 were slain in the Fight; and of the *Christians*, 2300. This Victory laid that Country open; and the King, after an hard Siege, had *Setuval* surrender'd to him. This is his last Action, we know of, in *Portugal*: In other Places he performed many great Exploits. He forbid Priests to marry, which had been allowed since the Time of King *Wiriza*; and was the Founder of the City *Oviedo*. All his Vertues and Trophies were obscured by his putting his Brother *Wimaranus* to death, upon bare Suspicion that he intended to rebel, because he was exceedingly beloved by the People, for his extraordinary Endowments. Most Authors agree, that this *Wimaranus* was Father to *Bermudo* the Monk, afterwards King. *Fruela* was married to *Monina*, the Daughter of *Eudo* Duke of *Guienne*, in *France*. Their Children were, D. *Alonso*, and the Lady *Ximena*. This King had also a Bastard-Son, called *Raimund*. He prospered no more after the Death of his Brother *Wimaranus*; for *Abderramen*, King of *Cordova*, recovered all that Part of *Portugal* which lies betwixt Cape St. *Vincent* and the River *Tagus*. After this Loss, he was murder'd at *Cangas*, by his Brother *Aurelius*. His Body, and that of his Wife, were buried in the great Church of *Oviedo*, founded by himself. He reigned 11 Years in great Esteem with his People; and two more after the Death of his Brother, no less hated than he had been beloved.

10. We have no Account of any thing remarkable, Particular done by *Aurelius*, the Successor of *Fruela*, in *Portugal*. Affairs of *Portugal* But about this time, *Marwan Iben Zorat* reigned in *Coimbra*:

774. *bra*: And *Theodur*, a Noble-man, descended of the *Gothish* Kings, was Governor of the *Christians* in these Parts, with the Title of Count. *Aurelius* reigned six Years, died at *Cangas*, and was buried in the Church of *St. Michael*. He leaving no Children, *Adosinda*, the Daughter of King *Alonso* and Queen *Ermescenda*, and his Sister, succeeded him. She married *Silo*, whose Parents are not known; but so he came to be King. He enter'd *Portugal*, to make War upon the *Moors*; and took from them the City *Merida*, in *Estremadura*. Thence he marched against the People of *Galicia*, who were in Rebellion; and finding great Opposition, after the Victory, he treated them with much Severity. Having obtained these Victories, the King gave himself up so entirely to his Ease, that the Queen managed all the Government. They had one Son, called *Aldegastus*; who, with his Wife *Brunilda*, built the Monastery of *St. Mary d' Ovanna*, in the Territory of *Tinco*, for their Burying-place. The King died when he had reigned Nine Years, and was buried in the Church of *St. John de Pravia*, founded by himself. His Epitaph is thus: H. S. E. S. S. S. T. L. Each Letter stands for a Word; and are, HIC SITUS EST SILO SIT SIBI TERRA LEVIS.

## C H A P. VII.

*The succeeding Kings, from the Year 783, till 924. The Battels they fought, and their Conquests upon the Moors; but more particularly, in Portugal.*

783. 1. Queen *Adosinda* considering the good Qualities of her Nephew *D. Alonso*, the Son of *Alonso* the Catholic King, she appointed him her Successor. *Mauregatus*, the Bastard Son of the same *Alonso*, begotten on a Slave, soon deprived him of the Crown. To compass his Design, he enter'd into a League with the *Moors*, and became Tributary to them, the Tribute consisting of 100 Noble Maids, to be deliver'd to them yearly.

yearly: In case he gave not the Maids, in lieu of every one, he was to pay 500 Pieces of Money, supposed to answer to as many Crowns in our Days. This Tribute was conveyed to *Cordova*, and gathered and secured in several Parts of *Asturias*, *Galicia* and *Portugal*. Now some Authors affirm, this Tribute was paid in the Year 770; and if so, it must be in the Reign of *Aurelius*, who governed from the Year 768, till 774; and then *Mauregatus* did not institute, but only continued to pay it. Whensoever it began, certain it is, it continued till the Year 788, which was the last of *Mauregatus's* Reign. He died without Issue, and was buried at *Pravia*. 788.

2. *Bermudo*, then in Deacon's Orders, Grandson to *Bermudo*, the Catholic *Alonso*, being Son either to *Wimaranus*, or *Fruela*, his Brother, was promoted to the Crown after *Mauregatus*. The first Action of this King was very honourable; for *Abderramen*, King of *Cordova*, sending to demand of him the Tribute of the Maids, he not only refused to pay it; but, with a small Number, encountering an Army of his, of 60000 Men, under the Command of *Muza*, overthrew it, and so recovered the Honour of *Spain*, delivering it from that heavy Imposition. *Bermudo*, though a Deacon, was married to *Ousenda*, or *Usenda*; by whom he had *Ramiro*, afterwards King; and a Daughter, named *Christina*: He had also a Bastard-Son, called *D. Nunho*. Though the Action we have spoken of was great, his last was incomparably beyond it; for he not only resigned the Crown, but, having Children of his own, gave it up to *D. Alonso*, Son to King *Fruela*; from whom it had been wrongfully taken by *Mauregatus*. This done, he took the Habit of a Monk, in the Monastery of *Sabatun*; where he died, and was buried, but afterwards translated to *Oviedo*. 793. He resigns the Crown.

3. *D. Alonso*, who was restored to the Crown by *Bermudo*, was born in the Year 758. Though married to *Alonso*, the French Lady *Berta*, he had no Issue, having lived continently with her; and therefore he was called, *The Chaste*, a Name rare among Princes. This Name of *Alonso*, as it was fortunate to *Spain* in general, so was it also to *Lisbon* in particular, for its Recovery, Restauration and Defence. This King took it from the *Moors*, killing a great Number of them in the Assault, and in several 798. His Conquests.

several Battels he fought to come to it. Some Authors will have it, that *Charlemagne* came over out of *France*, in Person, to his Assistance: Others deny his Personal Presence: But all agree, his Army was so great, that the *Infidels* could never make Head against it. The following Year, the King took the Cities of *Visco*, *Lamego*, *Coimbra*, *Braga*, and other Places about *Porto*, *Omar* King of *Merida*, with a great Power, laid Siege to *Benavente*; but he and the greatest part of his Army were put to the Sword by *Bernard del Carpio*, commanding the Forces of King *Alonso*. In the mean while, *Aliatan*, by the Way of *Estremadura*, enter'd *Portugal*, putting all to Fire and Sword, with such Success, that he took *Lisbon* the 8th Year after it had been gained by King *Alonso*. Many other Places submitted to the *Barbarian*; and he left *Alchama*, King of *Badajoz*, or *Beja*, to command there. This *Alchama* afterwards making an Expedition out of his Province, was killed by *Bernard del Carpio*, at the City *Zamora*. *Aliatan*, to revenge this Loss, raised great Forces in *Barbary*, which he divided into two Bodies; whereof, the one enter'd *Castile*; the other, *Portugal*; making great Havock in both Places: Both these Armies were cut in pieces; one, in which *Alahaban* commanded, by the King, near the River *Cesa*; the other, conducted by *Melich*, by *Bernard*, in the Plain of *Narbon*. *Abdalla*, Governor of *Valencia*, and *Mahomet*, of *Merida*, rebelled at once against King *Aliatan*: He marched against *Abdalla*; but whilst he was there engaged, *Mahomet* joined in League with King *Alonso*; whereby he became powerful enough to conquer a good part of *Portugal* and *Estremadura*. *Aliatan* returning with a mighty Army, overthrew the Rebel, and possessed himself of all which he had conquered betwixt *Merida* and *Lisbon*.

*Mahomet* thus expelled his Dominion, fled with such as would follow him to King *Alonso*, submitting himself to him as his Vassal. The King sent him with one *Raymund*, to subdue certain places then in Rebellion in *Gallicia*; they easily overcame the Mutiniers, and the King ordered *Mahomet* to reside in those parts, hoping to make his advantage of him against the King of *Cordova*, as he did for sometime: But *Mahomet* finding himself powerful, thought to recover what he had lost, and

814.

and therefore privately conspiring with *Raymond*, they both Rebelled, usurping great part of *Gallicia*: The King hastened thither with a considerable Army, *Raymond* presently submitted himself, and was not only Pardoned, but Married the King's Kinswoman. *Mahomet* though he had then 60000 Men, durst not give Battle in open Field, but retired to the strong Castle of *St. Christina*, two Leagues from *Lugo*. There the King Besieged, and Hunger forced him to come out and give Battle, in which his Army was entirely routed and he Slain. About this time was found the Sepulcher of *St. James* the Apostle, and Patron of *Spain*, which had been hid almost 800 Years; it was discovered by *Theodemirus* Bishop of *Iria*. King *Alonso* removed it to *Compostela*, which he made a Bishoprick, erecting there a Church capable of so great a Relick. Thus Crowned with Victories, and loaded with Years, for he lived Eighty Five, and Reigned Fifty Two: he died at *Oviedo*, and lies Buried in the Church of *St. Mary de Recasto*, his own Foundation. At this time the old *Gothish* Law of trying People by Fire was in use in *Portugal*, as appears by the Tryal of *Elesinda*, accused of Adultery by her Husband *Ariovigildus*, she after this manner clearing her self, and he being Condemned to be Burnt, as she should have been if Convinced. Pope *Honorius* the III. abolished this Custom, yet afterwards, another worse started up, which was, that the Woman accused, should assign a Champion to fight the Accuser, and that party which had the Victory was held innocent.

5. King *Bermudo* by an incomparable Act of Justice, had taken the Crown from his own Children, to give it to *Alonso*, to whom of right it appertained; and God to reward this rare Equity, ordained that *Alonso* should live Chast, and restore it to *Ramiro*, the Son of the same *Bermudo*. Scarce was he seated on the Throne, when Count *Nepesinus* rebelled in *Asturias*, and usurped the regal Title: The New King with all the speed he could, marched against him, and having defeated and taken him Prisoner, put out his Eyes and thrust him into a Monastery. Soon after he overthrew the *Normans*, who destroyed the Coast of *Gallicia*, and the *English* who had laid Siege to *Lisbon*: Returning to the River *Duero*, he vanquished *Mahomet Cid Ataus*, Lord of the

Fort and Town of *Gaya*, and also *Muley Achim* of *Agueda* more to the Southward. *Zuleyma Ibon Muza*, the tributary King of *Lamego*, and *Tarif Iben Rages* of *Viseu* were admitted to grace upon their submission. *Alhamar* King of *Coimbra*, boldly standing upon his Defence, was overthrown, and all the Country reduced, which done, *Ramiro* leaving good Garrisons in his Conquests, returned to *Oviedo*; in his way, he visited *John* the Abbot of the Monastery of *Lorvan*, and bestowed Lands upon the Monastery. The principal part of the Gift was the Town of *Montemayor* the Old, a strong place, the Garrison whereof the Abbot was obliged to maintain. In this Town was one *Garcia Yannez*, a foundling brought up by the Abbot, and by him preferred for his Valour. This Fellow envying the Honour of *D. Bermudo* the Abbot's Nephew, and Governour of that Territory, fled to *Abderramen* King of *Cordova*, offering not only to renounce the Faith, but also to put into his hands *Montemayor*, and the other Conquests of King *Ramiro*.

6. Whilst *Garcia Yannez* was with the Moorish King, the Abbot and his Nephew *Bermudo*, took the two Rebel Counts *Alderredus*, whose Eyes he put out, and *Pinelus* whom with his Seven Sons, he put to Death, as being more obstinate in their Crime. Knowing that *Rages* of *Viseu* was joyning in League with other Moorish Commanders, he assaulted his City, and rased it to the Ground. *Sebastian* Bishop of *Salamanca*, with the Abbot's Consent, afterwards repairing of it, is said to have found there the Tomb of *Roderick*, the last King of the *Goths*. *Garcia Yannez* having renounced the Faith, and calling himself *Zulema*, had the Command of an Army given him to execute what he had proposed. He entred *Portugal*, committing greater Barbarities than the Infidels, and laid Siege to *Montemayor* which was bravely defended by the Abbot and his Men. Hunger beginning to pinch, they thought of an Expedient more to be wondered at than imitated, which was, that they slew all their Women and Children, the Abbot beginning with his Sister and Nephews. This done, they sallied out upon the Enemy with such Fury, that they soon put them to flight: The Rebel *Zulema* was killed by the Abbot, many of his Men were drowned in the River *Mondego*, and most of them perished by several

several means, so that few returned Home; 76000 were destroyed, and Night stopped the pursuit of the Victors. Morning discovered the Fields covered not only with dead Carcasses, but with plenty of rich Booty: This was a small comfort to them that had imbrued their hands in the Blood of their Wives, Children and Relations, but some that had hastened to the Town after the Victory, brought back the News, that all those they had killed, were miraculously restored to life, and so all returned joyful with the Victory and Recovery of their Friends. The Abbot stayed in the place where he obtained the Victory, and there Built a small Hermitage, and ended his days in Sanctity. His Monks endeavoured it, but could not remove his Body, and our first King *D. Alonso Enriquez* Founded a Monastery in that place, which was finished by his Son and Successor *D. Sancho*, and given to the *Cistercian* Order. This is what related to *Portugal* in the Reign of King *Ramiro*; he obtained many other Victories, particularly the memorable one, called of *Clavijo*, in which St. *James* the Apostle is said to have been seen fighting for the Christians, and was thence called the Patron of Spain. This King Married *Paterna*, whose extraction is not known; he left the Crown to his Son *Ordonno*, 850. and died at *Oviedo*, where he lies Buried.

7. *D. Ordonno* was no way inferior to his Father for King Or- Valour, and being at full Age when he died, was very dono Re- acceptable to all the States. His first care was to re- builds na- people the Cities of *Leon*, *Astorga*, *Tuy*, *Amaya* and o- ny Towns. 855. thers, almost left desolate in the late Invasions; this done, he obtained two notable Victories, one over the rebellious *Vascones*, and the other over *Muza* by extra- ction a Goth, but turned Mahometan. This *Muza* had possessed himself of the greatest part of Spain, but was entirely defeated by our King in the Plains of *Alvelda* or *Albayda*, two Leagues from *Logronno*. Many Moors 857. upon this Defeat sent to Congratulate the Victor, and He is over- others stood to see the Consequences of it. Mahomet thrown by the King of *Cordova*, alarmed at this success of the Christi- Moones. ans, drew mighty succours out of *Africk*, and with a formidable Army began to conquer the Christian Territories. *Ordonno* met him in *Estremadura*, near the River *Tagus*, and though he killed double the number that he lost, was forced to leave the Victory to the Bar-



859.

Barbarian, who recovered much of what the *Christians* had before taken. He took *Santarem*, *Irena* and *Rotas*; then returning towards *Cordova*, he took and Fortified many Towns betwixt the Rivers *Guadiana* and *Tagus*; the next Year was not so favourable to him, for the best part of his Fleet was cast away on the Coast of *Galicia*, and his Army was overthrown on the Borders of *Navarre*, by the King thereof *D. Inigo Ximenez Arista*. *Irena* is supposed to be the Town now called *Leyria* and *Rotos Roda* near *Redina*. Many *Christians* at this time obtained the Crown of Martyrdom, under the power of the *Moors*, but especially at *Cordova*. King *Ordonno* was Married to the Lady *Munia*, by whom he had *D. Alonso* his Successor, *D. Bermudo*, *D. Nunno*, *Odvarius* and *Eruela*, whose Eyes the King their Brother caused to be put out for conspiring against him. He had also a Daughter called *Aragonta*, Wife to *Sancho Abarca*, King of *Navarre*. King *Ordonno* was troubled with the Gout, and died of it at *Oviedo*, having Reigned Twelve Years, his Body was Buried in the Chappel of King *Alonso* the Chast.

863.

King A-  
lonso III.  
called the  
Great.

8. Authors do not agree upon the Age of King *Alonso* the III. when he came to the Crown; some say Nine, some Fourteen, and some Seventeen Years. The most is too little for the great Actions performed by him immediately after his Accession to the Crown; his Valour and other Vertues purchased him the Sir-name of the Great, only attributed to him among all the Kings of *Castile* and *Leon*. *Eruela Bermudez* a great Man in *Galicia* rebelled and came down so suddenly to *Oviedo*, that the young King was forced to fly to *Alava*, where having gathered his Forces, the Rebels put to death their Leader, and submitted themselves to him: Then he repaired the Cities of *Oviedo* and *Leon*, and built many Castles. In the mean while Count *Eylon* rebelled in *Alava*, but was oppressed by the King's Celerity: During this time he was at peace with the Infidels, *Mahomet* King of *Cordova*, and *Lot* or *Lope* the Son of *Muza* King of *Toledo*, being at War among themselves. They two being agreed, the King of *Cordova* sent *Albucazen* and *Alemandarin* his Generals, the one into *Biscay*, the other into *Galicia*, where they made great havock, the People flying before them from the Plains to the Mountains. But King *Alonso* marched with such ex-

pedition,

pedition, that he oppressed them both, before they thought he had been moving towards them; this success produced Peace, which he employed in rebuilding ruined places, among which were *Braga*, *Porto*, *Chaves* and *Viseo*, all in *Portugal*. The King of *Cordova* coming down suddenly with an Army, took *Viseo* first, and then *Salamanca*, and so returned to *Cordova*, refusing to give our King Battel, who thereupon wasted all the Country of *Toledo*: Then turning into *Portugal*, he retook *Viseo*, and had *Coimbra* yielded to him.

9. It appears, by a Grant of his to *Sisenandus* Bishop of *Compostela*, that the Territories betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, and that called *Tras os Montes*, or Beyond the Mountains, were Desert, from the first coming of the *Moors* till his time, when he Peopled and made them fit to withstand the Enemy. At this sametime the King continued the Structure of the stately Church of *St. James* the Apostle. Seventeen Bishops were present at the Dedication of it, above half of them were *Portuguese*. Next by Order of Pope *John* the VIII. the King held a National Council at *Oviedo*, to provide for the Bishops that were Expelled from their Diocesses, and erect the Bishoprick of *Oviedo* into an Archbishoprick; after which the King again applied himself to Peopling of the Country, and was come as far as the River *Tagus*, when he understood his own Sons conspired to depose him, being encouraged by their Mother and some of the Nobility. He voluntarily performed what they intended to extort from him; to *D. Garcia* he gave *Oviedo*, *Leon* and *Castile*, to *D. Ordonno*, *Gallicia* and *Portugal*. Having resigned his Kingdoms, he went in Pilgrimage to *Santiago*, and at his return, asked of his Son *Garcia*, some Forces to make an incursion into the *Moorish* Territories, which he performed successfully. He entred into League with the Kings of *France* and *Navarre*; to the latter he gave his Sister *Urraca* in Marriage, and married himself *Ximena*, Daughter either of *France* or of *D. Inigo Ximenez Arista* of *Navarre*. His Sons were *Garcia*, *Eruela*, *Ordonno*, *Ramiro* and *Gonzalo*, who was Archdeacon of *Oviedo*. He Reigned 48 Years, died at *Zamora*, and was Buried at *Astorga*, where his Tomb is still to be seen, tho' the Body was translated to the Chappel of King *Alonso* the Chast in *Oviedo*, where also lies his Wife *Ximena*.

The Church  
of St. James  
the Apostle  
in Galicia  
Dedicated.

903.

The Christian  
Dominions di-  
vided be-  
twixt the  
two Sons  
of King  
Alonso.

914.

10. D. Gar-

Garcia has  
for his  
part Gali-  
cia and the  
North of  
Portugal.

His Brother  
Ordonno  
Succeeds  
him.

He twice  
overthrows  
the Moors

10. D. Garcia having wrested the Scepter out of his Father's hand, enjoyed it but three Years: Tho' he got the Crown by unlawful means, he Governed well, overcame *Ayola* Lord of *Talavera*, and is said to have obtained other Victories; he died at *Zamora*, was Buried at *Recasto* of *Oviedo*, and had been Married to the Lady *Nunna*, Daughter to the Count D. *Nunno Fernandez de Amaya*, but left no Issue. His Brother *Ordonno* in his time Governed so much to the satisfaction of the People, that after his Death, he was unanimously allowed his Heir. He had not only preserved the Conquests on this side *Tagus*, but passing that River, took the City *Beja*, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword, which so terrified the Neighbouring People, that they abandoned the Towns before he came near them. Having received his Brother's Kingdom, after some other exploits, he returned into *Lusitania* and wasted all the Country along the River *Guadiana*. Among other places, he took the Castle called *Alhaje*, where all the Treasure of the Moorish Kings lay as in a place inpregnable, whereby he so humbled all the Infidels throughout *Estremadura*, and as far as *Algarve*, that they submitted themselves as tributaries to him; after which he returned to *Leon*. No sooner was he gone, but they encouraged by *Abderramen* King of *Cordova* revolted, but King *Ordonno* speedily returning and ravaging the Country, they as soon submitted themselves, begging Pardon. The chief of these were the People of *Merida*, *Badajoz* and the Territories adjacent then so fruitful and plentiful of all things, that thence came the name of *Badajoz*, being a corruption of *Beled Aiz*, two Arabick words, signifying, *The Land of Life*. King *Ordonno* hearing that *Abderramen* was marching towards him, advanced to meet him, and in a Battle near *Talavera* slew 25000 of his Men. This done, he returned to *Leon*, and applied the spoiles of the War to Building the great Church there. Mean while *Abderramen* having drawn vast supplies out of *Africk*, laid Siege to *Santistevan de Gormaz*; but the King surprising him in the Night, forced him with great Slaughter to fly back to *Cordova*. Still the Moore recruits his broken Army, and having wasted all the Country, sits down before the City *Porto*, which was bravely defended by Count *Hermenegildus*. Our King came to his relief, and made

made a great Slaughter among the Besiegers, yet so, that he was not assured of the Victory, till the next day he found the Enemy had quitted the Field, leaving their Tents, Baggage, and warlike Engines behind them. Having obtained this Victory, the King returned to *Leon*.

11. Early the next Year, Ambassadors came to *Ordonno* from the King of *Navarre*, to crave aid against a great power of the Infidels. He thought not enough to send, but went himself in Person, and Fortune here forsaking him, was overthrown near *Valdejunquera*, many Captives were taken by the Infidels, among whom were the Bishops of *Salamanca* and *Tuy*, and the Kings themselves escaped narrowly. Our King grieved at this loss, the following Year broke into the Moorish Territories, driving all before him even to the Walls of the City *Cordova*, which it was feared he would Besiege. Having struck an universal Terror into his Enemies, he returned to *Zamora*. He had a Daughter called *Ximena*, who falling in Love with a Courtier, ran away with him, carrying all her Jewels along with her, and he left her on a Mountain, having fulfilled his desires. She travelled on, and took up with a Farmer as his Servant, from which he raised her to be his Wife. The King long after, Hunting that way lost himself, and fell into this Cottage, where he was entertained, his Daughter making a sort of Puff-past she knew he loved, and putting a Ring well known to him into it; the Ring caused him to suspect somewhat, and examining the matter, he found that was his Daughter, whom he forgave, and preferred her Husband, whose Name was *Tello*, and the place of his abode called *Meneses*. Hence some will have the Family of *Meneses* to proceed; others Write that this passage hapned to the Lady *Teresa Sanchez*, bastard Daughter to King *Sancho* the First, and Wife to D. *Alonso Tellez de Meneses*, whom they esteem the Progenitor of this Family. King *Ordonno* had three Wives, the first *Elvira*, whose Parentage is unknown; by her he had D. *Sancho*, D. *Alonso*, D. *Ramiro*, D. *Garcia* and D. *Ximena*. The second was *Aragonta* of *Galicia*, whom he is said to have put away, suspecting she knew of the flight of his Daughter *Ximena*. The third was *Sancha* Daughter to the King of *Navarre*, by these two he had no Children. The last Action of his life darkned

920.

921.

923.

924.

darken'd all the Glory of his former Triumphs: He sent for four Counts who governed *Castile*, upon safe Conduct, to *Carrion*, and there cut off their Heads: Which so incensed the People of *Castile*, that they only wanted an Opportunity to rebell, and take Revenge: But Death prevented their Designs, taking him away at *Zamora*. His Body was buried in the great Church of *Leon*, which City he had so entirely loved, that he took its Name for the Title of his Kingdom, leaving that of King of *Oviedo* and *Galicia*.

## CHAP. VIII.

*The Succession of the Kings of Castile and Leon, from the Year 924, till 985: With the Revolt of Count Fernan Gonzalez: And the Desolation made in Portugal, by Alcoraxis and Almanzor, the Moors.*

Fruela II. 1.  
usurps the  
Crown.

**D.** Fruela II. was Successor to his Brother *Ordonno*; usurping the Crown from his Children, who were then very young. He was nothing like to his Brother in Valour, for he ceased the Prosecution of the War against the *Infidels*; but was not unlike to him in the last Action of his Life; for, as *Ordonno* unjustly put to death the fore-mentioned Counts, so *Fruela* wrongfully executed certain Gentlemen, called *Olmudes*. He became so odious to the *Castilians*, that the Nobility, joining together, rebelled, and separated themselves from the Crown of *Leon*. To this purpose, they chose two Judges to rule them: The two first were, *Nunno Rasura*, and *Lain Calvo*. They were of the Middle Sort of People, neither of the Greatest, nor Meanest; that so they might neither be too powerful, nor become contemptible: Yet, from them are the Kings of *Spain* descended. At the same time that this Government was instituted in *Castile*, we find Counts governing in some Parts of *Portugal*; as, *D. Gutierre Aris*, at *Porto*; and *Huso Husez*, at *Viseo*. A Leprosie consumed

925.

consumed King *Fruela* so fast, that he died at *Leon*, having reigned scarce a Year; and was buried in the Cathedral. He had two Wives, *D. Munia*, and *D. Urraca*: By them he had Issue *Ordonno*, *Alonso* and *Ramiro*. King *Ramiro* II. put out all their Eyes, and thrust them into the Monastery of *St. Julian*, either upon Suspicion, or Proof, that they conspired against him. He had also a fourth Son, called *Fruela*.

2. *Alonso* IV, Eldest Son of King *Ordonno* II, after the Death of *Fruela*, recovered his Right, and Kingdom. He was not wicked, as his Predecessor; but as unprofitable to his Kingdom as he. His best Quality was, That he was sensible of his own Insufficiency; and therefore, first sent his Brother *Ramiro* to govern *Portugal*, and afterwards resigned the Kingdom to him, and became himself a Monk. *Ramiro* had chosen the City *Viseo* for his Residence in *Portugal*, whence he made Inroads into the Frontiers of the *Moors*; and by his gentle Government, gained the Affections of the People. Here he received Letters from the King, his Brother, calling him to Court, in order to resign the Crown to him; for that his Son, Prince *Ordonno*, was but an Infant. *D. Ramiro* fearing his Brother's Inconstancy, hastened to *Zamora*, that he might not have Time to repent. The King immediately put the Crown upon his Head, and was the first that did him Homage, as his Subject: Which done, he took the Habit of a *Benedictine* Monk, in the Monastery of *Sabagun*; and is therefore called, *Alonso* the Monk. He was married to *Ximena*, the Daughter of King *Sancho Abarca*, of *Navarre*; and had by her, *Ordonno*, who came to be King; and *D. Alonso*, who died young. He died in the Monastery of *St. Julian*, and lies there buried: But we shall see him repent, and disturb his Brother's Reign.

3. King *Alonso* being become a Monk, and repenting, his Brother *Ramiro*, now possessed of the Crown, relolved not to part with it: and thus began a Civil War, which was the Cause of much Mischief. The *Moors* making their Advantage thereof, recovered the Cities of *Lamego*, *Braganza* and *Porto*, with all the Country lying between the Rivers *Tagus* and *Duero*. The *Castilians* also made use of this Opportunity, (their Judges, *Nunno* and *Lain*, being dead,) to raise up

Castile separates from Leon, and creates a Government under two Judges.

928.  
Alonso repents, and raises a Civil War.

932.

up in their stead the Count *Ferran Gonzalez*. King *Ramiro* politickly winking at this Affront, which he could not revenge upon the Authors, invaded the Kingdom of *Toledo*, destroying all before him with Fire and Sword. King *Alonso* the Monk, held out two Years in *Leon*, against his Brother *Ramiro*: But then, despairing of Success, he stirred up *Alonso*, *Ordonno* and *Ramiro*, the Sons of his Predecessor *Fruela*, to raise a Rebellion in *Asturias* and *Biscay*, believing that would draw away the King, his Brother, from attending upon him. Nevertheless, the King continued the Siege, obliged him to surrender, and afterwards put him into Prison. This done, he found Means to apprehend the three Brothers; and to prevent future Designs, put out theirs, and his Brother the Monk's Eyes. Two Years *Alonso* lived blind: But the King repenting of this Cruelty used towards his Brother, to testify his Repentance, built the Monastery of *St. Julian*.

934.  
Prodigies  
in the Sky.

4. Two Months are said to have passed in the Year 934, in which Time the Light of the Sun was scarce seen; at the End whereof a Breach or Yawning appeared in the Sky, along which great Flames of Fire were seen to run; and the Stars seemed to wander in the Region of the Air. Many Judgments were made upon these Prodigies; but most agreed, they portended, the End of the World to be at hand. At last the Sun shined out; and whilst the *Christians* appeased God with Prayers, the *Moors* consulted their Wizards. *Alfarani*, of *Meca*, affirmed to King *Abderramen*, that this Prodigy threaten'd the Downfall of *Christian* Princes, if he would take in hand to pull them down. Diviners fore-tell what, they know, is pleasing to Princes; and Princes believe that which pleases them. *Abderramen* declares War, and makes mighty Preparations for it, drawing great Succours out of *Africk*, under the Command of *Almanzor*. With an Army almost innumerable, he broke into *Portugal*, bearing down all before him, and putting the *Christians* to most cruel Deaths. King *Ramiro* having gathered the greatest Power he could, set forward to meet the Enemy, whose Multitude obliged him to retire to the Mountains of *Clavijo*. Here the Apostle *St. James* is said to have appeared to him, promising, he should obtain a wonderful Victory in that Place. In the Fight, the

Ramiro  
destroys a  
great Army  
of Infidels

Apostle

Apostle was seen on Horseback, making great Slaughter among the *Moors*. This Victory, some will have, to be the Cause of his being taken for Patron of *Spain*; though others say, it was that in the Time of King *Alonso I.* as was before observed.

5. There is a very strange Story about this King, *A Romantic Story of King Ramiro*, which, because it looks rather Romantick, than Historical, I will lightly pass over: It is as follows; King *Ramiro* was married to the Lady *Urraca*; but understanding that *Alboazar*, a powerful *Moor*, had a most beautiful Sister, called *Zara*, he fell in Love with her by Hear-say. He demanded her of *Alboazar*; but being denied, had her betrayed to him for Money; then putting away his Queen, he married her. *Alboazar*, to revenge this Wrong, surprized and carried away Queen *Urraca*, who was left at *Millor*, on the other side the River *Duero*. *Ramiro* hearing hereof, filled his Gallies with the choicest of his Men; and running up a River, near which she was kept, he planted the Gallies, all covered with Green, close under certain Trees that over-shaded the River: Then having laid an Ambush, and ordered them to lie close till he sounded a Cornet he carried with him, he in Disguize approached the Castle where the Queen was kept: There he met a Maid belonging to the Queen, carrying a Pitcher of Water for her; whereof, with the Maid's Consent, he drank, and dropped a Jewel into it well known to the Queen. She seeing the Jewel, caused him to be brought up to her; and having yielded her self up before to the Lust of *Alboazar*, she now betrayed the King into his Hands. *Ramiro* seeing himself taken, begged Leave only to sound his Cornet; which being granted, his Men that lay in Ambush broke into the Castle, killed *Alboazar*, and carried away the Queen, whom the King caused to be cast into the Sea, with a Stone about her Neck; because, asking of her why she looked so melancholy; she answered, *It was for the Death of the Moor, who was a better Man than he*. To this Relation, let every Man give the Credit he thinks it may deserve. This King *Ramiro* had two Wives, besides the *Moor* we have now spoke of: The First was, the Lady *Urraca*; and by her he had *Ordonno*, his Successor, *Sancho* and *Bermudo*. The Second was, *Teresa*, Daughter to *Sancho Abarca*, King of *Navarre*: Her Issue were,

K

were,



were, *Sancho*, *Audonio* and *Elvira*. By *Artida* the Moor, he had *Alboazar Ramirez*, and *Artiga Ramirez*. King *Ramiro* reigned 19 Years; he died at *Leon*, and lies in the Monastery of *Our Holy Saviour*, founded by himself and his two Wives, *Urraca* and *Teresa*.

King Or-  
donno III.  
disturbed  
by Rebels;  
subdues  
them.

6. King *Ordonno* III. was Successor to *Ramiro* II. The Beginning of his Reign was blessed with Peace, which lasted not long; for he was soon disturbed by his Brother *Sancho*, who aimed to usurp the Crown, assisted by the Count *Fernan Gonzalez*, who took part with him through Malice, and contrary to Right, and the Ties of Affinity, for *Ordonno* had married his Daughter *Urraca*. The Count was guilty of many Enormities besides this, notwithstanding the vulgar Opinion of his extraordinary Vertues and Merit. *D. Garcia Sanchez*, King of *Navarre*, and Uncle to *Sancho*, as well as Brother to his Mother, favoured his Designs. With these Aids *Sancho* presumed to assume the Regal Stile, and enter'd the Kingdom of *Leon*, wasting that very Country where he intended to reign. King *Ordonno* soon repulsed the Invaders; and the better to be revenged of the Count, he was divorced from his Daughter, and sent her back to him. Some Towns in *Galicia* had also rebelled; but the King reduced them, with a great Slaughter of the Rebels. No sooner had he quelled the Rebels, but he marched through *Portugal*, as far as *Lisbon*, whither no *Christian* King had reached, since *D. Alonso* the Chaste. After a fierce Assault, he took the City by Storm, and gave the Plunder thereof to his Army: Which done, he returned to his Court, laden with Spoils, and bestowed them in rewarding those that had deserved best, and in Religious Works. Convenience made the King and Count *Fernan Gonzalez*, who had been long at Variance, agree, and unite their Forces against the King of *Cordova*. They came to a Battel near *Gormaz*, where the *Christians* obtained a glorious Victory; which brought Peace to their Frontiers, before subject to continual Incurfions. This was the Posture of Affairs, when *Ordonno* died at *Zimora*. He lies buried in the Church of *Our Blessed Saviour*, at *Leon*, by his Father, with his two Wives, *Urraca*, from whom he was divorced; and *Elvira*, whose Parentage is unknown: By her he had *D. Bermudo*, and *Teresa*, a Nun in the Monastery of *St. Julian*, in *Leon*.

He takes  
Lisbon.

955.

7. *Sancho*,

7. *Sancho*, the Brother of King *Ordonno*, usurped *Sancho*,<sup>n</sup> the Crown from *Bermudo*, the late King's Son, then a *Ursper*, Child. This *Sancho* was excessively swelled with the *called* The Dropsie; and thence, though improperly, called, *The Fat*. He had not long enjoyed the Crown, when those very Rebels who had unjustly set it upon his Head, 957. took it thence, to bestow it upon *D. Ordonno*, Surnamed *The Wicked*, Son to King *Alonso* the Monk. The Rebel Count *Fernan Gonzalez* was the chief Actor in promoting him to the Throne, and therefore gave him to Wife his Daughter *Urraca*, before put away by the other King *Ordonno*. King *Sancho* fled to *Navarre*, and thence to *Cordova*, where there were famous Physicians, who cured him of his Dropsie. Being recovered of his Indisposition, he gathered an Army; and was so fortunate, as to take the Count *Fernan Gonzalez*, and his Son-in-Law *Ordonno*. Though he had them Prisoners, he would not presently put them to Death, but kept the Count in Custody. *D. Sancha*, his Wife, coming to see him in Prison, changed Clothes with him, and by that Means he escaped, leaving her in his stead. A great Rebellion was raised by the Counts that governed *Portugal*; but the Presence of the King soon reduced them. Only Count *Gonzalo*, who governed beyond *Duero*, durst march with an Army, to meet his Sovereign; yet finding him too strong, he made a feigned Submission, and was pardoned. It was not long before he compassed by Poyson what he had failed of by the Sword. The *Portuguese* Counts being accused of this Treason, to clear themselves, challenged *D. Gonzalo*; and Count *Fruela Vermuiz*, their Champion, overcame him at the Town of *Salas*, near the City of *Pere*. King *Sancho* perceiving his Death draw near, ordered himself to be carried to *Leon*, but died by the Way, at the Monastery of *Castrillo*, where he was buried, but was afterwards translated to *Leon*, where his Queen was also interred. Queen *Teresa* was Daughter to *Assur Fernandez*, Count of *Monzon*. By her the King had Issue, *D. Ramiro* III, his Successor; *Urraca*, married to Count *Nepociano Diaz*; and *Ermesenda*, by whom the King, her Brother, is said to have had *D. Sancho* the Hairy. About this time *Castile* revolted from the Crown of *Leon*. Authors write, that the Cause was, because the King could not pay Count *Fernan Gonzalez* for an Horse

957.

Ordonno,  
Surnamed  
the Wic-  
ked, ad-  
vanced to  
the Crown.

Sancho re-  
turns, and  
expels him.

957

and an Hawk he had sold to him upon Credit : But it appears very fabulous, that a King should part with a Kingdom upon so slender an Account. The true Reason was, the Rebellion of the People, headed by the wicked Count.

*Ramiro III* 8. King *Ramiro III.* succeeded his Father, when he was but six Years of Age ; his Mother, Queen *Teresa*, and his Aunt *Elvira*, the Nun, managing the Government with such Prudence, during his Minority, that there was no Want of him to be perceived. Besides, there was then a Truce with *Hiscen* King of *Cordova*, then but 11 Years of Age, and under the Tuition of the famous *Abagis*, Surnamed *Almanzor*, a most cruel Enemy to the *Christians*. This Tranquility was disturbed, by the *Normans* invading *Galicia* : But the Count *Gonzalo Sanchez*, falling upon them with a great Force, left not one of them to carry the News of the Defeat. At this time the City *Coimbra* was subject to the Kings of *Leon* ; and the *Christians* about it, possessed their Lands in Peace. After all things had thus remained quiet 7 or 8 Years, *Alcoracis* (supposed to be King of *Sevil*) broke into *Lusitania* with such a Power, that the *Christian* Counts, not able to withstand him, fled from the Plains, to the inaccessible Mountains. The *Barbarians*, destroying all the Country as they went, passed even the River *Minho*, and laid Siege to *Compostela*, where the Plague so violently raged in their Army, that few of them returned home. King *Ramiro* being come to Age, he shewed himself so incapable of the Government, that the Counts of *Portugal* and *Galicia* took Occasion to proclaim another King, which was, *Bermudo*, Son to King *Ordonno III.*, by his Second Wife *Elvira*. The King awaking at the News of this Rebellion, met the Rebels, and a Battel was fought between them, which lasted the whole Day : Night parted the Armies, and each returned home, neither victorious, nor overthrown. In this Fight perished the Flower of the *Spanish* Cavalry, that used to withstand the *Moors*. *Coimbra* was not concerned in this Rebellion ; it then enjoyed Peace, under *Portuguese* Governors : The Chief, who commanded all the rest, was, Count *Gonzalo Moniz*.

983. 9. The Civil Broils we have spoken of, encouraged the *Moorish* General *Almanzor*, spurred on by the Fugitive

Count *D. Vela*, who had been expelled his Lands, to break the Truce. Many notable Places in *Portugal* were again brought under, by the *Infidels* ; and among them, *Coimbra*, *Porto*, *Braga*, and *Britonium*, which was laid level with the Ground, so that only the Memory of its Name remains. The same Fate attended *Lamego*, and *Visco*, in the Province of *Beira*. The King adventuring to give the *Moors* Battel, was overthrown, and forced to retire to the Mountains, being almost reduced to the miserable Condition that *Pelayus*, or *Pelagius*, had been, when first *Spain* was over-run. Count *Garcia Fernandez*, Lord of *Castile*, being persecuted by *D. Vela*, and his Adherents, always kept the Field, against the *Moors* ; but being forsaken by the People of *Leon*, was not able to prevent the Loss of many Places. In *Portugal* only, the small Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, and the Mountain-Country of *Beira*, now adhered to *D. Bermudo*, who still called himself King in *Galicia*. To these Parts, many great Men, who before lived in the Territories of *Coimbra*, withdrew themselves. The unfortunate King thus thrust into a Corner by *D. Bermudo* on the one side, and by the *Moors* on the other, died at *Leon*, in the 33th Year of his Age, and 28th of his Reign, was buried in the Monastery of *St. Michael of Distriana*, founded by his Grandfather, King *Ramiro II* ; and 200 Years after, translated thence, by King *Ferdinand*, to the Cathedral of *Astorga*. He was married to the Lady *Urraca*, of whose Parentage we have no Account ; nor did she leave any Issue. By his own Sister, *Ermesenda*, he had, incestuously, a Son, called *D. Sancho el Velloso*, or *The Hairy*.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Succeeding Kings from the Year 985. till 1037. with the coming of the Gascons into Portugal, and their exploits against the Moores; many places recovered by them, and others from the Infidels.*

985. **1. King Remiro dying, D. Bermudo** was left sole Possessor of the Crown. At the beginning of his Reign, he wholly applied himself to the Government, but soon after he became so entirely given up to his Vices, and especially to incontinency, that he was slighted by his Subjects, and became contemptible to his Enemies. *Almanzor* laying hold of this opportunity, and prompted by the fugitive *D. Vela*, invaded again the Christian Territories, and without any considerable opposition, subdued all the Towns between the Rivers *Duro* and *Ezla*. Here King *Bermudo* came upon him so unexpectedly, that he put his vast Army to the rout; but *Almanzor* perceiving how disordered the Christians pursued, rallying some of his scattered Forces, changed the fortune of the Day, and drove those that before were victorious, to the Gates of *León*. That City had immediately fallen into the hands of the Infidels, had not the matchless valour of Count *William Gonzalez*, a Portuguese, placed there Governour by the King, defended it against the fury of the Infidels, tho' the King then lying at *Oviedo* took no care to relieve the place. In the year 996. *Almanzor* again incamped before the same City, resolving not to depart thence, till he were Master of it. Above a Year the Count held out against all the fury of *Almanzor's* Assaults and Batteries, in so much, that the Moore was about quitting the Siege, and had certainly done it, had the King either come or sent any Succour to the Besieged. At length a great part of the Wall shaken with a continual Battery, fell down, and the Moores gave a furious Assault, which obliged the Count, tho' then sick in Bed, to cause himself to be carried, as he was, to the Breach, to give the necessary Orders, and encourage his Soldiers. Three whole days did

did he make good the Breach with great Slaughter of the Assailants, till another Breach being made, the Infidels broke in overpowering the Defendants. All the Inhabitants were put to the Sword, the City Plundered and laid level with the Ground. The same fate attended *Astorga*, which done, *Almanzor* with his Army loaded with Booty, returned to *Cordova* to Winter.

2. *Ataulphus* Archbishop of *Compostela*, being wrongfully accused before the King, he ordered him to be exposed to the fury of a wild Bull, who coming to him, instead of Tossing him upon his Horns, left them both in his Hand, which was a sufficient Testimony of that Prelates innocence. *Almanzor* again broke out like a Torrent, overturning all that the Christians had repaired of the former Ruins, and destroying what was before untouched. *Montemayor* the Old, *Visco*, *Lamego*, *Porto* and *Braga*, were rased down to the Ground: The Barbarian entering *Galicia*, made a Font in the Church of *St. James* the Apostle serve for a Manger, and sent away the Gates and the Bells of the Church upon the shoulders of Christians to *Cordova*; but presuming to prophane the Sepulcher of the Apostle, he was drove back by flames which issued out of it. *Almanzor* returning through *Portugal* heavy with Plunder, was overtaken with vengeance from Heaven for profaning the Church of the Apostle. A mortal Flux destroying great part of his Army; the rest marched leisurely in several Bodies: King *Bermudo* sent some light Troops, who made such havock among them, that not the 20th. part of that great Army returned to *Cordova*, all the Country the way they went being covered with dead Carcasses. Count *Fruela Vermuiç* (who, as has been said, overcame Count *Gonzalo* that Poisoned King *Sancho*) fell upon *Almanzor* himself, who led the choice of the Army, and put him to flight with great Slaughter of his People. King *Bermudo* at length awaking out of his dead Sleep, joyned his Forces with the King of *Navarre* and Count *Garci Fernandez*. They expected the coming of the Enemy near *Alicantarç*, four Leagues from *Osmi*; here they fought from Morning till Night, and then at length victory inclined to the Christians, who slew of their Enemies 70000 Foot and 40000 Horse. *Almanzor* flying towards *Toledo*, died of Grief near *Berlenga*; soon after, his Son *Abdel*

*Melich*, to revenge him, invaded the *Christian* Territories, but being met by Count *Garci Fernandez*, was defeated and fled back to *Cordova*. King *Bermudo* had two Wives, the first called *Velasquita*, by whom he had no issue; the second *Elvira*, her Children were *Alonso*, Successor to his Father; *Teresa* married to *Abdala*, King of *Toledo*, and afterwards a Nun, and *Sancha* a Nun also. The King gave great Scandal by keeping two Sisters at the same time publickly as his Mistresses, one of them was Mother to *Elvira*, the other to *Ordonno*. By *Velasquita*, a Peasant, the King had a Daughter called *Christina*; he died in the Year 999, at *Villabuena* in *Galicia*, very penitent for his sins. There he lay Buried till his Son King *Alonso* translated him to *Leon*, where he lies with his Wife in the Church of *St. Isidorus*.

The Gascons come into Portugal and assist the Christians

3. Let us look a little back to see the coming of the first Strangers, that assisted the Natives of *Portugal* in expelling the *Moors*. These were the *Gascons*, who came in a mighty Fleet, and were Commanded by *D. Moninno Viegas*. There is a great dispute among Authors, whether this *D. Moninno* was a *Gascon* or a *Portuguese*, and whether he came with those People, or only headed them after their coming, he being by some supposed to be then a great Man in *Portugal*. All that is said on either part, being rather Suppositions, than Proofs, we will pass by this Dispute, leaving it free to every one to believe as he shall be inclined. This Fleet cast Anchor in the River *Duero*, on the one side whereof was the Castle of *Gaya*, Demolished by King *Ramiro II.* when he killed *Alboazar*, and on the other, the City *Porto* destroyed long before by the *Moors*. Here they landed, and their first care was to repair the City, then only a heap of Rubbish; in the highest part of it they built a Castle, supposed to be the same that is now the Bishop's Pallace. The compass of the Walls was but small, and they weak for our times, but then considerable; some part of them is still to be seen in the midst of the City, which being increased, has hemmed them in. Two of these Ancient Gates are still standing; the one called *St. Ann's Gate*, the other our Blessed Ladies, over which is an Image of the Blessed Virgin, with our Saviour in her Arms, which Image between two Towers is the Arms of that City. Having repaired

Repaired and Fortified this place, the Natives and Strangers began jointly to conquer the Neighbouring Country. Men remarkable among them were, *Sisenandus*, Brother to *D. Moninno*, and *D. Nonego* of *Vendosme*. The first that felt their fury were the *Moors*, who possessed the Territories of *Resende*, and *Bienviver*, and all up the River *Duero*; this done, thinking their Conquest secure, they chose *Sisenandus* Bishop of the City, and yet he ceased not to appear in Arms till he died at *Bienviver*, and was Buried in the Monastery of *Villaboa*. *D. Nonego* of *Vendosme*, also a Bishop, carried on his Conquests on the other side, and four Leagues from *Porto* in the Mountain, built a Castle which he called *Vendosme*, and so streightened the *Moors*, that they were forced to abandon all that Neighbourhood. The Castle is ruined by time, but the name of *Vendosme* still continues in the Mountain. In this exercise he continued till his Death, and was Buried in the Monastery of *Aviaos*. The conquered Lands were equally divided, as well among the Auxiliary strangers, as among the native *Portuguese*.

4. King *Alonso V.* succeeded his Father *Bermudo*; he 999. is the first of the *Alonsos* that appears without some Sir- King A. name; for the First was called the *Catholick*, the Second the *Chast*, the Third the *Great*, the Fourth the *Monk*. Not that this deserved less Titles, for he might have been called the *Brave* for his Valour; the *Legislator* for giving good Laws to his People; the *Restorer* for repairing *Leon*, and in fine, the *Desired* as being one who left the greatest desire of himself, and was most lamented by his People. He was Six Years of Age when he began his Reign, under the Tuition of Count *Mendo Gonzalez* and his Wife the Lady *Mayor*, who Under Tuition. had great possessions in *Galicia*, and some in *Portugal*, and Governed so well, that the King's minority was no prejudice to his Kingdom. The *Christians* in *Portugal* began to be so powerful, that under the conduct of some notable Commanders, they repaired many places before ruined, and conquered others possessed by the *Moors*. *D. Alboazar Ramirez* Son to King *Ramiro II.* by 1000. *Zana* or *Artida*, whom he stole from the Lord of *Gaya*, Many places recovered from the Moors as was said before, with many Gentlemen and Forces maintained at his own Charge, entred *Portugal* and drove the *Moors* out of all the Province betwixt the Rivers



Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*. He took *St. Roman*, *Castro de Avifo*, and *Castro de Gondomar*: Beyond the River *Duero* he forced them to retire as far as *St. Martin de Moras* and *Lamego*, making room for the *Christians* to dilate themselves. The lands of *Arouca* and that Neighbourhood were again Peopled; the Year following, he overthrew the *Moors* in many places, took the City *Braganza* and other considerable Towns in those Mountains, and so extended the *Christian* Dominions, that he deserves to be accounted one of the principal Restorers of *Portugal*. His two Sons *D. Trastamiro* and *D. Hermigio*, or *Hermiron Alboazar* accompanied him in these Conquests, of whom are descended some Honourable Families in *Spain*.

Count  
Froila a  
Portugues  
Rebels.

5. The tranquillity the King's Tutors endeavoured to preserve in the Kingdom, during his Minority, was disturbed by the *Portuguese* Count *Froila Vermuiz*, who took up Arms against the King. They came to a Battle in the Territory of *Mafra*, betwixt *Villanueva* and *Betancos*, where *Froila* got the Victory. The King now grown bigger, was much incensed against Count *Froila*, and his anger was increased by the insinuations of *Q. Elvira*, his Wife, and Daughter to Count *Mendo Gonzalez*. *Froila* being in disgrace, had again recourse to Arms, which not a little troubled the King, and the more for that at the same time, he received the News, that another had rebelled in the City *Oviedo*. Thither the King hastened, leaving *Froila* till he was more at leisure: But he marched directly after the King, and overtook him at such time as he was ready to Assault the City. The King was advised to forbear the Assault, least in the heat of it, *Froila* should fall upon him behind, but he Answered, *Let the Assault be carried on, for the Count is so much a Gentleman, that he will not fall upon the backs of his Enemies*. As he said, it fell out, for *Froila* overcome by that Generosity, joyned his Forces to the King's, and so forwarded the attack that the City was immediately carried. In this Action the Count behaved himself so bravely, that he lost both his Eyes, at which the King was exceedingly grieved, and bestowed large possessions on him, in some measure to recompense his loss: About this time, Count *Garcia Fernandez* of *Castile*, was killed in a Battle betwixt *Alcozar* and *Langra*, having behaved himself with great Bravery

His Submission.

very, he being one of the most notable Commanders of that Age. His Son *Sancho* succeeded him as well in his Courage, as Dominions, and often revenged his Death upon the *Moors*. There being several pretenders to the Kingdom of *Cordova*, he seemingly sided with each of them to have the better opportunity to ruin them all. The fugitive Count *Vela*, who used to stir up the *Moors* against the *Christians* was now dead, and his Sons *Roderick*, *James* and *Innigo* were restored to their Estates, and served the Count as their natural Lord. He the more to Honour them, made the Eldest God-father to his own Eldest Son *D. Garcia*, and yet he afterwards behaved himself like a Traitor, as his Father had done before.

6. The Divisions among the *Moors* at *Cordova*, were very advantageous to the *Christians* of *Leon*, *Castile* and *Portugal*. Those that had escaped the desolation made by *Almanzor* about *Coimbra*, dealt with the Infidels, and bought Lands of them at a very low rate; it appears by the original Deeds still extant, that *Oborez* a *Moore*, sold the Town of *Botam* to *Arias* Prior of the Convent of *Botam* for a Mare and her Fole; either the Mare was worth much, or the Town very little. Till the Year 1020, we have no account of any thing remarkable in *Portugal*. Out of it the King repaired the City *Leon*, and gave it a Charter, and great Privileges to all that would come and inhabit there. Six years after was Born the renowned Captain *Roderick de Bivar*, commonly called *Cid*, which in *Arabick* signifies Lord, of whom mention will be made hereafter. The *Christian* affairs throughout *Spain* were in a flourishing condition; the King entered *Portugal*, recovering many Towns in the Province of *Beira*, till he came and incamped before *Viseo*. The City was obstinately defended, and the King going out in the Evening unarmed, to view the Enemies Works, was shot through the Body with an Arrow from the Walls. Some write that he died there presently, others that he was carried to *Porto*. His death we shall hereafter see revenged as far as it could be. His body was laid in a stately Tomb at *Leon*; he lived Thirty Two Years, and Reigned Twenty Eight; being bred in *Galicia* by Count *Mendo Gonzalez*, Lord of *Vierzo*, he married his Daughter: By her he had *Bermudo* his Successor, and *Sancha* who afterwards came to

1012.

1020.

1026.

Roderick

de Bivar,

commonly

called Cid,

his Birth.

1027.

King A-

lonso

slain.

to be Queen; he had also a Bastard Son, called *Nunno Alvarez de Amaya*, or *Roderick Anzures*, Lieutenant of *Asturias*, and Lord of *Gijon*.

Bermudo  
III. Suc-  
ceeds.

7. *Bermudo* III. of the Name, succeeded his Father *Alonso V.* but so young, it was much feared his tender Years might produce some notable Disorders in the Government. His extraordinary Abilities far above his Years, soon dried up the Tears his subjects shed for his Father, and made them rejoice in so unexpected a Blessing. He was extremely Religious and Devout, and therefore applied himself to the re-establishing of many ruined Churches. Being of Age to Marry, he took to Wife the Lady *Ximena* or *Teresa*, younger Daughter to Count *Sancho*, Lord of *Castile*, by whom he had *D. Alonso*, who lived but a few days. He concluded a match between his Sister the Lady *Sancha* and *D. Garcia*, the Son of Count *Sancho* of *Castile*. King *Sancho* of *Navarre*, who was Brother-in-law to *D. Garcia*, bore him Company to *Leon* to honour his Marriage. The next day after their Arrival, the Bridegroom went out with the Bishop to hear Mass; in the way, he was assaulted by the Sons of the traitor *D. Vela*, before spoke of, and by them stabbed in several places, his own God-father being the first that wounded him. This News being carried to Court, the Bride forgetting her Grandeur, ran out to the place, and piteously lamenting her loss, it was thought she would have given up the Ghost upon the dead Body. She railed at the Murderers, which Count *Fernan Flaminio* hearing, had the impudence to strike her on the Face. The Murderers for the present escaped, but *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, afterwards getting them into his power, burnt them alive, declaring all their progeny for ever infamous.

8. *D. Garcia* thus murder'd, and no Heir Male remaining to the Earldom of *Castile*, *Sancho* King of *Navarre* possessed himself thereof in the Right of his Wife, the Lady *Elvira*, Sister to the late Count. Grown Great with this Accession of Power, he made War upon King *Bermudo*, about the Limits of *Castile* and *Leon*; and conquered much of the Country, betwixt the Rivers *Pisuerga* and *Cea*. More had been won by him, but that *Sancha*, only Sister to King *Bermudo*, was given in Marriage to *Ferdinand*, Second Son to King *Sancho*. This Lady swore she would never consent to the

An inhu-  
man Mur-  
der.

Wars be-  
twixt the  
Christian  
Kings of  
Spain.  
1034.

the Match, unless Count *Fernan Flaminio*, who struck her on the Face as she lay upon the Body of the dead Count *Garcia*, was delivered up to her. This was accordingly done; and she, with her own Hands, put him to a cruel Death, but well deserved by him. The King of *Navarre* dying, and his Son *Ferdinand* succeeding him, King *Bermudo* was in hopes to recover what *Ferdinand's* Father had taken from him. They came to a Battel in the Valley of *Tamara*, near *Fromista*, where, after a bloody Fight, King *Bermudo* was killed, and his Army overthrown. *Ferdinand*, now victorious, immediately laid Siege to *Leon*; and having made himself Master thereof, he was there Crowned King of *Le-on*, *Galicia* and *Portugal*, in the Right of his Wife *Sancha*, the lawful Heiress of those Kingdoms. Thus, for want of Issue Male to the Kings of *Leon*, and Earls of *Castile*, those two Dominions fell to the House of *Navarre*, by the Female Line.

9. What I am about to relate, happen'd in the Reign of King *Bermudo*; but in what Year, is not certain: Two Grandsons of Prince *Alboazar Ramirez*, Son to King *Ramiro* III, called *Tedon* and *Rosendo*, with a Body of resolute Men, broke into that part of the Country that lies betwixt the Rivers *Tavora* and *Duero*. Having drove the *Moors* thence, they began to Till the Land; and knowing well that the *Infidels* would not suffer them quietly to rest there, they fortified themselves on a Rock, over the River *Tavora*; which running round great part of it, makes it a sort of *Peninsula*; which, with the Steepness of the Rock it self, renders it inaccessible any Way but one. Here they built their Habitation, and hence infested the Country of the *Moors*. At length, on *Midsummer-Day*, which is much revered even by those *Infidels*, in Honour of *St. John* the Baptist, the *Moors* of the Town of *Paredes* resorted, in great Numbers, to sport and divert themselves on the Banks of the River, and to bathe themselves in it. *D. Rosendo* cloathing his Men in *Moorish* Apparel, passed the River, out of sight, and lay close in Ambush till he saw all the Banks covered with the *Barbarians*: Then, by degrees, coming out, as if he had been some of their own Company, he suffered his Men to mix with the Enemy, who took them for Friends. Being all mixed, the *Christians* fell upon them, and turned their Pleasure into

1035.

*Ferdinand* of *Navarre* kills King *Bermudo* and becomes sole Monarch of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Portugal*, *Galicia* and *Navarre*.

1037.

A Stratagem of the *Christians* against the *Moors*.

into Sorrow: However, many stood, and made a good Defence; and others coming to their Aid, the Success was doubtful, till D. *Tedon*, fording the River, with his Men, ended the Dispute, with the Slaughter of most of the *Moors*. This, and other Victories, put the two Brothers in Possession of many Lands in that Country: And in Memory of the Action, they took to themselves the Name of the River, which still continues in the Family of the *Tavora's*.

The Effects  
of Love.

10. The Fame of the Exploits of D. *Tedon*, particularly that upon the River, together with that of the Comeliness of his Person, reaching the Ears of *Ardinga*, the beautiful Daughter of *Aliboazen* King of *Lamego*, she fell in Love with him by Hear-say. Love persuaded her to quit her Father's Palace, and, disguised in the Habit of a Man, through bye Ways, she found out the Abbot *Gelasius*, a solitary Hermit. She told him who she was, and the Cause of her Coming; and he baptized her, promising to persuade D. *Tedon* to take her to Wife. This took not effect, for her Father closely pursuing her, overtook, and put her to death. *Tedon* hearing of her Love, had promised to marry her, and she being dead, would take no other Wife; but was afterwards killed by the *Moors*, near a small Brook, which, of him, was called *Tedo*: So he took his Sur-name from one River, and gave his Name to another. There being nothing else remarkable, recorded in *Portugal*, during the Reign of King *Bermudo*, and he being the last King thereof of that Name, I must not omit to remark, that *Bermudo* is the same Name with *Veremundus*, which the *Spaniards* call *Veremundo*; so that, to make it *Bermudo*, there is, corruptly, an *e* and an *n* omitted; and to use *B* for *V*, is common in *Spanish*. Thus *Bermudo* and *Veremundus* appear to be the same Name.

## CHAP. X.

*The remaining Kings, from the Year 1037, till the Year 1108, and till the Establishment of Count Henry of Burgundy in the Sovereignty of Portugal, where begins the Line of the Portuguese Kings, and ends the Second Book.*

1. **F**erdinand Prince of Navarre inherited the Crown of Leon, in the Right of his Wife, the Lady *Sancha*, Daughter to King *Alonso V*, and Sister to King *Bermudo III*, who died without Issue. The Earldom of *Castile* fell to him by his Mother, the Lady *Nunna*; and the Crown of *Navarre* he inherited, from his Father: Three Crowns were united in him, and he was well worthy thereof; purchasing, by his Piety, Valour and Bounty, the Title of *The Great*. The *Moors*, believing King *Ferdinand* was wholly employed in reconciling his new Subjects in *Castile*, *Leon*, *Galicia* and *Portugal*, broke into *Lusitania*; but hearing he was provided to receive them, they retired hastily. He, once provoked, would not put up his Sword without doing Execution. He took the Town of *Seja*, and the Cities *Merida*, *Badajoz*, *Beja* and *Evora*, without any Resistance. *Viseo*, guilty of the Death of King *Alonso*, and fearing a Revenge, was strongly fortified, and governed by *Cid Alafun*, a notable Commander. The King sat down before it, resolving not to stir thence, till he were Master of it. Eighteen Days the City was battered, and bravely defended; at the End whereof, being the Eve of the Feast of St. Peter and St. Paul, it was enter'd by Force, and never after returned under the Yoak of the Infidels. The Man that shot King *Alonso* being taken in the City, had his Eyes put out, and both his Hands and one Foot cut off; which done, he was shot to Death. The Governor *Alafun* had, in Consideration of his Valour, Lands given him to live upon, paying a certain Tribute. His Name is still preserved in those Parts, in the Mountain called *Alafun*, the Council of *Alafun*, and other Places.



2. The City *Lamego* held out no less obstinately, during Twenty Five Days, at the end whereof it was surrendered upon Articles the 22th Day of July. It was not then used to expel the *Moors*, but to bring them to pay a moderate tribute. After these Conquests, the King crossed the Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho* into *Galicia*, to visit the Sepulcher of the Apo-

1039.

stle *St. James*, and make his Offerings there: The following Year he conquered many places in the Province of *Tras os Montes*, and pierced down even to the River *Tagus*. King *Ferdinand* made glorious Conquests the ensuing Years; but they being out of *Portugal*, do not

Coimbra  
taken by the  
Advice  
and Assis-  
tance of the  
Monks of  
Lorvan.

1064.

appertain to us. Two Monks of the Monastery of *Lorvan* advertised the King, that the City *Coimbra* was ill provided, and worse fortified, and therefore it would be easie to gain it. King *Ferdinand* marched in December, 1063, and laid Siege to it, where he continued till July following; so that 7 Months were spent in the Siege: And it may be supposed, the *Moors*, before unprovided, upon Notice of his Coming, had prepared to receive him. Provisions grew so scarce in the Army towards the latter end of the Siege, that the King was about raising it, and departing: But the Monks of the aforesaid Monastery of *Lorvan* supplied him plentifully, and the City was taken the 8th Day after. The King offered the Monks to take what they pleased, in requital for their Intelligence and Supplies; but they modestly begged only a Church in the City: However, he gave them many rich Gifts, and confirmed all the former Grants made by his Ancestors. In token of Gratitude, the Monks presented the King with a Golden Crown, which Count *Gonzalo Moniz*, Governor of the Province between *Duero* and *Minho*, had offered to their Church: The King restored it, with 10 Marks of Silver, to make a Cross. *Roderick de Bivar*, Surnamed *Cid*, that famous Captain, was at this Siege, and Knighted by the King, in this City. Here was also the renowned *Portuguese*, *Roderick Froja*, Contemporary, and not much inferiour to the other for Warlike Exploits.

3. The King returning to *Leon*, left *Sisnandus*, a noble and valiant Man, Governor of *Coimbra*. He made War upon *Abudad*, a resolute and powerful *Moor*, who had much disturbed the King at the Siege; but being subdued, became a most loyal Subject. Soon after, the

*Moors*,

*Moors*, under the Command of *Benalfagi*, a great Lord in *Estremadura*, repaired the Fortifications of *Montemayor* the Old, that it might be a Check upon *Coimbra*. This Place was so obnoxious to it, that King *Ferdinand* was forced to come with a powerful Army, wherewith he laid Siege to it for many Days. Here *Roderick de Bivar* took great Pains to supply the Camp with Forage, all the Country about being kept by great Multitudes of *Moors*. At length the Besieged surrender'd, upon Promise of their Lives; and the King, offended at the Resistance he had found there, demolished the Walls. The Governor *Sisnandus* repaired them again, in the Reign of King *Alonso VI*. King *Ferdinand* was born in the Year 1007; and in 1030, married the Lady *Sancha*, by whom he had the following Children, in Order as named, *Urraca*, *Elvira*, *Sancho*, *Alonso* and *Garcia*. By a Daughter of *Raymund*, Lord of *Savoy*, he had *Ferdinand*, who was a Cardinal; and *D. Mininno Fernandez* of *Toro*. The King finding his End draw near, divided his Kingdoms among his Sons: To *Sancho* he gave *Castile*; to *Alonso*, *Leon*; and to *Garcia*, *Galicia* and *Portugal*: To the Lady *Urraca* he left the City *Zamora*, with half the Principality of *Leon*; to the Lady *Elvira*, the other half, and the City *Toro*. Having thus settled his Affairs, King *Ferdinand* died, in the 60th Year of his Age, and the 30th of his Reign; and was buried in the Church of *St. Isidorus*, where, a Year after, his Wife *Sancha* was also laid.

1065.

1066.

Montemayor taken, and demolished.

Garcia is King of Galicia and Portugal. 1067.

4. King *Ferdinand* foreseeing, that the Division of his Kingdoms could not but produce Discord among his Sons, bound them by Oath to stand to this Distribution; leaving his Curse upon him that should attempt to alter it. But, of what Force are Oaths, against Ambition? None of them was satisfied. *Sancho*, the Eldest, thought himself wronged, as having a Right to all. *Garcia* was grieved that the Cities of *Toro* and *Zamora* were given to his Sisters. *Alonso* was offended that *Sancho* should think he had Right to his Dominions. *Garcia* was the youngest, and therefore the last in the Distribution: But he proved the first that took up Arms against his Sisters, and invaded the Lands of *Toro*, and others along the River *Duero*, which he would have to belong to *Portugal*. *D. Sancho* soon followed his Example in taking the Field, not to defend his Sisters, but

The three Brothers fall at Variance.

L

10



to strip them all. King *Sancho*, before he undertook this Enterprize, asked the Advice of all his Noble men; who unanimously dissuaded him from the Undertaking, for fear of incurring his Father's Curses. However, finding him not to be moved, they counselled him to continue in Amity with King *Alonso*, and ask Leave of him to pass through the Kingdom of *Leon*, into *Portugal*. To this purpose he met his Brother *Alonso*, at the Monastery of *Sabagun*; but could not prevail to have Passage granted him: Nevertheless, upon second Thoughts, they both agreed to conquer *Portugal*. Our King *Garcia*, taken up with his own ambitious Designs, had no Leisure to look into the Practices of his Brothers. What was yet worse, his Subjects were discontented, for that he made Account of none but his Favourite *Verna*, by whose Advice he began the War of *Toro* unsuccessfully.

1069.

The Portuguese Nobility insult their King, on account of his Favourite.

5. The Portuguese Nobility and Gentry consulted together, how they might remove this mighty Favourite; and it was resolved, that *D. Roderick Frojas*, a mighty Man in those Days, should discourse the King upon that Matter. When he had made a long Harangue upon the Subject, all the Answer the King made, was, to turn his Back upon him, and go away. *D. Roderick* seeing how little his Words had prevailed, soon after killed *Verna* in the Palace. The Death of *Verna* troubled not the King so much, as the News that King *Sancho* was marching against him, and the small Confidence he had in his Subjects, especially for the Brothers of that *D. Roderick* conspired together to oppose his punishing the said *D. Roderick*. Necessity obliged the King to wink at Offences, and send for *D. Roderick*, who was fled into *Navarre*, designing for *France*. He immediately returned, and came to *Coimbra*, then the Court of *Portugal*, at such time as King *Sancho's* Forces began to range in *Galiccia*, and in the Province of *Beira*, without meeting with any Opposition. The two Earls, *D. Nunho de Lara*, and *D. Garcia de Cabra*, advanced to the Walls of *Coimbra*, with some Troops of Horse. The King would have gone out to fight them, but *D. Roderick Frojas* said, *It was not fit for him to hazard himself, where there was no King against him.* *D. Roderick* went out, with his two Brothers, *Peter* and *Vermui*, to meet the Enemy; and in the Field called *Agua de Mayas*, over-

1071.

The Forces of Castile overthrown by those of Portugal.

threw them, killing 600, among whom were many of Note: 200 Portuguese were slain; and *Frojas* himself received many Wounds.

6. King *Garcia* was gone to *Santarem*, when King *Sancho*, to revenge the former Loss, pierced through *Portugal*, with a numerous Army. Some advised to protract the War, and not hazard a Battel; but *D. Roderick Frojas*, now recovered of his Wounds, was positive for Fighting. A Plain, not far from *Santarem*, was chose for that Purpose; where was fought as bloody a Battel as has been seen in any Age. The greatest Fury was, when the Portuguese strove to gain the Standard of the Castilians. King *Sancho* came thither in Person, to defend it; and being unhorsed by *D. Egas Gomez de Sousa*, was taken Prisoner by *D. Roderick Frojas*, who delivered him up to King *Garcia*. No sooner had he delivered his Prisoner, but he fell down dead of the Wounds he had before received. King *Garcia* put his Brother into the Custody of certain Gentlemen, whilst he pursued the flying Enemy: But King *Sancho* making his Escape from them, made his Way to join *Roderick Diaz de Bivar*, called *Cid*, who was then coming up with fresh Troops, that had not been engaged: These charging the Portuguese, before tired, and now dispersed in the Pursuit, changed the Fortune of the Day: However, the Fight, thus renewed, lasted till Night. *D. Peter* and *D. Vermui*, Brothers to *D. Roderick Frojas*, were killed, and King *Garcia* was taken by his Brother, who not long before had been his Prisoner, and who now knew better how to secure him than he had been kept himself. Thus the Castilians recovered the Day, and the Portuguese, before victorious, were put to the Rout. King *Garcia* continued in Prison 10 Years, when he was released by Death. There are Authors who write, that King *Sancho* enlarged his Brother *Garcia*, contenting himself that he should be Tributary to him; and that *D. Alonso*, Brother to both, returned him to Prison, in the Castle of *Luna*, where he died, with Irons on his Legs: With those very Fetters, at his own Request, he was buried in the Church of *St. Isidorus*, at *Leon*.

7. King *Sancho* having obtained the Victory over his Brother *Garcia*, all the Kingdom of *Portugal* and *Galiccia* submitted to him. This Kingdom being subdued,

King Sancho overthrows his Brother Garcia and takes him Prisoner.

Sancho, dued, he turned his victorious Arms against King *Alonso*, after sub- so of *Leon*, who well deserved it for consenting to the during Por- Destruction of his Brother. The War continued blood- tugal, on- dy for some time, with various Success, till at length guers Le- King *Alonso*, overthrown, was taken Prisoner. To on, and be- deliver himself from that Misery, he retired to *Sabagun*, comes sole pretending to become a Religious Man. Soon after, Monarch. finding a fit Opportunity, by the Advice of Count *Peter Anzures*, he fled to *Toledo*, where the Moorish King *Alimaimon* entertained him with Royal Magnificence. *Alonso* of *Alimaimon* Nothing now remained to disturb King *Sancho's* ambi- to the Pro- tious Thoughts, but his Sister *Urraca's* possessing Za- tection of mora. He laid Siege to that City, and had now redu- in Moors. ced it to Extremity; but here, in this last Act, God

permitted the Curses of his Father to reach him; for, in the Height of his Confidence, a Traytor, called *Vellido Dolphes*, coming out of the City, upon pretence of revealing some Secret to him, took his Opportunity to strike him through the Body with a Spear, where- of he fell down dead. King *Sancho* reigned six Years, and was murder'd in 1073. He was called *The Brave*, and was married to the Lady *Blanch*, Daughter to his Uncle *Garcia Sanchez*, King of *Navarre*; or, according to others, to *Alberta* of *France*. His Body lies in the Church of our Blessed Saviour at *Onna*.

8. King *Alonso* being generously protected by the Moor, *Alimaimon* King of *Toledo*, lived in hopes of better Fortune; when Advice was brought him from *Zamora*, by Order of his Sister *Urraca*, of the Death of his Brother, King *Sancho*. He immediately came to take Possession of his Kingdoms, and was received with general Applause: Only *Roderick Diaz de Bivar*, called *Cid*, would not take the Oath of Allegiance to him, till he swore he had no Hand in the Death of King *Sancho*. It is strange, amidst the universal Satisfaction, the King should have need of one Man: But he resented this Affront so heinously, that he afterwards banished him; in which Exile, *Roderick* gained much Honour. King *Alonso*, the 6th of that Name, being settled in quiet Possession of his Kingdoms, approved himself worthy of greater Dominions, being one of the most victorious Princes of *Spain*, and that farthest extended his Conquests. He seemed rather to have fled to *Toledo* as a Spy, than for Protection; for he took that City from

from the Infidels, and valued himself so much upon it, that from thenceforwards he stiled himself Emperor; 1085. and was the Honour of the Spanish Monarchy.

9. King *Alonso* had six Wives: The First was, *Agnes*, her Parentage unknown, and she left no Issue. *W. ver.* and The Second was, *Constance*, Daughter to Duke *Robert II.* of *Burgundy*: She had a Daughter, called *Urraca*, afterwards married to Count *Raymund* of *Burgundy*; and her Portion was, the Kingdom of *Galicia*: Her Husband came to *Spain*, with her Mother; and they had Issue, *Sancha*, and *Alonso* the Emperor. King *Alonso's* Third Wife was, *Berta*, Daughter to *Philip I.* King of *France*: By her he had the Ladies, *Sancha* and *Elvira*; the First married to Count *Roderick Gonzalez Giron*; the Latter, to *Roger I.* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. The Fourth Wife was, *Elizabeth*, Daughter to the Emperor. The Fifth, *Beatrice*, a French Lady: Neither of them had any Children. The Sixth was, *Zaida*, her Christian-Name *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Almucamuz Aben Hamet*, King of *Sevil*: She bore him a Son, called *Sancho*, killed at Twelve Years of Age, in the Battel of *Velez*, in the Year 1100. The King, in his Youth, had to do with the Lady *Ximena Nunez de Gusman*, Daughter to King *Garcia VI.* of *Navarre*: By her he had three Daughters; The First, *Elvira*, married to Count *Raymund* of *Toulouse*; her Portion was, a great Summ of Money, with which he returned to *France*. The Second Daughter was, *Teresa*, Wife to Count *Henry*, the Progenitor of the Kings of *Portugal*, Grandson to *Robert I.* Duke of *Burgundy*, being the Fourth Son to *Henry*, Eldest Son to the Duke. Of the Third Daughter we have no Account, unless it was one that was married to *Ferdinand Mendez* the Elder, Son to *Man Alao*, Lord of *Braganza*. Some Authors would make the Lady *Ximena* to be lawful Wife to King *Alonso*; but there are undeniable Proofs to the contrary in old Records, specifying the Time when each Wife was married to the King, wherein none is left for this Lady, who, doubtless, was no other than a Mistress.

10. Count *Henry*, after he had married the Bastard-Daughter of King *Alonso*, served the King in his Wars, and was some Times sent Governor into *Portugal*; as were several others, from the Year 1072, till 1098. For, tho' the Count was married in the Year 1072, the Kingdom

Kingdom of *Portugal* was not absolutely assigned over to him till after the Birth of his Son *Alonso*, which was in the Year 1094: And we find, that from the Year 1099, the Count continued settled in *Portugal*, as absolute Lord and Proprietor thereof; whereas before, being only Governor, at certain Times he used to follow and serve King *Alonso* in his Wars. This King *Alonso* was born in *Galicia*, in the Year 1035; was married the first time in 1076; died at *Toledo* in 1108, having reigned 35 Years, and lived 73. His Body lies in the Monastery of *Sahagun*, with that of his Son Prince *Sancho*: There also lie four of his Wives, *Agnes*, *Constance*, *Beatrice* and *Zayda*; the other two, *Elizabeth* and *Berta*, in the Church of St. *Isidorus*, at *Leon*. Now we shall be almost 500 Years without returning to *Castile*, for now begins to bud the Tree of the most August Kings of *Portugal*; a Tree which has shaded much of the World.

• The End of the Second BOOK.

THE

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

The Third BOOK.

## CHAP. I.

*The Country, Extraction, Life and Death of Henry first Earl of Portugal, and progenitor of all the Kings thereof, from the Year 1067 till 1112.*

1. **H**ENRY the first Founder of the Portuguese Monarchy, is by all Men allowed to have been of noble Extraction; but others very much differ both as to his Country and Family. As to his Family, the Bishops D. *Roderick Sanchez*, and D. *Alonso de Cartagena* say, he was of the House of *Lorrain*, but do not name his Parents. *Duarte Galvan*, our Antient Chronologer, affirms, He was second Son to a King of *Hungary*, which Opinion the famous Poet *Camoens*, in his *Lusiads* follows: *Damianus de Goes*, in the life of King *Emmanuel*, says, he was Son to *William Baron of Joinville*, and Duke of *Lorrain*, and *Abida of Champagne*. *James de Valera*, and *Antony Beuter*, bring him from *Constantinople*,

Opinions concerning Henry the Progenitor of the Portuguese Kings.

tinople, grounding their Opinion upon the History of Spain, writ by King *Alonso*, mistaking a Quotation of the Archbishop D. Roderick, who Writes that he was of the *Bisontine* Province, meaning *Besancon*, the Capital of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, which they take for *Bisantium* or *Constantinople*. *Wolfgangus Lazius* writes he was of *Limburg*; *Duarte Nunnez de Leon* endeavours to prove he was Grandson to *Reginald* Earl of *Burgundy*, by his Son *Guido* Earl of *Verneville* in *Normandy*. *Lewis Gollut* in his History of that Earldom, says, he was Brother to *Raimund*, both Sons to Earl *William*: All these doubts are cleared by the Antient Manuscript of *Fleury*, which being a fragment of *French* History, was writ in the time of our Count *Henry*, for the Author of it brings himself as an Eye Witness of the three Suns that were seen at the Town of *Scyrs*, on the Banks of the River *Garonne*, in the Year 1108. It was writ by a famous Benedictin Monk of that Convent, and reaches from the Year 897, till the Year 1110. *Petrus Piteus* a learned Man, published it with other like Manuscripts, and it was Printed at *Francfort* in the Year 1596. By this Antient Manuscript it appears, that *Robert* the first Duke of *Burgundy*, younger Brother to King *Henry* I. of *France*, had by his Wife *Hermengarda*, one onely Son called *Henry*, who died before his Father, leaving five Sons by his Wife *Sibila*, Daughter to *Reginald* Earl of *Burgundy*: These were *Hugo*, who was heir to his Grandfather, but being left a Widdower without Children, became a Monk of *Cluni*, and so died in the Year 1092. *Eudo* or *Odo*, who succeeded his Elder Brother, *Robert* Bishop of *Langres*, *Henry* our Earl, and *Reginald* an Abbot; many other Authors too long to insert, have hinted that he was of the House of *Burgundy*, tho' perhaps none specified it so particularly. His Family once allowed to be that of *Burgundy*, it will need no further proofs to shew his Country; besides, that it is more likely he should come out of *France*, which joyns with *Spain*, than from *Hungary* or *Constantinople* so remote. It is also a sufficient proof of his Country, that all his followers were *French*, which could not have been, were he a stranger to them.

2. The *Portuguese* strive to clear two points for their Honour, in which there is great difficulty, or rather  
*A remark upon some Conjectures of the Portuguese Authors.*

an

an impossibility, for that all arguments are against them; the one is to make out, that the Sovereignty of *Portugal* was granted to Count *Henry* without any acknowledgment to *Castile*; the other that *Teresa* was lawful Daughter to King *Alonso*. The Arguments for the first, are, That no Records are to be found in *Castile* or *Leon*, to prove the Title to such acknowledgment, and that their King *Alonso* the first, was anointed King by Christ himself, and therefore owed his Crown to him. These proofs are meerly Supposititious; for as to the first, whether such Record remains or not, it is not credible that a King would alienate a Kingdom to a Bastard Daughter, so as to reserve no Sovereignty to himself, nor if he had, is it in the power of a Prince to give away the right of a Legitimate Successor to one Illegitimate? The second instance about Christ giving a right to the Crown, seems so extravagant a Notion, that as it carries no proof, it needs no Confutation. The other point insisted upon, is the Legitimacy of *Teresa* the Counts Wife, but that has been spoke of already; no Author of Note has named her otherwise than as unlawfully begotten, and the computation of the time her Father was married to, and lived with his six Wives, makes it impossible to allow of a Seventh. There is another doubt about Earl *Henry*'s going to the Holy Land, which some *Portuguese* Authors insist upon without any sufficient Grounds, or rather without any probability; but whether he did or not, is not easy to decide, nor worth the discussing; let us go on to his Life, or rather to the small fragments that remain of it, as of all other things before his time, but we begin now by degrees to come into days of more light.

3. By what has been said, it appears that Earl *Henry* was a *Burgundian*, the Son of *Henry*, Son to *Robert* the first Duke of that Country, and *Hermengarda* Daughter to Count *Reinald* of *Burgundy*. There he was Born in the Year 1035. being descended by the Fathers side of the Royal Family of *Hugh Capet*, and by his Mother from the Earls of *Burgundy*. The cause that moved *Henry* to pass over into *Spain*, was the desire of Glory to be purchased in the continual Wars, betwixt the *Christians* and the *Moors*. Authors do not agree about the time of his coming, but it appears by Ancient Records,



His coming into Portugal.

1067. cords, that he Governed *Portugal* in the Year 1073, so that he must have been in *Castile* when King *Ferdinand* died, and when the fame of *Roderick de Bivar's* exploits, incited strangers to come from Foreign Parts to imitate his Actions. *Roderick* was then near Fifty Years of Age, and *Henry* about Forty: The Author of the Manuscript above mentioned, says, That succours were sent out of *France* to King *Alonso*, at his request to King *Philip I.* being then pressed with the War made by the *Almoravides*. It is likely that *Henry* came with the Command of these Troops, and having gained esteem, had the Government of the Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho* committed to him, other great Men governing the others at the same time. After the death of King *Ferdinand*, who divided his Kingdoms among his three Sons, *Sancho* King of *Castile* having taken *Portugal* from his Brother *Garcia*, and *Leon* from *Alonso* his other Brother, obliged him to fly for safety to the *Moors*. *Henry* accompanied him in all misfortunes, till *Sancho* being killed, *Alonso* was not only restored to his own, but seated in the Thrones of *Castile* and *Portugal*. King *Alonso* considering, that he who follows a Prince, deposed in his misfortunes, does something more than Man, concluded that *Henry* was a prodigy among mortals, and therefore from that time, resolved to suit his reward to his Fidelity.
1076. 4. *Beatrice* the second Wife of King *Alonso* dying, *Alonso* a match was agreed for him with the Lady *Constance*, marries his Aunt to Earl *Henry*, and he was sent to *France* to conduct her into *Spain*. With him went *Raymund* Earl of *Toulouse*, and with them both came *Raymund* Earl of *Burgundy*, which is the reason some Authors write they came all together; whereas the other two had been long before in *Spain*. Thus *Henry* became great at Court, the King being his Friend, and the Queen his Aunt, which his power he used with such moderation, that he was beloved by all Men. He accompanied King *Alonso* at the memorable Siege, and taking of *Toledo*, as also at the Battle of *Saguias* near *Badajoz*, where the King was overthrown. To reward all these Services, the King at last gave him to Wife his Bastard Daughter *Teresa*, whom he had by the Lady *Ximena Nunnez de Gusman*. Her Dower was the City *Porto* with its Territory, and has in Dower the City *Porto* and its Territory.
1071. *Henry* accompanied him in all misfortunes, till *Sancho* being killed, *Alonso* was not only restored to his own, but seated in the Thrones of *Castile* and *Portugal*.
1073. King *Alonso* considering, that he who follows a Prince, deposed in his misfortunes, does something more than Man, concluded that *Henry* was a prodigy among mortals, and therefore from that time, resolved to suit his reward to his Fidelity.
1076. 4. *Beatrice* the second Wife of King *Alonso* dying, *Alonso* a match was agreed for him with the Lady *Constance*, marries his Aunt to Earl *Henry*, and he was sent to *France* to conduct her into *Spain*. With him went *Raymund* Earl of *Toulouse*, and with them both came *Raymund* Earl of *Burgundy*, which is the reason some Authors write they came all together; whereas the other two had been long before in *Spain*. Thus *Henry* became great at Court, the King being his Friend, and the Queen his Aunt, which his power he used with such moderation, that he was beloved by all Men. He accompanied King *Alonso* at the memorable Siege, and taking of *Toledo*, as also at the Battle of *Saguias* near *Badajoz*, where the King was overthrown. To reward all these Services, the King at last gave him to Wife his Bastard Daughter *Teresa*, whom he had by the Lady *Ximena Nunnez de Gusman*. Her Dower was the City *Porto* with its Territory, and has in Dower the City *Porto* and its Territory.
1081. He accompanied King *Alonso* at the memorable Siege, and taking of *Toledo*, as also at the Battle of *Saguias* near *Badajoz*, where the King was overthrown. To reward all these Services, the King at last gave him to Wife his Bastard Daughter *Teresa*, whom he had by the Lady *Ximena Nunnez de Gusman*. Her Dower was the City *Porto* with its Territory, and has in Dower the City *Porto* and its Territory.
1087. He accompanied King *Alonso* at the memorable Siege, and taking of *Toledo*, as also at the Battle of *Saguias* near *Badajoz*, where the King was overthrown. To reward all these Services, the King at last gave him to Wife his Bastard Daughter *Teresa*, whom he had by the Lady *Ximena Nunnez de Gusman*. Her Dower was the City *Porto* with its Territory, and has in Dower the City *Porto* and its Territory.
1090. He accompanied King *Alonso* at the memorable Siege, and taking of *Toledo*, as also at the Battle of *Saguias* near *Badajoz*, where the King was overthrown. To reward all these Services, the King at last gave him to Wife his Bastard Daughter *Teresa*, whom he had by the Lady *Ximena Nunnez de Gusman*. Her Dower was the City *Porto* with its Territory, and has in Dower the City *Porto* and its Territory.

ritory, then the best part of what was gained in *Portugal*, giving him leave to retire thither, and live with his Wife: His Age was the cause that he died, leaving *Teresa* young to marry a second Husband, which much disturbed the publick Peace. Soon after the Christian Princes joining in League to conquer the Holy Land, Earl *Henry* was chosen General of the Forces sent by King *Alonso*, in which employ he gained great Honour. He returned from this Expedition to *Toledo*, where the Court of *Castile* was then kept in the Year 1099. King *Alonso* at this time being of a great Age, sent his Son Prince *Sancho*, being but Twelve Years of Age, under the direction of D. *Garcia* Count of *Cabra*, with an Army to oppose *Almanzor* the Moor. With them went many Persons of Quality, among which the chief was Earl *Henry*; they came to a Battle in the Plains of *Veles*, where the Prince was unhorsed and killed, though *Henry* and *Garcia* exposed themselves to save him. Earl *Henry* meditating Revenge, met *Almanzor* again in the Field, whom he dismounted and took Prisoner, delivering him to *James Ordonez* for to carry him to the King; this done, *Henry* broke through the Infidels, putting them to flight, with a mighty slaughter.

5. As it is doubtful whether *Henry* went to *Hierusalem* with the other Christian Princes, so is it also, whether he was present at the taking of *Lisbon*, *Santarem*, *Sintra*, and other strong places by King *Alonso*, but that he was at these latter Expeditions as most properly appertaining to him is most likely. But his great Age requiring some rest, the King at last gave him leave to retire to *Portugal*, giving to him for himself and his Heirs, all that was conquered there, which was the Cities *Coimbra* and *Viseo*, and the three Provinces; that betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, *Beira*, and *Tras os Montes*, with that part of *Galicia* as far as the Castle *Lobeira*, and leave to conquer as far as *Algarve*. Earl *Henry* settled his residence at *Guimaraens*, taking the Title of Earl of *Portugal*; The Portuguese encouraged by the presence of a Prince of their own, did much upon the borders of the Province betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, till then not entirely subdued, but we have no particular account of their Actions. *Hecha Martin* King of *Lamego*, being a tributary to *Henry* rebelled; and

1100. Overthrows the Infidels and takes Almanzor prisoner.

For his good services he receives other Territories of King Alonso.

and drawing together a powerful Army, did much hurt in the *Christian* Territories. The Earl with *Egas Moniz*, a Gentleman then famous, and afterward Tutor to King *Alonso*, marched to recover the Booty he had taken, and overtook him in a Valley near the Monastery of *Arouca*. The Moor for greater security, in case of any misfortune, placed his Wife Queen *Axa Anzures*, and all the Prey on the top of a Mountain he thought unaccessible, called *Sierra Seca*. The *Christian* Army encamped along the River *Alarda* and *Egas Moniz*, seeing the Enemy advantageously posted, undertook with a good party by Night, to go about the Mountains, and at break of Day, to be ready to fall upon them on the top, whilst the *Christian* Army charged the Enemy below. This was accordingly put in Execution, and after a bloody Fight, the Queen was taken above and the King below; they becoming *Christians*, the Earl bestowed the City *Lamego* upon them, they paying tribute for the same.

Another overthrow given by him to the Moors.

1103. A Moorish King restored by him.

He performs other great Actions.

6. The *Moors* rebelling against their King for changing his Religion, he fled to *Guimaraens* to crave aid of Earl *Henry*, who by force took the City *Lamego*, and restored him: He fearing in the Earl's absence his Subjects would again revolt, desired of him to leave some *Portuguese* Gentlemen to secure those Lands, which was accordingly done, and the Country Peopled with Inhabitants brought from the Province betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*. This year some Writers will have it, that Earl *Henry* went to the Holy Land with *Guy of Lusignan* and other Princes; all the likelihood there is thereof, is, That we have no account of him in *Portugal* from the Year 1103. till the Year 1109. King *Ali Haben Joseph*, with a numerous Army, laid Siege to *Coimbra*, which he furiously battered during a Month. Earl *Henry* marched to their relief, and coming to a Battle, overthrew the Infidels with a great Slaughter. *Cintra* and other places revolted and were overcome, but rising again, they could not easily be subdued: Whilst our Earl was diverted in the Wars of *Galicia* and *Leon*, where he took some Towns, *Cyrus* King of the *Arabs* taking the opportunity, laid Siege to *Santarem*, whither our Forces hasting to relieve the place, were by him overthrown, and so the Town being distressed, Surrendered. The Earl took several places in *Leon*, so that

that King *Alonso* was glad to abandon that City upon promise to relieve it in four Months. He overthrew King *Alonso* of *Navarre* in defence of Queen *Urraca*, and about the Government of Prince *Alonso*; soon after *Henry* being dissatisfied with the said Queen, took part with the King against her, and defeated Count *Gomes* who espoused her Quarrel.

7. Whilst he was absent from *Astorga*, those People of the Kingdom of *Leon* that he had subdued revolted, and he returning, laid Siege to *Astorga*. In the heat of the Siege, he died, and his Son *Alonso* rising with his Army, went away to Bury him at *Braga*. Thus *Astorga* with all its Territory was lost: The death of Earl *Henry* was much lamented of his Subjects, for that he was a Prince of extraordinary Piety, Valour, and Generosity. He overthrew the *Moors* in Seventeen several Battles, and took from them many Cities and places of Strength. He lived Seventy Seven Years, Governed *Portugal* with the Title of Earl above Twenty, and was Governour of part thereof almost as many more. He was of a middle Stature, a beautiful and awful Presence, his Complexion fair, his Eyes blew, and his Hair yellow, inclining to red: In his antient Pictures, he is represented with his Sword in his hand; his Body lies in the Cathedral of *Braga*, with a modern Inscription on his Tomb, which mistakes his Country and Parentage. The Countess *Dowager* governed this Dominion for some years, as being her Dower, and her Son being under Age. She might have ruled longer, had she not Married, or proposed to Marry the Earl of *Trastamara* D. *Ferdinand de Trava*; this or some other cause, produced Civil Wars betwixt the Mother and Son, which ended in her overthrow, her Son without regard to the duty he owed to a Mother, when she was made Prisoner, keeping her in the Castle of *Lannoso*, with Fetters on her Feet, till she died in the Year 1130. and was Buried by her Husband.

1112. His Death and Character.

8. The Issue of Earl *Henry* was, First, *Alonso Enriquez*, His Issue taking his Name and Sir-Name from his Father and Grand-Father. This being his Heir, is named before the Sisters, though they preceded him as to Birth. Secondly, the Lady *Urraca* Wife to D. *Bermudo* Pizy, Earl of *Trastamara*. Thirdly, the Lady *Sancha*, Wife to D. *Ferdinand Nunnez*, a great Man in the Kingdom of

of Galicia; they left no Children. Fourthly, the Lady Teresa Married to D. Sancho Nunnez, Son to Count Nunno de Celanova. Fifthly, he had a Bastard Son by a Woman of Quality, his Name was Peter Alonso, of whose brave Actions we shall hear in the life of his Brother. Earl Henry for some Years wore a plain white Shield, till after he had obtained renown by his Sword, he added to it a plain blew Cross.

## CHAP. II.

*The Birth of Alonso first King of Portugal, he takes upon him the Government, is proclaimed King by the Army, his wonderful Victory over the Moors at Ourique, he takes Lisbon, Santarem, and many other places, all from the Year 1094. till the Year 1148.*

1094.  
The Birth  
of Alonso  
Enriquez  
Son to  
Count Hen-  
ry.

1. **I**N July, or according to others on the 15th. of August 1094. was Born D. Alonso Enriquez only Son to Earl Henry, and his Lady Teresa, at the Town of Guimaraens. He is said to have been Born with both his Legs cleaving together from the Knees down, and that his Governour Egas Muniz having devoutly begged of Heaven to loosen his Feet, the Blessed Virgin appeared to him, bidding him carry the Child to an old ruined Church at Carquere near Lamego, and that restoring the place, and setting the Infant upon the Altar, he should recover his Limbs. Egas for the space of five Years did as he had been ordered, and the Child recovered: This Prince was but Fourteen Years of Age, when he began to follow the Wars under his Father, and was with him when he died at the Siege of Astorga, as has been said before. Having paid the last Honours to his Father, to express his great respect towards his Mother, he committed the Government to her, though then of Age to undertake it himself. St. Bernard having at his Convent of Claraval in France, had a vision of

1105.

1112.

of St. John Baptist, directing him to send some of his Monks of Monks to found a Monastery in Portugal, in the place Claraval that should be shown to them by one John Cerita, whom they should find there, he accordingly sent seven of his Monks. They found Cerita who lived an Austere Eremitical life, and conducted them to Prince Alonso, by whom they were honourably received, and encouraged in their Foundation. Being dismissed, they settled in a deep Valley, encompassed with high Mountains near the River Barosa, almost two Leagues from Lamego, where they built a Chappel Dedicated to our Saviour, which is still in being in the Village called Pinegro. The following Year, they built in a place where they had seen certain Lights, during Nine Nights, as had been foretold by St. John Baptist to St. Bernard. Here Prince Alonso visiting them, enlarged the Structure at his own cost; John Cerita took the order here, and reduced several who lived an Eremitical Life in the Mountains to follow his Example. The number of Monks thus increasing, he founded another Monastery called St. Christopher de Lafoens. Both these Churches were afterwards Consecrated, and great Gifts offered in them at the Solemnity.

2. Prince Alonso having now weilded a Sword long enough to gain Renown, thought it requisite to be Knighted according to the Custom of those days, and thinking there was none about him great enough to Confer that Honour on him, by putting on his Armour, and girding on his Sword, as was then the Custom; he laid the Arms upon an Altar, and taking them thence, put them on himself, so taking the Honour at his own hands. Prince Alonso's Mother being about to marry the second time, it bred such Animosities betwixt them, that they finally came to Battle near the Town of Guimaraens; the Mother overthrown, fled to the Castle of Lannoso, which is hard by, and was there Besieged by her Son. Alonso VII. King of Castile and Leon, came to her relief with a powerful Army. The Portuguese Alonso was not unprovided, but meeting him in the plains of Valdevez, put to the Sword the greatest part of his Forces, took seven Earls Prisoners, and the King himself hardly escaped, having received two Wounds. This done, the young Prince returns to the Siege of the Castle, which being yielded to him, he put his Mother into

1120.

1121.

1125.

1128.

He besieges  
his Mother,  
takes and  
puts her  
into Irons.

into Irons. She provoked at this disrespect, as her Bolts were put on, prayed to God that his Legs might be broke, and her Prayers were heard as will appear hereafter.

*Being himself besieged by King Alonso of Castile, he Articles for his deliverance, and breaks his Faith.* 3. *Alonso* now grown absolute, and having provoked the King of *Castile* by the late overthrow given him, to revenge the Affront, that King marched with a powerful Army, and besieged Prince *Alonso* in the Town of *Guimaraens*. There being no hope of relief, nor possibility of holding out, *Egas Muniz* was sent out by the Prince to treat of some accommodation with the King, which Business he managed so Dexterously, that the King upon Promise and Articles, that Prince *Alonso* should hold that Country of him, and do him homage for the same in a certain time prefixed, raised his Siege and departed. Prince *Alonso* delivered of that danger, thought of nothing less than performing the Articles agreed upon. *Porteguese* Authors will have it, that *Egas Muniz*, who managed this Treaty, because it was not performed, presented himself to the King of *Castile*, with a Halter about his Neck, for him to punish that breach of Faith, and was pardoned by the King. But this is as Romantick as what our Authors writes, that the whole treaty was concluded without the privity of Prince *Alonso*, as if the King could be so infatuated to treat with a private Man stolen out of a Town, where his Prince was closely Belieged, without seeing his Commission, or to conclude Articles, and depart upon his bare word without the Ratification of the principal Points. These Chimerical Notions are better passed by than to interrupt the course of History with them; however I would not wholly omit this wild imagination of the Author.

*1131. War with the Moors* 4. *Albucazan* King of *Badajoz* did great harm in the Province of *Beira*, and took the Town of *Trancofo* before Prince *Alonso* could come to relieve it. However, our Prince soon retook it, and repulsed the Moor who came to have hindred him from fortifying of it. In his return from this place, *Alonso* was worsted by the *Moors*, but recovering himself near the Town of *Guimaraens*, he overthrew a great multitude of them, and so entred that Town victorious, where he hanged up the Colours taken in the Church. The War broke out again betwixt *Castile* and *Portugal*, in the Reign of *Alonso VII.* of

*1135. Then with Castile.*

of *Castile* called the Emperor, and much harm was done on both sides, though with no great advantage to either. At last our Prince broke into *Galicia*, where King *Alonso* meeting him, was in Battle overthrown, and the Earl D. *Roderick Vela* made Prisoner: After this our *Alonso* valiantly defended *Coimbra*, besieged by the Moor *Eujuni*, so powerful a Prince, that he is said to have covered all the plains about the City, with an Army of 300000 fighting Men: But a violent Plague raging among his Troops, forced him to break up and depart much weaker than he came. Our Prince thus delivered, entred the Territory of *Leyria*, which place, tho' strong, he took by Escalade, putting most of the Defendants to the Sword. This being the first of his notable Conquests, he offered it up to God, delivering it to *Theotonius*, Prior of the Monastery of *Santa Cruz*, whether after the taking of *Torres Novas*, he returned to repose himself in order to prosecute greater Designs.

*1139. A Fabulous Relation.* 5. *Ismar* or *Ismael*, a powerful Moor, was Sovereign of all the Country beyond the River *Tagus*, called *Alentejo*. Our Prince passed that River, and made great Havock in the Territories of those Infidels; *Ismael* assembled twenty petty Princes, subject to five little Kings who were all under his Dominion. Each of those Kings led 80000 Men, wherewith they covered all the plains. With our Authors leave it is wholly incredible, 'That such inconsiderable Princes, as they must be, whose Dominions extended not to above half the limits of *Portugal*, should raise so prodigious a Multitude, for it amounts to no less than 480000. This may perhaps be added to gain the greater Reputation to those strange miracles he talks of in the Sequel. The *Christians* were not above 13000, and those wholly dismayed (as well they might) at the sight of such an Army as they could not be capable to number. However, Prince *Alonso* reposing his confidence in God, ceased not to encourage and animate his fainting Forces. They encouraged with his undaunted Contenance, and resolute Expressions, took heart and offered their ready service: It was then Night when the Prince retiring to rest, read the History of *Gideon* and fell asleep: in a Dream there appeared to him a venerable Old Man, promising him Victory, and being awakened, was told there was such an one pressed to speak with him; being



Alonso  
saluted  
King.

admitted, he found it was the same Man he saw in his Dream, and that he came to give him the same assurances. At break of day he went out of his Tent, and looking towards the East, saw a mighty Brightness, in the midst of which appeared our Saviour on the Cross surrounded with Angels, who promised him Victory over the Infidels, and commanded him to accept the Title of King, if offered to him by his Army. Soon after the Portuguese flocked about him, demanding the signal of Battle, and unanimously saluted him King. He at first seemed to refuse that Title, but it being the consequence of the Vision he had seen, soon admitted it: 'Let every one give that credit to this strange relation he shall think fit, I have briefly set it down, that I might not wholly cut off so extraordinary a passage in my Author; yet would I not extend it to that length as he has done, because I believe most Men will give as little credit to it as I do.

The Battle  
of Ouri-  
que.

6. Alonso thus encouraged, drew up his Army into four Bodies, the Enemy making twelve: The charge was seconded by a most hideous cry raised by both Armies, an incredible clattering of Weapons, and such showers of Darts and Arrows, as seemed to darken the light of the Sun. No Christian fought to save himself, all their study was to kill; the King encouraged all Men by his example, and every Man fought to out-do another. Six hours the fight lasted, in which time the plain of Ourique, where they engaged was all covered with dead Bodies, which almost floated in a Pool of Blood. At length the Victory fell to the Christians, and was one of the greatest ever obtained against Infidels. 'It is very

Reflections  
upon this  
Battle.

'hard to reconcile the account of this Battle to any thing of probability; for whereas the Author says but a little before, there were five lesser Kings and one Sovereign of them all, with each 80000 Men, which amounts to 480000; now he says, they were above 600000. Doubtless there must be willful mistakes in these Numbers to magnify the Action, which would seem great if not rendered incredible; Besides he reckons six Kings which are those of Silves, Merida, Sevil, Badajoz, Lisbon, and Algezira, whereas all other Authors agree they were but five, and give that for the reason that the Portuguese Arms contain five small Scutcheons within the great one; nor is it any excuse

to

'to say, there were five Kings subject to one that was supreme over them, for the principal could not be omitted in the Number, and if he was not, than the others must be but four. Another reason makes me incline not to credit this Story, which is, that we see the King's of Castile, Aragon, and Navarre have often joyned their Forces to oppose a much less power than is here spoke of, and it is not credible that such a Multitude could be now amassed on a sudden without their knowledge, or much less that they knowing of it, should make no provision to oppose that Torrent. Nor was there ever such a number of Moors in one body heard of from their first invading Spain, till their last expulsion. In fine, I cannot be reconciled to this monstrous Story, and could show many other reasons against it, but look upon it as needless, this being only a project to gain credit to the Miracles pretended for the founding of that Kingdom, which serve only to cover its revolt at that time from the Crown of Castile and Leon. I will insist no more upon it, but return to the course of the History.

7. Ismael provoked with this loss, and desiring revenge, battered the City Leyria, which he took, putting all the Defendants to the Sword, except D. Pelayo Gutierrez the Governour, whom he kept Prisoner. He fortified this place so strongly, that King Alonso found much difficulty to recover it, but at length drove the Moors out of all that Territory. King Alonso VII. of Castile seeing that erected into a Monarchy, which but a little before was only the Portion of his predecessors Bastard Daughter, thought it convenient in time to pull down that rising greatness before it was too powerfully cemented together. Thus breaking into Portugal by the way of Galicia, he came to the plains of Valdevez, where the Castilians had been before overthrown, and where our King now again gave him Battle. The King of Castile was defeated, and several Persons of Note taken Prisoners. A French Fleet consisting of 70 Sail, arrived in the Harbour of the City Porto. The King invited them to assist him in the taking of the City of Lisbon, which having some years before been made tributary, was again revolted: This united power of Christians attempted to scale it, but without any success, being forced to desist for that time. The Moors obtained

1140.  
Alonso is  
again de-  
feated the  
King of  
Castile.  
1141.  
A fleet of  
French at  
Porto.  
1142.

ed a Victory at *Soure* over the Knights Templers, and among the Prisoners carried away to *Santarem* Martin Vicar of *Soure* esteemed a Holy Man, whose Father *Aires Manuel*, when his Wife died, led an Eremitical Life.

1144. 8. *Ansciri* a valiant Moor Governour of the Town of *Santarem*, with his often Excursions, had highly provoked King *Alonso*, who long meditated how to surprize that place. At length being at *Coimbra*, he took only four men of Quality with him into a Field, where having consulted with them of the method of putting their design in Execution, he charged them upon pain of death, not to reveal to any Man what they had discoursed about. As they returned home along the Banks of the River *Mondego*, an Old Woman said to others that were with her so loud, that the King and his company heard it; 'Do you know what the King and Noblemen have been about? They are consulting how to take *Santarem*; the King hearing this, said to those Gentlemen, if any one of you had gone a step from me before I heard that Old Woman, I would have cut off his head. So hard a matter is it for a Secret to be concealed. The King being resolved to gain that strong Town, made a vow if he succeeded to build a stately Monastery at *Alcobaza*, and endow it with all the Land he could see at the time of making the Vow. At the minute he made this Vow, St. Bernard who was then at *Charavallis* in France, by Revelation from God, sent two Monks to begin that Monastery. Five days the King spent marching from *Coimbra* to *Santarem*, and made himself Master of it in an hour; some of his Men had Scaled the Walls before they were discovered, and then in the confusion had time to break open a Gate, at which the King entered. The Booty was very considerable, and the Town remained in the power of the Christians; several lesser places followed the fortune of *Santarem*, but the King now bent his thoughts upon greater Conquests.

9. Our King being at the Rock of *Sintra* with an ardent design to possess himself of the City of *Lisbon*, discovered a mighty Fleet at Sea, which made towards the mouth of the River *Tagus*. This Fleet appearing, he understood was composed of English, French and Flemings, in the River of *Lisbon*.

*Flemings*, under the Command of *William Long Espe*, and other inferior Captains. Some Authors report, that *Henry* King of *Denmark*, a Duke of *Burgundy*, and *Theodoricus* Earl of *Flanders* were also in it. After struggling with a Storm, they were coming to Water and recruited themselves at the foot of that Mountain; the number of Vessels was 180 sail containing 14000 men designed for the Holy War; the King made proposals to them for conquering the City of *Lisbon*; they accepted, and the Siege was formed. The strangers encamped on that side, where now the Church of St. *Alonso* Francis stands, and the King where is at present the Church of St. *Vincent*. For five Months the City was valiantly attacked, and no less resolutely defended. On St. *Ursula's* Day, being the 21st. of October, a most furious and bloody Assault was given to the City on all sides, with such mighty Resolution, that above 200000 Infidels are said to have fallen that day. But it is impossible the place then could contain near that number of all Sexes and Ages, and yet my Author seems to speak only of Men. On the 25th. following, being the Feast of St. *Crispin* and *Crispinian*, the King entered the City in Triumph over the dead Bodies of his Enemies.

10. The particulars of this famous Action would doubtless have been delightful, as they were great, but time and the want of Writers have Buried them in Oblivion. It will not therefore be just to omit one glorious exploit, whereof the memory still remains. *Martin Moniz* entering a Gate, found such opposition from the Moors, that they were forcing him back and shutting to the Gate: to prevent which, being himself not able to oppose their Force, he let himself fall a cross the entrance, and so lying in the way, the Gate could not speedily be put too, and his Men coming on, beat off the Infidels, making their way over his dead Body; nor must the Strangers be robbed of their part of the Glory. Many of them ended their days in this exploit, among them was one *Henry* of *Bonneville* near *Chartres*, at whose Tomb in the Church of St. *Vincent*, many Miracles are reported to have been wrought; many others were buried, where now is the Church called that of the Martyrs from those that were buried there. The King according to what had been before agreed, offered to the Strangers half

1148.

half the City, but they satisfied with the Booty and some other rewards, departed to prosecute their holy designs, for to their own Countries. Such as would stay, had Lands assigned them; many other strong places were taken soon after in this current of the King's good Fortune, the chief of them were, *Mafra, Almada, Palmela, Cintra, Obidos, Trancofo, Alenquer, Serpa, Beja, Elvas, Coruche* and *Cezimbra*. Thus the Pride of the *Mahometans* began to be humbled, and this *Christian* Kingdom to lift up its head.

## C H A P. III.

*Continues the mighty Actions of the victorious King Alfonso, the Kingdom confirmed to him by the Pope, his Death, issue and description, all from the Year 1148. till 1185.*

Alonso  
overbrows  
the Moors  
with a  
handfull of  
Men.

1. **S**ince we cannot give the particulars of all the Heroical Actions of this King, let us at least in two of them represent somewhat of the grandeur of the rest. He sat down before *Alcazar do Sal*, with a small handful of Men; 500 *Moorish* Horse and 10000 Foot came to raise the Siege, whom he went out to meet with only 60 Horse, and a proportionable number of Foot. With this small Body, he put his Enemies to flight, but was himself wounded in the Leg, most misfortunes always lighting upon his Legs ever since his Mother laid that Curse on him, as was said before. After this Victory, returning to the Siege, he took it at the end of two Months; this done, he went with 60 Lances and a few Cross-bow-men to take a view of the Fortress on the Rock of *Palmela*. Being before the place, he discovered the King of *Badajo* coming down a Hill with 400 Horse and 60000 Foot, but without any order. Our King lay a while betwixt certain Rocks out of sight, considering their disorderly march, whilst his Company meditated on their Numbers. At length breaking out suddenly with that handful, he soon covered the Hill with dead Bodies, and the Infidels be-

Another  
like exploit

lieving

lieving a greater Army had followed, fled in confusion, leaving all their Baggage to a few above 60 Conquerors. *Palmela* upon the News of this defeat, immediately surrendered upon only promise of Life. The City *Tuy* left him by his Father, and now revolted, he reduced to his Obedience, and at the same time, concluded a match for his Daughter *Mafalda*, then 12 Years of Age, with *Raymund* Prince of *Catalonia*.

1160.

2. Some time before, he had subdued the City *Beja*, after a tedious Siege, but the *Moors* who are faithful no longer than compelled by necessity, finding now a fit opportunity, rebelled. Certain valiant Commanders, imitating the example of their King, assaulted this place by Night with such resolution, and so unexpectedly, that they carried it making great slaughter among the Inhabitants. A Gentleman of Quality called *Giraldus*, living like an outlaw on account of certain crimes he had committed, entred into hopes of regaining the King's Favour, by some extraordinary action. Considering therefore that the City *Evora* was not guarded by the Infidels with that circumspection that was requisite at such a time, he resolved to surprise it. There was a Watch-tower, where the Centinel was kept by a *Moor* and his Daughter by turns; *Giraldus* knowing this, scaled the Tower alone, and killing both Father and Daughter, who were asleep, returns with their heads to his Men, being 500 Horse and a good number of Foot. They encouraged by this success, scaled the Walls then unguarded, and breaking open one of the Gates, let in their Companions: Thus with a mighty slaughter made of the Inhabitants, the City was gained. The King not only Pardoned, but Rewarded all those Out-laws, and made their Captain Governour of the City.

1162.

3. King *Alonso* thus become terrible to the *Moors*, fell at variance with his Son-in-law *Ferdinand* the Second King of *Leon*, and thereupon entred *Galicia* in the 75th. year of his Age. Here he took the Towns of *Lima* and *Turon*, and putting *Portuguese* Garrisons into them, turned his Forces against *Badajo*, then a tributary City to the King of *Leon*. This City he assaulted and entered, but not the Castle: Mean while King *Ferdinand* came to defend that place which fell within the limits of his Conquest. The *Portuguese* Army encountering him

1168.  
The match  
Leon.

King A- him in the Field, was overthrown, and King *Alonso*  
*Alonso put* forced to fly into the City, whence thinking to make  
*to flight,* his escape, he struck his Leg against a bolt of the Gate  
*breaks his* so violently, that he broke it, and here his Mothers  
*Leg, fall-* Curse reached him fully. Nor was that all, for in that  
*filling his* condition, he was taken by the King of *Leon*, who  
*Mothers* treated him with extraordinary courtesy, and was con-  
*curse when* tent that he should restore to him only such places as he  
*he put Fer-* had wrongfully taken in *Galicia* and *Leon*, tho' he of-  
*ters upon* fered others in *Portugal*. 'Our Author will not allow  
*her.* 'that King *Alonso* promised any acknowledgment to the  
 'Crown of *Leon* for his Dominions, but all *Spanish*  
 'Authors are positive he did. Certain it is, that from  
 henceforward he remained lame, so that he never after  
 could ride a Horseback, but was carried in a Chariot.

1170.

4. The King had some time since taken the City *Beja*, but it was soon after lost. *Gonzalo Mendez de Maya*, called the *Combatant*, about this time made a Road into the territory of *Beja*, where was a great body of *Moors*, under the Command of *Almohamar*, a Soldier of Reputation. These two Bodies encountred, and *Maya* remained Master of the Field; scarce had he vanquished this Enemy, when he was met by *Alboazem* King of *Tunzier*, who was coming to the assistance of the vanquished. The fight was renewed on the same spot of Ground, and a second Victory added to the former. *Maya* was 95 Years of Age when he obtained these two Victories, but died immediately of the Wounds he had received, which made his Army return home in mournful manner. *Albaraque* King of *Sevil* made bold by the King's lameness, drawing a vast multitude out of *Andalusia*, presumed not only to waste the Country beyond *Tagus*, but to set down before *Santarem*, where the King then in the 88th. Year of his Age reposed himself; he caused himself to be carried out in his Chariot to give the *Beliegers* Battle. The fight was so obstinate, he was forced to quit his Chariot, and appear at the head of his Men with his Sword in Hand. Hereat his Soldiers took so much Courage, that they soon put their Enemies to the rout with a great slaughter; *St. Michael* the Archangel is said to have been seen by his side, hewing down the Infidels. Hence he went to the Monastery of *Alcobaca*, to return thanks to God for this success, and staying there a Month, is said to have instituted a

*Alonso*  
*Beja*  
*Santarem*  
*by the*  
*Moors,*  
*falling out*  
*and a feast*  
*was made*

new

new order of Knighthood, called that of the *Wing*, for that in the Battle he saw a winged Arm near him fighting against the *Moors*, which the King supposing to be *St. Michael*, or his Guardian Angel, he dedicated the order to them both. The chief Rules were, that the Knights should wear a red Wing embroidered with Gold; that none but Gentlemen of Note should be admitted to the Order; that in fight they should carry the Royal Standard; that they should take the Oath of Allegiance administered by the Prior of *Alcobaca*, who was to be superior of the Order; that they should every day say the same Prayers, as did the Converts of that Monastery; that their Feast should be observed on *Michaelmas Day*. The King and principal Men were enrolled in this Order, but it was not lasting.

5. At this time there was in the *Portuguese* Court, a Gentleman called *Gonzalo Hermiguez*, much esteemed of the Ladies for his Eloquence and Art in Poetry, and no less envied of the Men, as well for those Qualities, as for that his extraordinary Actions had purchased him the Title of *Moor Swallower*. This Gentleman with a party that used to follow him, passed over the River *Tagus*, before it was light on *Midsummer Day* from *Lisbon* to *Almada*, and there lay in Ambush. The *Moors* according to their Custom coming out that Morning with their Women to be merry upon the Banks of the River; he suddenly rushed out upon them, expecting no such Entertainment, and made a great slaughter of them. The Infidels strove to defend themselves, but in vain, for he carried off a rich Booty to his Boats. Being ready to put off, he espied a *Moor* carrying away a beautiful Woman, and leaping again ashore, he forced her from him, and so made over to *Santarem* with his Prey. Of all the booty he took nothing to himself, but the fair Captive, whom Baptized, he made his Wife: She soon after dying, he was so afflicted that leaving the World, he took upon him the habit of *Sr. Bernard*, in the Monastery of *Alcobaca*, and out of his own Patrimony, having no Children, founded the Monastery of *St. Mary de Tumaray* near *Ourem*. Much about this time it is recorded, that the King being near the mouth of the River *Mondego*, found a small Chappel with the Image of our B. Lady, which restored to life one of his Servants killed with a fall from his Horse. An

old



old Hermit told him it was the same that had preserved all the Women and Children, killed by John the Abbot (as was said in its place) when he sallied out of Montemayor, and unexpectedly overthrew a multitude of Infidels. This moved the King to erect a Monastery there, called at present St. Mary de Seica, and the Image being several times removed from the poor Chapel, to the magnificent Church of this Monastery, is said always of it self to have returned to its own place. Peter the King's Bastard Brother ranging abroad, met a party of Moors conducting a Beautiful Lady with much Treasure, all which, having routed them, he took. Cide Achim a Moor of Silves, who courted this Lady, begged her of the King, or else desired him to keep him also for his slave. The King referred him to his Brother Peter, who not only restored to him the Lady, but all the Treasure taken with her upon condition he should send no succours to Lisbon, which it seems was not then taken.

Of Peter, Bastard Brother to Alonso.  
6. Peter, Bastard Brother to King Alonso was sent into France, to prevail with St. Bernard, to use his interest with the Pope for to obtain his investiture and confirmation of the new Kingdom of Portugal. To omit what is too Romantick concerning this Peter, he is said for his extraordinary valour to have been admitted into the number of the 12 Peers of France, and that preparing to accompany that King to Hierusalem, he was dissuaded by St. Bernard, who advised him, rather to act against the Moors in Spain. He followed his advice, and was at the taking of Santarem, Lisbon, Trancoso, Badajoz, and other great Actions: After this he was chosen Master of the new instituted order of Knighthood, called that of Avis, which Honour he obtained of the King, that he might not be obliged by him to Marry. Returning one day with a party from an Engagement with the Moors, he laid down in a Field and fell a Sleep, at which time St. Bernard appeared to him in a Dream, perswading him to take upon him the Habit of his Order, which he accordingly performed, and lived 13 Years in the Monastery of Alcobaca, with an extraordinary opinion of Sanctity.

7. The Dominions of Portugal being now enlarged from a small Dower, given by the King of Leon, with his Bastard Daughter to the proportion of a considerable

ble Kingdom, King Alonso sued to Pope Alexander III. for his investiture in the same, offering to pay to the See of Rome for ever, two pound of Gold yearly, as an acknowledgment of his holding that Crown of the Pope. His Holiness granted his request, and accordingly expedited his Bulls to that effect in the Year 1172. Hereupon the Cortes or Parliament was assembled at Lamego, in which pursuant to these Bulls, the King was crowned with a Crown of Gold by the Archbishop of Braga, and all the States there assembled, unanimously voted their Kingdom independent of the Crown of Leon. For the better regulating of the succession, it was enacted, That the King's Sons should inherit, and for want of them his Brothers, whose Sons should not succeed them, without consent of the People. That Daughters might Inherit, provided they Married not out of the Kingdom; that their Husband should not be called King, till the Queen had a Son; that he should not wear the Crown on his Head in Parliament; that if she Married a Foreign Prince, she should not inherit, least the Crown should be transferred to Strangers.

8. About this time the King made an incursion into Algarve, as far as the Promontorium Sacrum, or Cape St. Vincent, desiring to translate the Body of that Saint which he understood to be there, but he could not perform it, and retired: Afterwards the Council of Lisbon sent People to discover it, who brought it away to that City, where it is kept with great Veneration, a number of Crows following the Body, from the Mountain to the great Church where it lies, and there they also continue to this Day. Abenjacob Son to the Miramolin, or Emperor of Morocco, with a mighty Army, besieged and much streightned the Town of Abrantes, but certain Portuguese Gentlemen raising the greatest Power they were able, gave him Battle and put him to flight. D. Fuas Roupinho commanded in the Castle of Puerto de Mos, at such time as Gami King of Merida came to attack it. D. Fuas hearing of his approach with a small body, went out and lay close in Ambush. The Moor giving an Assault to the Castle, he fell upon him so unexpected and furiously, that most of the Moors being slain, Gami and many others were made Prisoners. Gami and his Brother were sent for a present

1182.  
Engage-  
ments by  
Sea.

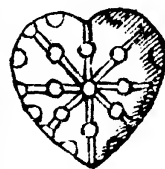
present to old King *Alonso*, who then reposed himself at *Coimbra*. This same *D. Fuas* being Admiral at Sea, destroyed the Gallies of *Mauritania* the first time near *Cape Espichel*, and brought nine of them to *Lisbon*; others he burnt in the Sea of *Ceuta*. Returning thither afterwards with 21 Gallies, he fought 54 of the Enemy, but was totally destroyed, and found a Grave where before he had raised Trophies. *Joseph Aben*, *Jacob Miramamolín* of *Morocco*, *Andaluzia*, *Murcia* and *Valencia*, with 13 Kings, and the mightiest Army that till then had been seen, to revenge the harms suffered from the *Portuguese*, passed the River *Tagus*, and having destroyed *Torres Vedras*, and whatever else stood in his way, laid Siege to *Santarem*, where Prince *Sancho* then was. During 6 or 7 days, he incessantly Battered the Town, and gave several assaults to it, so that many of the Defendants were killed, the Prince wounded, and the Walls shaken. At this time King *Alonso* being 91 years of Age, came to relieve the Town, but scarce had the occasion to draw his Sword, the Infidels flying precipitously at the very sight of him. Both the Father and Son pursued the flying Enemy with such Execution, that the River was dyed with their Blood. The *Miramamolín* ended his days, in the very River, being first wounded by the Prince.

1184.

9. The most glorious King *Alonso* having Governed 17 Years without the Title of King, and 46 with it, and having lived 93, at length departed this life in the month of *December*, and year of our Lord 1185. In his life time he is said to have overthrown 30 Kings, besides a number of lesser Princes and inferior Commanders. It must be observed, that most of these were Kings of particular Cities. His Piety appears in the great number of Churches he Erected, reported to amount to 150. He instituted two Military Orders, that of the Wing before spoken of, which for want of Revenues died with the first Knights. And that of *Avis* (as our Author will have it, tho' I find no other to confirm this Antiquity) which continues to this day. To the Knights Templers and Hospitallers, he assigned considerable Revenues. As to his Person, he was 11 Spans High, a Gigantick Stature, his Hair Red, a large Mouth, long Visage, and large sparkling Eyes. He lay in the Church of the Holy Cross at *Coimbra* in a wooden

1185.  
The Death  
of King A-  
lonso.

wooden Tomb, till King *Emanuel* erected one more Majestick for him. His Sword and Buckler are there still to be seen; the Arms he bore on his *His Arms* Sheild were Argent, 19 Scutcheons Azure, 10 of them in the nature of an Orle, the other nine in Cross and in Saltire, all joined together with twists of Silk, running from one to the other; each Escutcheon charged with Thirteen Bezants.



10. King *Alonso* was 53 Years of Age when he Married *Mafalda*, the most Beautiful Lady of those times, and second Daughter to *Amadee*, 5th. Earl of *Maricenne*, and first of *Savoy*. This Queen followed the example of her Husband in erecting several Churches and Monasteries. By her, the King had Issue, *Henry* who died young: *Sancho* who inherited the Crown, *John*, *Mafalda* Wife to *Alonso* the second King of *Aragon*, *Urraca* Wife to King *Ferdinand* the second of *Leon*, from whom she was divorced on account of Consanguinity after she had by him *Alonso* who inherited that Crown. *Teresa*, second Wife to *Philip* the first Earl of *Flanders*, and *Sancha*; his Bastard Children were *Peter Alonso*, *Teresa* married to *Sancho Nunnez*, from whom her Father took her, and married her to *Ferdinand Martinez*, the brave Lord of *Braganza*, and the Lady *Urraca* married to *Peter Alonso Viegas*, the Grandson to *Egas Moniz* the King's Tutor.

## CHAP. IV.

*The life and Reign of King Sancho I. from the Year 1154. till 1212, all his Actions in Peace and War, his Arms and Issue.*

1. King *Alonso* had enjoyed the regal Title 15 Years 1154. when his Wife Queen *Mafalda* bore him his second Son and Successor *Sancho*. He was Born at *Coimbra* the 11th. of *December*, which being St. *Martin's Day*, he had that Name given him, together with

*Sancho*  
Father A-  
lonso.

His Affi-  
ons under  
his Father.

the other. From his very Infancy, he was bred in the Field amidst the noise of Arms, and surrounded with Dangers. At the Age of 13 he engaged with the King of Leon, in the Plains of *Arganal*, and tho' not Victorious, came off with Honour: He was the first Christian Prince, after the Conquest of Spain by the Moors, that advanced to the Walls of *Sevil*. His Father King *Alonso* had ordered him to pass the River *Tagus*, to defend that plentiful Country. The Moors suffered him to pass undisturbed by *Evora* and *Beja*, but having passed *Sierra Morena*, he was met by the King of *Sevil* with a numerous Army in the plain of *Axarafe*; here they came to a Battle, which was obstinately fought on both sides till the valour of the Christians overcame the multitude of their Enemies, whom they pursued to the Gates of *Sevil*, making that River run Red with the blood of Infidels. In his return to *Portugal*, the Prince wasted all the Country carrying a vast Booty, without meeting any opposition. By the way he laid Siege to *Niebla*, and had now reduced it to great extremity, when advice was brought him that the City *Beja* was distressed by the Moors. Thither he hastened, and charging the Besiegers, put them to the rout, and relieved the City. The King of *Bajadoz* had sent *Ravadan*, a famous Commander, with an Army to spoil that part of *Portugal*, which he performed as was expected from him; being on his return, he was overtaken by the Prince, and forced to quit the Country, and his Booty with more hast than he came. This Prince valiantly defended *Santarem* against the *Miramamolin*, till his Father came to raise the Siege, and they both entred the place in Triumph. These were his principal Exploits till his Accession to the Crown, which was in the Year

1185. 1185.

2. The third day after his Father's Death, in the 30th. Year of his Age, and the 10th. after he was married, Prince *Sancho* was Proclaimed King in the same place where he was Born. Since this is the first King that died in *Portugal*, we will set down the manner of publick lamentation made for his Death which continues to this day, leaving the Formalities of the inauguration of the new King for another place. The Judges and their Officers walk a foot from the Townhouse, with long mourning Cloaks, with Hoods to

The manner of lamenting the death of a King.

them

them on their head. After them the Town Standard Bearer on a Horse with mourning trappings, with black colours on his Shoulder, the end whereof trails upon the Ground. Then follows the Sheriff with two others in Mourning like the others, each of them carrying a Buckler over his head. Next to them come the Aldermen, followed by a multitude of People; in this manner they proceed to the great Church, where the Sheriff having made a short Speech, declaring the King's death, and their great loss, he lets fall the Buckler from his head upon the Stones, and breaks it to pieces, at which the People raise a hideous lamentation. Then they go to the Mint, and so to the great Hospital, at both which places they perform the same Ceremony, which done, they return to the great Church and hear Mass. The third day after, is performed the Ceremony of inauguration, which shall be spoke of in another place. This Ceremony was now performed at *Coimbra*, where *Martin* then Bishop crowned King *Sancho* and his Queen *Dulcis* according to the custom of those times.

3. The first action of the new King was paying his Obedience to Pope *Urban III.* after which he so much addicted himself to repairing of Towns and Castles and building others anew, as also to encouraging of Tilling, that he was called the Peopler, and the Farmer or Tiller. To the Military order of *Santiago*, he gave the Towns of *Alcazar*, *Palmela*, *Almada* and *Arruda*; to that of *Avis*, *Alpedriz* and *Alcanede*; to the Templars *Idanha*. He repaired the great Town of *Covillam*, to whose jurisdiction 300 Villages are subject, and gave a Charter to it, as he did to *Gouvea*, *Viseo* and *Braganza*. *Ferdinand* King of *Leon* entred into *Portugal*, with greater force than success; for after several repulses, he was defeated in the Country of *Cerolico Bebedo*, now called *la Vera*: The Governour of *Villota*, a Town on a Hill near the City *Guardia*, observing the King of *Leon's* Army dispersed about the Villages for Plunder, gathered all the Forces near him, and marching from *Trancofo*, recovered all the Booty, killing many, and putting the rest to flight. A Fleet of English, Flemings and Danes consisting of 53 sail, Commanded by *Jaques* Lord of *Avesnes*, entred the Mouth of the River *Tagus*, being designed for the Holy Land. The King supplied them with all they wanted, and designing the Conquest of the

1186.  
He repairs  
and builds  
many Towns

1187.

1188.



*Silves in Algarve taken with the help of a Foreign Fleet.* the City *Silves* the Metropolis of *Algarve*, and refuge of all the *Moorish* Pyrates, he proposed advantageous terms to these Strangers if they would assist him in that Expedition. They consented, Articling for the Plunder of the City, if taken: Forty *Portuguese* Gallies were joined to the Foreign Fleet, besides Tenders carrying Provision and warlike Munitions. The King marched with his Army by Land, whilst the Fleet made the best of its way at Sea. Both being come before the City, they furiously Battered, and gave several Assaults to it for the space of two Months, meeting a vigorous resistance in the Defendants. At the end of that time the *Moors* pressed with Hunger, and the continual attacks of the *Christians* delivered up the City, capitulating only for their lives.

1189. *Algarve subdued, King Sancho adds that Title to Portugal.*

4. This City of *Silves* taken, as has been said, was again lost the ensuing Year: King *Sancho* soon returned into *Algarve*, and not only recovered it, but took also the Town of *Albor* and Castle of *Abenabacci*, besides other places. This Country thus conquered, King *Sancho* stiled himself King of *Algarve*, and to the Royal Arms of *Portugal*, added an Orle of Castles. Some of his Coin has been seen, which in the Orle has 7 Castles, which number is still used in the Armes of *Algarve*, when separated from those of *Portugal*. King *Alonso III.* added more, making the Number uncertain; but King *John II.* long after fixed the Number again at seven. Betwixt this Year and that of 1200 were repopled the Towns of *Penamacor*, *Pinel*, *Torres Novas*, *Azambuja*, *Penucova*, *Gondomar*, *Ermelo*, *Covellinas*, *Soto de Panoyas* and *Povos*. *Montemayor* the New was now first Built, as also the City *Guarda* on the side of the Mountain formerly called *Herminius*, now *Serra da Estrella*. King *Sancho* entred *Andaluzia* a second time, laid Siege to the Town of *Serpa*, overthrew the *Moors* that came to relieve it, and yet was forced to rise without taking it. Soon after it was taken by the Knights of the Order of *Avis*; *Peter Fernandez de Castro*, that famous *Castilian*, who taking offence at his King, often led the *Moors* against him, being now General for the King of *Morocco*, did great harm in *Portugal*. All the territory of *Tomar* was wasted, and *Abrantes* plundered: As he was retiring loaded with rich Plunder, *Martin Lopez* a famous Commander encountred him, and

1190.

and after a most sharp dispute, recovered all the Prey and took him Prisoner.

5. The *Miramamolín* again overwhelmed this Kingdom with an Army of 400000 Horse and 500000 Foot (I could wish a Cipher were cut off from each Number, and it would appear more credible.) He took *Torres Novas* without opposition, but *Tomar* was bravely defended by *Galdin Paes*, Master of the *Templers*, who had done notable service in the Holy Land. The *Moor* offered to exchange the places he had taken for the City *Silves*, but this proposition being rejected by King *Sancho*, he in a fury laid Siege to *Santarem*, where the Plague raging in his Army, he was forced to break it up and depart; 63 Men of War from the Northern parts arrived at *Lisbon*, commanded by two English Men of Note, called *Robert Labril* and *Richard Cambil*. The first ten that came in, aided the King at *Santarem* against the *Miramamolín*; the others being joined to them, there arose such contention betwixt them and the *Portuguese*, as might have been the cause of much Bloodshed, had not the King prudently prevented it, and sent the Strangers away well contented. A most terrible Plague and devouring Famine followed all these great successes, and not only destroyed Men in their Houses, but even the wild Beasts in the Woods, or else they ran to the Towns for Prey whilst Men fled to the Mountains for Shelter. The Monks of *Alcobaca* perceiving they must of necessity Perish, hid an Image of our Lady in the Mountain, which being afterwards found, a Church was built there, and called *Our Lady of Help*. To be brief, a great part of the Kingdom was altogether unpeopled; all this was foreshewn by a total Solar Eclipse.

6. As if all these Calamities had not been sufficient to humble so small a number of People and so narrow a Country, the *Miramamolín Aben Joseph*, Brother to him that besieged *Santarem*, assisted by the Kings of *Cordova* and *Sevil*, entred *Portugal* with 400000 Men. All the open Country was by him miserably wasted, and the Towns of *Alcazar*, *Almada* and *Palmela* taken with all that the *Christians* had before gained in *Algarve*. Our King not able oppose so puissant an Enemy, concluded a Truce with him for five Years, which ended in a wonderful Eclipse of the Sun. This was followed by

N

Earth-

Robert Labril and Richard Cambil Englishmen with a fleet of 63 Ships arrive at Lisbon, and assist the Portuguese against the Moors. 1191. Great Famine.

A total Eclipse of the Sun.

The Moors ravage the Country.



Earth-  
quakes, in-  
undations,  
and Storms  
for 8 Years

Earthquakes, Floods, Storms at Sea, and many other Calamities for the space of 8 Years. Men laboured under a horrid Distemper, for their Entrails consuming they died raving. A considerable body of Portuguese was at the famous Battle of *Alarcos* in *Castile* against the

1195. Moors, commanded by *D. Ganzaio Viegas* Master of *Arms*, who died honourably in that glorious Action. A multitude of *Arabs* after the Expiration of the Truce, o-

1196. verran a great part of *Portugal*, consuming all that was not before spoiled, and putting to the Sword all the

1197. Monks of the Monastery of *Alcobaza*. King *Sancho* at last provoked by these losses, marched out with his Forces, took *Roca de Palmela* and recovered *Elvas*, nor long before taken from him. Next he made War on the King of *Leon* his Son-in-law, having obtained of

1200. Pope *Celestin III.* the Croisade for all that fought against him, as a favourer of Infidels against *Christians*. He took from him the City *Tuy*, and Towns of *Pontevedra* and *St. Payo de Lombeo* and recovered *Contrasta*, now called *Valencia*, before taken by the King of *Leon*. At length these two Kings were reconciled through the mediation of the King of *Aragon*, who to that effect came

1208. to *Coimbra*, then the Court of *Portugal*. Some time after there ensued Civil Wars in *Portugal* betwixt certain great Men; the most considerable betwixt *Peter Rodriguez de Pereyre* and his Cousin *Peter Mendez de Peyares*, who coming to a Battle near *Valongo*, two Leagues from *Porto*, the latter was there slain with many other Men of Note.

7. The Holy City of *Hierusalem* being taken by *Saladin*, the *Christian* Princes made preparations for recovery of it, and our King *Sancho* designed to have gone thither himself; but being dissuaded, sent supplies and encouraged the knights *Templers* and *Hospitallers* to proceed vigorously in that religious Enterprize. In this King's time was used in *Portugal* the weight called a *Talent*, but less than the *Roman*, *Greek*, or *Hebrew*, being worth but four *Ducats*. I have seen silver Coin of this King's with his Image a Horse back on the one side, his Sword held up a cross on his Reines, and about it these Words: *In nomine Patris & filij & spiritus Sancti*; On the reverse, the Arms of the Kingdom and this Inscription, *Sanctius Dei Gratia Rex Portugaliæ*. King *Sancho* fixed not his abode in any one place,

A Talent  
used in  
Portugal.

place, but often removed, that so all might equally enjoy his presence. He was a great Patron to the religious and Military Orders, careful of rewarding Merit, a Friend to the Poor, an Enemy to Idleness, and true Father of his Country. The misfortunes during his Reign, and his own bounty might well have exhausted the Treasure; yet so well did he manage it, that at his death he distributed 728000 Crowns and 1400 Marks of Plate, and 100 of Gold. His Legacies extended to *Rome* and *Hierusalem*; he was of a middle Stature, and strongly set; he Reigned 26 Years and lived 57, died in *March*, and lies Buried in the Church of the Holy Cross at *Coimbra*, opposite to his Father, whose Tomb is on the right side of the Altar. His Tomb being opened by King *Emanuel* to put him in to a new one 400 Years after his Decease, the body was found uncorrupted.

The death  
of King  
Sancho.

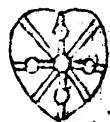
8. Some Years before the death of his Father, he married *Dulcis* or *Aldonza*, Daughter to *Raymund Berengarius* Earl of *Barcelona*, by whom he had issue, *Alonso* his Successor. *Ferdinand* married to *Joanna*, Countess of *Flanders*, Daughter and Heiress to *Baldwin*, Emperor of *Constantinople*. *Peter* who married the Daughter and Heiress of Earl *Armengaud*, in whose right he had the Earldoms of *Urgel* and *Segorbe*, and Island of *Majorca*. *Henry* that died young, and *Raymund* that lived a short time. His Daughters were *Teresa*, married to the King of *Leon*, and parted from him on account of Consanguinity, when she had three Children by him, she is esteemed a Saint. *Mafalda* married to *Henry I.* King of *Castile*, and divorced as well as her Sister on the same account of Consanguinity; she lies buried in the Monastery of *Arouca*, and is Worshiped as a Saint. *Sancha* who converted her own Pallace at *Alenquer* into a *Franciscan* Monastery, which was the first in *Portugal*, that holy Man being then alive. She also built the Monastery of *Celas* near *Coimbra*, and lies Buried at *Lorvan* with the same esteem as her Sisters. *Blanch* Lady of *Guadalajara* in *Castile* where she died, but was translated to the Church of the Holy Cross at *Coimbra* among her Parents. *Berengaria* died young at *Lorvan*, and lies there. His illegitimate Children were *Martin Sanchez* Earl of *Trastamara*, *Urraca Sanchez* Wife to *Laurence Suarez*. *Teresa Sanchez*, second Wife to *Alonso*

Tello

Tello the Elder. Giles Sanchez, who became a Priest; Constance Sanchez finished the Monastery of St. Francis at Coimbra. Ruy Sanchez killed in Battle, as will appear in the year 1245. Nunno Sanchez, and Mayor Sanchez; All these the King had before he was Married, by a Lady of Quality, called Mary Paaz.

9. King Sancho left out all the small Scutcheons used by his Father in his Arms, only retaining the five principal in form of a Cross, with the strings that bind them together.

In his time the Orders of St. Dominick and St. Francis first founded in Portugal, and those of the Holy Trinity and Carmelites were then also admitted.



## CHAP. V.

*The Life and Reign of King Alonso II. of the Name and third King of Portugal, his actions and death, from the Year 1183. till 1223.*

1183. I. **A**lonso Eldest Son to King Sancho, and his Wife Queen Dulcis, who was the third King of Portugal, and second of the Name, was Born the 25th. of April, in the famous City Coimbra: He falling desperately sick, and being given over by the Physicians, his Father had recourse to Heaven for his Health, which was obtained through the Prayers of the Holy Nun Sennorina, then living in the Mountains of Basto, of the Province betwixt Duero and Minho, as an acknowledgment for which benefit received, the King bestowed Lands and Possessions on that Church, as did some of his Successors. Soon after his miraculous recovery, his Father sent him General against Torres Novas, whence the Infidels used to make Excursions, and Ravage all the Neighbouring Country. The young Prince gave good proof of his Valour at this Siege, and became Master of the place by plain force.

King

King Sancho perceiving his Son to be worthy to continue the race of Portuguese Kings, gave him to Wife Urraca, Daughter to Alonso VIII. of Castile. The Bride and Bridegroom could not lawfully be Married without a Dispensation, being Cousins in the fourth degree of Consanguinity; yet without any, they had a Son the following Year 1208. King Sancho lived but four Years after, and our Prince succeeded him, being then Twenty Six Years of Age. The first thing he did, was to give the Town of Avis to the Military Order of that Name; Ferdinand Yanez being the Master of it, who removed thence from Evora, where he had resided till then.

2. King Sancho perceiving that his Son Alonso did not well agree with his Brothers and Sisters, as he left him the Crown, so he provided for them, giving the Brothers Money and Jewels, and to their Sisters the Towns of Alenquer and Aveiras. King Alonso not satisfied with the Crown, pretended his Father could not alienate any Towns from it, to give to his Sisters. The Brothers fearing his Power, fled, Ferdinand to Castile, and Peter to Leon, and then to Morocco. The Sisters Fortifying the Towns, left them by their Father, provoked their Brother, who by force of Arms, took the Town of Aveiras. This done, he sent Forces to Besiege Alenquer, and sat down himself before Montemayor: These Sieges lasted four Months, the King of Leon who had Married Teresa, Sister to our King, forced him to quit that Enterprize. He marched with Prince Peter, through the Province between Duero and Minho, wasting all that Country, and besieged King Alonso as he lay before Montemayor. Much Blood was shed, and all the Country ruined, but at last coming to a Battle, our King was Worsted, and the victorious Army in their return took the Towns of Valencia, Melgazo, Fulgoso and Freixa, with other places of less Note, which they Plundered, and Burnt what they could not carry away. The Portuguese in the absence of the King of Leon, again provoked him to send his Forces. Martin Sanchez, Brother to our King, but offended at him, commanded the Army of Leon, being that King's Lieutenant. All things being in readiness to give Battle, he refused to Fight against his natural Prince in Person, who being informed thereof,

N 3

with

with-drew himself to the City *Porto*: The Army left to Engage *Martin Sanchez*, was commanded by *Mendo Gonzalez de Sousa*, *John Perez de Maya*, and *Giles Vazquez de Soverosa*. The King being gone, the Fight began, in which singular acts of valour were performed, *D. John Perez de Maya* with his Lance overthrew several Horsemen; in short, the Portuguese obtained the Victory in the Plain called *Vareza*, betwixt *Duro* and *Minho*. The second day they Engaged near *Braga*, and the third hard by *Guimaraens*, with the like success; so that the Enemy retired into *Gaticia*. These and the like misfortunes, moved the Sisters to sollicite Pope *Innocent III.* to interpose his Apostolical Authority, to oblige the King to do them Justice. Nevertheless the Power of the Sword prevailed beyond Equity, or Spiritual Weapons.

Recovering  
defeats the  
Army of  
Leon.

He is re-  
conciled to  
his Bre-  
thren.

3. Ten Years were spent in these Domestick Broiles, at the end of which the King was in some measure reconciled to his Brethren, and had leisure to attend other Enterprizes, from which Civil Discord had diverted him. Though he could not go in Person to the famous Battle of *Navas* in *Castile* against the Infidels, he sent some Forces under the Command of *Gomez Ramires*. Our King being now disposed to advance his Conquests on the Infidels, Heaven ordered it so, that a Fleet of 100 Sail from the North, under the Command of *Walter de Avesnes*, was drove by stress of Weather into the River *Tagus*. The King ordered the Bishop to relieve and cherish them, and then both perswaded them to give their helping hand towards the gaining of *Alcazar do Sal*. The King being hindred by Sickness, sent the Bishop General of 20000 Portuguese, who marched by Land whilst the Strangers steered the same course at Sea. At the first attacks, many fell on both sides, but the Besieged fearing so great Power, sent advice of their distress to the Kings of *Badajoz*, *Zaen*, *Sevil* and *Cordova*, who came to their relief with 15000 Horse and 40000 Foot, besides 10 Gallies well provided. Providence ordered it so, that at the same time, Thirty Sail of French and Flemings arrived at *Setuval*; these immediately moved to aid the Christians, who gave the Enemy Battle whilst another part attacked the Town. All the first day the Christians had the worst, but the next renewing their strength

strength and courage, they obtained an absolute Victory with the slaughter of 30000 Infidels and two of the Kings, supposed to be those of *Badajoz* and *Cordova*, because the other two soon after appeared before *Elvas*. A bright Cross carried like the Standard of a Troop of Angels, with White Garments crossed with Red, is said to have been seen this day in the Air, not only by the Christians, but by the Infidels themselves, several of them confessing it after the Battle. The Victors prosecuted the Siege, and carried on a Mine, which being discovered by the Defendants, much Blood was shed under Ground; at length the Town was taken on St. *Luke's* Day, and the Governour having seen the strange signs mentioned, in the Sky, became a Christian.

4. The Kings of *Sevil* and *Zaen*, with a numerous Army, Encamped before the City *Elvas*, confiding they should carry it by their Multitude. Our King disappointed their expectation, giving them Battle, and overthrowing them in open Field, after which he entered *Andaluzia* victorious, overrunning that Province with Fire and Sword. This done, he returned home in Triumph, and his Army laden with Plunder; this Action so daunted the Infidels, that they never after invaded that part of the Country. Nevertheless, *Moura* and *Serpa* were soon after Besieged by the Moors, but they were forced from both places with great loss by the King in Person. Out of the last Engagement, he was drawn almost stifled, being very corpulent and oppressed with the heat of the Weather, and weight of his Armour. Afterwards he overthrew the King of *Badajoz* near *Alcozer*, killing 30000 of his Men. He set out a Fleet to Sea, for the War in the Holy Land. To be short, in all his undertakings, he came off with Honour, as became the Son and Grandson of such a Father and Grandfather. Many other his Warlike Exploits are Buried in Oblivion.

5. Of the excellency of his politick Government, there are sufficient Testimonies. Till his time, this Kingdom was Governed according to the private Laws of every Town. He was the first that instituted general Laws, in the first Year of his Reign, holding a Parliament for that purpose at *Coimbra*. In these Laws great regard was had to the Church-Men, the prices of

Laws are  
enacted by  
him.

all things necessary for the support of life were settled, so that the meanest might buy as cheap as the greatest; the Extortions of publick Ministers were retrenched; Plaintiffs if cast, were ordered to pay a Fine; Sentence of Death passed by him, was appointed not to be Executed till 20 days after, to prevent the Effects of Passion. This King used extraordinary severity towards the Church-men, for which being reproved by

1221.

*Stephen Suarez de Silva* Archbishop of *Braga*, instead of amending, he set Officers to destroy all the Possessions of that See. He persisted so obstinately in this fury, that *Honorius* the third wrote a Letter to him full of most severe Expressions, calling him Tyrant: In fine,

His Death.

the King died before he was reconciled to the Clergy, or his own Sisters, the Kingdom at that time lying under an interdict. He lived 48 Years, and Reigned 21: His Body lies Buried with the Queen his Wife, in the Royal Monastery of *Alcobaca*, in a plain Tomb without any Epitaph or Inscription, as were all the first Kings of this Nation. Of Body he was extraordinary gross, and therefore called the Fat; yet his Gigantick Stature carried it off, his Countenance was Comly, his Forehead High, his Eyes Cheerful, and his Hair Yellow, which he always wore long.

1223.

His Wife and Issue.

5. King *Alonso* Married *Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alonso VIII.* of *Castile*, called the Noble and Good, a most vertuous and beautiful Princess. His Issue by her was *Sancho*, who succeeded in the Throne; *Alonso* Earl of *Boien*, in right of his Wife *Maud*, whence he was called to Govern the Kingdom by reason of the insufficiency of his Brother, whom he succeeded: *Ferdinand* called *de Serpa*, married to *Sancho Fernandez*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* Earl of *Lara*. Lastly, *Elenor* who was Queen of *Dacia*. The King had one Bastard Son, called *John Alonso*, of whom there is no other memory, but that he lies Buried in the Church of *Alcobaca*. Tho' it be said before at the end of the last King's Reign, that then the orders of *St. Dominick*, *St. Francis*, the Blessed Trinity and the *Carmelites* came into *Portugal*; our Author repeats it again in the Reign of this King, which is the most likely.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Life and Reign of King Sancho II. he is deposed by his Brother, flies to Toledo, and there ends his days, all betwixt the Tears 1207 and 1246.*

1. *Sancho II.* of the Name, and Fourth King of *Portugal*, Eldest Son to King *Alonso*, was Born on *Sancho II.* the Eighth of *September* at *Coimbra*. He was called *ascends the Capelo*, because being sickly in his Child-hood, his Mother confiding to obtain his Health, through the intercession of the Holy Father *St. Augustin*, caused him to wear that Habit. His Weakness rather than want of Years, must be the cause that he appeared not in any Military Action with his Father, for we have no account of him till he ascended the Throne, which was about the 20th. or 21st. Year of his Age. His first Action was a Reconciliation with the Clergy, who had suffered much under his Father, but he soon followed his Example. After this agreement with the Church, the Ecclesiastical Censures were taken off, and those who died during the interdict, were now Buried in hallowed Ground. The controversies also between the late King and his Sisters ceased, they now swearing fealty to the King for the places they possessed. His next care was to visit his Kingdom, which he did taking a Progress through it leasurely, doing justice to all Men, and giving prudent Orders in all places. Then laying aside for a while the Civil Affairs, he applied him to the Military, making several incursions upon the *Moors*, whence he returned with Honour. Our King, and *Ferdinand* of *Castile* met at *Sabugal* to adjust certain Differences, which they amicably put an end to; King *Ferdinand* delivering up the Town of *Chaves* which had been engaged to him.

1223.



He entirely  
defeats the  
Moors at  
Elvas.

2. Still the *Arabs* ranged about the territory of *Elvas*, wasting the Country and destroying the Villages. King *Sancho* assembling his Forces, soon drove them thence, but no sooner was his back turned then they came again, laid Siege to *Elvas*, and carried it by Assault. Our King returning with speed, utterly discomfited those Barbarians, so that they never again attempted any thing there. Nor did he desist till he had *Juremeha*, *Serpa*, and other Castles, which had often been gained, and again fallen into the Enemies hands. For four Years there was nothing of Action, but in the Year 1230, he made War on the *Moors*, in the Province of *Alentejo*. The following year he advanced into *Algarve*, to recover what his Grand-father had conquered there, and was now again fallen into the hands of the Infidels. Some places he re-took, consecrated the Churches, and placed therein Evangelical Pastors. After this, by his Commanders, the chief whereof was *Payo Perez Correa*, he took *Aljustrel* which he gave to the Military Order of *Santiago*; then the Towns of *Margola*, and *Alfajar de Penna*, which also he bestowed on the same Order. Of late Years the insolencies of Favourites were grown insupportable, they abusing the King and their Kindred and friends them. The Subjects were treated worse than conquered *Moors*, their Persons Imprisoned, their Estates Wasted, their Children Murdered, unless redeemed for Money, and their Wives and Daughters openly Ravished. Nor was the Sanctuary of the Church any refuge, for even in those Holy Places, all Villanies were committed: the King knew nothing, but what his Favourites told him, and it was their study to keep him in ignorance, and hence proceeded the ruin of this unhappy Prince.

Common  
complaints  
when sub-  
jects will  
rebell.

1240. 3. In the Year 1240. *Cacela* and *Ayamonte* were taken by Assault, in which Actions *D. Payo Perez Correa* particularly signalized himself, wherefore the King gave those places to the Military Order of *Santiago*, whereof he was Commendary. During this current of Affairs, the King was highly commended, and received Spiritual Favours from Pope *Gregory IX.* The Spiritual Graces were for such as died in the War, and for the King himself, who lay under Ecclesiastical Censures, for having proceeded unjustly against

Peter

*Peter* Bishop of *Porto*, who carried his complaints to *Rome*. Besides, he seized the Ecclesiastical revenues on pretence of urgent necessities, and of punishing Clergy Men who kept Women in their Houses. *Silvester*, Archbishop of *Braga*, had hereupon made application to the Pope, who therefore wrote to the King, and recommended the charge of reducing him to certain Bishops. But he prevented them by submitting himself, and so all differences were adjusted. The King considering the great merit of *D. Payo Correa*, before spoken of, made him General for the conquest of *Algarve*. He acted therein with the success that was hoped of his conduct taking several strong holds, among which were *Estombar* and *Alvor*. *Garcia Rodriguez* who had travelled that Country as a Merchant, was his principal Guide, having forsaken the pursuit after Riches, to purchase Honour with his Sword. *Paderne* was also taken, but cost dear, the success remaining a long time dubious. The Enemy having proposed a Cessation of Arms it was granted, because our forces fatigued with so many expeditions required some time of refreshment. During this Truce, the Commendary *Peter Perez* with five Gentlemen went out to hunt in the Mountains of the Village of *Antas*. In their passage by *Tavira*, a City belonging to the *Moors*, they were set upon by a greater number of Infidels. *Garcia Rodriguez*, the Merchant above mentioned, passing that way, hastened to their succour, and after a brave resistance, they were all killed upon the place. *D. Payo Correa* could not come time enough to save their lives, though upon the first advice of the accident he hastened thither. Seeing his Friends could not be saved, he fell upon the Enemy for revenge, and they flying to the City, he entered it together with them, and though he met with a vigorous resistance, made himself Master of it. King *Sancho* hearing of the taking of *Tavira*, gave it to the Knights of *Santiago*.

4. The conquest of *Silves* only was wanting to complete our General's Glory. His Policy and Celerity brought it about, the Enemy offering him a favourable opportunity: The Inhabitants of that place went out to assist King *Aben Afan* at the Siege of *Estombar*, *D. Payo* instead of relieving the Besieged, attacked *Silves* then

*Silves* a-  
gain reco-  
vered.

then forsaken of its Defendants, and easily made himself Master of it. The *Moorish* King hasting to succour the City, came late for his design, but in time for D. *Payo*, who rushing out of the City, put him to flight, so precipitately, that he was drowned on the Coast, which in memory of him is to this day called the Sea of *Abenafan*. Thus all *Algarve* was brought under the power of King *Sancho*: The Pope about this time having invited all *Christian* Princes to joyn their Forces against the *Tartars*, King *Sancho* provided a Gallant Army for that Expedition, but all his Preparations were disappointed, for he went not as he had designed. *Roderick Sanchez*, Son to King *Sancho I.* having been long at variance with *Giles de Soverosa*, a powerful Man in those days, they met with armed Troops near the City *Porto*, and after a sharp Engagement, the dispute ended with the life of *Roderick Sanchez*, who was there slain. In this Encounter, *Roderick Fafes*, a Man of Note, having lost his Horse, asked *Gonzalo Rodriguez de Abreu* to give him his; he gave it upon condition the other should give him his Daughter *Mencia* in Marriage, which according to promise, *Fafes* afterwards performed.

*The Subjects ripe for rebellion, tho' the King was blameless.*

5. The King continued to bestow liberally most rich Possessions on the Church. His goodly Actions deserved no less love of his Subjects, than any of his Predecessors, but it is not always Merit that gains esteem among Men. Envy towards his Favourites produced Malice against him, nor was the fault in his Government, or in choosing such Ministers, but that all who aspired to it, could not be Favourites. There never is wanting a pretence to Subjects disposed to rebel. The King easing himself on his Favourites, the *Portuguese* gave out he was incapable to Govern, and therefore proposed to erect a Lieutenant to manage affairs for him, and made application to the Pope hereupon, having fixed upon the King's Brother *Alonso* to fill that place and succeed him. It was want of Loyalty in them, and not of capacity in him that produced this Resolution. One objection raised against King *Sancho* by his Enemies, was, That he had married a Wife below his Quality, and was too fond of her. Weak motives to a Rebellion, especially considering his Queen was the Daughter of D. *Lope Diaz* de

*They cavil at all his Actions.*

de *Haro* Lord of *Biscay* and of *Urraca*, bastard Daughter to *Alonso IX.* King of *Leon*, so that he was equal to him either as being both the Offspring of the same King's Bastards, or as to grandeur, her Father wanting nothing but the usurped Title of King, to make him as great as he of *Portugal*. It is true, the Queen favouring those who had been instrumental in advancing her to the Crown, bid some miscarriages from the King, which gave occasion to the multitude to commit several insolencies, and the King not punishing them whilst he could, had not afterwards the power to do it when he would. Some would have it that the Queen had given her Husband a Potion, the more to secure his love to her, and to divert him wholly from the care of the Government.

6. The tumultuous Cryes of the People not prevailing, the Clergy took upon them to espouse their joins in the Quarrel, and had recourse to Pope *Gregory IX.* who thundered out Ecclesiastical Censures against the King on account of his being Married to Queen *Mencia*, who was his Kinswoman within the prohibited degree. The King making no account of the Spiritual Weapons, the People mutinied, being headed by *Raymund Viegas Portocarreo*, a Man of quality, and breaking into the Palace at *Coimbra*, took away the Queen and put her into the Castle of *Ourem*. This exasperated the King to that height, that gathering what force he could, he endeavoured to recover her, but all in vain, for the Rebels conveyed her into *Castile*. Now it plainly appeared, that King *Sancho* was rather Unfortunate, than unfit to Govern, for even the Ambassadors he employed abroad, betrayed him. He sent *John Egas* Archbishop of *Braga*, and *Peter* and *Tiburicus* Bishops of *Porto* and *Coimbra* to *Rome*, and they forgetting they were sent by their Prince, became Solicitors for the Rebels, who held correspondence there. Hereupon a Council was held at *Lions* in *France*, assembled by Pope *Innocent IV.* and King *Sancho* having sent thither his Ambassadors *Ruy Gomez de Briteiros*, *Gomez Viegas*, *Peter Alonso*, a Franciscan and *Dominick de Braganza*, a Dominican, they joyned with the mutinous Prelates

Alonso  
Brother to  
King San-  
cho, made  
Vicar of  
the King-  
dom by the  
Rebels.

Prelates, and thereupon Count *Alonso*, Brother to King *Sancho*, then Married in *France* to *Maud* Countess of *Bulen*, was at *Paris* Sworn Vicar of the Kingdom, and as such, confirmed by the Pope, yet so that King *Sancho* should still retain the Title and Preheminence of King, and his Sons if he had any, should inherit. This new Substitute brought more harm than good to the Kingdom, for his followers treated him as a King, and he assumed that respect which did not belong to him, whilst others acknowledged the true King, so that this difference came to be decided by the Sword.

King San-  
cho flies  
into Ca-  
stile.

7. The *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* were appointed to put in Execution this unjust decree, and one *Giles* a *Dominican* durst notify it to the King. He seeing himself deprived of his Wife and Government, and the People in Rebellion fled to *Toledo*, then the Court of *Ferdinand* the Holy King of *Castile*. By the way, King *Sancho* reposing himself at *Moreira*, certain Gentlemen came to him, offering to stand by him, and support his cause, provided he would put away his Favourite. The King disapproving of this conditional Loyalty, no better then open Rebellion, continued his Journey. At *Toledo* he spent the remainder of his life in works of Grandeur and Piety. He expended a great Treasure in Alms, and Building the Royal Chappel in the Cathedral: having done extraordinary Pennance for his Sins, and given singular marks of great Piety, he departed this life the Thirty Ninth Year of his Age, and the Thirteenth of his Reign, reckoning in those that his Brother Governed for him. He is said to have had a special Devotion to *S. Lazarus*, and also that he appeared twice to him in his life-time, and was present at his Death. In the beginning of his Reign, he peopled the City *Idanha*, which had been destroyed by his Grand-father King *Sancho* when he took it from the *Moors*. He maintained the City *Alequer* against the Infidels who Belieged it, who after much loss sustained, begged a Truce. He not only preserved his Kingdom, but recovered many places that had been lost, and may be accounted amongst the best of our Princes.

8. In

8. In this King ended the direct line of the *His Person* Kings of *Portugal*, he being the Fourth King, and described. Second of the Name. His Countenance was Beautiful, his Hair fair and long, his Forehead high, his Eyes green and cheerful, his Nose large, and his Complexion inclined to pale. In his Antient Pictures, he is represented in Scarlet Robes, a Crown on his Head, a Book in one Hand, and in the other, a Scepter with a Pigeon on the top of it, as the commonalty would have it, or else it might be a Stork as many Antient Kings used, denoting by the care that Bird has of its young ones, the love of a Prince towards his Subjects. He built from the ground the Monasteries of *St. Dominick*, in the Cities of *Lisbon* and *Porto*. Some say his Queen accompanied him at *Toledo*, and others affirm, she was never heard of more after being taken from him. He had no issue, and consequently his Brother succeeded him.

C H A P.

## CHAP. VII.

*The Life and Reign of Alonso the third of the Name, and Fifth King of Portugal; his Actions and Death, from the Year 1210. till 1279.*

Alonso  
III. his  
Birth and  
Actions till  
his assumption  
to the  
Crown.

1210.

1245.

1. **D** Alonso the Third of the Name, and Fifth King, was Brother to King Sancho, whose lot it was to have a Crown without the power of the Government, and a Wife without Issue. He was Born in the City of Coimbra, on the 5th. of May, was the second Son of King Alonso II. and Married Maud Countess of Bolen in France, then Widdow of Phillip the curled Son of Philip Augustus King of France, and Grand-son to the Duke of Maravia, whose Daughter Queen Mary was. His thoughts were employed upon the Holy War, when he was called to the Crown of Portugal. The Kingdom being in confusion, the Nobles made suite to Pope Innocent the III. that Alonso might ascend the Throne instead of his Brother Sancho. The Pope not to deprive the King of his right, and being informed he was not of Ability to Govern, consented that Alonso should have the Authority of Regent, but Sancho should still have the regal stile and preheminance, and his Children if he had any should inherit. At Paris, Alonso took Solemn Oath as Regent, which was to this Effect: That he would preserve the Priviledges of the Clergy, Nobility and Commonalty; That he would constitute upright Judges, without Favour or Affection; That such as had committed Crimes against Priests, should be punished; That their Estates should be restored; That all Buildings erected to the prejudice of Prelates should be Demolished, and nothing for the future should be taken from them. This was the promise made, and consequently such were the miscarriages then in the Government, so that the King suffered for some miscarriages in his Ministers.

2. Alonso

2. Alonso having taken upon him the Title of Re-Alonso gent, set out from Paris, and returned to his Country, where he was received by most places; yet several having more regard to their Loyalty, than the present Danger, held out long after, and some till King Sancho died at Toledo. Alonso possessed of the Kingdom, like an ungrateful Man, put away his Wife Maud, the Countess, who Married him when he had nothing, and took in her place Beatrice, Bastard Daughter to King Alonso the Tenth of Castile. Some Authors say, the Countess was contrary to all Human and Divine Laws put away on account of Barrenness, but that is a mistake, for it will appear she had Children. Pope Alexander the Fourth thundered out Censures against this second Marriage as unlawful, but all to no purpose, the King continuing obstinate till the Death of Maud, put an end to the dispute. Alonso with the ambition of rule, pressed all Governours to deliver up their Forts into his hands, and yet they that did so, were accounted no better than Traitors, and such as held out against him, were afterwards most esteemed even by him. Ovidos was the first Town Besieged by Alonso, but what the event was, is not known. Ferdinand Rodriguez Pacheco, valiantly defended Cerolico de los Bebados, or Bebado, and being reduced to great want one Morning, a Bird of Prey dropped a large Trout before him taken out of the River Mondego. The Governour sent it as a present to Alonso, who judging thereby there was plenty in the Town, raised the Siege and departed. Thus the Besieged were left at liberty to look abroad for Sustenance, so that the Trout may be said to have fed them all.

1247.

3. The Regent removed to Coimbra, where he met with no better success, being opposed by the invincible Loyalty of D. Martin de Freitas. Both Parties resolved not to give way to one another. The Siege lasted long, and the Defendants wavering, their noble Governour performed more than Man to retain them in their Duty, insomuch that one day he brought out to the Parade his Daughter,

A notable  
example of  
Loyalty.

O

ter,



1248.

ter, telling the Soldiers, That if want of Women obliged them to think of a Surrender, they might make use of that one. This act wholly confirmed the minds of the Garrison to him, insomuch, that they resolved to live and die with him. Such was the posture of affairs when News was brought of the Death of King *Sancho* at *Toledo*. The great *Freitas* demanded a Truce, whilst he went to *Toledo*, to be assured of the Truth. There he caused the King's Grave to be opened, and seeing him Dead, delivered to him the Keys of the City he had entrusted him with, and asking leave to deliver them to his Brother, took them again: Being come to *Coimbra*, he opened the Gates to King *Alonso*, who admiring so unparalleled a Gallantry, restored to him the Command, without demanding Homage of him for it, which favour he extended to his Heirs; but he knowing how hard it was to make a return suitable to such a favour, refused to accept of it, and layed his Curse even to the fourth Generation, upon such as should admit of it.

1249.  
King *Alonso* con-  
quers *Algarve*.

4. *Alonso* now become absolute King by the Death of his Brother, resolved to imitate his Predecessors, or if it might be to out-doe them, by adding to his Dominions the Kingdom of *Algarve*, and not suffering it to be lost again as had happened to them. *D. Payo Correa* with the Forces under his Command, had already taken several places in that Kingdom, the King joyned him, and both together layed Siege to the Town of *Faro*. The King observing the place might be relieved by Sea, placed some Vessels at the Mouth of the River to guard the Passage, and then began to batter the place on all sides. The Besieged, perceiving no hopes to hold out, began privately to treat of a Surrender with the King; he taking only Ten Gentlemen that were privy to the Treaty, ventured into the Town so secretly, that none of his Army knew it. *D. Payo Correa* missing the King, and hearing no account of him, furiously assaulted the place, the *Portuguese* fighting like Lions instead of being discouraged at the absence of their Sovereign. Many were killed, and more had perished,

ed, but that the King appeared on the Walls, holding out the Keys of the Town. Thus this place was reduced, submitting to pay the same tribute it had before payed to the *Miramamolins*. The Government of it was given to *Stephen Perez de Tavares*. *D. Payo Correa* was sent before to invest the Town of *Albufiera*, and had signalized his Valour when the King came to second him. Both together finished the Conquest of the place, which was given to *D. Payo* for his good Service. I guess the motive of the King's staying behind, was the Beauty of the Governour of *Faro's* Daughter, with whom he fell in Love when he received the Keys of the Town; for by this Lady he had *D. Martin Alonso Chichorro*, from whom is Descended the Family of *Sousa* of that Name. Fortune now bent upon favouring our King, caused other places to submit to him, before he could appear before them. *Loule* surrendred, but not without some Bloodshed; *Algezár*, *Perches*, and other places were all reduced. The King before his departure placed trusty Governours in all the Towns with sufficient Garrisons, so as to secure that new conquered Kingdom, which never after offered to revolt from him.

1250.

King *Alonso* having nothing now to employ his Arms within his own limits, entred *Andaluzia* and took the Towns of *Arouche* and *Arauz*. This Action moved King *Alonso*, the Wife of *Castile* and *Leon*, to invade the Kingdom of *Algarve* which he conquered. After much contention betwixt the Crowns of *Castile* and *Portugal*, Pope *Innocent* the Fourth composed all Differences, so that the King of *Castile* was to hold *Algarve* during his Life, and he of *Portugal* to marry his Bastard Daughter. Both Kings were so willing to embrace this accommodation, that they never considered the Bride was not Twelve Years of Age, and the Bridegroom above Forty, nor that the Countess of *Bolou* was still alive. It is true, Pope *Innocent* approved of this Match, and yet afterwards Pope *Alexander* would not allow of it. All Military Employment now ceasing, the King applied himself to the Civil Affairs

1251.

1252.

Differences  
betwixt  
*Castile* and  
*Portugal*,  
composed by  
the Pope.

1255. fairs, and held a Parliament at *Leiria*. Next he took a Progress through the Kingdom, repairing the Forts, Towns and Churches that had been ruined during the War. He spared neither cost nor labour in those publick Works; he built from the Ground the Monastery of *Santarem*, the Towns of *Estremoz*, *Odemira*, *Monforte*, *Valencia del Minho*, then called *Contraſta*, and *Viana de Lima*. His whole study was bent upon the good of the Government, and knowing how necessary Trade is to support it, ordered many Fairs, and cleared the Roads of Robbers to secure Commerce.

The King's  
cruelty to-  
wards his  
lawful  
Wife.

6. In the midst of these Employments came to him two Gentlemen to *Freslas*, where he then was, sent by *Maud* the Countess his first and lawfull Wife, to advertise him, that she perceiving he did not send for her to his Kingdom, and hearing he was Married again, was come of her self to find him out, and lay then at *Cascais*. The King who had for the sake of his new Wife, regarded neither Divine nor Human Laws, sent her such an Answer, that she was forced to return to *Bolen*, leaving a Letter for him, wherein she taxed him with Ingratitude and False-hood, threatening him with the censures of the Church, the Power of Christian Princes, and the revenging hand of God. Authors add, that she brought with her two Children she had by him, whom in revenge she left exposed upon the Rocks, which are ever since called *Cachopos*, that word in *Portuguese* signifying Boys. That the Countess had Children by him is proved by the authority of Antient Authors, and there is no proof, but bare surmises to the contrary; besides, that a Tomb has been seen with an Inscription, denoting, it contained a Son of theirs that followed him into *Portugal*, and was entirely beloved by him. King *Alonso* of *Castile*, Father-in-law to our King, having composed the difference about *Algarve*, marched into *Andaluzia*, his Son-in-law assisting him both by Sea and Land. In return for this kindness, the *Castilian* resigned up to him all his Title to *Algarve*, and delivered the Towns to *D. John de Aboin*, and his Son *D. Peter Anes de Portel*, upon

1260.

on condition the *Portuguese*, should during his life, be obliged to assist him with Fifty Lances whenever he should demand them. This obligation was also taken off when his Grandson Prince *Denis* being Seven Years of Age visited him at *Sevil*, and desired to be knighted by him. Before this time to prevent Broils and Animosities, the bounds of the Kingdoms of *Leon* and *Portugal* were marked out.

1263.

7. About this time hapned an unparalleled wonder, a Woman perceiving she was not beloved by her Husband, acquainted a *Jewish* Woman there with, desiring her assistance. The *Jew* persuaded her, that when she received the Blessed Sacrament, she should keep the Host and bring it to her, wherewith she would work her relief. She tied the Host in the end of her Head-cloaths, and going home, the Blood trickled down, and she not observing it, was told of it by those that met her. Being come home, she locked the Bloody Hood with the Host in a Closet. In the dead of the Night, her Husband awaking, saw a great light upon the Chest, and calling upon his Wife, asked whether she saw it not? She then declared the truth to him, and he rising, ran to the Parish Church, and to the Dominicans. The Friars still preserve the White Hood or Vaile bloody in a Glass Case; the Parish keeps the Host and Blood gathered on a Ball of Wax. Some Years after the Prior of that Church, which is Dedicated to *St. Stephen*, going to show that Relick to the People, found it shut up in a Crystalline Pyramidal Case, with a hole so small, that neither the Host nor Ball could be put in unless it were miraculously. The Ball is still to be seen round with drops of Blood on it, the Host is bent and Bloody. Many Persons of Credit, have affirmed, That they have there seen our Saviour in several Postures of his Passion. Another Miracle is Recorded of a *Christian*, who was slave to a *Moor*, and daily recommended himself to *St. Dominick* of *Sovereira*. His Master every Night loaded him with Irons, and laid him in a Chest upon which he made

A strange  
action of a  
jealous Wo-  
man.

made his own Bed. One Night this Chest with the slave in it, and the Master upon it, was brought to the Door of the Chappel of that Saint in the Town of *Penamacor*. This Miracle so wrought upon the *Moor*, that he imbraced the Faith, and the Slave and he lived there as Hermits all the residue of their lives. The Chest and Chains are still kept in that little Church.

Alonso resumes his former gifts, and opposes the Clergy.

8. No sooner was the King seated on the Throne, but he made it appear, that what he had before bountifully bestowed, was only to secure himself, and not to reward those that promoted him. He took from the Military Orders what he had before given them; neither did he make account of what he swore at *Paris* in order to be Regent for his Brother; for he so treated the Clergy, that several of them had recourse to *Rome* for Redress, of which were the Bishops of *Braga*, *Coimbra*, *Guarda*, *Porto* and *Viseo*. Pope *Clement* the Fourth, and after him *Gregory* the Tenth, reproved his oppressing the Clergy, and forbidding the *Jews* and *Moors* under severe Penalties not to turn *Christians*. The King at first shunned the Pope's Commissioners, but when he could no longer do so, appointed to hear them before the *Cortes* or Parliament summoned to meet at *Santarem*, where he shewed some disposition to obey them, though at the same time he designed nothing less. The Pope offended at his proceedings, issued out Bulls, containing the highest Censures, and in case the King was not reclaimed within three Months, absolving his Subjects from their Allegiance. The King continued obstinate, and the Nuncio went away leaving him excommunicated, and the Kingdom under an interdict. The Pope died, and the King no way relented. Pope *John* the 20th. or 21st. Born at *Lisbon*, was promoted to *St. Peter's* Chair. He sent a Spaniard his Nuncio to persuade the King by fair means to comply. The Nuncio accompanied by *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Fryars, of which latter order he was, attended the King, and found him as obdurate as ever. Sickness made the King begin to relent, and Death surmounted all difficulties.

At his Death the King ordered his Son to perform all he had refused to do.

9. During this King's Reign, certain devout Women went from *Evora* to *Rome*, to obtain of the Pope the confirmation of a Monastery of *Bernardin* Nuns in that City. There wanted not Civil Broils among the Subjects; for *Peter Estevas de Tavares*, and *Ferdinand Alonso de Cambra*, fought a Battle in the Plain of *Gouvea*, in which much Blood was shed and many Persons of note killed; the latter obtained the Victory. The Holy *Laurence Mendez*, a Dominican of the Province betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, walking in a Field, an Angel appeared to him, and gave him a small Box, which he said, contained many Relicks brought from a City then fallen into the hands of Infidels. Which Relicks are still preserved in the Monastery of *Guimaraens*, where the said *Laurence* placed them.

A battle betwixt private Men and their forces

10. King *Alonso* was of such extraordinary King *Alonso de* Stature, that all Men admired when King *Sebasti-* an caused his Tomb to be opened. His Countenance was Majestick, his Eyes little, but Sparkling, his Hair black, his Complexion fair. He died at *Lisbon* on the 20th. of *March* 1279. being 64 Years of Age, and having Reigned and Governed 34. Ten Years after his Death, King *Denis* his Son translated him to the Monastery of *Alcobaza*, near to his Father, and opposite to his second Wife Queen *Beatrix*, whose Tomb being afterwards opened, she appeared as Beautiful as if she had been a live. His Issue, by the first Wife most Authors agree he had two Sons, as they do in calling the second *Robert*, who they say, succeeded his Mother in the Country of *Bologna*. About the Elder they vary, some calling him *Ferdinand*, others *Peter*, and lastly, others say, he is the same with *Alonso Denis*, counted among the illegitimate.

1279. His Death.

His Issue.

By his second Wife, he had *Denis*, who succeeded in the Throne. Secondly, *D. Alonso* Lord of *Portalegre*, who lies buried in the Monastery of *St. Dominick* at *Lisbon*. Thirdly, *Sancha*; Fourthly, *Mary*; Fifthly, *Vincent* who died young, Sixthly, *Ferdinand* who

who died also in his Infancy, all these Buried at *Alcobaza*; Seventhly, *Blanch Abbess* of *Lorvan* first, and then of *Huelgas* at *Burgos*; Eighthly, *Constance* Buried at *Alcobaza*; Illegitimate he had *Ferdinand*, a Knight Templar; *Giles Alonso*, *Alonso Denis*, *Martin Alonso* gotten on the Governour of *Faro's* Daughter, as was said before; *Ellenor Alonso*, *Urraca Alonso*, *Elenor* for whom her Father built the Monastery of *St. Clare* at *Santarem*, where she was famous for Sanctity, and *Roderick Alonso* who died Young.

*His Arms.* 11. The Arms of the Kingdom of *Algarve*, given by this King, were *Sanguine Semee of Castles Or*. Over these he placed the Arms of *Portugal*, so that the Castles of the former made an Orbe to the latter. He also made an alteration in the number of *Bezants*, in each Escutcheon of the *Portuguese* Arms, leaving but Eleven in each, whereas before there were Thirteen. He was the first that stiled himself King of *Portugal* and *Algarve*. Men famous for Sanctity in his time were *St. Gonzalo*, *St. Laurence Mendez*, and *St. Giles*, all three *Dominicans*, at least the two latter without dispute. Also *St. Walter* of the Order of *S. Francis*; Pope *John* the 21st. famous for his Learning and Dignity, was Born at *Lisbon*. Many Men were famous for Military Exploits, the chief whereof was *D. Payo Perez Correa*, Master of the Military Order of *Santiago*.

Men famous in his time.

## CHAP. VIII.

The Life and Reign of Denis the first of that Name, and sixth King of Portugal, his Actions and Death, from the Year 1261. till 1325.

1. King Denis, Eldest Son to *Alonso III.* and Queen *King Da-*  
*Beatrix*, was born at *Lisbon* on the 9th. of *Octo-* *nis his*  
*ber*, 1261. and was so called from the Saint whose Day *Birth and*  
that was. From his Infancy he was educated in all those *Succession*  
Vertues and Accomplishments that make an Excellent *to the*  
Prince. In Truth, Justice, and Liberality, he exceeded *Crown.*  
most of them that had been before him. His Father dying when he was but Eighteen Years of Age, though he honoured his Mother in all other Respects, he would allow her no share in the Government. She resenting this as an Affront, went away into *Castile*, pretending her Journey was only to pay a Visit to her Father. That King, desiring to please her, took a Journey to *Badajoz*, and sent to desire King *Denis* to come as far as *Elvas*. Thither the Princes *Peter*, *Sancho*, *Jayne*, and his Brother *Emanuel* repaired to him, by whom the King of *Castile* desired they might meet at *Badajoz*. King *Denis* having entertained them magnificently for the space of three Days, sent them back, saying, He would soon be after them, but suddenly returned to *Lisbon*, thinking it a better Expedient not to meet his Grandfather, than to deny his Request. The Queen thus disappointed, went away with her Father to *Sevil*, where he continued, being convinced her Son would admit no Partner in the Throne.

2. The King being Twenty Years of Age, sent his *He Marries*  
Embassadors to *Peter III.* King of *Aragon*, to ask his *Elizabeth,*  
Daughter *Elizabeth*, then but Eleven Years old, in Mar- *the Daugh-*  
riage. His Request was easily granted, and the Bride *ter of King*  
conducted to *Braganza*, where she was received by *Alonso* *Peter of*  
the King's Brother, who conveyed her to *Trancofo*, *Aragon.*  
where the best King of *Portugal*, and one of the best Queens in the World were married. His next Care was, to compleat what his Father had begun, which was to clear the Kingdom of Robbers and Out-laws, and to



1283.

Has Differences with his Brother Alonso.

Protect the meaner sort against the Insolencies of Great Men, and particularly the Country People, whom he called the Sinews of the Commonwealth. For this Reason, and because he built many Castles, he was called the Husbandman and Father of his Country. Having at his Entrance into the Government passed many extravagant Grants, when he came to the Age of 22, he recalled them all. He had some Difference with his Brother *Alonso*, who refused to make any Acknowledgment for the Towns left him by his Father, and had some Pretensions to the Crown, pleading that *Denis* was Born before the Death of the Countess of *Bologne*, and consequently must be Illegitimate, whereas he was Born after her Death, when the Pope had ratified the Match. They both took Arms, and *Alonso* was besieged by his Brother in *Portalegre*, yet at last they agreed. The chief Articles were, That *Alonso* should be allowed 30000 Crowns a Year out of the King's Revenue, and instead of the Towns he possessed, should have *Sintra* and *Ourem*, for that the others were more dangerous to the King, as lying on the Borders of *Castile*. Thus ended those Civil Broils.

War between Castile and Portugal.

3. A War broke out with King *Sancho* the Third of *Castile*, called the *Fierce*, for that he performed not the Covenants about the Marriages of the Princes, for Security whereof he had put into *Portuguese* Hands the Cities of *Badajoz* and *Truxillo*, as also the Towns of *Moura*, *Serpa*, *Caceres*, *Allariz*, and *Aguilar de Neiva*. All these Places he again suddenly surprized, and made several inroads into *Algarve*, and into *Portugal*, by the way of *Leon*, destroying all the Country before him. King *Denis* being then wholly unprovided for War, sent Embassadors to adjust Affairs, but to no effect. King *Denis* now moved to Wrath, challenged King *Sancho*, and at the same time caused his Forces to do much harm in the Enemy's Country. *Sancho* designed to answer the Challenge, but was prevented by Death, at which time he ordered all that had been before stipulated, should be performed. *Ferdinand* the Fourth, his Successor, not answering what was expected from him, King *Denis* sent his Embassadors to demand the Restitution of the Towns taken by his Predecessor, and in case of Refusal, to fix the Challenge upon him. Restitution being denied, the Challenge was accordingly given, and the Embas-

Embassadors withdrew. This done, King *Denis* with a Puissant Army marched from the City *Guarda*, and entred *Castile*, committing all manner of Hostilities. Prince *Henry*, who was Governour to the young King *Ferdinand*, put a stop to our King's further Progress, making him advantageous Proposals, and referring the Conclusion to *Cuidad Rodrigo*, where the two Kings met with the Queen-Mother of *Castile*, and concluded all Articles; the Towns demanded by the *Portuguese* being put into the Hands of *Ferdinand Longombr*, as a Pledge for performing all other parts. But this Compliance on the part of *Castile* being the Product of Fear, and not of any Friendly Intention, nothing of what had been promised, was performed.

4. King *Denis* draws together his Forces again, and furiously enters *Castile*, and with him Prince *John*, who stiled himself King of *Leon*, as Son to King *Alonso* the Tenth, and *John Nunnez de Lara*, who was in Rebellion against his Prince. Our Army being in the Province of *Beira*, near the Frontiers of *Castile*, there came to the King, *Margaret*, Daughter to the Earl of *Narbonne*, Wife to Prince *Peter*, the Son of King *Alonso*, and with her, her Son *Sancho de Ledesma*, who offered to serve our King, being disgusted with his own. Yet, tho he was much honoured, and received great Bounties from King *Denis*, he soon returned to his own Matter, and served against him of whom he had received such Favours. King *Ferdinand* understanding that King *Denis* had invaded his Dominions, sent his Fleet from *Sevil*, under the Command of that *Sancho* we last spoke of, to *Lisbon*, where he surprized some *Portuguese* Vessels. Our Admiral having gathered what Force he could, pursued and overtook the Fleet of *Castile* without the Bar. There was fought a most obstinate Battle, till the *Castilians* were worsted, and their Commander, *D. Sancho*, brought back Prisoner. In the mean while K. *Denis*, without Opposition, ranged about the Territories of *Cuidad Rodrigo* and *Ledesma*, where he took the Castle of *Torres*, putting all the Defendants to the Sword. He passed by *Simancas*, where King *Ferdinand* was, and laid Siege to *Possalder*, where neither Sex nor Age was spared, nor was any Reverence paid to the Churches, where the Altars were stained with Blood, nor did their Sacrilegious Hands abstain from Plundering those Holy Places.

*Denis enters Castile the second time.*

The Fleet of Castile worsted by the Portuguese.

1296. The *Castilians* were not idle, for many great Men laid waste our Borders. *Alonso Perez de Guzman*, who Commanded on the Frontiers about *Guadiana*, with a good Body of *Andaluzians*, shed much of our Blood, and carried away great Spoils. The Master of *Avis*, met him with some *Portuguese* Forces, but was overthrown, and almost One Thousand Prisoners carried away, who were ransomed at an easie rate, not to retard the course of their Victory. He also recovered the Castle of *Torres*, where he spared no *Portuguese*, and thus Fire and Sword raged in all Parts. King *Denis* understanding hereof, committed the greater Cruelties in the Villages, about *Salamanca*, where he then was. The Inhabitants fled to the Mountains, and to the Churches, but neither Churches nor Mountains could protect them, rage bore down all Divine, as well as humane Considerations.

Peace concluded between the Kings of Castile and Portugal.

5. The *Moorish* King of *Granada* laying hold of this advantage, broke into *Andaluzia*, took Fifteen Castles, and retired with a mighty Booty. *Mary* the Queen-Mother, and Prince *Henry*, Governours to King *Ferdinand*, now sensible of their Danger, offered King *Denis* all manner of Satisfaction, as to the Points before promised, which were, That King *Ferdinand* should marry his Daughter *Constance*, and Prince *Alonso*, *Beatrice* Sister to *Ferdinand*, and for performance they gave him sufficient Hostages. King *Denis* in his return, to be in some sort revenged on D. *Sancho de Ledesma*, took from him all the Towns he possessed in the Province of *Riba de Coa*. The King of *Castile* sent *Alonso Perez de Guzman* to the *Portuguese*, to sollicite that they might meet at *Alcanizes*, where this Discord was to have an end. There both Kings accordingly met honourably attended. A Peace was Concluded for Forty Years, and it was Stipulated, that whosoever did infringe it, should be delivered up to the Party aggrieved. The Towns of *Olivenza*, *Campo-Mayor*, and *S. Felices*, were delivered up to the *Portuguese* in lieu of *Aroche* and *Aracena*. That King *Denis* should still hold all the Towns of the Province of *Riba de Coa*, and for the Title the King of *Castile* might claim to them, he resigned up to him *Valencia*, *Ferreira*, *Esparragal*, *Ayamonte*, and other Places in *Leon*, and *Gallicia*.

6. Arti-

6. Articles being signed, King *Ferdinand* presently Married the *Portuguese* Princess *Constance*, and delivered his Sister *Beatrice* to her Father-in-Law, as Wife to Prince *Alonso*, who expected the event of this interview at *Trancofo*. The *Portuguese* Princess being left in *Castile*, King *Denis*, with the *Castilian*, returned to *Coimbra*, then the Seat of the *Portuguese's* Court. Till the Princess came to Age for Marriage, the King assigned her a competent Revenue, and appointed *Martin*, Archbishop of *Braga*, and Count *Martin de Sousa*, his Standard-bearer, her Governours. The Day she was delivered to the Prince, the King added to what he had before given her, the Towns of *Viana*, *Terena*, *Ourem*, and *Armamar*. King *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, made this Accomodation in good time, being then pressed by the neighbouring Princes, in favour of D. *Alonso de la Cerda*, Grand-son to King *Alonso*, X. from whom *Sancho*, Father to *Ferdinand*, and Uncle to the said *Alonso*, had Usurped the Crown, so that *Alonso de la Cerda* was the rightful Prince, and *Ferdinand* then in possession, an Usurper. The dispossessed Prince gave the Kingdom of *Leon*, to his Uncle *John*, and that of *Murcia*, to *Jayme* or *James*, King of *Aragon*, upon Condition they should assist him to recover his right. Both those Princes endeavoured to possess themselves of what was allotted them, before the Injured Prince could be Re-inthroned. King *Ferdinand*, overwhelmed with these Enemies, craved Aid of our King *Denis*, and that they might meet at *Fuente Guinaldo*, and *Badajoz*. There having declared his wants, our King presented him with a great Summ of Money, a Cap made of an Emerald of inestimable Value, and sent him such supplies of Men, as gained him a Superiority over his Enemies.

7. Pope *Benedict* XI. sent his Legate to compose these Differences, and with the general Consent of all Parties concerned; our King *Denis* was appointed Mediator between them. It was agreed that all Parties should stand by his Determination, to which purpose a solemn Instrument was signed, and Cautionary Towns given on all sides.\* King *Denis* set forward towards the Plain, where the Conference was to be held, with an Honourable Retinue, to the number of One thousand Persons, and to avoid all disorders that might happen in Towns,

The Peace confirmed with mutual Alliance.

King Denis chosen Mediator between the Kings of Castile, and the lawful Heir, then Banished.

P 3

lay

1304. lay all the way in Tents, in the open Field. King *Ferdinand* met him at *Cuellar*, they travelled together to *Soria*, and there parted; our King proceeding to *Torrellas*, in the Kingdom of *Aragon*, where *Jamye* or *James*, King of *Aragon*, and *Blanch* his Queen received him. Here King *Denis* entertained them with such Magnificence, as had scarce been seen in *Spain*. The Arbitrators and Parties, being come to *Tarazona*, the Kingdom of *Murcia*, was by them divided betwixt the Kings of *Castile*, and *Aragon*, and several Towns were assigned to *D. Alonso de la Cerda*, and he ordered to forbear styling himself King of *Castile*. "This Sentence of King *Denis*, our Author admires for its equity, as if it could be any justice to deprive the rightful Prince of Three Kingdoms, and give him the Revenue of a few Towns in lieu of them, and those Towns to be held of that same Usurper who kept him out of his right. Judgment being given, they went away to *Agreda*, where King *Ferdinand* was with his Mother. There Three Kings dined at one Table, and Three Queens at another, which were those of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. Hence King *Denis* went to *Valladolid*, to see his Daughter, Queen *Constance*, and so returned to his Kingdom.

An unjust Sentence given by King *Denis*, against the rightful Heir.

8. King *Ferdinand* now at Peace with the Christians, resolved to employ his Arms against the Moors of *Granada*; To this effect he craved Succours of King *Denis*, who sent him Seven hundred Horse, Commanded by *D. Martin Gil de Sousa*, his Standard-bearer, and lent him Seventeen thousand Marks of Silver, for which *Badajoz*, *Alconchel*, and *Burguillos*, were given in pawn. This expedition was well begun by the taking of *Gibraltar*, but its Progress was stopped; First, by want of Provisions, and next, by the Death of King *Ferdinand*. *Phillip* the Fair King of *France*, placed *Clement V.* (before Archbishop of *Bordeaux*) in *St. Peters* Chair, upon Condition he should remove the Papal Seat to *Lions*, that he should publicly burn the bones of his Predecessor *Boniface VIII.* give him the rents of the Church Revenues, for Five Years, and suppress the Order of the Knights Templars, that he might seize their Revenues. This Pope not willing to perform that part touching the burning of his Predecessor, thought to make the King amends, by falling the heavier on the Knights

The cruel suppression of the Knights Templars.

Knights Templars. To this purpose, at the instigation of the King, those Knights were charged with most heinous Crimes, and their great Master with Sixty Knights were publickly burnt at *Paris*, to the astonishment of all the World. The Pope had sent Orders to all Parts, that these Knights should every where be apprehended on the same Day, but the Kings of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal* obeyed not, esteeming the merits of that Noble Order, above the unjust Commands of a Biassed Pope. Yet after much Debate, the Order was wholly suppressed, their greatest Crime being their Riches, which nevertheless, in *Spain* were for the most part bestowed on the Knights Hospitallers of *St. John*, now called the Knights of *Malta*. But King *Denis*, begged of the Pope that the Revenues of the Knights Templars in *Portugal*, might be given to a new Order of Knighthood, he then instituted to serve against the bordering *Moors*. His suit being granted, this Year 1310. was erected the Order of Knights of our Saviour *Iesus Christ*, the King besides the possessions of the Templars, bestowing on it several Towns and Churches, that were in his gift. This from time to time, has been so increased that at present, the Order enjoys a Revenue of about 500000 Duccats, divided into 500 Commandaries, to Encourage Gentlemen with this reward, to the Conquest of *Africk*. At present, those thoughts are quite laid aside, and those Revenues are almost become Hereditary: Many of the Knights Templars being found innocent were admitted to this New Order; and a Master of it created. At first these Knights were obliged not to Marry, but that vow was abolished in the time of King *Emmanuel*, by Pope *Alexander VI.*

9. King *Denis*, in his latter Days, had much Contention with his Son Prince *Alonso*. This Prince took for the occasion of his Disgust, the great Favour that Duke *Alonso Sanchez*, and Count *John Alonso*, the Kings Bastard Sons were in with him. Having drawn *Peter*, another Bastard Brother to his Party, the Prince presumed to ask of the King, to resign to him the Power of the Administration of Justice. Being justly denied so unreasonable a Demand, he drew over his Mother-in-Law, Queen *Mary*, to assist him towards obtaining his desires by Force, to which purpose she asked leave of his Father for him, to come to her into *Castile*, and being

King *Denis* at *Paris* in alliance with his Son.



being refused, the Prince went to her, to *Cuidad Rodrigo*, against his Fathers Consent. Being returned to *Portugal*, the Queen sent to demand of the King, what he had before refused to his Son; and now again denied to her. This Project failing, the Prince contrived by his Servants, an Information to be drawn, as if left by a Man that died at *Magaula*: containing a Design of the Elder Bastard, the King's chiefest Favourite, to Poyson the Prince. A Copy of the false Information he sent to the King, who having examined the matter, found it was a piece of Forgery. Being again disappointed, he perswaded some of his Followers to Murder *Alonso Sanchez*, saying his Father negotiated with the Pope, to exclude him the lawful Heir, and leave the Crown to a Bastard; but he in this did not succeed neither. All these practices failing, the Prince betook himself to open Hostility, robbing the King's Loyal Subjects, ravishing Women, sacrilegiously ransacking Monasteries, killing *Giraldus*, Bishop of *Evora*, and committing many other Enormities, without the reach of justice, as acted under the Heir of the Crown.

The Prince proceeds in his Disobedience.

10. The King advertised Pope *John XX.* of his Son's Disobedience, and he dispatched his Bulls, admonishing him to desist from force, and submit to his Father; but all to no effect. For he gathering a number of Criminals, and Out-laws, pretended to go in Pilgrimage to the Church of *St. Vincent* without *Lisbon*, designing to surprize that City. The King having timely Advice of it, hastened thither to prevent him, and the Queen after him to Mediate betwixt the Father and the Son. The Prince thus prevented, turned away towards *Sintra*, and his Father after him. Both Bodies stood as if they designed to give Battle, but on a sudden the Son marched off; and tho' the King might have overtaken him, he pursued not. Being come to *Coimbra*, the Prince sent away his Princess to *Alcanizes* in *Castile*, and then gave out that his Father intended to kill him. After disabusing the World of the falsehood of that Report, his Father declared all such as should adhere to the Son, Traitors; and knowing that the Inhabitants of *Leyria* had entertained him, he hastened thither, where Nine of the chief, as Rebels, had their Hands and Feet cut off, and were afterwards burnt. The Prince went away to *Santarem*, and flying thence before his Angry Father, possessed

possessed himself of the Castle of *Coimbra*, of *Monte-Major* the Old, of *Feira*, *Gaga*, and *Porto*, whither came to him his Bastard-Brother *Peter*, out of *Castile*. *Guimaraens* was defended against him, by *Mem Rodriguez de Vasconcelos*. In the mean while the King laid Siege to *Coimbra*, which obliged the Prince to quit *Guimaraens*, and return to relieve that City. Here were to be seen all the usual dire effects of Civil Wars. The Holy Queen *Elizabeth* ceased not to pass betwixt the Two Armies, mediating for a Reconciliation, which at last she compassed, the King giving to the Prince, the Cities of *Porto*, and *Coimbra*, and the Old Town of *Monte-Major*, with some additional Revenue. Pardon was given on both sides, and the Prince took an Oath to be Obedient to his Father for the future. But notwithstanding this reconciliation, the Prince pressed his Father to call the Cortes, or Parliament, and yet would not be present at it, but went from *Santarem*, towards *Lisbon*, with armed Troops. The King came out in the like manner, commanding him to return, which he refusing, the Trumpets sounded, and both Parties Engaged. Yet the Queen rushing through all dangers came to her Son, and upbraiding him with breach of Faith, and Obstinacy, at length the Battle was parted, and the Father and Son once more were Reconciled. That this agreement might be the more lasting, *D. Alonso Sanchez*, the King's Bastard-Son, was sent out of the Kingdom, and went to the Town of *Albuquerque*, which he possessed in *Castile*, by that means becoming a Subject to that Crown.

1323.

1324.

11. King *Denis* fortified many Towns and Cities, encompassing them with beautiful Walls, as is to be seen at *Porto*, *Braga*, *Guimaraens*, *Miranda*, and other Places. He Built from the Ground, above Fifty Castles, and some Towns, besides those he new Peopled. Neither did he forget pious Work, and therefore he endowed many Churches. Pope *John XXII.* granted him the Tenths of Church Revenues for 3 Years, to the end he should keep his Gallies in the Streights of *Gibraltar*, to hinder the *Moors* from passing into the Kingdom of *Granada*. He was addicted to Learning, especially to Poetry, and it was he that first erected the University at *Coimbra*. His Liberality was such that it became a Proverb, *As liberal as Denis*. The Presents he made to Kings, Queens,

King Denis his Structures, and other Works.



Queens, and Nobility, when he went to compose Affairs betwixt the King of *Castile*, and Duke *Alonso de la Cerda*, were inestimable, and cannot be reckoned. After that, a Gentleman of *Castile* telling him that none but himself had fallen short of his Bounty, he gave him the Silver Table whereon he dined. To reckon up the particular acts of his Generosity were too tedious, it may suffice to say, this above the rest was his peculiar Vertue, in which he exceeded most Princes. He knew all the Product of his Kingdom, and valued it so much, that he never desired to be supplied from abroad, with any thing that he could have at home. Of the Gold gathered in *Tagus*, he made a rich Crown and Scepter. But notwithstanding his prodigious Liberality he never oppressed his Subjects with heavy Taxes. He was of a middle Stature, his Hair black, full Faced, not so Beautiful as Majestick. He died at *Santarem*, the 7th. of *January*, 1325. at the Age of 64 Years, having Reigned 46. It became a Proverb, *That Denis could do all he would*. His stately Tomb, built by himself, is in the Monastery of *Odivelas*, of Benedictine Nuns, near *Lisbon*, of the Invocation of St. *Denis*.

1325.

His Wife,  
and Issue.

12. *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Peter III.* of *Aragon*, and his Queen *Constance* the Daughter of *Manfredus* King of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, was the only Wife of King *Denis*. He being extremely addicted to Women, she bred up all the Children he had by them, as if they had been her own; by which her patience she made him afterwards forbear that Vice, and punish it severely in others. To be short, she was a most holy Woman, and an excellent Queen, and was Canonized in the Reign of *Phillip IV.* of *Spain*. By her the King had, *Alonso* his Successor, and *Constance*, Wife to King *Ferdinand IV.* of *Castile*.

His illegitimate Issue were, by *Aldonza Rodriguez*, *Alonso Sanchez*, created Earl of *Albuquerque*.

By the Lady *Grace*, *Peter*, Earl of *Barcelos*, the first Title of that kind given by the Kings of *Portugal*; another *Peter*, called also Earl.

By other Women, *John Alonso*, *Ferdinand Sanchez*, the Lady *Mary*, Married to Duke *John de la Cerda*; another *Mary*, a Nun at *Odivelas*.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Life and Reign of Alonso the Fourth of the Name, and the Seventh King of Portugal, his Actions and Death, from the Year, 1290. till 1357.*

1. THE Favour that King *Denis* shewed to Learning made him reside where he had caused it to flourish. Having therefore resettled the Court at *Coimbra*, on the Eighth of *February*, 1290. was Born to him in that City, of his Wife the holy Queen *Elizabeth*, his Son *Alonso* 4th. of the Name, and the Seventh King of *Portugal*, who for his forward and fiery spirit, was called the *Fierce*. He, who as we have seen, was so eager to Rule whilst his Father lived, after his Death cast off all the care of Government; giving himself wholly up to his Pleasure, and particularly to Hunting. Upon his Accession to the Crown, instead of settling the Affairs of the Kingdom, he went away to the Forrest of *Sintra*, where he spent a whole Month among the wild Beasts. Returning to Court, and appearing at the Council-Board, instead of the Business of that Place, he gave them an Account of his Sport. Hereupon, one of the Counsellors took the Boldness to reprove him with threatening Expressions, which the King being offended at, all the Council stood up and said they would choose another King, if he did not alter his Course of Life. The King, tho he then went out in a Passion, being grown cool, thought good to curb his Inclination. Our Author here extols the Bravery of those Counsellors. "I find nothing to admire in the matter, but the Insolency of wicked and haughty Subjects, and the want of Resolution in him, he stiles a Magnanimous Prince. The King, not satisfied with having, during his Father's Life, unjustly Persecuted his Bastard-Brother, and Expelled him the Kingdom, still persisting in his ill grounded Malice towards him, laid many things to his Charge, and by formal, tho unjust Process, Condemned him to forfeit all his Possessions in *Portugal*, at once endeavouring to de-  
prive

King A-  
lonso the  
4th. wholly  
addicted to  
his Plea-  
sure.

1290.

1325.

At Vari-  
ance with  
his Bas-  
tard-Bro-  
ther.

prive him of his Fortune and Honour. D. *Alonso Sanchez*, modestly sued for Redress, but none was to be had from a byassed Judge. He was now powerful, and beloved in *Castile*, and *Leon*, and therefore raising a good Force, entred the Territory of *Bragança*, with Fire and Sword, whilst others of his Troops did the like from *Medellin*, and *Albuquerque*, in the Country about *Guadiana*. This done, he returned to his Town of *Albuquerque*, where he Fortified himself, and made preparations for open War. D. *Gonzalo Vaz*, Master of the Knights of *Avis*, being sent against him by the King, was put to the rout; and Duke *Alonso*, falling Sick returned to *Medellin*. In the mean time the King Besieged the Castle of *Codesserra*, near *Albuquerque*, which being basely delivered to him by the Governour, was rased to the Ground.

1326. 2. The King proposed a Match betwixt his Son Prince *Peter*, and *Constance* the Daughter of D. *John Emanuel*, who was of the Blood Royal of *Castile*, and his Wife of that of *Aragon*. King *Alonso IX.* of *Castile*, broke off this Match, contracting himself to her, for she was under age, and yet afterwards he contemned her, and

Marries his Daughter to the King of Castile. was Married to *Mary*, Daughter to King *Alonso* of *Portugal*. To that effect he came into *Portugal*, and received the Princess at the Town of *Alfayates*, whither her Father had Conducted her. At this Place a Match

1328. was concluded betwixt *Henry*, Prince of *Portugal*, and the Princess *Blanch*, Aunt to the King of *Castile*. The following Year, the *Portuguese* received her at *Fuente-grinaldo*, where he again met with her Father Prince *Peter*, about some alterations to be made in the Hostages given for exchange of the Ratifications. Two Years after the King of *Castile* was Married to our Princess, he became so intangled in the Love of the Lady *Ellenor Nunnez de Guzman*, that he treated her as Queen; and the Queen as if she had been but a Concubine. Our holy Queen *Elizabeth* met him at *Xerez de Badajoz*, to endeavour to reclaim him, but could obtain nothing but promises; for he continued obstinate in his

1330. Amours. D. *John Emanuel* desiring to be revenged of the King of *Portugal*, for that giving his Daughter to the King of *Castile* in Marriage, he had caused his Daughter *Constance* to be put by, made his interest with the Lady *Ellenor* the King of *Castile's* Mistress, persuading

swading her to prevail with the King to marry her; for his Marriage with the Princess of *Portugal* was void, by reason of Consanguinity. But that Lady considering the danger of aspiring, to rise from a Mistress to a Queen, slighted his Advice.

3. It was now found in *Portugal*, that the Princess *Blanch* divorced from the Prince. *Blanch*, by reason of the Tiffick, was unfit for Matrimony; and the King of *Castile* having sent his Physicians to examine into it, they agreed in the Point. This Prince being on this score disengaged from that Bride, it was proposed he should marry the Lady *Constance*, Daughter to D. *John Emanuel*, whom the King of *Castile* had before put away. This King was consulted with thereupon, but he advised the contrary, yet seemed to allow of whatsoever ours should do. The *Portuguese* took this for Consent, whilst the *Castilian* used all possible means to obstruct the Match; telling her Father he designed her for the Prince of *Navarre*. Both seemed to mean as they spoke, and each designed to deceive the other. D. *Gonzalo Vaz*, Master of the Order of *Avis*, and Embassador from *Portugal*, came to D. *John*, to conclude the Match. The King of *Castile*, sent D. *John* Orders, to apprehend the Embassador, as coming without his leave with armed Men, and having committed Extortion on his way. D. *John* doubting, the Embassador advised him to conclude their Affair, and he would go deliver up himself to the King at *Burgos*. They agreed, D. *John* offered with his Daughter, 300000 Doubles. The Articles were, That the Lady *Constance* should be absolute over the Lands assigned her in Dower: That the Prince should keep no Mistress whilst his Wife was of Age to bear Children, or did not appear to be Barren: That there should be a League Defensive betwixt the Father, and Son-in-Law, that he might go visit his Daughter, whensoever he pleased, and that the Second Son should inherit D. *John's* Possessions in *Castile*, or else the First should inherit, in case she had but one.

4. The Embassador went immediately away to *Burgos*, and presenting himself before the King, was satisfied with feigned excuses. At this time came one *Martin Catina*, craving leave of the King, to Combat with *Gonzalo Rodriguez Ribeiro*, one who followeth the Embassador, and had killed his Brother. The King would have

1334. He contracts with the Lady Constance Daughter to D. John Emanuel.

1335. A single Combat.

The King  
of Castile  
obstructs  
the Marri-  
age of the  
Lady Con-  
stance.

have made them Friends, but *Ribeiro* opposing it, they were allowed to enter the Lists according to the Custome of those Days; where *Catina* had his Head clove asunder by his Adversary. Many other notable Acts were performed by this *Ribeiro*, and Two of his Companions, in a solemn Tilting, wherein they gained much Reputation to the *Portuguese* Nation. But the King of *Castile*, ceased not all this while, underhand, to endeavour to break off the Match, writing to the King of *Portugal* by way of Advice, That he should not be too hasty herein; for that *D. John* was rich, and would increase the Portion if he was backward. At the same time, he blamed *D. John* for offering so much, and lastly, with his own Hand he wrote a Letter to the Lady *Constance*, assuring her of his sincere Affection to her, and declaring he had been ill advised in marrying the Princess of *Portugal*, but that by Reason of Consanguinity, that Marriage was void, and he would not fail to be always hers. The Lady sent the Letter to her Father, who dictated an Answer, to this effect. That he had much wronged her Innocence, having by false insinuations gained her Love. That his ill Inclinations, did appear by his unjust proceedings towards Queen *Mary*, his present Wife. That she had so often found him false, that she could now find no Reason to give any Credit to his Words; and that she gave Thanks to Almighty God, who had delivered her from being his Wife, that she might not suffer as the Queen did, by his inordinate Affection, to the Lady *Elenor Nunez de Guzman*, who had entertained other Lovers before him.

5. It was agreed betwixt the King of *Portugal*, and *D. John Emanuel*, that the Lady *Constance* should be brought into *Portugal*, in June, and the Bride and Bridegroom were contracted by Proxy. Embassadors were sent to *Valladolid*, where the King of *Castile* was to be acquainted with the Conclusion of the Match. He, tho much Displeased, expressed great Satisfaction; sent Presents to the Embassadors, and ordered publick Demonstrations of Joy to be made. The *Portuguese* sent *Martin Lopez Machado*, his Embassador, to return thanks for those Courtesies; But still the *Castilian* resolved to hinder the Bride's Journey into *Portugal*, and to that purpose guarded the Roads, always pretending other

other Reasons for so doing. The King of *Portugal*, to remove this Obstacle, sent another Embassador, who being killed about Play at *Valladolid*, his Tutor, for he was a Young Man, continued his Journey to the Court of *Castile*, where he delivered to that King his Master's Letter, containing how evidently he was convinced of his ill Intentions, and made great Threats, in case he persisted to obstruct the Lady *Constance's* Journey into *Portugal*. The *Castilian* shewed that Letter to the Lady *Ellinor* his Mistress, who, with that Liberty that is Natural to such Women, spared not to blame his unjust Proceedings in that Particular; yet he forbore not to stop the Princess, tho' he excused himself to the *Portuguese*. Our King, already disgusted at this ill Usage, was yet farther provoked, for his Admiral, *Stephen Vaz de Barbuda*, pursuing certain Pirates with five Ships, and three Galleys, was driven by stress of Weather to *Cadiz*, where, instead of a kind Reception, his Vessels were taken by the Fleet of *Castile*, under the Command of *Peter Ponce de Marchena*. Our King gave Advice hereof to *D. John Emanuel*, and he making suit to his King, that he would suffer his Daughter to depart, received no Answer, whereupon he openly declared against his Sovereign. The *Portuguese* demanded of the Governours of the Cautionary Towns, for Performance of Articles, that they should deliver them up to him, since the fault lay on the side of *Castile*. They consulting together, sent one of their number to the King, to represent to him how unjustly he dealt with the *Portuguese*. He answered, That if they delivered the Towns, they would incur an infamous breach of Fealty, and that he would not depart from the Siege he had laid to *D. John Nunez de Lara's* Garrison, till he had his Head. Yet considering the Difficulty of that Design, he intimated he would desist, if the King of *Portugal* should request it of him. Queen *Mary* advertised her Father hereof, and he immediately wrote to the *Castilian*, desiring him to raise the Siege, and promising to make *D. John Nunez* submit himself as soon as the Princess was sent into *Portugal*. The Queen her self carried the Letter to the King, and he answered angrily, that he would raise the Siege for no Man. Which made her return disconsolate to *Burgos*. But tho' some of the Nobles contrived that *D. John* might escape, yet the King was so watchful, they were disappointed.

6. The



War be-  
twixt Ca-  
stile and  
Portugal.

6. The King of *Portugal*, impatient of longer Disappointments, sent a Challenge to him of *Castile*, grounded upon these Reasons: That he treated ill the Queen his Wife, that he gave out, he would be divorced from her, and Marry the Lady *Ellenor de Gaxman*, that he designed to declare *Peter* her Son his Heir, and that he hindered the Princess *Constance* from going into *Portugal*. While his Ambassador executed his Commission, he made all manner of Warlike Preparations both by Sea and Land. He laid Siege to *Badajoz*, and at the same time his Parties ravaged all the Country about *Arauna*, *Aroncha*, and *Cortegana*. The Siege being tedious, the King left sufficient Forces to continue it, and he with the rest of the Army over-ran a great part of *Andaluzia* as far as *Sevil*, which done, he returned to the Siege. His Brother, Count *Peter*, did the like in *Galicia*, the Archbishop, and other Commanders in vain endeavouring to oppose him. Numerous Forces were raising in *Castile* to relieve *Badajoz*, when the King, considering the difficulty of the Enterprize, and that *Peter Alonso*, one of his Officers, had been defeated, raised the Siege, and returned dissatisfied to *Portugal*. But whilst he prepared to return thither stronger than before, the Queen, without his knowledge, went away to *Badajoz*, where the King of *Castile*, her Son-in-law, then was, thinking her Prayers might prevail with him to desist from War, and comply with her Husband. The King received her with Respect, but demanded such Conditions as he knew could not be granted. Scarce was she gone from *Badajoz*, when the *Castilian* followed as far as *Elvas*, ravaging all the Country. Two days he spent Plundering that Territory, and then laid Siege to *Aronchez*, but understanding that the *Portuguese* Parties infested the Neighbourhood of *Xerez*, *Badajoz*, *Burguillos*, and *Alconchel*, he removed to meet them. Not meeting with them, he besieged *Olivencia*, and being taken with an Ague, was forced to depart, and return to *Sevil*, leaving his Forces to do all the harm they could. Some Troops, under the Command of the Brothers, *Ferdinand*, and *John Roiz de Castro*, pillaged all the Country betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, till being met by the Archbishop of *Braga* with 1400 *Portuguese*, *D. John de Castro* was killed, with 300 of his Men, and a great Booty recovered. At Sea, 20 Gallies,

carrying

carrying 2000 Men, put into *Lepte* in *Andaluzia*, where they landed, Plundering the Country, and being met by *D. Nunno Portocarrero*, there ensued a hot Fight between them, in which 26 *Portuguese* and 80 *Castilians* were killed. *Camello*, the *Portuguese* General, was taken; and by the *Portuguese*, two *Castilian* Commanders, for whom he was exchanged. The *Castilians* set out 40 Sail to Revenge this Affront, but a Storm dispersed and wrecked both Fleets. Another *Portuguese* Squadron, commanded by *Misser Emanuel Pissano*, a *Genoese*, had spoiled the Coast of *Galicia*, and was now again sent against the *Spanish* Fleet, that did no less harm in the Kingdom of *Algarve*. They met about Cape *S. Vincent*, and fought with extraordinary Resolution, till the *Portuguese* Admiral, and many more, were taken, and the *Castilian* returned Victorious to *Sevil*. At the same time, *Ferdinand Arraez* lying in Ambush, took 70 *Portuguese*, and killed 180.

7. Our King, leaving an Army to Besiege *Salvaterra*, King *Alonso* entered as far as *Orense*, destroying all before him, whilst *Peter Fernandez de Castro*, who commanded on those Frontiers for the King of *Castile*, refused to oppose him, on pretence of the Favours he had received from him and his Father. The *Castilian*, always ready to take Revenge, with 10000 Horse, and a number of Foot broke into *Algarve*, and having in vain besieged *Castro Marin*, laid waste without Mercy all the Country along that Coast. Pope *Benedict XII.* sent *Bernard*, Bishop of *Rhodes*, his Nuncio, to endeavour to bring these two Kings to some Accommodation. *Philip* the Fourth, King of *France* sent the Archbishop of *Rheims* upon the same Errand. The *Castilian* turned them over to *Portugal*, and the *Portuguese* to *Castile*. Both were desirous of Peace, but neither would ask it. The *Portuguese* carried himself highest with the Nuncio. At length a Truce was concluded for a Year. After much Debate, the Pope was chosen Arbitrator betwixt them, but the *Castilian* fearing the Revolt of his Nobles, and an Invasion from *Africk*, required of the *Portuguese* to send his Ambassadors to him, and they would agree, without going so far as *Rome*, or *Avignon*. Hereupon three Ambassadors were sent from *Portugal*, who meeting with the Commissioners of *Castile*, concluded a Peace upon these Conditions. That all Places taken since the War, and

Q

Prisoners

1337.

A Truce for  
a Year.

1340.



Prisoners on both sides, should be restored; That neither, without consent of the other, should make Peace with the *Moorish* King *Banarin*; That the Princess *Constance* should be permitted to go into *Portugal*; That the Princess *Blanch*, being unfit for Wedlock, should return into *Castile*; That all former Articles should continue in force; That the King of *Castile* should restore all due State to his Queen, and put away the Lady *Ellenor Nunnez*. The *Castilian* performed all Points, except putting away the Lady *Ellenor*, yet he behaved himself better towards the Queen.

Alonso in  
Person aids  
the Castili-  
an against  
the Moors

8. *Aliboacem*, King of *Morocco*, being about to pass into *Spain*, as being sent for by the *Moorish* King of *Granada*, the *Castilian* sent his Queen to ask Succours of her Father the King of *Portugal*, who immediately marched thither in Person with a better disciplined than numerous Army. The King of *Castile* having notice hereof, visited him at *Jurumenna* in *Portugal*. Our King was received at *Sevil* by the Clergy, singing *Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini*. Here a Council of War was held, to consult whether it were fit to fight the *Moors*, who besieged *Tarifa*, and were an innumerable Multitude, or no. While some were of Opinion to yield *Tarifa* to them, our King's Opinion prevailed, that the Place should be relieved. All the Mountains and Plains about *Tarifa* were covered with multitudes of Infidels, yet the King of *Castile* was overjoyed to understand they had resolved to give the *Mahometan* Battle. Both the Christian Kings advanced, and passed the River *Guadalete*. Being there joyned by some Troops that were not before come up, on Sunday, the 27<sup>th</sup>. of *October*, they marched to *Penna de Guervo*, where they first discovered the Barbarians, covering all the Land as far as they could see. It was agreed the *Castilian* should attack the King of *Morocco*, who lay along the Shoar, and the *Portuguese* him of *Granada*, that was at the Foot of the Mountain. On Monday, the 28<sup>th</sup>. at break of Day the Army heard Mass, many received the Sacrament, and the Archbishop of *Toledo* exhorted them to expose their Lives in Defence of the Faith. Being come before their Enemies, both Kings made short Speeches to their Men. This done, the Armies engaged with such terrible shouts, that the Mountains seemed to shake. Nor was the noise of clattering of Arms less hideous. Vast numbers of Dead were soon

trod

trod under foot, and the wounded, in that Confusion, were scarce sensible of their hurts. Our King, rushing into the midst of the Enemies, made such havock, that the *Moors* soon turned their backs, and fled to *Algezira*, the *Portuguese* making a greater slaughter in the Pursuit, than they had done in the Fight. The King of *Castile*, with no less Bravery, thrust himself into the midst of his Enemies, till stopp'd in his rash Career by the Archbishop of *Toledo*. Yet so did he press *Aliboacem*, that despairing of Success, he fled to *Algezira*, and not thinking himself safe there, passed the *Streights* over into *Africk*. Both the Christian Princes followed the Chace as far as the Rivers *Britabotellus* and *Guadamil*, which they dyed with the Blood of Infidels.

The two  
Christian  
Kings over-  
throw the  
Infidels.

9. Queen *Fatima*, with many other *Moorish* Ladies, were killed by the Soldiers in their Tents. Some Princes also died, and two were taken. The quantity and value of the Booty is not to be expressed, for they came to divide *Spain* among them, and brought over above 100000 Families, besides their innumerable Army, all which was so great, that they spent five Months in passing the *Streights*, sixty Gallies being continually employ'd in Transporting them, and twelve Gallies were fifteen days in carrying back the Remnants of this Overthrow. 450000 Infidels are said to have died in this Battle. Of the Christians so few were missing, that it will be scarce credited, if the Number were reported. The Victorious Kings entred *Sevil* in Triumph, the chiefest of the Captives dragging the Colours that were taken. Many Carts followed laden with Spoil, and then a multitude of *Moorish* Horses with all their Accoutrements. Several Colours and Horses were sent for a Present to Pope *Benedict*. The seventh day after the Victory, the *Portuguese* being obliged to return home, the *Castilian* laid all the Booty before him, to take what he liked best; whereof he only took some Arms, one of the Captive Princes, and five Colours. The Prince he released without Ransom, and hung up the Colours in the Cathedral of *Lisbon*.

The number  
of the In-  
fidels. and  
greatness of  
the Booty.

10. King *Peter* the Fourth of *Aragon*, by his Embassadors, demanded of our King his Second Daughter *Ellenor* in Marriage. His Request was granted, and her Portion settled at 50000 Doubloons. The King of *Castile* endeavoured to hinder this Marriage, but failing of his

1247.  
Ellenor,  
second  
Daughter  
to K. Alon-  
so marry'd  
to Peter,  
King of  
Aragon.

Q 2

Design, Aragon.

1148.  
A great  
Plague.

K. Alonso  
his Eldest  
Son pri-  
vately  
Marries  
the Lady  
Agnes de  
Castro.

The Lady  
Agnes  
cruelly  
murdered.

Design, the Princess was carryed to *Valencia*, and there married with great Solemnity. The three following Years *Portugal* was infested with that Universal Pestilence, which began by the opening of the Earth after a terrible Earthquake in the Eastern Countries, whence issued such a destructive stench, as infected those Parts, and thence diffused it self into these. The Princess *Constance* dying after she had brought forth three Children, our King found that Discord at home, which had before drawn him thence. He thought to Marry the Prince, to strengthen the Succession to the Crown, but found he was in Love with the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, a Kinswoman, and one of the Ladies to the late Princess, and that enjoying her Person, he refused a second Wife; and enquiring farther into it, he was informed they were privately married by *Giles*, Bishop of *Guarda*, and yet the Prince, fearing his Father's Displeasure, denied it, tho' he promised, if it were really so, to treat her as Princess. The Nobility envying the Lady *Agnes* her Happiness, perswaded the King to oblige his Son to Marry another Wife, or else to kill her; alledging, that if she came to be Queen, her Brothers, *Ferdinand* and *Alvaro*, would destroy the Prince's Son *Ferdinand*, that one of their Nephews might Inherit the Crown. They also said, the Lady *Agnes* was not of sufficient Quality to be a Queen; but in this they wronged her, for she was of Royal Blood, and her Sister came to be Queen of *Castile*. Upon these Pretences her Death was contrived, and tho' the Prince had notice given him hereof by the Queen his Mother, and the Archbishop of *Braga*, yet he thought none durst attempt such an Action whilst he was in the way. The King, overcome by Perswasions, set out from *Monte-Mayor*, and went to *Coimbra* with a great number of armed Men, at such time as the Prince was gone out a Hunting. The Lady *Agnes* was in the Palace called *S. Clare*, and understanding the King came to kill her, went out to receive him, and falling at his Feet with the three Children she had, bathed them with her Tears. This sad Spectacle moved the King, and he turned back to depart. But those who had perswaded him to this Action, the chief whereof were *Alvaro Gonzalez*, *James Lopez Pacheco*, and *Peter Coello*, blamed the King's Remissness, and so earnestly pressed him to give them leave to execute what they came about, that

that he condescended, and they immediately, with more than barbarous Inhumanity, struck off her Head.

11. The Prince returning from Hunting, for some time was almost distracted with Rage. Being come to himself, he began to execute his Revenge, destroying all the Country betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, where those Cruel Executioners had their Estates, with Fire and Sword. The City *Porto* he spared, for the sake of the Archbishop, who had given him notice of the Design. Thus King *Alonso's* Disobediencè towards his Father, was now with more Reason punished by his own Son. The Prince marched to the Town of *Canavezes*, where the Queen his Mother, and the Archbishop met, and reduced him to submit to his Father, and disband his Followers, conditioning that both Parties should Pardon all Offences, and that in all Places where the Prince was, all Acts of Justice should be performed in his Name. It was visible enough, that the Prince would some time or other be revenged on the Murderers of the Lady, therefore the King, being near his End, advised them before his Death to shift for themselves. They thereupon fled to *Castile*, and we shall hereafter see what became of them. This was the end of King *Alonso*, an Unnatural Son towards his Father, and a Barbarous Father towards his Son. Yet he was an excellent King, either for Peace or War. He coined a new sort of Money, called *Alfonfines*, worth, in *English* Money, about Three Shillings. Many wholesom Laws were instituted by him, and his Government was equitable and just. He had a large Forehead, but with wrinkles in it; his Visage long, a proportionable Nose, a large Mouth, his Hair reddish, and curled, his Beard forked and long, his Limbs gross, and his Presence Majestick. He died at *Lisbon* in May 1357. being 67 Years of Age, and having Reigned 31 Years and a half. His and his Queen's Tombs are to be seen in the Quire of the Cathedral of *Lisbon*.

12. Queen *Beatrix*, Wife to King *Alonso*, was Daughter to King *Sancho* the Fierce, of *Castile*, and of Queen *Mary*, the Daughter of Prince *Alonso de Molina*. By her the King had Issue, 1. *Alonso*, who died Young. 2. *Denis*, died much at the same Age. 3. *John*, died in his Infancy. 4. *Mary*, who was Queen of *Castile*, Wife to King *Alonso XI.* and Mother to King *Peter*. 5. *Peter*, who

who Succeeded his Father ; 6. *Elenor*, Queen of *Aragon*, Second Wife to King *Peter IV*.

This King reduced the number of Castles in the *Orle* being the Arms of *Algarve*, to 8. and the Bezants in each Escutcheon, to 10.

## CHAP. X.

*The Life and Reign of Peter the First of the Name, and the Eighth King of Portugal, with his Actions and Death, from the Year, 1320, till 1367.*

*King Peter the first his Birth.* 1. **K**ING *Alonso*, and his Queen *Beatrix*, were Unfortunate in their Children, who all died Young. But *Peter* the 5th. who was Born at *Coimbra*, on the 19th. of *April*, 1320. He was by some called the *Cruel*, by others, *Executor of Justice*, and this last Title most properly appertained to him. His Accession to the Crown was in the 37th. Year of his Age, being twice a Widdower by the Death of his two Wives; *Constance*, and *Agnes*. His First care was to secure Peace with his Neighbour, the King of *Castile*, which was accordingly Ratified. The following Year, it was farther Confirmed, and it was agreed that *Ferdinand*, Prince of *Portugal*, should marry *Beatrix*, Eldest Daughter to King *Peter* of *Castile*; and the Princesses *Constance*, and *Elizabeth*, should marry *John*, and *Denis*, Sons to the Lady *Agnes de Castro*; That both Kings should Aid each other by Sea and Land; That the *Portuguese* should not joyn with the *Aragonian*, or any other Prince, without acquainting the *Castilian*; That he should assist him against the *Aragonian*, with whom he was then at War. King *Peter* having now the Power in his Hands, and being at leisure to meditate his Revenge, for the Death of his beloved *Agnes*, was grieved at nothing more, than that he thought the Lives of the Three Murderers, too small an Expiation for the Death of her, in whom he had lived. Yet for some farther Satisfaction, he resolved to make up in Torments, what was wanting of Life in

*Peace concluded with Castile.*

*He punished the Murderers of his Wife the Lady Agnes de Castro.*

in them. We saw in his Fathers Life time, how far he proceeded in his Revenge, so as to raise a Civil War; But scarce was he now seated on the Throne, when the Three Murderers, *Peter Coello*, *James Lopez*, and *Alvaro Gonzalez*, were Attainted of Treason, and their Estates Confiscated. Next he contrived how to get them out of *Castile*, and soon found the means to effect it; for *Peter Nunnez de Guzman*, Lieutenant of *Leon*, *Mem Roiz Tenorio*, *Ferdinand Gudiel de Toledo*, and *Fortun Sanchez Calderon*, being fled from *Castile*, were then in *Portugal*: He knew that King was no less desirous to reach them, than he was to have the other Three; Therefore he agreed with the *Castilian*, that both should at the same time secure the Fugitives of the other, which was accordingly put in Execution.

2. *James Lopez Pacheco*, had the good Fortune to be abroad a Hunting, the Day the others were taken. He being missed, Guards were set upon the Gates, that none might give him Notice; but a Beggar got through unregarded, and not only informed him of what had happened, but changing Cloaths with him, he got away with a Carrier to *Aragon*; and thence into *France*. *Alvaro Gonzalez*, and *Peter Coello*, were carried to *Portugal*; as were the Four *Castilians* taken there, conveyed to *Sevil*. King *Peter* was at *Santarem* when the two Prisoners were brought to him: He instantly put them to the Rack, to force them to discover their Accomplices: But they continued silent or else answered far from the purpose; which caused the King to lash *Coello* on the Face; to which he returned nothing but reproachful Language. The King smiling hereat, said to the standers by, Bring me Vinegar and Onion for this Rabber; for *Coello* in *Portuguese*, signifies a Rabber, and that was the Sauce then used, giving them thereby to understand he should be Burnt. Whilst they were yet Living, their Hearts were cut out, one at his Breast, and the other at his Back. Lastly, he caused them to be Burnt, and the Table he dined at to be set in sight of the Fire. Nor did King *Peter*'s Amorous Flame expire here. But before we shew what farther Effects it had, we must observe in this Place, that the Kings of *Castile*, and *Aragon* being ready to break into War, our King sent his Embassadors to the latter, to Mediate a Peace. That Prince complained to them, that their Master should take part with

*The Murderers Racked.*

1367.

The Funeral  
Pomp, for  
the Lady  
Agnes de  
Castro.

Castile against him, yet offered, in regard of the Ancient Friendships betwixt the two Crowns, and in respect to the Pope, to give ear to Conditions of Peace.

3. This was the posture of Affairs when our King discovered the Love he still entertained for the Lady Agnes, by performing her Funeral Obsequies. Being in the Town of *Cantannede*, in the Presence of several Persons of Note, he solemnly Swore, That he had taken to Wife the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, at *Bragança*, Six Years before that time. Then he caused the Witnesses of the Marriage, which were *Giles* Bishop of *Guarda*, and *Stephen Lobato* Master of the Robes, to be Examined. This done, the Bishops of *Lisbon*, *Porto*, and *Viseo*, the Prior of *Santa Cruz*, and other Persons of Note, meeting together published the said Marriage, and the Causes why it was concealed; as also, the Dispensation granted by Pope *John* the 22th. in regard that they were within the forbidden Degrees of Consanguinity. An authentick Instrument to this purpose being formed, several Copies were dispersed, and the Original is still preserved among the Records at *Lisbon*. Not content herewith, he caused two Tombs of the whitest Marble, and most exquisite Workmanship, to be erected; One of them for himself, and the other for the Lady *Agnes*, whose Image stood on the Top, with a Crown on her Head, that she might appear like a Queen after her Death. These Tombs were placed in the famous Church of *Alcobaga*. Then entering the Church of *S. Clare* at *Coimbra*, he caused the Body to be taken up, and being Crowned, and Cloathed in Royal Robes, placed it on a Chair, where his Subjects kissed those Bones that were once beautiful Hands, as being the remains of their lawful Queen. After this Ceremony, being put into a Herse, the Corps was conducted to *Alcobaga*, to be placed in that rich Urn, with the noblest Attendance, and greatest Grandeur, that has been seen; vast numbers of Noblemen, and Gentlemen, in long Mourning Cloaks, and Ladies in White Mourning Vailes, attended the Funeral. From *Coimbra* to *Alcobaga*, it is 17 Leagues, and yet all that Distance was filled with many Thousands of Men, in two Rows, making a continued Lane, with lighted Flambeaus in their Hands.

4. The Unfortunate King *Peter* of *Castile*, being drove out of his Kingdom by his Bastard-Brother *Henry*, as-

sisted by the *French*, and flying from *Sevil*, after loosing all the Treasure he had amassed, arrived at the Town of *Cornuche* in *Portugal*, with his two Daughters, *Constance* and *Elizabeth*, and thence sent to Advertise our King, then at *Coimbra*, of his Arrival: That King's Daughter *Beatrix*, was Travelling another way, to be Married to the *Portuguese* Prince, her Father not having any forethought of what hapned to him. This Accident much surprized the *Portuguese*; some were for protecting a rightful King, their Neighbour and Confederate; others were for more safe than honourable Courses, not to embroil themselves in the Quarrels of others. This Advice was followed, and our King made the best Excuse he could, for not entertaining that Unhappy Prince. He failing of this Refuge, withdrew to *Albuquerque*; but neither was he to be admitted there. He sent to ask a Pass of our King, to Travel through his Dominions into *Galicia*, and the Earl of *Barcelos*, and *Alvaro Perez de Castro*, were sent to Conduct him: But they not only forsook him by the way, but stole from him *Elenor*, the Daughter of his Bastard-Brother *Henry*, whom he carried with him. From *Galicia* he passed over into *England*, where he so grievously Complained to the Prince of *Wales* against the King of *Portugal*, that he was forced to send Embassadors to Vindicate himself. In the meanwhile, the New King, or rather Usurper, *Henry*, Solicited the Friendship of *Portugal*; and Embassadors meeting to that Effect, betwixt *Badajoz* and *Elvas*, a Treaty was Concluded; And it was Stipulated, That the *Castilian* should sollicite an Accommodation betwixt *Aragon* and *Portugal*; and also, That the *Aragonian* should suffer the *Portuguese* Princess *Mary*, Widow of Prince *Ferdinand*, to return to her Country, if she thought good.

5. About the end of *October*, almost Three Months before the Death of our King, was seen a prodigious Alteration, or rather Confusion in the heavenly Luminaries. On the 27th. Day at Midnight, all the Stars in a Body began to run from East to West; then suddenly dispersing, they wandred through several parts of the Sphere; next, falling nearer to the Region of the Air, the nearness made them appear like vast Globes of Fire; so that the whole Heaven seemed to be in a Flame, and the Earth threatned to be reduced to Ashes. The Sky

King Peter of Castile, flying from his rebellious Subjects, is refused Protection in Portugal.

Prodigious Alteration seen in the Sky.



King Peter's Death

His Justice and Magnificence.

in many places seemed to gape, the Stars being removed. This Spectacle lasting a considerable time, Men stood amazed, expecting the Dissolution of the Universe. Three Months after this Prodigy, our King died. It will not be amiss, to give some Instances of his Justice and Magnificence. He was not, as some have called him, Cruel; but a zealous lover of Justice, punishing Crimes with the utmost Severity, and rewarding Vertue with Liberality. The Punishments he inflicted, tho' in appearance terrible, were necessary, and well applyed. A Young Man having struck his supposed Father, and the King hearing thereof, called the Mother, and pressed her to tell him who was the Youth's Father; for it was impossible it should be her Husband. She confessed, in some time, a Fryar had got him. Thereupon the King went in Person to the Monastery, and putting the Fryar into a Case of Cork, sawed him in two. One of his Favourites lived in Adultery with a Judge's Wife, for which the King caused his Privities to be cut off. A Priest being suspended for killing a Man, he caused him to be put to Death by a Mason; saying, That the Ecclesiastical Judges condemned a Priest, for killing a Man, to be suspended from his Office; but he, in his Tribunal, would suspend the Mason from Working, for killing the Priest. The Bishop of *Porto* he scourged, for having to do with a Citizen's Wife. He caused a Gentleman to be beheaded, for staying a Country-man's Cask, that was full. A Clerk of the Treasury was hanged, for receiving a small Bribe. Hearing a Woman upbraid another with being forced, he asked the cause; and being told, her Husband ravished her before they were married, he caused him to be hanged. Knowing that a Merchant's Wife cuckolded him, one day, when the Merchant was at some Publick Feast, he surprized his Wife, with her Gallant, and burnt them, and then congratulated the Merchant, that he was revenged. A Bawd having procured a Young Woman for the Admiral, *Lancelote Pessana*, the Bawd was burnt, and the Admiral hardly obtained Pardon, after several Years absence. A Country-man complaining, that a Gentleman, to whom he had lent certain Silver Cups, would not restore them; the King kept him in hand a Year, and then caused the Gentleman to pay him Nine times the value, which was then the Penalty of Thieves; and farther

farther told him, he should be always answerable for the Country-man's Life. A Pursivant complaining, that in the Execution of his Office, a Gentleman had struck him, and torn his Beard, the Gentleman was immediately beheaded.

6. The Laws he instituted, were religiously observed. One of them condemned Judges, who received Bribes, to Death. To avoid delays in Suits, he established, there should be no Counsellors, Solicitors, nor Attorneys. He went about the Kingdom in Person, to administer Justice impartially to all Men. Tho' so much subdued himself by the Love of the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, he suffered no Crime of Incontinency to pass unpunished. Several new Pieces were coined by him, on the one side whereof, was his Effigies sitting in a Chair, holding a naked Sword; on the reverse, the Royal Arms, with these Inscriptions, *Peter, King of Portugal and Algarve. God assist me, and make me Victorious over my Enemies.* He was so Bountiful, that, like the Emperor *Titus*, he thought himself not a King the day he gave nothing: To this purpose, he kept always much Plate. He was much addicted to Musick, and used to go abroad at Nights, and dance to the sound of Trumpets. Notwithstanding his great Liberality, he left a considerable Treasure to his Successor, which he gathered without the least dissatisfaction to his Subjects. In fine, such was his Life, that his Death was generally lamented; and it was in all mens Mouths, *That such Ten Years Government never were, nor would again be seen in this Kingdom.* Others said, *That either he should never have been born, or never have died.*

7. This King was of great Stature, a Majestick Presence, his Forehead large, his Eyes black and beautiful, his Hair reddish, which he wore long, his Mouth small, his Visage long. He somewhat stammered in his Speech, was addicted to Poetry, and some Verses of his are still extant. He Reigned Ten Years, wanting Two Months, and died in *January, 1367.* He is buried by the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, and his Picture, to the Life, on the Tomb. The Lady *Constance*, his first Wife, lies in the Church of *S. Francis at Santarem.* By her he had Issue; 1. *Lewis*, who died an Infant. 2. *Ferdinand*, who succeeded in the Throne. 3. *Mary*, married to *Ferdinand* Prince of *Aragon*, Son to King *Alonso* the Fourth.

Laws established by him.

His Person, and Interment.

1367.

His

His Issue.

His Children by the Lady *Agnes de Castro* were  
 1. *Alonso*, who died a Child. 2. *Denis*, who refusing to  
 kiss the Hand of Queen *Ellenor*, Wife to King *Ferdinand*,  
 went away to *Castile*, where he married *Joanna*, Bastard-  
 Daughter to King *Henry*. 3. *John*, who by the Advice  
 of Queen *Ellenor*, killed the Lady *Mary Tellez de Me-  
 nes*, his own Wife, and the Queen's Sister. He should  
 have succeeded King *Ferdinand*, but that King *John* of  
*Castile* kept him Prisoner, and in the mean while his  
 Bastard Brother, called also *John*, usurped the Crown.  
 In *Castile* he married *Constance*, Bastard Daughter to  
 King *Henry*. 4. *Beatrix*, Wife to D. *Sancho*, Earl of  
*Albuquerque*, Bastard Son to King *Alonso XI.* of *Castile*.

King *Peter* had one Bastard Son, called *John*, Master  
 of the Military Order of *Avis*; who, after the Death  
 of King *Ferdinand*, usurped the Crown.

## C H A P. XI.

*The First Part of the Life and Reign of Fer-  
 dinand the first of the Name, and ninth  
 King of Portugal, from the Year 1340. till  
 1373.*

King Fer-  
dinand his  
Birth.

1340.

1367.  
He engages  
in a War  
against  
Castile.

1. **F**erdinand was the Second Son of King *Peter*, and  
 his Wife *Constance*. He was Born in the City  
*Coimbra*, and succeeded his Father at 27 Years of Age.  
 The Peace and Treasures King *Ferdinand* inherited, were  
 not at all lasting; for he engaged himself in a War  
 against *Castile*, pretending a Right to that Crown, after  
 the Death of King *Peter*, as Great Grandson to King  
*Sancho*, Henry, the present Possessor, being a Bastard  
 and Regicide. Many Persons of Note, who fled out of  
*Castile*, encouraged him in this Enterprize, and many  
 Towns not admitting *Henry*, offered themselves to *Fer-  
 dinand*. He bestowed vast Possessions on several of the  
*Castilians* that came over to him, as particularly to *Fer-  
 dinand*, Earl of *Castro Xeres*, and Brother-in-law to  
 King *Henry*, he gave Fifteen Towns, to D. *Alvaro Perez  
 de Castro*, his Brother, Eight Towns, the Earldom of  
*Arroyolos*,

*Arroyolos*, and the Office of Constable; to *Ferdinand  
 Alonso de Zamora*, Nineteen Towns, and so to many  
 others, too long to recount, besides Gifts in Money and  
 Jewels, which exhausted the Treasures left by his three  
 Predecessors. Many Cities and Towns also of *Castile*  
 declared for our King, where he immediately coined  
 Money, bearing the Arms and Titles of both Kingdoms.  
 Our King, in outward appearance, pretended more Zeal  
 to Revenge the Murder of King *Peter*, than Ambition  
 to joyn that Kingdom to his own. To inculcate this  
 Opinion, he sent Embassadors to the Pope, the King of  
*England*, and other Princes, laying before them the hei-  
 nousness of the Crime, as committed by a Brother a-  
 gainst his Brother, and by a Subject against his Sove-  
 reign.

2. Whilst the Embassadors were on their way, the  
 King concluded a League with the Moorish King of *Gra-  
 nada* for Fifty Years, during which time they were to  
 assist one another, and neither was to pretend any Right  
 to whatsoever Places of *Castile* were taken by the other;  
 nor was either of them, if assisted with any Troops by  
 his Confederate, to allow them any Pay. For farther  
 Security, King *Ferdinand* asked of King *Peter*, the *A-  
 ragonian*, his Daughter *Ellenor* in Marriage, and Em-  
 bassadors were sent on both sides to agree the Articles,  
 tho' that Lady was before betrothed to *John*, the Eldest  
 Son of King *Henry*. The Princess was married by Proxy  
 to our King at *Lisbon*, the *Aragonian* Embassador repre-  
 senting her Person. The Articles of Marriage were,  
 That she should bring 100000 Florins Portion; That her  
 Father should make War on *Castile* two Years; That the  
 Husband should give three Months Pay to 3000 Horse  
 in his Father-in-law's Service. Some Places in *Castile*  
 were also allotted to the *Aragonian*, for every Man gives  
 freely of what he has not. Soon after, the Bridegroom  
 that was to have been, but never was, sent a Rich Pre-  
 sent to *Barcelona* for the Bride, without expecting the  
 Payment of the 100000 Florins. He also sent Eighteen  
 hundred weight of Gold to be coined, to defray Charges  
 there. To Convoy the Bride, seven beautiful Gallies  
 were fitted out, whereof that which was to carry her,  
 had her Sails of Silk, wrought with Gold, and all that  
 was above Water was gilt. The Rowers were cloathed  
 in the King's Livery, and many gallant Gentlemen went

Enters into  
League  
with the  
Moorish  
King of  
Granada.

as

as Volunteers. Among other things of value there was carried a Crown of inestimable price for the Bride. D. John Alonso Tello, Earl of Barcelos, attended by the Bishops of Evora and Silves, and the Abbot of Alcobaca went Embassadors, and performed the Ceremony of marrying the Princess in his Masters Name. But her Father put off the delivering of her till the Pope's Dispensation was obtained, and times altering, all came to nothing.

3. King Ferdinand began the Wars in Galicia with a small Power; Coruna, and other Places, voluntarily submitted to him. Monterrey was taken by Force, after it had made a vigorous Defence. But understanding that King Henry drew near with numerous Forces, Ferdinand went away by Sea, to Porto, leaving D. Nunno Freyre, Master of the Military Order of Christ, with 400 Horse in Coruna, Alonso Gomez de Lira at Tuy, and others in other Places. Henry to bring our King to Peace, left them and entered Portugal, burning all the Country as far as Braga, where Lope Gomez de Lira made a vigorous Defence, but was forced to abandon the Place, after loosing 48 Men, because he was not relieved, and the Town was not Walled nor Garisoned; having Articled to Surrender, if not relieved by a certain time. Henry finding the Place was not Tenable, Burnt it, and removed to Guemaraens, which being better Fortified held out against him: Seing he prevailed little by Force, he thought to take it by Stratagem, and to that purpose James Gonzalez de Castro, got into the Place disguised like a Country-Man, but being discovered was put to Death, and his Body exposed to the Dogs. Now it was that Count Ferdinand de Castro, Brother-in-Law to King Henry carried about by him as a Prisoner, made his Escape into the Town with his Keeper Ramiro Nunez, and both went into the Portuguese's Service. King Ferdinand, who was then at Coimbra with a numerous Army, with all speed made towards the Castilian, sending before a Herald to Challenge him, but he drew off by the way of Bragança, Vinaes, and Outeyro, which Places he took. Miranda was Surprized by certain Castilians, who in Carriers Habit were admitted in: Cedavin after a vigorous resistance was Betrayed by Vasco Estevez, but his Treason tho' not discovered in time to prevent the Loss of the Place, was so soon found that he was Hanged for it. Henry having secured Bragança, halted

1369.  
Henry of  
Castile, in-  
vades Por-  
tugal.

halted to Castile, for that the King of Granada was now acting with a great Power in Andalusia.

4. Ferdinand having missed of his Enemy, divided his Army under several Commanders, Garrisoning all Places he was suspicious of. He had recovered most of what was lost, but the People not satisfied with his Proceedings, complained he only knew the way betwixt Lisbon, and Santarem, because he often went from the one Place to the other, whence it became a Proverb, *That the Fool goes and comes betwixt Lisbon, and Santarem*; when they would express a Man often does the same thing to no purpose. Giles Fernandez with 60 Horse, and 400 Foot, made an Incurtion towards Medellin, where he took to great a Booty, that fearing to loose it if pursued, he caused his Uncle Martin Yannez, to feign himself to be Prince John, and as such to discharge several Prisoners, who reporting his being there with a greater Force than really was, deterred the Enemy from following him. Gonzalo Mendez being General, took this Giles Fernandez with him to make an Inroad to Badajoz. The Garrison issued out upon them, and both sides fought with great Resolution. In this Action a Butcher of Lisbon, called Laurence, killed several Castilians. In the mean while Prince John forcing his way into the Suburbs of Badajoz, Burnt them. Gomez Lorenzo de Avelar, on the side of Ciudad Rodrigo, took S. Felices, Inojosa, and Cerralvo. Here John Ruiz Portocarrero, with only 23 Horse, killed or took almost 80 of the Enemy from Ledesma. This Year ended with a Fire at Lisbon, which Burnt down all the then Smiths Street, it is now the Confectioners.

Several  
Military  
Expeditions.

5. As the Last Year ended in Fire, so this began with storms of Rain and Wind, which were so Violent, that the Gate of the Cathedral, tho' fastned with Iron Locks and Bolts, was carried into the middle of the Church; the Ships in the Harbour being drove from their Anchors were dashed into pieces; but the Gallies escaped better by lying in the Mouth of the River Guadalquivir. The great Rains, and also the Moors who infested his Frontiers, obliged King Henry to quit the Siege of Ciudad Rodrigo. The Queen his Wife in Person had distressed Alonso Lopez de Tejada, in Carmona, so that he agreed to Surrender the Place if not relieved by a Day prefixed, and gave up his Two Sons as Hostages. Miffier Gregorio d. Campomoro, with only 60 Men, made his way through

1370.  
Great  
Storms.

the



the Camp into the Town, at the Day prefixed, the Queen threatned to execute his Sons; he bid her do so, for he was able to get others; and so he persisting Obstinate, they were beheaded; all Men calling that Barbarity, which he thought would be accounted Magnanimity; but it could not be such, being a breach of Promise. Thirty two *Portuguese* Gallies had been a Year upon the Coast, under the Command of the Admiral *Lancelot Pessano*, a *Genoese*. The *Castilians*, when this Fleet appeared before *Barrameda*, scoffed at our Men, for that having refused Aid to King *Peter*, whilst living, they now pretended to Defend him after he was Dead. But they in Revenge, destroyed the Island of *Cadiz*, and the Shores of the Continent, till the severity of the Winter and Diseases almost consumed them. The Fleet of *Castile* coming out of *Sevil*, took a *Portuguese* Ship that had Money and Provisions on Board, and then shut up our Admiral *Pessano* in the River, to oblige him to Fight in that narrow Place. He fitted out Two Fireships which dispersed the Enemy, and in that time he escaped, having lost one Galley.

The Portuguese Fleet, wastes the Island of Cadiz.

1371.

6. *Carmona* still held out, but fearing the Power of King *Henry*, sent a Gentleman to our King *Ferdinand* for Succour, according to his promise. This being refused, the Town was obliged to Surrender. There was in it a considerable Treasure of King *Peter's*, and Two of his Bastard-Sons who were cast into Prison. Pope *Gregory* the 11th. sent Two Nuncios to Mediate a Peace betwixt the Two Kings, which was concluded at *Alcontin* in *Algarve*, upon these Conditions, That they should be obliged to assist one another; That the *Portuguese* should be a Friend to *Charles* King of *France*, that he should take to Wife *Ellenor*, *Henry's* Daughter; That he should have with her *Cuidad Rodrigo*, *Valencia de Alcantara*, *Monte-Mayor*, *Alhariz*, and a Summ of Money; That a general Pardon should be granted on both sides. Thus our King broke his Word with him of *Aragon*, who in revenge kept all the Treasure that had been sent to his Daughter. King *Ferdinand* finding his Treasures exhausted, called in the Old Money, and enhanced the Value of the New, which did great Harm, and much more when he endeavoured afterwards to rectifie that Error. The Five Months allowed for the Princess *Ellenor* to come out of *Castile* were now expiring, when the King

Peace concluded at the instance of the Pope.

falling in Love with the Lady *Ellenor Tellez de Meneses*, forgot his Bride. This Lady *Ellenor Tellez* was Wife to *John Lorenzo de Cunha* Lord of *Pombeyro*. He fell in Love with her at his Sister's, the Princess *Beatrix*, where he was always so assiduous, as gave occasion to suspect him guilty of a more than Brotherly Affection. This Lady being about to return into the Country, whence she came, the King ordered her Sister who attended the Princess, to stay her in Town, for he would marry no other Woman. The Sister objected, that he was engaged to the Princess of *Castile*, and her Sister Married. The First, he replied, might be easily put by; and as for the latter, he said, she being Married to a Kinsman without Dispensation, the Marriage was void. All which gave the Lady *Ellenor* to understand the King's Affection was not at all Nice.

7. Scarce had she consented when her Marriage being called in question, and the Husband not opposing it, Judgment was easily obtained for the K. Hereupon her Husband went away to *Castile* and there publicly wore a pair of Golden Horns. In fine, *Ferdinand* Married the Lady *Ellenor*. The whole Kingdom was astonished at this Action, but *Lisbon* shewed it self above all other Places. Here a Taylor, called *Ferdinand Vasquez*, a bold well-spoken Fellow, gathered 3000 of the People, and with them went to the Pallace, nothing being heard but Reproaches against the New Queen. To appease them, the King protested he was not Married to her, and promised the next Day to hear them, when they were Calmer, at the Church of *S. Dominick*. By Day, the Multitude was in the broad Place before that Church; but the King fearing the popular Fury, was already gone away to *Santarem*. When the People understood it, they vented their Malice in Reproaches, and this made the Queen stir up the King to Revenge. The Taylor was apprehended, and many of his Followers; some whereof had their Hands, others their Feet cut off; many more fled, now too late understanding, that Subjects ought to have no other Redress against the Miscarriages of their Sovereigns, than by their Prayers to God. In the mean while, the King traversed the Kingdom with his beloved Consort, till being come to the pleasant Monastery of *Lega*, Two Leagues from *Porto*, he then declared, what he denied at *Lisbon*; to wit, That he was

The Lady Ellenor being divorced from her First Husband, the King marries her.

A great meeting at Lisbon on account of the Marriage.

R

Married



Married to the Lady *Ellenor*, and assigned her a greater Joynture than any Queen before her ever had.

8. All the Nobility kissing the Queen's Hand, only Prince *Denis* Son to the late King, by the Lady *Agnes de Castro* refused it, for which the King offered to Stab him, but was prevented, and the Prince fled to *Coimbra*. Tho many of the Multitude were punished, the clamours of the People against the King's Marriage ceased not, nor were they continued without reason, for that Marriage was in reality unlawful; she being the true Wife of *John Lorenzo*. *Ferdinand* at last remembering he was contracted to the Princess of *Castile*, sent to inform her Father, Thattho he could not perform that Article, he would fulfil all the rest. That Prince did not seem at all to be concerned, but Embassadors were sent on both sides to Ratifie the Peace. The New Queen having gained a Crown by her Beauty, fought now to gain the Affections of the Nobility by her Bounty, and she attained her end in a great Measure, for many who before railed, having tasted of her Favours, began to extol her Generosity. Besides, the more to bend them to her, she married all her Relations among the Nobility.

The New Queen gains Friends by her Generosity.

King Ferdinand joins in League with John of Ghent against Castile.

9. King *Ferdinand* still pursuing his inconstant Humour, began again to break with *Castile*, taking some Ships of that Crown in the River of *Lisbon*, and entering into a Confederacy with *John Duke of Lancaster*, Third Son to *Edward* the Third King of *England*, and married to *Constance* the Eldest Daughter of King *Peter* of *Castile*, in whose right he stiled himself King. It was agreed, they should joynly make War upon the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*; That they should bear an equal part in the expence of the War, and that King *Ferdinand* should have all he could take in *Castile*, excepting Towns and Castles; That each should have what he could gain in *Aragon*. King *Henry* sent an Embassador to *Portugal*, to protest against these proceedings, but to no effect. Hereupon, *Henry* marched with his Army towards *Lisbon*, his Admiral *Misser Ambrosio Bocanegra* at the same time entring the River *Tagus* with 12 Gallies. About the middle of *September* he set forward from *Zamora*, and by the way took *Almeyda*, *Pinnel*, *Linnares*, *Cerolico*, and *Viseo*, where Prince *Denis* offended at King *Ferdinand*, offered his Service to him. They marched to *Coimbra*, from whence *Ferdinand* was newly gone to *Santarem*.

Henry of Castile invades Portugal

*Santarem*, and here *Henry* quartered in the Suburbs. Our King being less forward to Fight than he had been to give the Occasion; *Henry* marched without observing much order, towards *Lisbon*, about the end of *February*. The King, and those that were with him, could from the Walls of *Santarem* discover the Enemy marching towards *Lisbon*, yet had not the Courage to attack them. *Lisbon* being surprized, *Henry* entred at *S. Antony's Gate*, and took up his Quarters in the Monastery of *S. Francis*; the People retired to the stronger parts of the Town. Our Fleet had been sent to hinder the *Castilian* Squadron from entring the Port, but our Ships were taken by them, and only 4 of our Gallies escaped, saving themselves in the Creeks. The People of *Lisbon* understanding there was a design to betray the City; dragged one of the Conspirators about the Streets, and then cut him in pieces; another was exposed to the sails of a Mill, which cast him into the River. The *Franciscan Friars*, where the King quartered, thought to have expelled him thence; but their design being discovered, he put them into Boats, without Sails or Oars, and exposed them to the mercy of the Sea; yet they got a Shoar. The *Castilians* possessed the Skirts of the Town, and many Skirmishes dayly hapned. In the mean while, the Earl of *Gijon*, King *Henry's* son, took *Cascaes* at the Mouth of *Tagus*, whilst several Parties wasted the Country. The *Lisbonians* not able to expel the Enemy out of the Suburbs, fired the Houses; and they, in requital, set Fire to the *Rua-nova*, or New Street, and so the greatest part of the City was Burnt. The Country betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, was no less infested by the Forces of *Galicia*, which routed a *Portuguese* Body that came to oppose them.

1373. He Quarters in the Suburbs of Lisbon.

Most of the City Burnt

10. Such was the posture of Affairs, when in the Month of *March*, *Guido* of *Bononia*, a Cardinal, was sent by the Pope to compose these Differences; and towards the latter end of that Month the Peace was concluded, upon these Conditions. That both the Kings should joyn with him of *France*, against the King of *England*, and Duke of *Lancaster*; That the *Portuguese* should furnish a Fleet, for Three Years, to be maintained by the *Castilians*; That the *English* should not be supplied with Ammunition from *Portugal*; That the *Portuguese* should expel the *Castilians* that followed him; That a general Pardon should be granted on both sides; That the Prin-

Peace concluded.

The Two  
Kings meet  
in friendly  
manner.

cess *Beatrix*, Sister to King *Ferdinand*, should be married to *Sancho* Lord of *Alouquerque*, Brother to King *Henry*. The two Kings met upon the Banks of the River *Tagus*, and parted in friendly manner. In pursuance of the Treaty of Peace, Count *Sancho* married the Lady *Beatrix*, and the Wedding was kept with great Solemnity. A Match was also agreed betwixt *Elizabeth*, Bastard-Daughter to our King, and *Alonso* Earl of *Gijon*, Bastard-Son to King *Henry*. Thus ended the War, to the Satisfaction of both Kings; but with the Desolation of their Kingdoms.

## CHAP. XII.

*The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of Ferdinand the First of the Name, and Ninth King of Portugal, from the Year 1373. till 1383.*

1374  
Ferdinand enters into a League with the King of Castile, against the King of Aragon.

1375.

1376.

1377.

Prince John privately marries Mary, Sister to Queen Ellenor.

1. King *Ferdinand* had not yet forgot the Treasure detained from him by the King of *Aragon*, in return of his Mutability. He thereupon meditated Revenge, but it was hard to compass. It happened the King of *Castile* fell at Variance with the *Aragonian*, and our King joyned in League with the former against the other. But the *Castilian* knowing the inconstancy of *Ferdinand*, soon came to agreement with the *Aragonian*. The more to bind the *Portuguese* to him, he proposed a Match betwixt our Princess *Beatrix*, and his own Bastard-Son *Frederick*. This Match being approved of by the Cortes at *Leyria*; they were married by Proxy, and the King of *Castile* swore to perform the Articles of the Treaty, on the 19th. of *January*. Our King being forsaken by the *Castilian*, concluded a League against *Aragon*, with *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Son to the King of *France*. Prince *John* of *Portugal*, falling in Love with the Lady *Mary*, Sister to the then Queen *Ellenor*, raised also by her Beauty to the Throne, he was privately married to her. But Queen *Ellenor*, instead of rejoycing at the Advancement of her Sister, fearing that the King dying without Issue, she

she might come to be Queen, contrived her Death; and to compass her ends, she perswaded the Prince she would Marry him to the Princess *Beatrix*, the King's only Daughter, and by that means secure him the Succession of the Crown. At the same time she accused her Sister of defiling his Bed. The Prince, moved with Hope and Revenge, hasted to *Coimbra*, and breaking in upon the Innocent Lady, murdered her as she leaped naked out of Bed, and taking Horse, fled to secure himself and his followers. As soon as the News of this Action came to Court, the Queen went into deep Mourning. The Prince easily obtained his Pardon, and coming to Court, began to solicit the Conclusion of the Match before proposed to him by the Queen, with the Lady *Beatrix*; but finding nothing in her but Deceit, he retired to the Province that lies betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, and thence fled to *Castile*, where he was kept from the Crown of *Portugal*, which would have fallen to him, as we shall see in the next Reign, had he not fled for killing his Wife.

He Murders her.

1378.

2. A mighty Solar Eclipse preceded the Death of *Henry*, King of *Castile*, which happened on the 30th. of *May*. Embassadors went immediately from *Portugal*, to propose to *John*, the new King, a Match betwixt his Eldest Son *Ferdinand*, then a Year old, and *Beatrix*, Princess of *Portugal*, tho' she was before contracted to *Frederick*, King *Henry's* Bastard Son. The *Castilian* approving of this Proposal, sent his Embassadors to *Portugal*, who concluded upon the Articles of Marriage. But notwithstanding this so late Capitulation, King *Ferdinand*, hoping to gain some Advantage over the Young King, resolved upon War. *John Fernandez Andeyro*, one of them expelled *Portugal*, upon the Pacification with King *Henry*, was at this time in *England*, to whom private Instructions were sent, to treat with the Duke of *Lancaster*, and *Edmund*, Duke of *York*, for Succours. They espoused the Cause, and *Andeyro* came away with the News to *Portugal*, where the King being at *Estremoz*, kept him up in a Tower, that the Design might not take Air, nor he seem to Entertain any of the Fugitives. It fell out the Queen spoke sometimes with *Andeyro* in this Retirement; and as Queens are but Women, their Familiarity became scandalous; for she who had forsaken her Lawful Husband for a King, now abandoned

A great Eclipse of the Sun.

1379.

1380.

King Ferdinand underhand treats with the Dukes of Lancaster and York about subduing of Castile.

that King for a Private Man, whom she raised to the honour of an Earl. After some time, the King ordered him to appear publickly at *Leyria*, as if newly come from *England*, and there, as had been agreed, he was apprehended for coming into *Portugal* without leave. Within a few days he was again set at Liberty, and it was given out, he should lose his Head if he stay'd in the Kingdom. Under this Pretence he returned to *England*, to sollicite the execution of the Treaty concluded.

3. King *John* understanding that *Edmund*, Duke of *York*, raised Forces in *England*, to Conquer *Castile* for his Brother the Duke of *Lancaster*, who had a Right to it by his Wife, the Daughter of King *Peter*, and that he intended to assist the King of *Portugal*; marched now as far as *Zamora*, fitted out his Fleet at *Sevil*, and sent *Ferdinand Ofores*, Master of the Knights of *Santiago*, to secure *Badajoz*. The King of *Portugal* had already fitted out 22 Galleys at *Lisbon*, and sent Commanders to all the Frontiers. The first Action of King *Ferdinand* was the demolishing the Walls of his own City of *Evora*, which were so strong, that three Years were spent in that Work. The Portuguese Fleet, commanded by the Earl *John Alonso Tello*, the Queen's Brother, set out from *Lisbon*, and in the Sea of *Algarve* met with the Fleet of *Castile*, consisting of 17 Galleys, under the Command of *Ferdinand Sanchez de Toar*. He being inferiour in number, endeavoured to shun coming to an Engagement: But our Admiral pursues and comes up with him off of *Saltes*, having left behind 8 Galleys, that went to take in some Fisher-Boats. *Toar* seeing our Galleys dispersed, bravely boards and takes 12 of the first that came up, and afterwards, Seven of the Eight that were behind. Only one of our Galleys escaped, to bring the News to *Lisbon*, the rest were carryed in Triumph to *Sevil*. Few were killed in this Engagement, but the Prisoners amounted to 6000. In the mean time, the Master *Ferdinand Ofores*, infested the Frontiers with frequent Excursions from *Badajoz*. *Peter Alvarez Pereyra*, Prior of *Crato*, marched with 1000 Lances, and 4000 Cross-bow-Men in quest of him, but came too late, for he was retired to *Badajoz*. King *John* straightly besieged the Town of *Almeyda*, thither came to him Prince *John*, who was fled from *Portugal* on account of killing his Wife, and offered, with the assistance of some

All the Portuguese Fleet, except one Galley, taken by the Castilians.

banished *Portugueses*, to cause *Lisbon* to be delivered up to the King. Upon this, he appeared before *Lisbon* with six Galleys, but being disappointed of his Design, returned back to *Sevil*.

4. King *Ferdinand* sent his Chancellor, *Laurence Yannez Fogaca*, into *England*, to hasten the promised Succours. The Duke of *York* set Sail from *Plymouth* with 3000 Men, and entred the River of *Lisbon* on the 19th. of July. With him came the Princess his Wife, and many Ladies, as also his Son *Edward*, and some of the banished *Portugueses*, among whom was *Andeyro*, who came not so much to serve the King in his Wars, as the Queen in her Amours, the King's Sickness administering a favourable Opportunity. The King went aboard to receive the new Guests, who were lodged in the Monastery of *S. Dominick*, where Rich Presents were bestowed upon them, and they were sumptuously entertained. The King was by the Treaty obliged to furnish the English with Horses, and he gave them more Mules than Horses, for there were scarce any in the Kingdom, and he gave such as could be had. The Duke of *York* advised our King to adhere to Pope *Urban*, and disown the Anti-Pope *Clement*, which the King willingly complied with; for there being then a Schism in the Church, the English would not hear the Masses said by Portuguese Priests, because they acknowledged the Anti-Pope. *Edward*, the Duke's Son, was solemnly contracted to the Princess *Beatrix*, they being both about six Years of Age. *Elvas* was at that time besieged by the Castilians, who hearing of the Arrival of the English, raised the Siege, and departed. The English committed many Outrages in *Lisbon*, and being ordered to March against *Castile*, did no less harm in the Country as they went, which was the cause that many of them were cut off by the Portuguese. *D. John Alonso*, Earl of *Ourem*, and the Queen's Brother, dying, the Queen gave his Title and Honours to her Gallant, *John Fernandez Andeyro*. He was a married Man, and his Wife in *Galicia*. The King, to take him from the Queen, caused his Wife to come to Court, and the Queen endeavoured to gain her with Gifts, which she received, yet at the same time openly spoke of the Queen whatsoever her jealousy dictated.

5. This Year another Powerful Fleet of *Castile* from *Biscay* entred the River *Tagus*, and meeting no Opposition,

1381.  
The Duke of York arrives at Lisbon with 3000 Men

A Schism in the Church.  
The Duke of York's Son contracted to the Princess Beatrix.

1382.



The Fleet  
of Castile  
again ra-  
vages the  
Coast.

tion, destroyed some Vessels; then Landing, they burnt three Royal Palaces, and ravaged all that Coast. At length, *Peter Alvarez Pereyra*, Prior of *Crato*, with 200 Horse, cut off almost all the Party of the Enemy, and recovered the Booty they carryed away, which was some check to them for the future. *Nunno Alvarez Pereyra* lay in Ambush with 24 Horse, and 30 Foot, near the Bridge of *Alicantara*, there he put to flight 20 of the Enemy, who fled to the Shoar. The Enemy increasing to about 250, his Men refused to Engage at such odds, and he, to draw them on, run upon them alone, where his Horse fell upon him, but his Men coming to his Rescue, brought him off, the *Castilians* at the same time retiring to their Vessels. The Queen having in Publick rent a Veil in two, and given one half to her Gallant, *John Fernandez Andeyro*, and the other to Count *Gonzalo*, for that they were sweaty, and had no Handkerchiefs to wipe their Faces, for it seems they were not then used in *Portugal*; *Gonzalo Vasquez de Azevedo*, her Cousin, reproached her with it; and she, in Revenge, accused him, and *John*, Bastard Son to the late King, of holding Intelligence with the *Spaniards*. Hereupon they were both committed to Prison. She contrived to put them to Death, but failing in her Projects, set them at Liberty, and shewed extraordinary Kindness to them both, the better to disguise her Practices against them, as also since she had failed to destroy them, to bind them to her Interest.

The Eng-  
lish and  
Portu-  
guese take  
Towns in  
Castile.

6. The Master of the Knights of *Avis* being now at Liberty, joyned with some *English*, and making together 200 Horse, and 4000 Foot, they marched to *Castile*, and laid Siege to *Lobon*, which they took, the *English* being the first that entred. *Cortijo* fell into their hands, and was more hardly used; for tho' the Priests appeared on the Walls with the Blessed Sacrament, the *English* put all to the Sword, in Revenge of one of theirs that was killed. The Kings of *Castile* and *Portugal* were now at the Head of their Armies, the former at *Badajoz*, the latter at *Elvas*, ready to decide their Quarrel by Battle. King *Ferdinand* Knighted 24 of his own People and the *English*; but being told, he could not, tho' a King, confer that Honour, because he had not received it himself, he caused the Duke of *York* to Knight him; and then repeated the Ceremony to those 24 Knights. The

The whole Day was spent by both Armies looking upon each other, and at last, the one drew back to *Badajoz*, and the other to *Elvas*. What the cause of parting so should be, cannot certainly be assigned; but some said, The *Castilian* feared the *English*, who had been before victorious in *Castile*, to which the Duke of *Lancaster* had a good Title, and had been once proclaimed by part of the Army. Whatever it was, a Treaty of Peace was immediately set afoot, none knowing who had first moved for it. Embassadors being sent on both Sides, the Articles were at length agreed upon, without the Knowledge of the *English*; and were, first, That the Princess *Peace con- Beatrix*, lately contracted to *Edward*, Son to the Duke *cluded* of *York*, should marry Prince *Ferdinand*, King *John's* without second Son, having before been promised to the eldest. *the Know-* But this Match was better liked, to prevent the Union of *ledge of* the Two Crowns. Secondly, That the Twenty two Gal- *the Eng-* leys, taken by the *Castilians*, should be restored. Third- *lish*. ly, That a general Pardon should be granted on both sides. Fourthly, That the King of *Castile* should furnish Ships to carry the *English* Home, as if he had sent for them. When these Articles were to have been ratified, the *Castilian* demurred, as to restoring the Gallies, and sending Home the *English*: The Embassadors hereupon challenged him, in their Master's Name; and he scornfully answered, *I did not think he had so much Con- rage*. Nevertheless, through the Perswasion of the Master of the Knights of *Santiago*, he ratify'd the Peace.

7. The Peace was proclaimed at *Elvas*, which made the *English* rail, for that it was concluded without their *After the* Knowledge; and the King put them off the best he *Peace King* could. At this time came to the Court Cardinal *Peter de Ferdi-* *Luna*, an *Aragonian*, sent by the Anti-Pope *Clement*, and a- *nand a-* requiring King *Ferdinand* to acknowledge him again, *gain sub-* for he had cast him off at the Request of the *English*. *mits to* The King assembled some learned Men, and the worst *the Anti-* Advice was followed, for he again submitted himself to *pope*. the Schismatical Pope. In the mean while died *Ellenor* 1383. Queen of *Castile*; and King *Ferdinand* forgetting he *The King* refus'd his Daughter to the eldest Son of *Castile*, to pre- *of Castile* vent Disputes about the Succession, now offered her to *marries* the Father. His Offer was accepted, and this Princess *the Daugh-* at last found a Husband, the fifth time she had been con- *ter of King* tracted: For she was first promised to Duke *Frederick*; *Ferdi-* and *nand*. Secondly,



secondly, to *Henry* Prince of *Castile*; thirdly, to *Ferdinand* his Brother; fourthly, to the Duke of *York*; and now lastly to King *John*. She proved a Pattern of Chastity, for her Husband dying whilst she was yet very young, and being courted by several Princes, she answered, That Women of Honour did not marry twice. The Archbishop of *Santiago* came to *Portugal* to receive the Bride, the King being then at *Salvatierra*, upon the River *Tagus*. It was agreed, That in case King *Ferdinand* died without Heirs, his Daughter should inherit, and after her her Issue; but if she had none, then King *John* should succeed; and that if King *John*, his new Queen, and the Princess *Ellenor*, Wife to the Prince of *Navar*, died without Heirs, before King *Ferdinand*, then he should inherit the Crown of *Castile*. That till the new Queen of *Castile* had a Son Fourteen Years of Age, Queen *Ellenor* her Mother should govern *Portugal*. Thus it appears, the future Pretensions of the King of *Castile* to the Crown of *Portugal*, were just, as were Queen *Ellenor's* to the Government; and that the succeeding King *John* was an Usurper, having no lawful Title to the Crown.

King Ferdinand falls sick.

8. King *Ferdinand* being Sick, his Queen *Ellenor* conducted the Princess, then not full Thirteen Years of Age, to *Elvas*. When both Parties had sworn the Performance of Articles, the King and his Bride met, in Tents near that City. Such was Queen *Ellenor's* Beauty, that the *Castilians* seeing her said, King *Ferdinand* were much to blame, had he not loved her, having seen her; or if, having loved her, he had not made her a Queen. Here the Cardinal of *Luna* produced a Dispensation for them to marry, they being within the prohibited Degrees of Consanguinity; after which there was a most splendid Entertainment. Then they returned to *Elvas*, where the nuptial Rites were solemnly performed with extraordinary Pomp; and after all publick Testimonies of Joy, and Demonstrations of Grandeur were over, the King of *Castile* gave rich Presents to all the *Portuguese* Gentry. Queen *Ellenor* returning to *Almada*, where King *Ferdinand* lay sick, and intimating, That she liked not the King of *Castile*; The Master of the Order of *Avis*, commended his Sense and Modesty; to which she answered, *That is true, but I would have a Man be more a Man.* At last, King *Ferdinand* being convinc'd of the extravagant Familiarity that was betwixt the Queen; and

Count

Count *John Fernandez Andeyro*, and being unwilling by punishing to expose her Weakness, or to lose her he so passionately loved, he ordered the Master of the Knights of *Avis* to make him away privately. But though he performed not at this time what was enjoined him, yet afterwards he murdered him in the Revolution that happened when the Order was void.

9. The King now spent with Sickness, removed from *Almada* to *Lisbon*, where he died very Penitent, on the 24th. of *October*, 1383. He was almost Forty four Years of Age, reigned Seventeen, and was buried with Pomp, in the Quire of the Monastery of *S. Francis*, at *Santarem*. His Presence was so Gracful and Majestick, that through any Disguise he appeared to be a King, his Visage was long, his Complexion fair, as was his Hair, and his Eyes sparkling. The great Expence of his Wars obliged him to enhance the price of the Money, whereof he coined several Sorts; but after his Wars ceased, all the Coin was restor'd to its intrinsick Value. He removed the University, erected by King *Denis* at *Coimbra*, to *Lisbon*, but it afterwards returned to the same Place from whence he brought it. He was rather Prodigal than Liberal, which may appear by the many Towns we have mentioned he gave to the *Castilians* that came over to him. As to his other Gifts, one Instance will serve to demonstrate the rest. To *John Alonso de Mexica*, one of the *Castilian* Gentlemen that came over to *Portugal*, besides Towns and Lands, he gave, in one Day, 50 Horses, 30 Mules, 3 Suits of Armour, 30000 Marks of Plate, and 4 Sumptures loaded with rich Tapistry. He pulled down the *Roman* Walls of *Ebora*, to build New. And thus, though unfortunate in all his Undertakings, he secured to himself the Love of all Men.

His Character.

10. His lawful Issue was, first, *Beatrice*, married to King *John* the first of *Castile*; they wronged her who said she was Daughter to Count *Fernandez Andeyro*, for she was Eight Years of Age when he begun to be familiar with the Queen. Secondly, A Son, who died in his Infancy. Thirdly, Another in the same nature. One Bastard Daughter he had, married to *Alonso*, Earl of *Gijon*, Bastard Son to King *Henry* the second of *Castile*, from whom sprung the Family of the *Noronhas*.

His Issue.

The END of THE THIRD BOOK.  
THE

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

## The Fourth BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

*The Birth, Education, and Actions of John, Bastard Son to King Peter of Portugal; His Promotion to be Protector of the Kingdom; and Wars with Castile; from the Year 1357. till the end of 1384.*

1. **J**OH<sup>N</sup>, Bastard Son to King Peter, by *Teresa* *Alonso* of Galicia, was born at *Lisbon*, on the 22d. of April, 1357. In his Infancy he was kept by *Laurence de Lyria*, a noted Citizen; then delivered to *Nunho Freyre de Andrade*, Master of the Order of Christ, who presented him to the King at the Age of Seven Years, asking for him the Mastership of the Order of *Avis*, then vacant, by the Death of *D. Martin de Avelar*. This was the first time his Father saw him, and having Knighted him, gave him that Honour. He

1357.  
John, Bastard Son to King Peter, aspires to the Crown.

He was sent to receive it at *Avis*, a Convent of that Order, and was there educated, till of Age to bear Arms. His Actions till the Death of King *Ferdinand*, have been related; it now remains to recount what he did afterwards. The late King, in his Will, left the Administration of the Government to his Wife *Queen Ellenor*, in pursuance of what had been Stipulated with King *John* of Castile, upon his marrying the Lady *Beatrice*, lawful Daughter to King *Ferdinand*; tho' the unbridled Malice of the Multitude Defamed her with the Name of Count *John Fernandez Andeyro* his Daughter. *Queen Ellenor* entred upon the Government with Extraordinary tokens of Grief for the Death of the King her Husband. The Council of the City of *Lisbon* advised her not to be so negligent in the Government as her Husband had been; and she answered them so graciously, that they went away well satisfied. The King of *Castile* immediately sent Embassadors to condole her Loss, and at the same time to require himself to be proclaimed King in the Right of his Wife, and in pursuance of the late Capitulations. Scarce was this mentioned throughout the Kingdom, when a general reluctancy appeared in the Countenances of all Men. *D. Henry Manuel de Villena*, Earl of *Sea*, and Uncle to the King *Castile*, was ordered to Proclaim him in *Lisbon*, but was opposed by *D. Alvaro Perez de Castro*, in behalf of King *Peter's* lawful Issue by the Lady *Agnes de Castro*. The same happened at *Santarem*, *Elvas*, and in most Places of the Kingdom. King *John* proposed his Title, by his Embassador, to the City of *Lisbon*, but it was not favourably received.

2. The First contrivance of the Master of *Avis*, with some others, was to Murder the Count *John Fernandez*, the Queen's Favourite; and the said Master being appointed General of the Country, betwixt the Rivers *Tagus* and *Guadiana*, he marched Three Leagues from *Lisbon*, whence suddenly returning with armed Men, he rushed into the Palace, and there Murdered the Unhappy Count. The Queen, when she heard it, said, *He has died a Martyr, and I will to Morrow, in proof of it, undergo the Trial of Ordeal*. Next, she went to know of the Master, whether she also must die; and a civil Answer was returned, to quiet her. The Rabble, raised by the clamours of one of the Master's Pages, who cried he would be killed in the Palace, flocked thither, and would

Before his Assuming the Crown, he Murders Count John Fernandez Andeyro.

would certainly have destroyed the Queen, had not D. John, the Master of *Avis*, looked out at the Window. He seeing the Multitude on his side, went away, followed by them to the great Market, called *Recio*, to Dine with the Queen's Brother, the Earl of *Barcelos*, who was consenting to the Murder. The Bishop of *Lisbon* was then also at Dinner at his House, and with him the Prior of *Guimaraens*, and a Notary of *Silves*. They hearing the Tumult, got up into the Belfrey, where the People seeing them, called out to have the Bells ring. They not regarding to obey these Tumultuary Shouts, the Rabble broke in, and cast them headlong from the Tower, then dragged them to the Market called *Recio*, where they lay naked and exposed to the Dogs, till the next Day. D. John, after Dinner, went to Court, to beg the Queen's Pardon for murdering the Count. She took little Notice of him, but threatned the Kingdom with the Power of *Castile*; yet fearing the Rabble, she went away from *Lisbon* to *Alenquer*, praying to God, at her departure, that she might see the City burnt.

3. Don John fearing the Power of the Queen, resolved to go away into *England*; but the more this was rumoured, the more the Multitude pressed him to stay, and protect them against *Castile*. He made some seeming opposition, but was soon brought to comply. A Council was named, where it was resolved that D. John should marry Queen *Ellenor*, for defence of the Kingdom; and that if the King of *Castile* had ever a Son by Queen *Beatrix*, the Government should continue in D. John and the Queen; till that Son came to Age. Here ceased all the Reproaches that had been cast upon the Queen, who when this Overture was made to her, rejected it with Scorn. Nevertheless he was declared Protector of the Kingdom, by the Commonalty, in the Church of *S. Dominick*; and because most of the Nobility were absent then, they were summoned to meet in the Town-House, where the chief of them being dubious what to do, one *Alonso Yannez*, a Cooper, stepped into the midst of them, and laying his Hand on his Sword, threatned such as should refuse their Consent; and they fearing the Multitude, consented to what had been done in the Church of *S. Dominick*. Thus was D. John, Master of *Avis*, entrusted with the Government and Defence of the Kingdom. His First Action that gained him

He is declared Protector of the Kingdom.

him Reputation, was the Prudent Choice he made of Counsellors; not according to Men's Quality, but their Ability. Next, to secure many of his Party, he distributed a considerable Treasure belonging to those that followed the Queen, or sided with *Castile*, amongst them, and promised a general Pardon for all Crimes but Treason; not considering that the only Treason was to support him.

4. The Queen began to think herself in Danger at *The Castle Alenquer*, and therefore leaving *Vasco Perez de Camoens* of *Lisbon* Governour there, she went away to *Santarem*. Here *Nun* taken by *no Alvarez Pereyra* who had been Educated by her, for the Protector, took her and went away to *Lisbon*, where he was admitted into the Council of State. D. John *Alonso* the Queen's Brother was Governour of the Castle of *Lisbon*, and *Martin Alonso Valente* was within as his Lieutenant. *Alonso Yannez Nogueira* got in with some Men, sent by the Queen to Re-inforce the Garrison. These refusing to deliver up their Trust to the New Protector, they were Besieged, and the Assailants threatning to Sacrifice their Wives and Children, before their Faces, if they held out; they surrendered the Place. The Nobility who opposed D. John, called the Commonalty, that followed him, *The People of the Messiah*; because they seemed to Adore him. And the Rabble termed them *Schismatics* and *Traitors*. Several Places then in the Hands of the Nobility, were easily wrested from them by the Commonalty, as *Beja*, *Portalegre*, *Evora*, and others. Now the Rabble being uppermost, began throughout the Kingdom to commit the most execrable Villanies, under the Pretence of defending their Country. It was an unpardonable Offence, even to name *Castile*; And the Lady *Joanna Perez Ferreyrim*, Abbess of the Monastery of *Castres*, seeing a Man ill used for that pretended Crime modestly reproved their Cruelty, but such was their Rage, that tho' she fled into the great Church, and embraced the Sanctuary, in which the Holy Sacrament is kept, there they gave her several Wounds, then dragging her from the Altar, tore off her Vail; next they cut off her Coats so high, as modesty forbids to utter, which done she was dragged into the Market, and there hewed in pieces; Lastly, the Body was dragged to the Place where they shut up the Cattle, and left there; till some Charitable Body buried it by Night. To compleat this

Barbarities of the rebellious Rabble.

Sacrilege

Sacrilege they returned to the Monastery, designing to Murder all the Nuns, but they withdrew themselves from their Fury.

*Queen Ellenor* seeing her self in manifest Danger, fled to her Son-in-Law the King of *Castile*, who espoused his own Quarrel in her. The First thing he did was to secure Prince *John*, Son to the Lady *Agnes de Castro*; by that means to cut off the Hopes the *Portuguese* might have of a lawful Successor. But the *Portuguese* ceased not to Encourage *D. John* to proceed in the Defence of the Kingdom, and he the more to try them seemed doubtful, and spread some Reports, as if he would depart the Countrey. But finding an inclination in the Multitude towards Prince *John*, the more to exasperate them against *Castile*, he caused a Standard to be made, in which that Prince was drawn to the Life, loaded with Chains; which being carried about the City, enraged the People against the King of *Castile*. Thus pretending to Revenge the Wrong, done to the Prince, he gained the means of Establishing himself in the Throne; and stirred up all the Kingdom to defend it self, against *Castile*. The Commonalty every where took his Part, but not the Nobility. Yet he believing he could not prevail without Foreign Aid, asked it of *Richard* King of *England*, at the same time perswading the Duke of *Lancaster*, to assert the Right he had to the Crown of *Castile*, by his Wife. The Embassador's Proposals were admitted, and much Money advanced to them for the Expence of the War, with which, and some good Troops they returned. The Earl of *Gijon*, Bastard-Brother to the King of *Castile*, and *Elizabeth* his Wife, Bastard-Daughter to the late King of *Portugal*, were both secured in *Castile*, on Account of holding Correspondence in *Portugal*. The King and Queen of *Castile*, removed from *Puebla de Montalvan*, to *Toledo*, where against their being proclaimed, Standards were made with the Arms of both Kingdoms. And now it was debated in Council, whether *Portugal* ought presently to be invaded. The wiser sort were for trying all obliging Methods First, but the hotter Youths, allowed of nothing but force of Arms; and this Advice was followed.

6. The King marched to the City *Guarda*, which was delivered to him by the Bishop, but *Alvaro Gil*, Governor of the Castle would not Surrender. The Towns of

The Protector his contrivances to usurp the Crown.

of *Cerolico*, *Bedado*, and *Linhares*, were also put into his Hands. Some other Places submitted conditionally, that the King should fulfil the Articles of Marriage. Queen *Ellenor* sent to persuade the King to proceed, and meet her at *Santarem*. Several Places submitted themselves to him in his way, and being come to *Santarem*, the First Resolution of Queen *Ellenor* was, to request he would revenge the Wrong done to her. The King answered, he could not Revenge her quarrel, unless she would resign up the Government to him; which she accordingly did, and then they entered the Town. Here the King took *Portuguese* Ministers of State. On the right side of the Royal Seal, were the Arms of *Castile* and *Leon*, and on the left, those of *Portugal*. The Royal Seal ran thus, *John* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, of *Portugal*, of *Toledo*, &c. Money was also coined after that manner. Many of the Nobility adheered to the King of *Castile*, and he was possess of the best Part of the Kingdom; but the Multitude generally was inclined to the Bastard, *D. John*, Master of the Order of *Avis*. The King of *Castile* sent *D. Peter Fernandez Cabeça de Vaca*, with 1000 chosen Horse, and a proportionable number of Foot, to invest *Lisbon*. These Troops being advanced as far as *Lumiar*, *John Fernandez Moreyra* engaged them with a small Party, but was himself Killed with some others; many Prisoners were taken, and the rest fled. And now *D. John* the Protector, marched out to meet the Enemy; but they not expecting his coming, fled in great disorder to *Alenquer*, and *Torres Vedras*, leaving all behind them.

7. At First the *Castilians* behaved themselves modestly at *Santarem*, but after a few Days, they turned the Inhabitants out of their Houses, pillaged them, and abused their Wives and Daughters; and there being no redress, the Town began to be abandoned. The Office of chief *Rabbi* among the *Jews* being vacant, Queen *Ellenor* begged it of the King for one Man, and he gave it to another, recommended by his Wife, Queen *Beatrice*. This repulse, and their different Humours, set Queen *Ellenor* at Variance with the King; and she now repented her calling him in, and resigning the Government into his Hands, in so much that she advised many of her Followers to go over to the Master of *Avis*, telling them he was their Natural Lord. The King and Queen went away

The King of Castile invades Portugal.

The King of Castile and Queen Ellenor at Portugal.



A Conspira-  
cy a-  
gainst the  
King of Ca-  
stile, disco-  
vered.

to *Coimbra*, which City had promised to receive them; yet when the King was Quartered in a Monastery without the City, they refused to admit him. Here a Conspiracy was laid to Convey Queen *Ellenor* into the City, and Murder the King. This Design was betrayed by a Jew; some of the Conspirators fled, and Queen *Ellenor* was sent Prisoner to the Monastery of *Tordesillas* near *Valadolid*. As soon as the News of Queen *Ellenor*'s imprisonment was brought, the Town of *Alenquer* revolted to the Protector; but the King being Re-inforced, marched to Besiege *Lisbon*. At *Aruda* 40 Portuguese hid themselves in a great Cave, and Fire being applied to it, most of them died. Two hid themselves in the House where the King Quartered, designing to Murder him, but being discovered, were Hanged. Many Places in the Province of *Alentejo*, held for the Protector, and sent to him for one to Command over them; he sent *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra*, with an absolute Power, who having visited some Places of his Charge, and hearing that a great Body of *Castilians* was upon their March to Besiege the Town of *Frontera*, he hastened with a much smaller number to relieve that Place. His Men knowing how much more numerous the Enemy was, at first refused to follow him; but being encouraged by his Resolution, they gave the Charge, and put the *Castilians* to the Rout, killing many, and among them several Persons of Note. This done, he took *Aronches* by Force, and *Alagrote* was surrendered to him.

Lisbon Be-  
sieged by  
Sea and  
Land.

8. The Protector understanding that a mighty Fleet was coming from *Castile*, ordered the Archbishop of *Braga* to over-see the Equipping of his Vessels; which performed with great industry, so that Twelve Galleys, some Gallions, and Seven Ships, were fitted out. The King of *Castile* spread his Army about *Lisbon*, where one of his Parties approaching to *S. Augustin's Gate*, was defeated by 200 Horse that sallied out of the City. About the end of *May*, 13 Galleys, and 40 Ships of *Castile* appeared in the River of *Lisbon*. The King drew nearer to the City, and encamping at the Foot of *Mount Olivet*, wasted the Country; then encompassing it on all sides, resolved to Starve it. In the mean while, a considerable Fleet was setting out at *Porto*, for the relief of *Lisbon*; and the King having notice thereof, with the Advice of his Commanders, resolved to give the Enemy

Battle

Battle in the River. The Portuguese Fleet consisted of 17 Galleys, and as many Ships, which entered the River in this order: First 5 Ships, then the 17 Galleys, and after them the other 12 Ships. The *Castilians* furiously assailed the 5 Ships, where they met with a most vigorous Opposition, yet they took 3 of them; but whilst they were intent upon them, the rest of the Portuguese slipped by, and got safe up the Harbour. Soon after, the King's Fleet was re-inforced by several Vessels; so that now it consisted of 60 Ships, and 17 Galleys, besides Carracks, which made the Protector lay aside all thoughts of engaging.

The Por-  
tuguese  
Fleet, stops  
up the Ri-  
ver to Lis-  
bon.

9. The Fort of *Amada* opposite to *Lisbon*, after enduring great extremities for want of Water, was at length Surrendered to the King, who entered into that Place on the 1st of *August*. At this time, *Ruy Freyre*, and others discovered to the Protector a Design of betraying the City to the *Castilians*, carried on by *D. Peter de Castro*, Son to Count *Alvaro Perez*, and his Accomplices, who were all apprehended. Many also deserted to the King, and among them, *D. Alonso Enriquez*, who at *Coimbra* had plotted to convey away Queen *Ellenor*. Hunger now began to pinch in *Lisbon*, and was hard to be remedied, but that at the same time the Plague raged in the *Castilian* Army. Overtures of Peace were also made by the King to the Protector; but he would hearken to none. *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra* having ventured to pass the River in a Boat, through the midst of the Fleet of *Castile*, returned thence to *Ebora*, and had the Town of *Portel* betrayed to him by 3 Citizens. Twice he attempted *Villaviciosa*, but was both times repulsed with Loss. The Protector lay before *Torres Vedras*; and *Nunho Alvarez* understanding that several Parties of the Enemy provided to fall upon him, he hastened to his Succour, which the *Castilians* understanding, they gave over that Design; however the Protector was forced to quit the Siege. *Nunho* returning to his Charge, took *Monzaraz*, defeated a *Castilian* Party near *Badajoz*, another before *Almada*, and made himself Master of *Rocade Palmela*, and *Comna*.

1384

Overtures  
of Peace  
rejected.

10. The Scarcity was now so great at *Lisbon*, that they turned out the Poor, and unserviceable People to the Enemy, who sent them back well lashed. No hopes now remained; but that the Plague raged so violently

§ 2

attacking

*The Siege of Lisbon raised, when it had lasted five Months.* among the *Castilians*, that Two hundred died in a Day, and of them very many of Quality. But the King no way moved hereat, continued the Siege, till the Infection touched the Queen and then he raised it, having lain Five Months before the City. Being come to *Santarem*, he sent Troops to re-inforce the Garrisons of such Places as still held for him; but passing by *Torres Novas*, he was not admitted into the Town by *Gongalo Vasquez de Azevedo*, who before kept that Place for him. His Wife went out to visit the Queen, and there promised to reduce her Husband; and not prevailing, she returned to the Camp, and the King sent to bid him Farewell, for that his Wife was going to *Castile*. He fearing to lose his Wife, delivered himself and the Town; but the King carried him and his Son away Prisoners, leaving their Wives behind, and a New Governour in the Place. Whilst the King marched home, the Protector granted large Immunities to the City of *Lisbon*, in recompence of its Fidelity to him. Next, he contrived how to recover some places out of the Hands of the *Castilians*. He marched by night, to surprize *Sintra*, but was disappointed by a violent Storm, and Floods that swelled the Rivers above their Bridges. Soon after, *Almada* was surrendered to him; notwithstanding that the King had carried away the Children of the principal Inhabitants as Hostages. *Alenquer* submitted to him also, after having made some Defence; But *Torres Novas* held out against all his Attempts, and to add to his Grief, he understood that *Nunho Alvarez* had been also repulsed at *Vil-hermosa*, that the Master of the Order of *Christ*, the Prior of *Crato*, and *Alvaro Gonzalez Camello*, were taken Prisoners at *Torres Novas*; and that Two Gallies of *Castile*, stealing into the Port of *Lisbon* by night, had burnt Three Vessels there.

## C H A P.

## C H A P. II.

*John the Bastard-Son of King Peter, of Protector is declared King; he continues the War with Castile successfully, from the Year 1384. till 1393.*

1. **A**Bout the beginning of the New Year was discovered a Conspiracy against the Protector. *Peter A Conspirator* Earl of *Trastamara*, was stirred up by the King of *Castile* to kill him, as he lay at the Siege of *Torres Vedras*. The Count communicated this Affair to D. *Peter de Castro*, *John Duque* Governour of *Torres Vedras*, *John Alonso de Bacza*, *Garcia Gonzales de Valdez*, and several others, of whom only 3 Men were apprehended, and one of them burnt. In Revenge whereof *John Duque* sent out six Portuguese he had in *Torres Vedras*, with their Hands and Noses cut off. The Protector raised the Siege of *Torres Vedras*, in order to go to *Coimbra*, to meet the Cortes or Parliament he had caused to be thither Assembled, and most of the Inhabitants about *Torres Vedras* went away with him. In his way, *Leyria* refused to admit him; but he was well received at *Monte-mayor*, and *Coimbra*. In this City, some were for proclaiming the Protector King, and others for the Princes, *John* and *Denis*, lawful Sons to King *Peter*; but all agreed the present Protector should continue as long as Prince *John* should be Prisoner; and in case neither he nor his Brother could come to *Portugal*, then the Protector was to be received as King. Dr. *John de Regius*, a famous Civilian, made two Harangues in behalf of the Protector, casting scandalous Reflections upon Queen *Ellenor*, to incapacitate her Daughter, Queen *Beatrix*, from succeeding in the Throne; the same he did on the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, Wife to King *Peter*, with an intent to exclude her Sons, the Princes *John*, and *Denis*. Some little Opposition was made at first, by several of the Nobility; but at length they all consented the Protector should be proclaimed King; the so much celebrated *Nunho Alvarez Percyra*, having offered to Murder *Martin Vasquez*, chief of the adverse Party, only because he stood up for the lawful Heirs.

2. The Protector with a counterfeit Modesty seemed to excuse himself from accepting of their Offers, but it was only to heighten their Zeal; and so on the 6th. of April he complied with them. He immediately shewed great Favour towards the Cities of *Lisbon* and *Porto*, for having so constantly adhered to him. Thus it appears how little hopes of Salvation there can be left for Lawyers, who by false Interpretations invert Justice, as it appears in the case of this *John de Reglas* before-mentioned, who slandered the Queens, *Beatrix* and *Ellenor*, and the Princess *Agnes de Castro*, and excluded the Lawful Heirs, the Princes *John* and *Denis*, only for his own private Interest, in promoting the Bastard Protector, who could have no Title to the Crown. I think it were better to breed up Children Thieves than Lawyers, for the former will at least Repent at the Gallows, but the latter are never permitted by Worldly Interest to Repent. All Parties thus agreed, the Protector was solemnly Proclaimed King of *Portugal*, and accordingly chose all his Officers of State, and of the Household. Marching into the Field, he mustered 6000 Men, a small number, but resolute and unanimous; and *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra*, now made Constable of *Portugal*, was ordered to Sea with a Squadron from *Porto*, to engage the *Castilian* Fleet before *Lisbon*. Missing of that Enemy, he sailed back to the Province betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, to recover part of that Country, then holding for *Castile*. Here he took *Neyva* and *Ponte de Lima* by force; *Villa Nova de Cerveira*, and *Monçon* opened their Gates to him.

3. The new-made King went from *Coimbra* to *Porto*, where he was received with great Joy. Here he consulted with *Afonso Lorenzo de Carvalho*, a Man then Powerful at *Guimaraens*, about betraying that Place to him, which was accordingly performed. The Castle held out some time, but there being no hopes of Relief, at last, it surrendered. The City *Braga* mutinying, drove their Governour into the Castle, and sending to the new King, offered to receive him. He ordered *Nunho Alvarez* the Constable, to take Possession of the City, and force the Castle, which was accordingly performed. The same happened at *Ponte de Lima*. The King of *Castile*, now at *Cordova*, having twice sent his Fleet against *Lisbon*, ordered a strong Parry to enter *Portugal* by the way of

The Prote-  
ctor Pro-  
claimed  
King.

Guimaraens  
resists his  
surrender to  
the new  
King.

*Cuidad Rodrigo*. They plundered all the Territory of *Trancofo*, and the City of *Viseu*; but as they returned laden with a Rich Booty, they were charged by a *Portuguese* Body, much inferior to them in Number, yet with such Resolution, that of all the *Castilians*, only 200 escaped, not one *Portuguese* being lost in the Action (if Credit may be given to such a Relation, after affirming the Fight was obstinately maintained.) In the meanwhile, the Fleet of *Castile*, consisting of Forty Ships, Ten Galeons, some Galleys, Twelve Barks and other small Vessels, rode in the Harbour of *Lisbon*. That the *Castilians* entered *Portugal* King also marched from *Cordova* with a numerous Army, and appeared before *Elvas*, which was resolutely defended; and now finding the general Aversion of the *Portuguese* to him, it was debated, whether *Portugal* ought to be invaded at all, but at last it was resolved to enter it by the way of the Province of *Beyra*.

4. The new *Portuguese* King understanding the approach of the *Castilians*, marched out of *Guimaraens* to give them Battle, having drawn together his Forces from *Coimbra*, *Porto*, and other Places. On the 14th. of August in the Morning he entered the Plain of *Ajubarrota*, where he knighted several Gentlemen. The *Castilians* designed not to fight, intending to march directly to *Lisbon*, yet after some Consultation, they resolved to engage. There was a great disproportion in Numbers, for the *Castilians* are reported to have been 33000 strong, and the *Portuguese* but 6500; besides which Disadvantage, they had the Sun and Dust in their Eyes. The Sun was going down when these two unequal Armies engaged. The *Castilians* at the first Charge broke through our Vanguard, but the new King then coming up, not only with Words, but with his Example, so animated his Men, that in less than an hour that multitude of Enemies was put to the rout. The King of *Castile*, who began the Fight on a Mule, being then troubled with an Ague, was forced to take a Horse to save himself. Most of the *Portuguese* who sided with *Castile*, and were in the Front of the Army, were put to the sword, for no Quarter was given to them. The Royal Standard of *Castile* was taken, but many pretending to the Honour, it could not be decided by whom. The full Number of the slain is not known, but it was very great on the part of *Castile*, of whom about 3000 Horse are reckoned to have

The *Castilians*  
entered  
*Portugal*  
T. F. F. F.  
B. B. B.  
A. A. A.  
R. R. R.

have perished, and very many Men of great Account. This is the Famous Battle of *Aljubarrota*, so called, for that it was fought near the Village of that Name. The Booty was vastly Rich.

5. The Victorious King continued three days in the Field of Battle, erecting Trophies, it being then the Custom so long to expect the return of the Enemy. The King of *Castile* fled with speed from *Aljubarrota* to *Santarem*, which is Twelve Leagues, and having rested there a short time, went down the River to his Fleet, then Riding before *Lisbon*, where he continued two days, and on the 17th. of *August* left that Port, attended by Seventeen Gallies. He arrived at *Sevil*, and tired there with the Clamours of the People, went away to *Carmona*. "Now we have heard what the *Portuguese* Authors write of this Battle, which seems altogether incredible; but let us give an hint of what those of *Castile* write, which is much more probable. They say, the King of *Castile* advancing towards his Enemy, found him posted in an Advantageous Ground betwixt two Morasses, out of which Place he could not be drawn, because much inferiour in Number; That he was above 12000 strong, and before the Engagement made Overtures of Peace: That the *Castilians* would not be dissuaded from giving Battle in that Place, so disadvantageous to them, because they exceeded their Enemies in Number; and in fine, that they lost the Day through their own Pride and Rashness, in assailing an Enemy so well posted, when they might have ranged all the Country at their own pleasure. This, I believe, to all Impartial Men, will appear nearer to the Truth, for we must allow all Authors to magnifie the Exploits of their own Country, and so let us return to our History. The new King coming to *Santarem*, had it delivered to him, and finding there many Ladies, whose Husbands were in the Service of *Castile*, he gave them all Liberty to go to them, which they gladly embraced.

6. The *Portuguese* King's next care was to Reward those who had signalized themselves in the Battle, the chief whereof was the Constable, to whom he gave large Possessions, and the Title of Count of *Ourense*. He, encouraged by this Honour, resolved to invade *Castile*. Having gathered 4000 Men, he met and defeated the

the Master of *Calatrava*, D. *Martin Yanez de Barbuda*, who had entred *Portugal* with a strong Party; and pursuing his Success, took the strong Town of *Villa Garcia*. Thence he marched to the Plain betwixt *Magacela* and *Villa Nueva de la Serena*, where he had a terrible and long, as well as doubtful Battle with D. *Peter Moniz*, Master of the Order of *Santiago*. Three several times the Fight was renewed, and lasted almost two days with incredible Obstinacy, but in the Conclusion, the *Portuguese* obtained a most Glorious Victory. This done, he went away to aid the King, then lying at the Siege of *Chaves*, which was surrendered to him. Moving thence, they laid Siege to *Coria*, but after having battered it some days with great Fury, were forced to rise and depart, the Constable to the Province of *Alentejo*, and the King on foot in Pilgrimage to Our Lady's Church at *Guimaraens*, as he had promised before the Battle of *Aljubarrota*. Most of them that held any Fortresses for *Castile*, surrendered themselves now to the new King. He laid Siege to the Town of *Chaves*, whereof *Martin Gonzalez de Atayde* was Governour, who held it out till he had no Water left, and then articted to Surrender in Forty days, if not relieved from *Castile*; and by consent of that King he at length delivered up the Place.

7. The *Portuguese* Embassadors in *England* stirred up the Duke of *Lancaster* to lay hold of this Opportunity to assert his Right to the Crown of *Castile*, to which he had a most Legal Title by his Wife, the Lady *Constance*, Daughter to King *Peter*, from whom *Henry* the Bastard had usurped that Kingdom. The Duke having this Right to the Crown of *Castile*, set Sail from *Plymouth* with a numerous Fleet, and arrived at *Coruna* in *Galicia* on the 25th. of *July*, where he landed 2000 Horse, and 3000 Archers, besides some other Forces, and several Persons of Note. The Duke was Sixty Years of Age, without any grey hairs, was tall and well shaped, affable, modest in Discourse, of an excellent Deportment, and in all respects answerable to his Royal Extraction. With him came his Wife *Constance*, and his two Daughters, *Philippa* by his first Wife, and *Katherine* by the second. Scarce was he landed at *Coruna*, when that Place owned him for its Lawful Sovereign, as did the City *Santiago*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Galicia*. Our King was at *Lamego* when the Duke landed

The Duke of Lancaster, invited by the Portuguese, Lands in Galicia with 2000 Horse, and 3000 Archers.



The New  
King John  
and Duke  
of Lanca-  
ster meet.

landed in *Spain*. Thence he removed to *Porto*, and having agreed to meet the Duke at *Ponte-Mauvo*, set forward with a numerous Retinue. They met upon the First of *November*, in a Plain near *Melgazo*. There it was agreed, That if the Duke succeeded, he should give the Towns of *Ledesma*, *Montilla*, *Melgazo*, *Plazencia*, *Grimal*, *Canaveral*, *Caceres*, *Mendoza*, *Fuente del Maestre*, *Zafra*, *Torres de Medina*, *Fegenal*, and other Places with their Territories to the King of *Portugal*; as Dowry with his Daughter *Philippa*. The Pope's Dispensation being come, whereby the King was loosed from his Vow of Chastity, made as Master of the Military Order of *Azis*; and the Princess *Philippa*, being conducted to him they were solemnly married upon *Candlemas-Day*. Immediately the Queen's Household was settled, and a plentiful Revenue assigned her; which afterwards some other Queens of *Portugal* enjoyed.

1387.

8. The King having spent Two Months with his Queen at *Porto*, went with her to see her Father at *Bragança*, and thence sent her back to *Coimbra*. Many of the English were dead of Diseases. With the King, were 3000 Lances, 2000 Cross-Bow Men, and 5000 Foot. They entered the Dominions of *Castile*, and took *Castro Calvo*, *Montilla*, *Resales*, *Valderas*, and *Villalobos*. Tho' *Galicia* had received the Duke as lawful King, yet no Place in *Castile* admitted him, but by Constraint. Hereupon the King told him, That to make an absolute Conquest, it was requisite he should return to *England* for greater Forces. The Duke approved of his Advice, and they returned to *Ciudad Rodrigo*. By the way, they defeated a Party of the Enemies, consisting of 500 Horse, and some Foot. Another Skirmish happened near the City, upon the Passage of a Brook, with the same Success. The Duke being now in *Portugal*, Embassadors came to him from the King of *Castile*, offering, that Prince *Henry*, Heir to the Crown, should marry *Katherine* the Duke's Daughter, that so all Pretensions to the Kingdom might cease. The Duke assented, and Articles being agreed upon and performed, the War betwixt him and *Castile* ended. He being with the King at *Coimbra*, a *Castilian* was there burnt, for contriving to Poyson him. Soon after, he returned to *England*.

Prince  
Henry of  
Castile,  
marries  
the Daugh-  
ter of the  
Duke of  
Lancaster.  
Peace is  
concluded.

1388.

9. The King having held the *Cortes* or Parliament at *Braga*, set out to recover some Places which still held

307

for *Castile*. *Melgazo* having held out to the last; was then delivered up, the Defendants having only leave to depart without Arms. It was remarkable at this Siege, that Two Women, one of the Town, and the other of the Camp, challenged each other, and fought; the latter was Victorious. Hence the King marched to *Lisbon*, and in *September*, to the Province of *Alentejo*; where about the middle of *October*, after a stout Defence, the Town and Castle of *Campo-Major* were taken by force. At the beginning of the following Year, the King being at *Lisbon*, one of the Queens Ladies, called *Beatrix*, was found to have admitted *Ferdinand Alonso*, one of the King's Bed-Chamber, and his Favourite, to her Bed. Hereupon he was apprehended, and having made his Escape from the Officer, took Sanctuary in the Church. Thence the King himself went to drag him, and tho' he urged he was married, caused him to be burnt. The Lady went away to *Castile* to her Mother. Embassadors came to the King, being then in the Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, proposing a Truce for some Months, and so Commissioners were appointed to treat with him; and in the mean while, the King, to lose no time, Besieged and took the City *Tuy* in *Galicia*. At length a Cessation was concluded for Three Years, and some Places restored on both sides, but more to the Portuguese. Nevertheless, the King of *Castile* ceased not to make mighty preparations for War; but his Designs were prevented by Death, which happened to him by a fall from his Horse. After the expiration of the Three Years, the Nobles of *Castile*, and the Governours to King *Henry*, Son to the late King *John*, by his First Wife, the Lady *Ellenor*, advised him to desist from his Pretensions to *Portugal*, since he was not Born of Queen *Beatrix*, on whom that Title was grounded. Embassadors were sent to this Effect to *Portugal*, where a Peace was concluded for Fifteen Years; all Prisoners on both sides to be released, and all Damages done, during the late Cessation, to be made good; and then Hostages for performance, were given on both sides.

A Combat  
betwixt  
two Wo-  
men.

1389.

1390.  
A Cessation  
of Arms,  
betwixt  
Spain and  
Portugal,  
for three  
Years.

1393.

10. But these Articles were not faithfully performed on the Part of *Castile*, neither as to restitution of Damages, nor releasement of Prisoners; wherefore the Portuguese resolved to do himself Justice, by taking some Towns; and accordingly surprized *Badajoz*, and *Alon-*

The Truce  
not duly  
observed.

querque

*querque*. Embassadors sent from *Castile*, promised performance of Articles upon Restitution of those Places; and it was only done to amuse the King, for at the same time Vessels were fitting out in *Biscay* against *Portugal*, and two *Portuguese* Ships laden with Warlike Stores, were taken off of *Cape S. Vincent*. At the same time, the *Castilians* made Incursions, wasting all the open Country; But the Constable defeated a Party of 400 of them that was returning home with a rich Booty. *Campo-Mayor* was soon after taken by the King. Having thus secured themselves against their Enemy, the King and Constable gave themselves some Repose. The latter distributed most of what the King had bestowed on him for his Services, on such Gentlemen as had always adhered to him. On the contrary, the King now established on the Throne, took back to himself much of what he had bestowed on many great Men for their good Service in the War. As the Constable had received most, this fell heaviest upon him; and therefore he resolved to depart the Kingdom; but the King returning part of what he had taken from him, with difficulty perswaded him to stay. The taking of *Badajoz*, and *Albuquerque* before mentioned, had renewed the War, and the Country was now again in Hostile manner wasted on both sides, where in many notable Skirmishes happened.

### C H A P. III.

*The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of King John, the First of the Name, and Fifth King of Portugal, from the Year 1393. till 1433.*

1. **M**Any great Men disgusted for that the King, as was before said, Had since his establishment recalled part of the Grants made to them during his Necessity, went over to *Castile*; where settling themselves, they became the Heads of Noble Families. The King having taken *Salvatierra*, layed Siege to *Tuy*, which after a vigorous Defence, was surrendered to him. In the mean while,

while, Prince *Denis*, Son to King *Peter*, by Lady *Agnes de Castro*; was by the King of *Castile* sent into *Portugal* to King Peter, with an Army, and the Title of King. At the same time, the *Castilian* Admiral, *James Hurtado de Mendoza*, entered the River *Tagus* with a Fleet of Forty Ships, and Fifteen Galleys. *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra*, with all the Forces he could make, marched to oppose Prince *Denis*, who upon the News of his approach returned to *Castile*. The King had given to the Constable the sole Government of the Province of *Alentejo*, and *Algarve*, which he for some time held, but soon after resigned, and went away to the King to assist him at the Siege of *Tuy*; but it was taken before he arrived there. *Misser Ambrosio Marin*, a *Genoese*, was sent Embassador from *Castile* to settle a Peace; in order to which a Cessation was agreed upon for Nine Months. This Term expired, and nothing was concluded. Hereupon the King, about the middle of *May*, layed Siege to *Alcantara*; but was forced, after some Days, to desist from that Enterprize.

2. A Treaty of Peace was again set on Foot at *Segovia*, where, after long Debates, it was concluded upon the following Conditions: That no Money should be demanded of *Castile*, on account of former Breach of Articles; That Towns and Prisoners should be exchanged on both sides; That the *Castilian* Hostages should be restored; That the *Portuguese* who fled to *Castile* should return to their Estates. On these Terms a Truce was concluded for Ten Years, and Hostages were given on both sides for Performance. But this Cessation produced no more quiet than the former; continual Hostilities were exercised, tho' the Actions seem not very considerable; for there is no particular Account of them; but the 4th. Year after the conclusion of the last Truce, a perpetual Peace began to be discoursed of. King *Henry* of *Castile* was then dead, and Queen *Katherine*, Sister to the Queen of *Portugal*, had the tuition of King *John* the Second, not yet a Year Old. In her Husband's Life time, she had always advised Peace, and she now moved, That Embassadors from both sides might meet on the Frontiers of the Two Kingdoms; who did so accordingly, but came to no conclusion, because the *Castilian* Demands ran high. After many Messages had passed on both sides, and much time spent, the Treaty was again set a Foot, and now Embassadors employed to manage it, who at length agreed upon Articles, whereof

*Denis, Son to King Peter, enters Portugal with an Army.*

1398.

1401.

*Peace concluded between the Two Crowns.*

*Not observed.*

1411. the chiefest was, That the Subjects of both Crowns, who had served against their Princes, should be restored to their Countries and Estates. Peace now established, and the Crown secured, application was made to the Pope for Absolution of the Censures laid on the Kingdom, upon Account of promoting King *John* to the Throne, he being a Bastard, and having professed in the Order of *Avis*. Pope *Boniface* the 9th. granted his Request, and Absolved the Kingdom. The King had a Bastard-Son called *Alonso*; whom he loved no less than his lawful Issue, and therefore gave him to Wife *Beatrix*, the only Daughter of the Constable *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra*. They had a Daughter called *Elizabeth*, who was Wife to Prince *John*, Son to King *John* the First; and two Sons, which were *Alonso*, afterwards Earl of *Ourem*; and *Ferdinand*, Earl of *Arroyolos*, and First Duke of the House of *Bragança*.

The King bent upon publick rejoicings for the Peace.

1412.

3. The King now fixed in his Throne; had bent his thoughts upon solemn entertainments, and publick rejoicings, designing to Knight his Five Sons with all imaginable Solemnity. But they advised him to expend that Money on some Foreign enterprize, since all was quiet at home, and it would be more honourable for them to be Knighted in the Field, than in the Court. The Design they fixed upon, was the taking of *Centa* on the Coast of *Africk*, which they acquainted the King withal, and he approving thereof, enjoined them to keep it secret. To this end, Two Gallies were sent to view the Place, and found the Port, and to conceal what they went about they continued their Voyage to *Sicily*, as had been at First given out. Great industry was used in fitting out Vessels at *Lisbon*; and many more of *Galicia*, *Biscay*, *England*, and the *Low-Countries*, were hired. The Young Princes at the same time, raised Forces in all Parts of the Kingdom. Various judgments were made of the Intent of these Preparations, *Castile* began to grow jealous; the *Aragonian* was not well satisfied and the *Moorish* King of *Granada* feared all the Storm would fall upon him. The Rumour of these preparations drew many Martial Men from Foreign Parts, to gain Honour in this Enterprize. At this time the Plague had spread it self throughout *Lisbon*, and having entred the Pallace, Queen *Philippa* died of it. Her Body was found Fifteen Months after not only uncorrupted, but yielding

The Plague in Lisbon, the Queen dies of it.

yielding a most fragrant smell. Her Life was a Pattern of Piety and Vertue; her happy Death was on the 18th. of *July* 1415, in the 64th. Year of her Age. Many looked upon her Death as an ill Omen to the Enterprize in Hand, and therefore advised to desist from it; but the King and Princes could not be moved.

4. On the last Day of *July*, the Fleet sailed from *Lisbon*, the 7th. of *August* it came to *Faro*, and the 14th. the City *Centa* was taken, to the Wonder of all *Europe*, and Terror of the Enemies of *Portugal*. The particulars of this Action, which are not many, the Place being taken in Four Hours, are to be found in the *Portuguese Africk*. The King returning home, created his Second Son *Peter*, Duke of *Coimbra*; and his Third *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*. This done, he went to *Ebora*, and was there received in Triumph by the Princes *John* and *Ferdinand*, and the Princess *Elizabeth*. The Ratification of the perpetual Peace with *Castile*, had been delayed till that King came to the Age of Fourteen, and took the Government upon himself. He being at that Age, this Year 1419, Embassadors passed to and fro, and after much Debate, concluded a Truce for Eleven Years; conditionally, That both Kings should be obliged, if they designed to make War at the expiration thereof, to notify the same to the other Party Eighteen Months before. Several discoveries had been of late Years attempted through the industry of Prince *Henry*; and now this Year 1420, the Islands of *Puerto Santo*, and *Madera*, were First found; such were the beginnings that gave Encouragement to the Discovery of *India* and *America*. But of these Discoveries we have writ particular Books. In the Year 1422, the King changed the computation of time till then used in *Portugal*, which was from the Reign of *Augustus*, to that of the Year of our Lord, in imitation of King *John* the First of *Castile*, who had made the like Reformation there before.

5. This same Year, the Constable *Nunho Alvarez Pereyra*, being 62 Years of Age, took upon him the religious Order of the *Carmelites*, in the Monastery of *Lisbon*, built by himself. There he lived a very exemplary Life the space of 9 Years, and died aged 71 Years. To secure the Peace with *Castile*, the King sent his Embassadors thither; but one of them being overthrown, and almost killed at the exercise of Tiltng, the *Castilian* sent an Embassador

1415.

1415. A great Fleet sails from Lisbon, for the Conquest of Centa.

1419.

1420.

1422.

1423. Peace ratified between Castile and Portugal.







at Sagres, near Cape S. Vincent, in the Kingdom of Algarve, where he died. 6thly, John, Master of the Order of Santiago in Portugal, and Constable. 7thly, Ferdinand, Master of the Order of Avis, accounted a Martyr for his great Sufferings, and Death in slavery among the Moors of Africk. 8thly, Elizabeth, married to Philip the third, Earl of Flanders, and Duke of Burgundy. This King's Bastard-Children were, Alonzo, Earl of Barcelos, and first Duke of Bragança; and Beatrix, married to Thomas Earl of Arundel, in England.

His Arms.

9. This King reduced the ten Bezants, before used in each of the five Scutcheons of the Arms of Portugal, to five, the Cross of Avis appearing underneath, in Memory that he had been Master of that Order; and because he received the English Order of the Garter, which is of S. George, he used for his Crest, the Head of a winged Dragon; and from that time forward, the Portuguese use to call upon S. George in the time of Battle.

Discoveries.

10. Discoveries in this King's time were made by John Gonzalez Zarco, Tristan Vaz Teixeira, and Bartholomew Perestrello, who being drove they knew not whither by a storm, found the Island they called Puerto Santo, in the Year 1418; and two Years after, that of Madera, where they found a little Oratory, and Inscription, declaring that one Martin, an English-Man, had been there before. Giles Taner attempting what none durst before him, passed beyond Cape Bojador, and there planted a Cross.

## CHAP. IV.

The Life and Reign of Edward the First of the Name, and Eleventh King of Portugal; his Actions, and Death, from the Year 1391, till 1438.

Birth of King Edward

1391.  
1423

1. King Edward was Born at Viseo, in the Year 1391. He was with his Father at the taking of Ceuta, and married Ellenor Daughter to King Ferdinand the first, of Aragon, in the Year 1428. The Body of King John being deposited in the Cathedral of Lisbon, on the 14th. of August,

August, the next Day his Eldest Son Edward was proclaimed King. An Astrologer advised him to pass by that unfortunate Day, for that all the Constellations were conspired against him. But he religiously slighting these Predictions, went on with the Solemnity, and was Crowned that very Day. Then began the Astrologer publicly (as he had before done in private) to denounce, that his Reign would be short as to time, but tedious for the Misfortunes which would happen in it. The New King went to divert himself at Sintra, where his Son Alonzo, not full 20 Months Old, was Sworn Heir to the Crown by the Nobility. This was the only time the like Ceremony was performed without the Concurrence of the Commonalty by their Representatives. He was also the first that had the Title of Prince given him in Portugal; his Father following the example of the other Courts of Christendom. The first that used it, was that of England, where the Heir of the Crown was called Prince of Wales. From Sintra, the King sent his Summons to all the Prelates and Nobles, for them to meet, in order to attend the Translation of his Father's Body, to a noble Sepulchre designed for it in the Church of Batalla, belonging to the Dominicans, and of the invocation of the Assumption of our Blessed Lady, built by that King, in Memory of the Victory obtained in that Place.

1423.  
An Astro-  
logical Pre-  
diction.Alonzo.  
Son to King  
Edward.  
the first  
that had  
the Title  
of Prince.  
in Portu-  
gal.

2. It will not here be amiss, in short, to say something of his Funeral, which may shew the Custom of those times. All the Nobility and Clergy Assembled at Lisbon. The Mourning then used, was either white Sack-Cloath, or raw Canvas. Such was the Apparel of all the Nobility, and their Families. The Pallace was all Hung with Black. On the 25th. of October, all the Company marched in orderly Procession, from the Pallace to the Church, with great silence; the Bells of all the Churches ringing. At the Church, after a short Sermon, the Body was placed on a Mausoleum, and then the Divine Office for the dead, performed with great Solemnity. Prince Peter, and many other great men, stay'd in the Church all Night with the Body, and next Day, after Mass and Sermon, a costly Offering was made of Gold, Silver, and rich Brocados. This done, the Body was placed on a Triumphant Charriot, which was drawn through the Streets by the King, his Brothers, and the Nobility. In the New Street, and in the great Place called Recio, Scaffolds

The Fun-  
eral of King  
John.

Scaffolds were erected, on which Learned Men made Funeral Orations suitable to the Occasion. At *S. Vincent's* Gate, Four Horses were put to the Charriot. Four times the Funeral halted betwixt *Lisbon* and the Church of *Batalha*; at *Odivellas*, *Villafranca*, *Alcoentre*, and *Alcobaca*. The Fifth Day it came to the Church of *Batalha*, whither the *Cortes* or Parliament was summoned and there all that great Assembly assisted at Mass, and the other Funeral Rites.

King Edward builds a Parliament.

3. The King hasted away to *Leyria*, flying from the Plague, for here began his Misfortunes. The *Cortes* or Parliament was held at *Santarem*, where the King gave general Satisfaction. Then he applied himself to the cares of the Government. He caused also the Laws to be epitomized, and reduced to one Volume, taking special care that they should be put in Execution. His next care, was to moderate excess in Apparel and Diet; and then he Ordered, That only one of the Princes, and such of the Nobility as were named, should attend at Court at one time; the rest being sent away to their Estates, and they to relieve the others in their turns. Thus the ensuing Year was spent. Pope *Martin* had before this time, summoned a general Council to meet at *Basse*, for Uniting the *Greek* and *Latin* Churches. To this Council were sent Six Embassadors from *Portugal*. The Union of the Two Churches took Effect, but was not lasting; for the *Greeks* not finding those Supplies they expected from the Pope against the *Turks*, soon fell off. The *Portuguese* Embassadors obtained a Grant of the then Pope *Eugenius*, That the Kings of *Portugal* might be Crowned and Anointed in the same manner as those of *England*, and *France*. This same Year, the King designed his Sons should receive the Sacrament of Confirmation, with great Pomp and Solemnity; but News being then brought, that the Kings of *Naples* and *Navarre*, Prince *Henry*, and above 100 Persons of great Note, were taken Prisoners in a Sea Fight, by *Philip* Duke of *Milan*, all publick Joy ceased, and the Court was filled with Mourning; nevertheless the Young Princes were confirmed.

An Expedition against Tangier.

4. This same Year also it was, that the Princes, *Henry* and *Ferdinand*, having first gained the Queen to their Party, perswaded the King to take in Hand an Expedition against *Tangier*, in *Africk*. It was long before they could prevail upon him; but at last, overcome by their impor-

importunities, he took the Fatal Resolution. A Tax was laid upon the Kingdom, for the Expence of this War; and all the Preparations, for such an Expedition diligently made. On the 17th. of *August* the Princes Embarked, and the 22th. they sailed from *Belem*. The particulars of this Unhappy Undertaking belong properly to the *Portuguese Africk*, where they are to be seen at large; but the event was, That most of the *Portuguese Army* perished, and Prince *Ferdinand* remained in Captivity, he being left as an Hostage, for restoring *Centa* to the *Moors*, upon their suffering the Relicks of the *Portuguese* to return home. Prince *Henry* the Adviser of this Enterprize, sent Notice to the King, how he left his Brother in Servitude, and tho he was the chief Cause of his falling into that Misfortune, yet advised not to Ransom him at so dear a rate, as by restoring *Centa*, to the Infidels. Those many *Portuguese* who escaped out of *Africk*, most Wounded, Naked, and Starved, Landing on the Coast of *Spain*, in the dead of Winter, found such extraordinary Charity in the Towns of *Castile*, through which they travelled, that I dare avouch, they had not met the like in their own Country. They were all bountifully Cloathed, their Wounds dressed, and Money liberally stowed upon them. In every House they had the Beds given them, and being well recovered, were supplied with all they could desire to carry them home. The King informed by these People, of the charitable Entertainment they had found, ceased not to extol the goodness of those who had shown such Favour to his Subjects, and to express his Gratitude, he sent Letters to *Sevil*, and other Places of *Andaluzia*, where his Subjects had been received, full of Acknowledgments and Commendations, and offering himself, and his Kingdom, ready to require them.

5. The King, before the News came of this Disaster, was removed from *Lisbon*, to *Santarem*, flying from the Plague that then raged in that City. Having Advice there of the danger his Forces were in at *Tangier*, he made all possible Preparations to relieve them, but too late, for before any could set out, part of the vanquished Fleet returned. The following Year the King summoned the *Cortes* or Parliament, to meet at *Leyria*. He gave them in Charge, to consider what was to be done, concerning Prince *Ferdinand*, left an Hostage to the *Moors*, for the delivery

1437.

The Portuguese Army perished, and Prince Ferdinand remained in Captivity, he being left as an Hostage, for restoring Centa to the Moors, upon their suffering the Relicks of the Portuguese to return home. Prince Henry the Adviser of this Enterprize, sent Notice to the King, how he left his Brother in Servitude, and tho he was the chief Cause of his falling into that Misfortune, yet advised not to Ransom him at so dear a rate, as by restoring Centa, to the Infidels.

The Charity of the Spaniards. They were all bountifully Cloathed, their Wounds dressed, and Money liberally stowed upon them. In every House they had the Beds given them, and being well recovered, were supplied with all they could desire to carry them home.

The Plague at Lisbon

1438.

*Differences in the Cortes, about the ransoming of Prince Ferdinand.*  
 delivery of *Centa*. He produced a Paper written by that Prince, signifying that *Centa* could not be maintained, and therefore it was better to give it up, then suffer it to be taken. The Princes, *Peter* and *John*, with all the Commons, voted that the Place should be delivered, but the Archbishop of *Braga*, said, That a Christian Town could not be given away to the Infidels, for one Man, without the consent of the Pope. Others were for deferring the Exchange for some time, and in the mean while, to offer a Summ of Money and all the *Moors* in *Portugal* which were many, for the Prince; and in Case this were not received, that the Pope and Christian Princes should unite their Forces against *Africk*, which if it could not be effected, then *Centa* should be delivered.

6. The King stood dubious amidst such variety of Opinions. At length he resolved to have recourse to the Pope, and all the Christian Princes, believing they would all together assist him to ransom his Brother. From them he received nothing but words of Comfort and Advice, not to surrender *Centa*. The Plague was now so diffused throughout the Kingdom, that the King wandred from Town to Town. Being on the way to *Tomar*, a Letter was given him, which he no sooner opened, but the infection it brought seized him. In that Town he died on the 9th. of *September*, in the 47th. Year of his Age, having reigned Five Years and near a Month. In his Will, he ordained his Brother should be ransomed with Money; but in Case that were refused, then *Centa* should be given for him. That his Wife, Queen *Ellenor*, should Govern the Kingdom, and the Prince his Son. He was well Shaped, Strong, his Visage round, his Beard thin, his Hair black, his Eyes heavy, but taken altogether, his Countenance was graceful. He loved gay Apparel, and always appeared in Publick with Splendour. As to his Inclinations, he was Merciful, and a lover of Truth and Justice. For outward Accomplishments, he was an excellent Horseman, loved Wrestling, and was much addicted to Hunting. He writ some Treatises in Latin, favoured learned Men, and was very Religious. Several New sorts of Money were coined by him, and considering how prodigal his Predecessors had been, in giving away the Revenues of the Crown, he confirmed a Law invented by his Father, That no Female should inherit any Gift of the Crown.

7. His

7. His lawful Issue (as he had no other) was as follows. 1st. *D. Alonso*, his Successor. 2dly, *Ferdinand* Duke of *Viseo*, Master of the Military Orders of *Christ* and *Santiago*, and Constable of *Portugal*; and also Father to *Emmanuel*, who was afterwards King. 3dly, *Philippa*, who died of the Plague at 12 Years of Age. 4thly, *Ellenor*, married to the Emperor *Maximilian*, who was Grand-Father to the ever-renowned *Charles* the 5th. *D. John de Silva* and *Meneses*, fell passionately in Love with this Princess, and followed her till he saw her married; after which he became a *Franciscan* Fryar, and led a very exemplary Life, at *Montorio* near *Rome*. 5thly, *Katherine*, contracted in *England* and *Navarre*, yet never married. 6thly, *Joanna*, Born after the Death of her Father, and married afterwards to King *Henry* the 4th. of *Castile*.

## C H A P. V.

The First Part of the Life and Reign of King  
*Alonso*, the Fifth of the Name, and twelfth  
 King of *Portugal*, from the Year 1432. till  
 1469.

1. King *Alonso* the 5th. Succeeded his Father being but The Birth  
 Six Years of Age. He was born at the Palace of of King A-  
*Sintra*, in the Year 1432. His Father in his Will, or- lonio.  
 dained, That the Queen should have the Government of 1432.  
 the Young King and Kingdom; but every Nobleman striv- His Acces-  
 ing to draw the Power into his own Hands, caused all sion to the  
 to run into Confusion, whence ensued greater Destruction Crown and  
 than had been produced by the preceding Plague. Diffusion of  
 They blamed the King for committing the care of the Power in the  
 Realm to a Woman, she a Forreigner, and what they Queen and  
 most resented, a *Castilian*, as they termed her, tho' she Nobility.  
 was Daughter to the King of *Aragon*. The Princes, Bro-  
 thers to the late King, were the Heads of these Factions,  
 and particularly Prince *Peter*, who was always an Enemy  
 to the Queen. Prince *Alonso* being proclaimed King, in the  
 Sixth Year of his Age, on the Tenth of *September*, in the  
 Town of *Tomar*, the Second Day after his Father's Death,  
 Queen *Ellenor* took upon her the Government, as had  
 been

F +

been

1432.  
 King El-  
 ward dies  
 of the  
 Plague.

been ordained by her Husband's Will, and so far laid aside all former Animosity with Prince *Peter*, that they did nothing without his Advice, and desired him jointly with her to Sign the Writs of Summons for the *Cortes* or Parliament. Before the *Cortes* could meet, Prince *Peter*, upon pretence of Zeal to secure the Succession, in Case the Young King should die before he was Marriageable, caused his younger Brother *Ferdinand* to be Sworn Heir to the Crown conditionally, if the other died without Issue. The Queen pleased with these outward shows of Loyalty in Prince *Peter*, discovered to him, That the King her Husband had declared to his Confessor, it was his Will, that the present King *Alonso* should marry *Elizabeth*, Daughter of the said Prince *Peter*; to which she willingly consented, and desired it might be immediately performed. The Prince, tho' astonished at so great a favour, accepted the offer. No sooner was this noised abroad, but *Alonso*, Earl of *Barcelos*, Bastard-Brother to Prince *Peter*, designing to marry the King to his own Grand Daughter, prevailed with the Archbishop of *Lisbon*, the Queen's Favourite, to dissuade her from that Resolution. Prince *Peter*, understanding the Design, asked the Queen to confirm her Promise to him under her Hand; which she, tho' her mind was altered, easily granted.

The Cortes meet, and instead of settling Peace, widen the Breach.

2. The *Cortes* being met at *Torres Novas*, where Peace ought to have been established, there Discord broke out. The Nobility envying Prince *Peter* the Honour of marrying his Daughter to the King, Conspired against him. However, it was carried in this Parliament, That the Queen should have the Education of the King, and Prince *Peter* the Power of the Government. She was content; but his Adversaries stickled against this Resolution, so that they came to be divided; the Nobility affirming the Queen ought to Govern, and the Commons asserting it was their Right to nominate the Prince a Protector. Prince *Henry* mediated between them, allotting the Queen the Charge of the King and the Revenue, appointing the Prince to Defend the Kingdom, and allowing Earl *Alonso* to take Charge of the Administration of Justice, with the Advice of the Council, and Approbation of the Queen and Prince, directing the *Cortes* to meet Yearly to settle all greater Matters. Prince *Peter*, tho' nothing was left him but the bare Title of Protector, submitted rather than

than embroil the Kingdom. Earl *Alonso*, tho' he had more than he could have demanded, was dissatisfied; and the Queen, pushed on by the Prince's Adversaries, would part with nothing. The mutinous People obliged the Queen to accept of what was allotted her. Earl *Alonso* sent his Son to demand of Prince *Peter* the Note the Queen had given him, for Security of the King's Marrying his Daughter; he, in scorn, tore it in pieces, and so returned it.

3. Embassadors from *Castile* had been some time in *Portugal*, and could not be heard by reason of the present Disorders. At length they had Audience of the Queen at *Lisbon*, where they proposed, in the Name of King *John* the Second of *Castile*, That the Bishops, expelled during the Schism, should be restored; That the Military Orders of *Avis* and *Santiago* in *Portugal*, should submit themselves, as they had been before, to those of *Calatrava* and *Avis* in *Castile*; That some Portuguese Bishopricks, formerly subject to the Archiepiscopal See of *Sevil*, should return to its Obedience. After some Debate, they were sent away without any Answer, which was to be given by Portuguese Embassadors appointed to follow them. The People were not at all pleased with the Queen's Administration, and pressed Prince *Peter* to take it upon himself. She flying from the Plague, then in the City, retired to Mount *Olivet*, where she was delivered of the Princess *Joanna*, afterwards Queen of *Castile*, and received Letters from the Pope, condoling the Death of the King, and advising her not to deliver *Centa* for Prince *Ferdinand*. Prince *Peter*, stirred up by the People to take upon him the Government, and advised to it by his Brother, Prince *John*, to prevent a Civil War, delayed the time. At length, the People, wholly averse to the Queen, ran in multitudes to oblige the Prince to enter upon the Administration of the Publick Affairs, and he, tho' displeased with the Queen, pacified the Multitude, perswading them to put off that Design till the Meeting of the *Cortes* or Parliament.

The People averse to Queen.

4. The Queen privately writ to all the Members of Parliament to come armed, that they might suppress the Rabble. But Prince *Peter* understanding it, as Protector, charged them to be ready to obey his Orders. This done, he took leave of the Queen in a course manner, which President made her the more slighted, and



she being sensible of it, speedily removed to *Alenquer*. The Citizens of *Lisbon* elected a Standard-bearer, and held Seditious Meetings, in contempt of the Queen's Letters. The Archbishop fortified himself against the Citizens, they stopped his Revenue, sent Complaints against him to *Rome*, and he was forced to fly to *Castile*. The Multitude, headed by a Cooper, declared Prince *Peter* should Govern, and a Taylor satisfy'd this Decree. Thus the Kingdom was disposed of by a Cooper and a Taylor. The Governour of the Castle of *Lisbon* held for the Queen, but being sore pressed by the People, was forced to surrender it to Prince *John*. Prince *Peter* sent to Summons the Queen to the Parliament; she replied, she would not go, unless he resigned all Claim to the Government; but he rather chose to stand to the Election

Prince Peter made Regent by a Cooper and a Taylor, Heads of the Rable.

made of him by the Cooper and the Taylor. The Prince coming from *Coimbra* to *Lisbon*, accepted the Government at the hands of the Multitude, which was afterwards confirmed to him by the *Cortes* or Parliament, to which the Young King was brought, after sufficient Security given his Mother that he should be restored to her. Nevertheless, he was forcibly taken from her, and she retired to *Sintra*. Thence she craved Assistance of her Brothers, the Princes of *Aragon*, who sent Embassadors to intercede for her, but they were dismissed without any Answer. She ceased not to make Friends in *Navarre* and *Aragon*, and the Prince secured *Castile* to his Party. The Queen, in order to make her Escape, sent away her Plate and Jewels, which were of a great Value, to be kept in the Castle of *Albuquerque*. Embassadors came from *Castile* to require she might either be restored to the Government, or have leave to depart the Kingdom. But no satisfactory Answer being given them, she hereupon made her Escape, with her Daughter *Joanna*, born after the Death of the King.

Civil War in Portugal.

5. The Queen being missing, all was in Confusion. *Crato*, and all the Castles subject to that Priory, held for her, and thus the Civil War commenced. Some Places were taken by the Prince, and he resolved to Besiege the Queen in the Town of *Crato*, but she having called some *Castilian* Troops to her Assistance, after making much havock, withdrew into *Castile*. *Alonso*, Earl of *Barcelos*, still held out for the Queen, but his Son following the Prince, brought him over to that Party,

tho' not without difficulty. Thus, for some time, all Storms seemed to be blown over. About this time was brought from *Rome* a Dispensation for the Young King to Marry Prince *Peter's* Eldest Daughter *Elizabeth*, as also the Orders of *Santiago* and *Avis* in *Portugal* were exempted from any Subjection to the Orders in *Castile*. The Dispensation being come, the King was married by the Consent of the *Cortes*, then sitting, to the Regent's Daughter, at *Obidos* on the 15th. of *August*, 1441. The Bridegroom was then Ten Years of Age, and the Bride Seven or Eight. The Queen Dowager still pressed to be restored to the Government, and the King of *Castile* sent several Embassages in her behalf, which nothing availing, it was feared a War would ensue; but that King dying, all that Negotiation fell to nothing. Thus the Queen Dowager being forsaken on all hands, and having spent her Treasure in soliciting to make War upon *Portugal*, went away at last to *Toledo*, where she lived upon Charity, and there died, as was suspected, poisoned by the Regent, tho others say, by *D. Alvaro de Luna*, then Favourite to the King of *Castile*.

1441. The Young King marries the Regent's Daughter.

6. The King of *Castile* being jealous of the *Aragonian*, asked some Supplies of Men out of *Portugal*. They were accordingly sent him, under the Command of the Constable *Peter*, Son to the Regent; but there being no use for them, they returned home. However, the Constable, while he was in *Castile*, concluded a Match betwixt that King and the Lady *Elizabeth*, Daughter to Prince *John*. King *Alonso* of *Portugal* being now Fourteen Years of Age, according to the Custom of *Spain*, took upon him the Government in the Assembly of the *Cortes* or Parliament, thanked Prince *Peter* for his good Administration till that time, and desired him to continue in it till he were of riper Years. Next, he ratified his Marriage with that Prince's Daughter, and then went away to *Alcagarras*, where the Embassador of *Castile* was Proxy for his Master in the Ceremony of Contracting the Lady *Elizabeth*, Daughter to Prince *John*, to that King. There also the Lady *Beatrice*, Sister to *Elizabeth*, was contracted to Prince *Ferdinand*, Brother to that King. Prince *Peter* by this time thought he had wholly gained over all his Enemies that opposed his Advancement to the Government, but now it appeared it was but a counterfeit Reconciliation. The Duke of *Bra-*

1441. King Alonso takes upon him the Government, and confirms all that had been done by the Regent.

ganza,

ganza, the Earl of *Ourem*, and the Archbishop of *Lisbon* prevailed with the King to remove him from the Government, laying Disloyalty to his Charge, and they at the same time displaced all Officers, as well Civil as Military, that had been preferred by him. Not so content, they accused him of aspiring to the Crown, and so far prevailed, as to have him banished the Court; which done, several Libels were dispersed abroad, fraught with nothing but Reflections upon him, and many Articles laid to his charge, were judicially examined. Prince *Henry* came from *Algarve* to Court, to vindicate his Brother's Honour, but to little purpose, because he was look'd upon to be no less guilty than the other, and both of them were charged with poisoning King *Edward*, Queen *Ellenor*, and Prince *John*. D. *Alvaro de Almada*, Earl of *Abranchez*, in the King's Presence challenged any Man that should lay blemish on the Prince's Reputation; but the King was carryed away to *Sintra* by his Favourites, that he might not give ear to those that favoured Prince *Peter*.

Prince Peter, the late Regent, in Arms, and declared Rebel.

1449.

7. The King from *Sintra* issued out his Orders, forbidding all Persons to converse and hold Correspondence with the Prince; also Summoning all the Queen his Mother's Servants, who had been discarded, to appear, and put in their Claims; and Commanding the Prince not to depart from his own Lands without the King's leave. He was also commanded to deliver up all the Arms that were in *Coimbra*, which he refused to do. The Duke of *Braganza* being called to Court, was to pass through the Prince's Lands, and therefore intended to travel well attended; but the Prince marched out with Forces to oppose him, and tho' several times Orders were brought him from the King, to return to *Coimbra*, he still advanced towards the Duke, who was forced privately to fly, and make his escape to *Santarem*, where the Court then was. Hereupon he was declared a Rebel and Traytor, and Forces were raised with Expedition against him. D. *Sancho de Noronha*, Earl of *Odemira*, was sent with Forces against the Constable, Prince *Peter*'s Son, who fled to *Castile*, where he found not such kind Entertainment as he expected. Queen *Elizabeth* being the Prince's Daughter, studied how to save her Father, and gave him Advice, that the Fifth of *May* was the day appointed to Besiege him. Then she went to the King

King to beg Pardon for him, which the King said he would grant, provided the Prince himself would beg it, acknowledging his Faults. He did so in a Letter to the King, but the Queen shewing him her Letter, wherein the Prince vindicated himself, and said, he complied so far only to satisfy her; the King said, since he did not really acknowledge his faults, he merited no Pardon. The Prince's Enemies, to prevent the Queen's interceding for him, kept him as much from her as they could, and imprisoned D. *Alvaro de Castro*, a Man of a most beautiful Person, and excellent Behaviour, as standing accused of too much Familiarity with the Queen, but the King knowing well her Vertue, caused D. *Alvaro* to be set at Liberty, and did him great Honour.

8. The King had now gathered a numerous Army, but could not set forward for want of Provisions and Carriages. But the Prince on his part set forward from *Coimbra* with 1000 Horse, and 5000 Foot, and came within five Leagues of *Santarem* without meeting any Opposition. There he was advised to return to *Coimbra*, but he chose to advance towards *Lisbon*, and by the way put to Death about fifty Horse of the King's, that at a distance called him Traytor. Being come to a Brook called *Alfarreveira*, he there chose a convenient Ground for a small Body to oppose a greater, for he had not yet 8000 Men, and the King's Army consisted of above 30000. By that Multitude he found himself encompassed on the 20th. of *May*. Proclamation was made, declaring all Traytors that should thenceforth adhere to the Prince; yet none forsook him, but some of the King's Army deserted to him. Some Shot of Musquets and Cross-bows flying from the King's Camp to the Prince's, he answered with some Cannon, one of the Bullets whereof falling near the King's Tent, so enraged his Army, that they immediately, without Orders, fell on, and in a moment broke and put to flight the Prince's Forces. He himself fighting resolutely, was shot through with an Arrow, and died. His inseparable Friend, the Earl of *Abranchez*, having sworn not to forsake him in Death, after having performed incredible Acts of Bravery, was there also slain. Most of the Prince's followers were either taken or killed. His Body was left three days in the Field, and then being laid upon a Ladder, four Country men carryed it to the poor Church of *Alverca*, where

The King comes to a Battle with the Rebels.

Prince Peter killed.

where it was buried. The King was received at *Lisbon* in Triumphant manner. Many Persons were executed on Account of these Troubles, and their Heirs, to the Fourth Generation, declared Infamous. The Prince's Enemies fearing the Queen might some time or other Revenge the Death of her Father, advised the King to be divorced from her; but he received her with all the marks of True Love and Affection. They begged of him some Towns that had belonged to the Prince, which he freely gave them; but the Cities of *Porto* and *Portalegre* would not submit to be given away to any Body, and were therefore annexed to the Crown.

The Princess Ellenor contracted to the Emperor Frederick the Third.

1451.

1452.

1453.

1455.

9. The Princess *Ellenor* during this time was contracted to the Emperor *Frederick* the Third, and was now delivered in the Month of *August* to his Embassadors. They embarked at *Lisbon*, and landed at *Leghorn*, whence she was conducted to *Sienna*, where the Bridegroom met her, attended by *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary*, his Brother *Albertus* the Arch-Duke, and other Princes. Hence they travelled together to *Rome*, where they were crowned with the usual Solemnity. Prince *Ferdinand*, who was married to the Lady *Beatrix*, Daughter to Prince *John*, privately built a Caravel, and went away in it to *Centa*, to employ himself against the *Moors*, but the King soon sent for him home, and to settle his Mind, gave him the Towns of *Beja*, *Moura*, and *Serpa*. The great Monarch of the *Turks*, *Mahomet*, having taken *Constantinople*, Pope *Calixtus* stirred up the Christian Princes to unite their Forces against the Common Enemy. Our King offered to serve in Person one Year with 12000 Men, but all these Projects fell to nothing. Our Queen had before this time brought forth a Son and a Daughter, whereof the former died, and now on the third of *May* she was delivered at *Lisbon* of another Son, whom she called *John*, as the first had been, for the special Devotion she had to that Name. He was sworn Prince, being but a Month old, with great Solemnity. The Queen upon this Occasion obtained leave of the King, that the Body of her Father, Prince *Peter*, might be placed in the Tomb he had built for himself at the famous Monastery of *Batalla*. At this time also a Match was concluded betwixt the Princess *Joanna*, King *Alonso's* Daughter, and *Henry* the Fourth, King of *Castile*. She was Seventeen Years of Age, and very beautiful, which

was

was all her Portion, and she was conducted to *Castile*, by Count *Alvaro Gonzalez de Atayde*. *Elizabeth* our Queen died on the Second of *December* following, not without suspicion of Poison given her, by her Father's Enemies, fearing she might prevail with the King to Revenge his Death. She was carried to the Church of *Batalla*, with the greatest Pomp that had been used at the Funeral of any Queen. For Beauty, Patience, Obedience, and Piety, she was inferior to none. The Monastery of *Xabregas* of the religious of *S. Eloy*, was founded by her. The King ordered the Body of his Mother, Queen *Ellenor*, to be brought from *Toledo*, to be buried at the Church of *Batalla*. As far as *Elvas* it was conducted by the King and Queen of *Castile*, and there they were met by our King.

The Queen's Death.

1456.

10. The Bishop of *Silves* brought the Croisade from *Rome*, granted to Encourage Christian Princes to joyn their Forces against the *Turks*. Our King made Preparations for that Expedition, and recalled *Peter*, the Constable and Master of *Avis*, Son to Prince *Peter*, who was Banished to *Castile*. He also coined a New sort of pieces called *Cruzadoes*, from the Croisade and the Cross on them. These were of pure Gold, and great Weight, that they might pass in Foreign Countries, but the other Christian Princes not answering on their Part, he bent his Mind upon Prosecuting the Conquest of *Africk*. *Tangier* was first aimed at, but this Resolution was changed for *Alcazer*. Twenty thousand Landmen were appointed for this Service, who set sail from *Setuval* the 12th. of *October*, in Two hundred Sail of Ships. They no sooner arrived than that they were Victorious, and reduced that Place; the Particulars of which Action are in the *Portuguese Africk*. A Peace was now established with the Duke of *Britany*, whose Subjects had taken many *Portuguese* Ships, which was repaid them in the same kind. The following Year died Prince *Henry*, who first gave Encouragement, and promoted the Discoveries on the Coast of *Africk*. A Year after he was followed by *Alonso*, Duke of *Bragança*, Bastard-Son to King *John* the First. The King being advertised, That it would be easie to surprize *Tangier*, set sail from *Lisbon* in *November*, and tho he met with many difficulties he became Master of that Place. The *Catalonians* rebelling against their lawful Sovereign, King *John* of *Aragon*, sent

1457. The Croisade brought in to Portugal.

1458. Alcazer, on the Coast of Africk, taken by King Alonso.

1459.

1460.

1461.

Tangier taken.

- to invite *Peter*, Son to the Unfortunate Prince *Peter*, to that Principality as being descended of the Ancient Earls of *Barcelona*. He halted thither from *Centa*, but lived not long there, and lies buried in the Cathedral. King *Alonso* went over from *Centa*, to *Gibraltar*, to meet the King of *Castile*, who craved Aid of him against his Nobility; that not content with staining his Honour, sought to deprive him of the Crown. Here it was agreed, King *Alonso* should marry *Elizabeth*, Sister to the *Castilian*; and his Son Prince *John*, the Princess *Joanna*, but all this took no effect. Queen *Joanna* of *Castile*, on whom those People cast all their Reproaches, accusing her of Adultery, only in malice to D. *Beltran de la Cueva*, the King's Favourite, whom she treated with Courtesie; came to the City *Guarda* to crave Aid of the King her Brother against the Rebels, who called her Daughter a Bastard, and had opprobriously used a Statue they had erected to the King her Husband. King *Alonso* intended to have succoured her, but was prevented by the Death of Prince *Alonso* of *Castile*, who had been proclaim'd King, in opposition to the King his Brother; whereupon ensued some tranquillity in the Affairs of *Castile*. King *John* of *Aragon*, made great Interest that his Son *Ferdinand* might marry *Elizabeth*, Sister to the King of *Castile*. Our King *Alonso*, also sent Embassadors to demand her according to the Articles concluded at *Gibraltar*. But these Embassadors could not prevail, for she was already engaged to *Ferdinand*, and much more to those who advised that Match, in opposition to her Brother, that she might the better, with their assistance, deprive him of the Crown. That Match was concluded in *February*, 1469. This is that *Elizabeth*, so much admired by the *Spaniards* for Sanctity, and yet, by this it appears she aimed to Usurp the Crown from her Brother, and actually did it from his only Daughter.

## C H A P.

## C H A P. VI.

The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of King *Alonso*, the Fifth of the Name, and Twelfth King of Portugal, and his Death; from the Year 1470, till 1481.

1. ON the 18th. of September, died at *Setubal*, Prince *Ferdinand*, Brother to King *Alonso*, and Father to many Children; whereof one was *Emanuel* afterwards King. Soon after his Death, his Daughter *Ellenor* was married to Prince *John*, he being Fourteen Years of Age, and she Thirteen. Twelve Portuguese Ships now coming from *Flanders*, were taken by the *English*; whereupon, our King ordered Reprisals to be made, and sent Embassadors to complain of it; which was followed by a lasting Peace. In the mean while, Persons were sent to discover the Port of *Arzila*, on the Coast of *Africk*, who brought an Account, that 30000 Men were requisite for that Expedition; 24000 Landmen, besides the Scamen, were shipped on Board 308 Sail of all sorts. The King sailed to *Lagos* in *Algarve*, before he discovered his Design, then passing over to *Arzila*, took that Place, as he did *Tangier*, forsaken by the Inhabitants upon the first News of his approach. Upon this Conquest, the King changed his Titles, which before were, King of *Portugal*, *Algarve* and *Centa*; for those of, King of *Portugal*, and both *Algarves*, that on this side, and that on the other in *Africk*. Prince *Ferdinand*, after he was taken in the former Expedition, against *Tangier*, lived Six Years in Slavery, and his Body remained Twenty more among the Infidels. But the King gave now in exchange for his Bones, Two Wives, and a Daughter of *Alley Roque*, Lord of that Place; and afterwards King of *Fez*. The Bones were brought over, and buried in the famous Church of *Batalla*. King *Henry* of *Castile*, and our King *Alonso*, had an interview between *Badajoz*, and *Elvas*, about a Match for the Prince of *Portugal*, with *Joana*, Princess of *Castile*, but it had no Effect; for the rebellious *Castilians*, openly declared her a Bastard, and *Elizabeth*, that King's Sister was married to *Ferdinand*.



*Aragon*, by the Name of Princess of *Castile*. It is horrid to think, with what Impudence they durst Declare that Princess a Bastard, seeing she was Born in Wedlock; and for what they pretended of the King's Impotency, it was contrary to Reason; since it is notorious the Queen was jealous of him, and she could have no occasion for jealousy, had she found the King unfit for the Company of Women. But the World is sufficiently convinced, there can be no true Reason given to justify Rebellion, yet Rebels never want pretences to Colour their Villany.

Affairs of  
Castile.

2. King *Henry* of *Castile* met his Sister *Elizabeth* at *Segovia*, and he dying on the 11th. of *December* following, it was generally believed he was poisoned. In his Will, he appointed his Daughter *Joanna* to succeed him, and desired the King of *Portugal*, to take her to Wife. At the Hour of his Death, his Confessor pressed him to declare who was his lawful Heir; and he answered his Daughter *Joanna*. Nothing more could have been done to prove her Legitimate, but nothing will suffice against hardened Rebels. Scarce was the Princess *Elizabeth* assured of the King's Death, when she caused her self to be proclaimed Queen at *Segovia*. In the mean while, the Marquis de *Villena*, the Earl of *Benavente*, and the Bishop of *Sigüenza*, appointed by King *Henry*, to see his Will executed, sent to the King of *Portugal*, praying him to set forward with all possible speed, and that not only they, but many more Nobles, and the principal Cities of *Castile*, would declare for him. The King was then at *Estremoz*, where having consulted his Council, he resolved to accept of what was offered; and in order thereunto, sent his Lord Chamberlain, *Lope de Albuquerque* to *Castile*, who returned to him with fresh Assurances, in the Month of *January*, the King being then at *Evora*. *Elizabeth* the New Queen, sent some religious Men to advise our King not to engage in an unjust War (as she termed it) and to offer him another *Joanna*, Sister to her Husband *Ferdinand*, in Marriage. He answered he was resolved to stand by his Niece, being obliged to it, as an Uncle, as a King, and as a Gentleman.

Alonso  
wages War  
with Ca-  
stile in de-  
fence of the  
regal  
dignity.

3. Whilst he made Preparations for War, he sent an Ambassador to *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth*, to demand that Crown, who returning with such an Answer, as he had expected; he immediately advances to *Castile*, by the way of

of *Aronches*, with 5600 Horse, and 14000 Foot. With this Army he came to *Plasencia*, and was there joyfully received by many of the Nobility. There he found the true Queen, and was contracted to her, those there present, and many absent, by Proxy, swore Allegiance to him. The King then stiled himself King of *Castile*, and *Portugal*, and nothing was wanting for Bedding with the Queen, but the Dispensation from *Rome*, which *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth*, with all their might opposed. No sooner was this known to the *Castilian* King and Queen, but they also took the stile of *Castile* and *Portugal*, and sent Forces to invade that Kingdom, which having made some spoil returned without any opposition. Queen *Joanna* sent her Letters, to all the Towns of *Castile*, exhorting them to return to her Obedience, since they had twice sworn her lawful Heiress to the Crown. The King marched to *Arevalo*, and thence to *Toro*, which City held for him, and the Castle he took by force. *Zamora* was delivered to him, and thither he conducted his Bride. Thence they returned to *Toro*, where Queen *Joanna*, Mother to the Bride, and Sister to the Bridegroom, died on the 13. of *June*. *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth* raised all the Forces they could, and had now gathered together 12000 Horse, and 30000 Foot. With this Force *Ferdinand* marched and encamped before *Toro*, where feigning Friendship, he sent to advise King *Alonso* to depart, or to decide the matter by single Combat; neither whereof, he well knew, could as circumstances stood be accepted. However, *Peter de Avendaño* so cut off the *Castilian's* Provisions, that he was forced to draw off his Army to *Medina del Campo*. Thither came *Elizabeth* to *Ferdinand*, reproaching him, that he had not accepted of a single Combat, on such terms as the *Portuguese* allowed of. But Money beginning now to fail them, and they fearing to tax the People, had recourse to the Clergy, who gave them half the Plate of the Churches.

4. Some Overtures of Peace were now made, but came not to any head. Our King marching to relieve *Guages*, was recalled by the revolt of *Zamora*, which *Elizabeth* of *Castile*, laying hold of, gave out that he fled, which drew many to her Party. The *Portuguese* now grew weary of being abroad, and the King wanting Money, his Subjects refused to furnish him upon that Account; so that all his Affairs went backwards. King *Alonso* thus

1476.

streighted, discharged many of his Army, and many more went away without expecting a Discharge. The Governour of the Castles on the Bridge of *Zamora*, being corrupted by *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth*, some advised to build a Wall betwixt them and the Town, and they would perish; but the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and other great Men, perswaded the King to remove to *Toro*, leaving behind in the Castle, all his Equipage, because he could not then Travel with so much Baggage. *Ferdinand* immediately entred the City, and attacked the Castle, but without success. King *Alonso* sent him a challenge, and he refused any single Combat, for which he was again, severely reproved by his Wife *Elizabeth*; she being fitter to have been *Ferdinand*, than he was to be *Elizabeth*. In *January* the Prince of *Portugal* came to *Toro*, with some Troops, and was there received with great joy, except by the Duke of *Arcvalo*, and Marquis de *Villena*, who began to incline to King *Ferdinand*. King *Alonso* however resolved to put all to the issue of a Battle, tho the Archbishop of *Toledo*, of all the *Castilian* Nobility that invited him, was the only Person that stood now by him. Fifteen Days after the Princes arrival, King *Alonso* marched towards *Zamora* to meet King *Ferdinand*, leaving his Queen behind at *Toro*. He attacked the Bridge, but to no purpose. Overtures of Peace were again made without any likelihood of success, for it was decreed, no Accommodation should be purchased without Blood. King *Alonso* seeing he wasted his Army, lying before a Town in the dead of Winter, his Enemy lying close, returned towards *Toro*, his Forces braving the *Castilians* by the slowness of their March. *Ferdinand* ashamed to have been so long dured, at length sallied out to fall upon the Rear of the *Portuguese* Army. *Alonso* suspecting no such thing, was now marched down a Hill in great disorder, as being at the Gates of his own City. It was debated among the *Castilians*, whether they ought to pursue their Enemy, who they said fled, or return to *Zamora*; but the Cardinal, *Peter Gonzalez de Mendoza*, having from the top of the Hill, taken a view of the *Portuguese* Army, said it would be a shame to return without bidding Battle, and thereupon their Army advanced.

5. King *Alonso* perceiving the approach of the Enemy, drew up his Army. In the Van he placed the *Castilians*, and his own Household. He himself led the main Body, Prince

Prince *John* the left Wing, and the Archbishop of *Toledo* the Right. *D. John de Castro*, Earl of *Monsanto*, brought up the Rear. The Sun was now going down, and a small Rain began to fall when the two Armies engaged. Prince *John* gave a vigorous Charge on his side, and was received with no less Bravery, yet forced the *Castilian* Wing to retire to the main Body. At the same time the King advanced before his Men, and the Fight was maintained on both sides for the space of an hour before any gave Ground, both Reserves coming up to second their Princes. The *Portuguese*, overpowered by the number of their Enemies, began to forsake the Royal Standard, which was taken, after both the bearer's Hands were cut off. King *Alonso* in despair would have cast himself into the midst of his Enemies, if not dissuaded by some of his Followers. In Conclusion, the King, and those Gentlemen that could bear him Company, fled to *Castro Nunho*, where they were honourably received by *Peter de Avendano* the Governour. Prince *John*, who had defeated the Enemy's Right Wing, seeing the rout of the Army, with what Forces he could gather, stood firm on an Eminence, where he continued all the day. Most of the other routed *Portuguese* cast themselves into the River *Duero*, where more perished by Water than had done by the Sword. King *Ferdinand* (who never loved Fighting) did not lead his Men, but stood with a strong Party on a rising Ground, to secure his own Escape, in case of need, and seeing his Right Wing drove by Prince *John*, and the main Body hard put to by King *Alonso*, he with that Body of Guards halted away towards *Zamora*, without expecting to see the Event of the Battle. Thus he came at Night to *Zamora* in a Consternation, not knowing whether he was Victorious, or defeated. Such was his Cowardize and Precipitation.

6. The Prince continued all the Night on that Eminence, we have already mentioned, by sound of Trumpets, and the light of Fires calling together the Remains of the scattered Army. In the Morning, when he expected to have been charged by the *Castilians*, it appeared they were gone after the King to *Zamora*; whereupon he marched away in good Order, with Colours flying, to *Toro*. Finding no News of his Father there, all was in great Confusion. Till Advice was brought him where he

The Portuguese Army routed.

The Prince marching up with the remains of the Portuguese Army.

was. They met, and together received a courteous Message from King *Ferdinand*, who sent the King all his Equipage which he had taken in the Castle of *Zamora*. The Archbishop of *Toledo*, who only of all the *Castilian* Nobility adhered to the *Portuguese*, asked leave now to depart to defend his own Lands, which were wasted by King *Ferdinand's* Commanders. The Bishop of *Evora* with his Troops was sent to Conduct him on his way; who being come back, returned with the Prince to *Portugal*, to defend the Frontiers, then much infested by the Enemy. King *Alonso* had sent D. *Alvaro de Atayde* from *Toro* into *France*, designing to follow in Person, and crave Succour for carrying on the War, in case this Embassador found a favourable Reception. King *Lewis* entertained D. *Alvaro* with such feigned Friendship, that he easily perswaded the King his Master to go over into *France*. The King having resolved upon that Journey, after settling the Government of those few Places he held in *Castile*, about the beginning of *June* set forward for *Portugal*, carrying with him his Bride, that should have been Queen, *Joanna*, now spoiled of her Crown. Being come to *Miranda*, she went away to the City *Guarda*, and he to *Porto*, where he intended to Embark for *France*. Thither repaired the Prince, Nobility, and Clergy, dissuading him from that Voyage, but he was not to be moved from that Resolution. He set Sail with 21 Vessels of several sort, and in them 500 Gentlemen, and 2200 Men at Arms. By the way he touched at *Centa*, next at *Marseilles*, and landed at *Colivure*, where he was received with Respect by the Governour. At *Perpignan*, in Honour to him, the Prison-Gates were set open. Thence he sent D. *Francisco de Almeyda* to King *Lewis*, to appoint the Place where they should meet; and great Honour was shewn him all the way he travelled through that Country.

7. At *Bourges* King *Lewis* met him, and extraordinary Civilities passed between them. They agreed, that King *Alonso* should go to the Duke of *Burgundy* his Cousin, to crave Aid of him, or in case he could not grant it, by reason of the War he was engaged in with *Lorrain*, then to perswade him not to molest King *Lewis*, whilst he assisted King *Alonso*. That to make the King's Title undeniable, the Pope's Dispensation should be immediately obtained, for him to Marry Queen *Joanna*,

true

true Heiress of *Castile*. That each of them should appoint four Persons to adjust what Army and Treasure was requisite for carrying on their Design. King *Lewis* readily offered a good Sum of Money to Bribe all such Governours of Towns, as could by that means be drawn to their Party. Embassadors were immediately dispatch'd to *Rome* to obtain the Dispensation, and King *Alonso* set out to meet the Duke of *Burgundy*, who then lay at the Siege of *Nancy* in *Lorrain*. They met upon the River, then frozen over, and the King being conducted to the Army with all possible marks of Honour and Respect; the Duke there shewed him, how little Confidence was to be reposed in the Promises of the King of *France*, who the next day appeared with an Army in favour of the *Lorrainer*. The day after, the *Burgundian* was killed, and King *Lewis* being bent upon the Conquest of *Burgundy*, sent King *Alonso* to *Paris*, where he was received with the greatest Magnificence imaginable. All, the Embassadors could obtain of the Pope, was, that if the King of *France* would furnish King *Alonso* with a sufficient Force to reduce *Castile*, he would then grant the Dispensation. Hereupon the two Kings met at *Arras*, where *Alonso* plainly discovered he could repose no Trust in *Lewis*. He went away to *Roan*, and there spent a great part of the Summer, waiting till his Fleet was fitted out to return home. He went down the River to his Fleet, then at *Harfleur*, but fearing to be stayed by the King of *France*, and ashamed to return home after that unfortunate Journey, he resolved to go and spend the rest of his Days in *Hierusalem*. On the 24th. of *September* before Day, he went out to a Chappel near the City, with only four Servants, having ordered his Chaplain, *Stephen Martinez*, to expect him half a League further. There he dismissed one of the four, giving him the Key of a Cabinet, in which were found four Letters; one for the King of *France*, giving him an Account of his Design, and desiring him to favour those Servants he left in his Kingdom. Another for Prince *John* his Son, charging him upon his Blessing immediately to cause himself to be Proclaimed King. Another to the Kingdom in general, Commanding the People to receive him as such. The last was to those left at *Harfleur*, directing them to be Obedient to the Earl of *Flanders*, till their return to *Portugal*.

V 4

E. Monfieur

Prince  
John of  
Portugal  
proclaimed  
King, his  
Father ar-  
rived four  
days after.

8. Monsieur de Labret, by the King of France his Order, attended upon King *Alonso*, who sent out every way to find him, and having met with him the second day, stopped him, but with all imaginable Respect. There he received a Letter from King *Lewis*, by which he was perswaded to alter his Resolution, and to return to *Portugal*, where, on the Tenth of *November* his Son was Proclaimed King in the Town of *Santarem*, pursuant to the Letters he had sent to that effect. Only four days had he worn the Crown, when his Father arrived, and he in Confusion asking, how he should receive him? The Duke of *Braganza* answered, As your Father, and as your King. The Prince accordingly met him at *Oeyras*, where kneeling he kissed his hands, and resigned the Government up to him, King *Alonso* would have contented himself with the Title of King of *Algarce*, but the Prince persisted he would accept of nothing during his Life. Whilst the King was abroad, Queen *Elizabeth* laid Siege to *Toro*, which was bravely defended, till one *Bartholomew*, a Shepherd, discovered to the *Castilian* Generals a Place, which being thought unaccessible, was left unguarded. Wherefore Six Hundred Men in the Night, conducted by the Shepherd, surmounted all those difficult Passes, and got into the Town. The Count de *Marialva*, who was Governour, quitting the Castle, fled to *Castro Nunko*, yet the Lady *Mary Sarmiento*, Widow of *John de Ulloa*, who had been Constable of that Fort, defended that Place, till seeing no hopes of Relief, she was obliged to surrender it upon most Honourable Articles. Presently after, Queen *Elizabeth* caused the other Places that held for *Portugal*, to be besieged, and had them surrendered to her. In the mean while the *Portuguese* Forces wasted the Country about *Badajoz* and *Cuidad Rodrigo*; and *Alonso de Cardenas*, Master of *Santiago*, did the same on the *Portuguese* Borders, both Parties executing the utmost Cruelties usual in War.

1473.

War re-

newed with

Castile.

9. Upon the return of King *Alonso* out of France, the War was revived, and he thought of Marrying the Lady *Joanna*, having obtained a Dispensation; but Prince *John* his Son used his utmost Endeavours to obstruct it. The Bishop of *Evora* going into *Castile* with 700 Horse, and a Number of Foot, to assist the Countess of *Medellin*, who followed the *Portuguese* Interest, was met by the Master

Master of *Santiago*, routed, and taken Prisoner, yet bringing his Keeper, he escaped to *Merida*, and ever after did the *Castilians* much harm, till the Peace was concluded. Both Parties being sufficiently exhausted, easily condescended to Treat of a Peace, which was concluded at *Alcaçovas* on the Fourth of *September*, excluding the unfortunate Princess *Joanna*, who against her will was forced to become a Nun. Yet she lived to see God's Judgments fall upon them that drove her to that Necessity; for Prince *John*, who hoped to Marry his Son to the Princess *Elizabeth* of *Castile*, and by that means to make him Heir to that Crown, saw that same Son dragged to Death by a Horse, and none of his Race ascended the Throne of *Portugal*. King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Elizabeth* outlived their only Son *John*, and had only a Daughter left, who conveyed that Crown to the House of *Austria*. Nor was the Plague, that began the following Year at *Lisbon*, and lasted Fourteen Years, less to be accounted of than Heavenly Vengeance. The *Castilians*, contrary to the last Articles of Peace, sent a Fleet to Trade on the Coast of *Guinea*. Our King sent a Squadron, under the Command of *George Correa*, to obstruct them. He met with 30 Ships of *Castile* upon the Coast called *Mina*, and after a sharp Engagement, obtained a compleat Victory, bringing several of them to *Lisbon*.

1479.  
Peace con-  
cluded be-  
twixt the  
two Crowns

1480.

1481.

10. King *Alonso*, ever since the Lady *Joanna* of *Castile* was constrained to take upon her a Religious Habit, fell into an extraordinary Melancholy, and had resolved himself to turn a Monk; but returning from acquainting his Son with his Design to *Cintra*, he there fell sick of a violent Fever, which in a few days carried him off. His Death was upon the Eighth of *August*, in the 49th. Year of his Age, and 43d. of his Reign. He was of a Graceful Presence, somewhat bulky, had a thick Beard, his Hair dark-brown, and of Condition extremely courteous. In War he was active, in Peace negligent, a Lover of Learning, learned himself, and was the first King that collected a Library in the Palace. It was said of him, That he was a better Man than a King; and on the contrary of his Son, That he was a better King than a Man. He was Bountiful to Prodigality, temperate in Eating and Sleeping, and of such Continence, that becoming a Widower at 23 Years of Age, he is said never

The Death  
of King  
Alonso.



*His Issue.* never after to have known Woman. His Lawful Issue, and he had no other, was, first, *John*, who died in his Infancy. Secondly, *Joanna*, who being contracted to several Princes, they all died before she could be married, and she became a *Dominican Nun* at *Aveiro*. Thirdly, *John*, who succeeded his Father.

*Discoveries during his Reign.* II. The Discoveries in this King's Reign were as follows: *Nunho Tristan*, and *Antony Gonzalez* sailed as far as *Cape Blanco*, in 20 Degrees of North Latitude, whence they brought some *Moors*, and also *Blacks*, then a Rarity in *Spain*. *Nunho* returned, and proceeded as far as the Islands of *Arguin*. *Lanzarote* and *Yanez* found the Island of *Gargas*, whence they brought 200 Slaves. *Antony Gonzalez* returning, pierced as far as the Island *Tider*: *Alvaro Fernandez* discovered *Cape Matos*, and going 100 Leagues farther, slew the Lord of that Country. *Gonzalo de Sintra* at *Angra* lost six Men, which was the first Loss sustained in these Discoveries. *Denis Fernandez* reached as far as the River *Sanaga*, in 16 Degrees of North Latitude, and discovered the Islands of *Cabo Verde*, *Buenavista*, *Santiago*, and *S. Philip*. *Vincent de Lagos*, and *Lewis Cadamosto*, a *Genese*, found the Islands *Terceras*, being Eleven in number. The Islands of *S. Thomas* and *Principe*, the Kingdom of *Beni*, as far as *Cape Catherine*, and *Sierra Leona*, were also discovered. *John de Santarem*, and *John de Escobar*, found the Country called *Mina*. *Ferdinand Po*, that which bears his Name. The Islands *Azores* were now first known, so called from the many Hawks seen there, and are Nine in number, lying due West of the Rock of *Sintra*. In one of these, on the top of a Mountain, called *Del Cuervo*, or of the Crow, was found a Statue of a Man on Horseback, his Head bare, his Left Hand on the Horse's Main, the Right pointing to the West: It stood upon a stone Pedestal, which, together with the whole Statue, was all of one piece, and under it were certain Characters cut in the Rock, but could never be understood.

## CHAP. VII.

*The First Part of the Life and Reign of John, the Second of the Name; and Thirteenth King of Portugal; from the Year of our Lord 1455. till 1491.*

I. IN the renowned City *Lisbon*, on the Third of *May*, Birth of 1455. was born the most excellent Prince *John* the King John Second, King of *Portugal*, surnamed the *Perfect* and the *the Second.* 1455. *Great*. He was baptized in the Cathedral, with the greatest pomp and solemnity, that had till then been seen. This Prince was educated and instructed in all Arts, that can accomplish a Person of that Character. This, and his personal Worth, moved King *Henry* the 4th. of *Castile*, to propose a Match between him and his only Daughter, the Lady *Joanna*. However the King his Father, gave him to Wife, the Lady *Ellenor* of *Lancaster*, eldest Daughter to his Brother *Ferdinand*; having obtained the Pope's Dispensation for it, and they were accordingly married on the 22th. of *January*, 1470. 1470. Soon after his Marriage, the King preparing for his Voyage into *Africk*, the Prince asked, and obtained leave of him, to bear him company, where he behaved himself with such bravery, that his Father Knighted him in the *Mosque* of *Arzila*, then converted into a Christian Church, on the 24th. of *August*, 1471. 1471. *Alonso* the Prince's only Son being born on the 18th. of *May*, at such time as King *Alonso*, was marching into *Castile*, to marry the Lady *Joanna*, rightful Heiress of that Crown; he ordained, that in case he had Issue by her, and his Son should die before him, then his Grand-Son should be sworn his Heir, which was done, and Prince *John* was left to govern the Kingdom. 1475. How he marched with Forces to the assistance of his Father, then at *Toro* in *Castile*; and how he behaved himself in the Battle between that Place, and *Zamorra*, has been said in the Life of that King. 1476. Upon his return into *Portugal*, he recovered *Alegrete*, taken by the *Castilians*. 1477. Having been, as was said in the last Chapter, proclaimed King in his Father's life time, and by his order; upon his return out of *France*, he restored to him the Regal

Regal Authority, by the advice of the Duke of *Bragança*, and yet he thought to have put that great Man to Death afterwards upon that same Account.

1478.

2. King *Alonso* having revived the War with *Castile*, *Lope Vaz de Castet-Branco*, seized the Town of *Moura*, and called himself Earl thereof. The Prince resenting this Insolence, sent Six Men, who being admitted into his company, slew him as he was Hunting; which done, the Prince secured the Town, and gave it to the Princess *Beatrice*, his Mother-in-Law, to whom it properly appertained. The King lying on his Death Bed at *Sintra*, the Prince hastened thither to see him, and his Father dying on the Three and twentieth of *August*, he was the

1481.  
King John  
proclaim-  
ed.

second time proclaimed King the last Day of that Month. *Nunho Pereyra* immediately upon the New King's Accession to the Crown, presented him with a Note he had given him under his Hand, in his Minority, promising to make him an Earl whensoever he ascended the Throne. The King considering he had obtained that Note in his Infancy, when he had not judgment to know on whom he ought to bestow Honours, tore it, telling him, it was a sufficient Favour he did not punish him for having used sinister means to obtain it. He had resolved to build a Town and Fort on the Coast of *Africk*, called *Mina*; to this purpose he fitted out a Fleet, commanded by *James de Azambuja*, who had with him 500 fighting Men, and 100 Masons, with all materials for the Work, so fitted, that at their landing there was nothing to do, but to put them together. *Azambuja* landing, caused Masts to be laid on the Shoar under a Tree, whither the King called *Caramansa*, came to him, with a great Retinue, and was converted. The Fort was built, and called *S. George*; which done, *Azambuja* sent home his Caravels with a great quantity of Gold.

Fort of St.  
George, on  
the Coast of  
Africa,  
built.

3. Before this Fleet sailed, the *Cortes* or Parliament had met at *Evora*, where the Form of Obligation, that Lords and Governours of Places were to enter into with the King, was settled, because till then the Nobility and Commanders exercised a despotick Power in their Jurisdictions independent of the Kings, and by their tyrannical Proceedings were grown burdensome to the People, and dangerous to the Sovereign, who had little more left him but the Name. King *John* being now at Peace abroad, ordered that no Lord should exercise a judicial Power

Power in Cases Criminal. This pleased the People, but made him odious to the Nobility. Soon after, he made a Law, That his Judges, and other Officers of Justice, should execute their employments throughout all the Territories of great Men that pretended exemption from them. All the Grandees opposed these New Ordinances; but the King was not so jealous of any, as of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Bragança*, a Servant of whom presented to the King certain Letters from the King of *Castile* to the said Duke, which much increased the King's suspicion, and caused him to decree his Death. In the mean while, the Plague beginning to diffuse it self at *Lisbon*, King *John* removed his Court to *Monte-Major*, a more healthy Place. An Embassador was sent into *England*, to confirm the established Friendship with that King. Another was also dispatch'd to *Castile*, about concluding the Match designed betwixt Prince *Alonso* of *Portugal*, and the Princess *Elizabeth* of *Castile*, which was not effected till afterwards Embassadors came thence to *Portugal* on that Account. By his Embassadors that had been in *Castile*, the King had farther information concerning the Duke of *Bragança* his holding Correspondence with that King. The Duke was warned by the King to forbear any farther proceeding in that Correspondence; yet he desisted not, but on the contrary, proposed to unnaturalize himself, in order to be at liberty to withstand his Sovereign. The King understanding that the Duke accompanied his Son Prince *Alonso* in his Journey from *Moura* to *Evora*, he resolved to apprehend him. After the Solemnity of the Princes Reception was over, the Duke coming to take his leave of the King, was, by his order, secured.

1482.

The Plague  
at Lisbon.

4. The Duke being now in Custody, the King called his Council, and laid before them the Copies of his Letters of Correspondence with *Castile*. Judges were appointed for his Trial, before whom he appeared twice, but refused to come the third time. They thereupon past Sentence of Death upon him, which was publicly executed upon a Scaffold, by severing his Head from his Body. *D. Alvaro de Portugal*, one of the Duke's Brothers, was banished, and found such Favour in *Castile*, that he was made President of the Council. The Marquis of *Monte-Major*, his other Brother, having made his escape, was executed in Effigy. This done, the King

The Duke of  
Bragança  
beheaded  
for High-  
Treason

1484.

The Duke  
of Viseo,  
Conspires  
against the  
King's  
Life.

King and Queen took a Progress through the Provinces betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, and behind the Mountains. In February they returned to *Santarém*, where they found the Death of the Duke of *Bragança*, instead of security to them, was like to produce greater danger. The Duke of *Viseo*, Brother to the Queen, had conspired to Murder the King, in hopes to Succeed him; as he would have done, had he not endeavoured to anticipate the time. His Associates were, the Bishop of *Evora*, and several other Persons of Note. This Treason was discovered to the King by *Antony de Faria*, who had it from *James Tinoco*, Brother to a Servant-Maid of the Bishop, that gave him the first information. *James Tinoco* gave the King a particular Account of the Design, but found not entire Credit, till *D. Vasco Coutino* confirmed all he had said. Three times the King escaped the Danger, being provided against it since the information given him; and yet none of the Conspirators perceived he knew any thing of it. On the 22d. of *August* being at *Setúbal*, he sent for the Duke; and having taken him aside, asked of him, what he would do to the Man that designed to kill him. The Duke answered, *I would kill him first if I could.* Then replied the King, *You have given judgment against your self.* At the same Instant he stabbed him, so that he fell down dead at his Feet.

The Duke  
stabbed by  
the King.

The other  
Conspira-  
tors puni-  
shed.

5. Late at Night Proclamation was made for apprehending the rest of the Conspirators, and the next Morning the Duke's Carcass was exposed to publick view upon the Scaffold. Most of the Traitors were apprehended. The Bishop of *Evora* being put into a Cistern, was there eaten alive by Worms. His Brother *Ferdinand* was beheaded; the same end had *Peter de Albuquerque*. *D. Gutiere Coutino* died in Prison, and *D. Alvaro de Atayde* fled to *Castile*, and was afterwards pardoned by King *Emanuel*. The Count de *Pena-Macor* died at *Sevil*, and *Ferdinand de Sylveira* was killed in *France*. *D. Vasco Coutinho*, one of the discoverers, for his loyalty was created an Earl; and *Tinoco* the other, being of less Quality, had 5000 Crowns down given him, and a Church Revenue worth 1500 a Year. This done, the King bestowed all that had belonged to the Duke of *Viseo* upon his Brother *Emanuel*, and with it the hopes of Succeeding to the Crown, as also of the Empire of *Asia*; for at this time, *Burtholomew Diaz*, by the King's order, dis-

covered

covered the Cape of *Good Hope*, which he then called *Tormentoso*, or Stormy, because of the ill Weather he met with there.

6. Whilst these things passed in *Portugal*, the City *S. George* in *Guinea* increased, and the Christian Religion diffused it self; whereupon the King, this Year, first stiled himself Lord of *Guinea*. Several sorts of new Coin, as well of Gold and Silver, as of Copper, were now also spread abroad in *Portugal*. The King had sent *D. Peter de Noronha* his Embassador to *Rome*, to pay his Obedience to the Pope, and obtain of him the Croisade, in order to prosecute his Conquests in *Africk*, for which he made Preparations throughout the Kingdom. Four *Venetian* Gallies being taken by the *French*, and the Men put ashore almost naked at *Cascaes*, the King not only relieved them with Cloaths, and other Necessaries, but gave them such a Sum of Money, as redeemed their Gallies, wherewith they returned home. Whereupon that Republick sent a Solemn Embassy, with Presents, to return him Thanks for that extraordinary Act of Hospitality. The Town of *Azamor* in *Africk* sent this Year to submit it self to our King, and was taken into in *Africk* Protection. The way to *India* by Sea beginning to be laid open, after the Discovery of the Cape of *Good Hope*, the King sent *Alonso de Payva*, and *John de Cubillan*, to take a Journey into *India* by Land. Others followed them; but the particulars of those Actions belong to the *Portuguese Asia*, where they may be found. The Catholick King and Queen falling short of Ammunition at the Siege of *Granada*, sent to desire a Supply of King *John*, which was speedily and plentifully conveyed to them. *John Alonso de Aveyro* discovered the Coast of *Beni*, and brought thence the first Pepper that was ever brought from those Parts; as also an Embassador from that King, who was honourably entertained, and sent back loaded with Presents. *James de Almeida*, a Knight of *Malta*, Sailing for *Africk* with 30 Sail, in which were 1500 Horse, and 1000 Foot; and being put by his Port, landed near the City *Anafe*, where encountering a multitude of *Moors*, he killed 900, and carried away 400 Prisoners. The King improved this Accident, by giving out he had chastised those *Moors* for their Disobedience to their Prince *Muley Belsabe*, which that Prince believed, and ever accounted himself much obliged to King *John*.

1485.

King John  
stiles him-  
self Lord  
of Guinea.

1486.

The Jews  
fly out of  
Castile into  
Portugal.

7. *Barraxe*, a Valiant Moor, with a Party of 400 Horse, and as many Foot, took a great Booty about *Tangier*; but the Governour of that Place, *D. John de Meneses*, instantly pursued him, took him Prisoner, and recovered all the Prey. The Jews, who in great Numbers lived in *Castile*, seeing themselves condemned to the Flames, by the erecting the Inquisition in that Country, swarmed into *Portugal*. King *John* at first entertained them; but afterwards being sensible of their wicked Practices, for that pretending to be Christians, they ceased not to Judaize; he sent out his Officers, who burnt some, chastised others, and filled all the Prisons with them. This made many of them fly over into *Africk*, where they professed themselves openly Jews; whereupon the King forbid any more passing over thither, upon pain of Death; giving them Liberty, at the same time, to remove to any Christian Country. But tho' it happened some Years latter, let us here relate what was done in this case. In the Year 1492. vast multitudes of Jews came out of *Castile* into *Portugal*, engaging to pay the King a certain number of Ducats for each Head, and only desiring to be permitted to pass through the Kingdom. Eight Months were allotted them to stay; and certain Ports assigned them to Embark. The Term expiring, many went over to the Coast of *Fez*, where they were plundered and abused by the Moors, having been little better treated by the Portuguese. Many returned to *Castile*, pretending they were converted, and many stay'd in *Portugal* under the same colour. The King, the following Year, finding them obstinate in their wicked Practices, made all that could be found Slaves; and taking their Children away, sent them to the Island of *S. Thomas*, to be there brought up Christians. Thus the Jews came first to mix their Race with that of the Ancient Portuguese.

1488.

8. The King, notwithstanding it was a time of Peace, ceased not to lay up Magazines in all his Garrisons, and fortified the Town of *Olivenga*, which alarmed the King and Queen of *Castile*; but he satisfied them, and went on with what he had begun. In *Africk*, *D. Vasco Coutinho*, Earl of *Borba*; with only 70 Horse, defeated 450 Moors, and took their Commander, who lay in wait to have surprized him. Upon the receipt of this News, the King sent over 150 Horse, and some Foot, to en-

courage

courage his Forces there. They passed the Bridge of *Alcacerquibir*, that had never before been passed by the Portuguese, and returned with Slaves and Cattle. In the Month of *October* arrived at *Lisbon*, *Bemoy*, King of *Bemoy*, an African King, who being expelled his Kingdom, came to ask Succours for recovering of it. He had Audience of the King at *Setuval*, and having proposed the Motive of his coming, was answered, That nothing could obstruct the assisting him, but his being an Infidel; for that it was not allowed Christian Princes to give Aid to Pagans. He replied, he was ready to receive the Faith, and only sorry that it might be thought he was moved to it by any Temporal Interest. On the Third of *November*, he, and six of his principal Followers, were baptized; the King, Prince, and Duke, *Emanuel* being Godfathers. On the seventh the King Knighted him, and gave him for his Arms, *Gules*, a Cross, *Or*, within an Orle of *Portugal*. Next, he did Homage to the King, and promised Obedience to the Pope. This done, the King sent him home with 20 Caravels well manned and provided, under the Command of *Peter Vaz da Cunha*, with Orders to erect a Fort at the Mouth of the River *Zanaga*. This Expedition succeeded not, for *Cunha* fearing to venture himself in that unhealthy Country, murdered the unfortunate *Bemoy*, and so returned home with the Fleet, and the King unjustly connived at this Villany.

9. At the beginning of the Year the King went into *Algarve*, and thence sent over some Forces, with Magazines and Materials, to build a Fort at the Mouth of the River *Larache*, ordering it to be called *Graciosa*. *Muley*, King of *Fez*, in whose Territory it was, understanding how the Work advanced, set down before it with 40000 Horse, and a vast multitude of Foot. King *John* sent Succours to the besieged, but all too weak to withstand so great a Force. He thought of going over in Person, but the Moors offering to suffer the Christians to depart, the offer was accepted, and the Place abandoned. *Barraxe* that Moor who had been taken Prisoner by *D. Vasco Coutinho*, being ransomed, now held Correspondence with a Gentleman, called *Lope Sanchez*, about betraying the City *Centa* to him. *Sanchez* held him in hand, and gave Advice to the King, who sent to secure that Place 50 Sail from *Algarve*, well manned and stored, under

N

the



the Command of *D. Ferdinand de Meneses*. He and his Brother *Antony*, that was before at *Centa*, marched out with 150 Horse, and 1000 Foot, and falling upon the Town of *Targa*, easily took it, as being abandoned. The Town they utterly destroyed, took some Ships, Cannon, and Ammunition, and released some Christian Captives. This Action cost not one drop of Blood. *D. Ferdinand* marched away to *Alcaçar*, and joyning with the Governours of that Place and *Tangier*, he again set out with 400 Horse, and 1200 Foot, towards *Camice*, which the *Moors* call the *Inchanted*, because it was thought inaccessible, standing upon a craggy Hill. Now the Inchantment ceased, for the Place was taken by Assault, and razed down to the Ground, 400 of the Defendants, who hid themselves in the Mountain, being put to the Sword. But this Victory was not so cheaply purchased as the other, for it cost the Lives of 70 Men.

1492.

10. Prince *Alonso* was now going into his Fifteenth Year, an Age fit to Marry, and he was already contracted to the Princess *Elizabeth*, Eldest Daughter to King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Elizabeth* of *Castile*. The News of her being affianced to him by Proxy at *Sevil*, being brought to *Evora*, where the King then was, that City was filled with all publick Demonstrations of Joy. From thence soon after it was diffused throughout the whole Kingdom. The Plague then raging a *Lisbon*, and spreading as far as *Evora*, as also the News brought of the Death of the Princess *Joanna*, the King's Sister, in the Monastery at *Aveyro*, might have been looked upon as ill Omens forboding the evil Success of this Marriage. The publick Joy was turned for some time into Mourning, but soon after resumed again. Nor did the Preparations for the Wedding cease all that time, and they were the greatest that had ever been seen in *Portugal*. The Palace at *Evora* being thought too little to Entertain the Bride, was much enlarged. On the 22d. of November the Bride was brought to the Borders of the two Kingdoms, and on the Bridge of the River *Caya*, the Cardinal *D. Gonzalo Perez de Mendoza*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, delivered her to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Beja*, sent to receive her. Betwixt *Evora* and *Estremoz* the King and Prince met her. At the Church of our Lady of *Espineiro*, which is without the Walls of *Evora*, they were married by the Archbishop of *Braga*, and in that

Prince *Alonso* married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to the King and Queen of *Castile* and *Aragon*.

Monastery

Monastery the Prince bedded her. November the 27th. they made their Solemn Publick Entry into the City, with such Grandeur, as is not easily to be expressed, no more than can the infinite Rarities that were served up that Night at Supper. Besides the Balls, Musick, and other extraordinary Divertisements, the King appointed a Solemn Tilting, in which he deservedly carryed away the Honour from all that ran. In May the King, Queen, and Princes removed to *Santarem*, the Divertisements never ceasing, till upon Tuesday the 12th. of July, the Prince riding abroad after Dinner, and being upon a Full-speed, his Horse fell upon and Mortally bruised him. He was past all Remedy, and died the next day at the same hour he had fallen. Thus was that Scene of Joy converted into a horrid Spectacle of Sadness. The Prince was magnificently Interred in the Church of *Batalla*. The Princess was sent back to *Castile* all clad in the deepest Mourning, and in a Horse-Litter covered with Sackcloth.

1493.  
The Prince killed by a fall of his Horse.

## C H A P. VIII.

The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of King John, the Second of the Name, and Thirteenth King of Portugal; from the Year 1492, till 1495.

i. ON the 25th. of May, 1492. King John laid the Foundation of the Magnificent Church and Hospital of *All-Saints* in the beautifullest Square, or Market-Place of *Lisbon*, scattering some Money under the first Stones laid, having obtained leave of the Pope to incorporate all other Hospitals into this. The *French*, then at Peace with *Portugal*, had taken a Caravel bringing Gold from *Guinea*; whereupon the King seized all the Vessels of that Kingdom within his Ports, which caused the Caravel to be restored untouch'd. King John in the Year 1485 had sent *James Cano* with a Fleet to *Guinea*. He came to an Anchor at the Mouth of the River *Manicongo*, lying in Seven Degrees of South Latitude,

1492

X 2

Latitude, and understanding that King was far off in the In-land Parts, he sent some *Portuguese* to him with a Present, who not returning, he seized some *Blacks*, and brought them away to *Portugal*, assuring the People they should be restored; whereupon King *John* sent them back loaded with Gifts, which so obliged the Black King, that he said, *That must be the true God, whom a Prince of so much Honour adored.* He sent an Embassador to him, offering Submission to his Authority, and desiring Priests to instruct the People, and Workmen to build Churches, and a Fleet returned with all that had been desired. The King and a great number of his Subjects were baptized, as also the Queen and Prince. The King soon fell off again, because Christianity obliged him to adhere to only one Wife, and therefore he resolved to declare his Second Son, *Panfo Aquitimo*, who continued an Idolater, his Heir. *Alonso*, the eldest Brother, the Lawful Heir, and a Christian, was absent when his Father died, but hasting to Court, was proclaimed King. His Brother *Aquitimo* thought to surprize him, but failed; for his great Army was overthrown by a handful of *Portuguese* and *Blacks* that followed *Alonso*. Many of the Prisoners declared they were overthrown by a glittering Army, led by a Commander that carryed a white Cross. *Alonso* being secured in his Throne, became the Apostle of that People, in which good Work most of his Successors have followed his Example.

1492. 2. In the Month of *March*, *Christopher Columbus*, after discovering the Islands of *America*, entred the Port of *Lisbon*, to Revenge himself, by shewing what he had found, to King *John*, who had before rejected him when he came to offer his Service, and whom he thought it would now grieve to see what he had lost. Some Gentlemen offered the King to Murder him, which he not only refused, but calling *Columbus* to him, honoured and made him Presents. This Discovery alarmed all *Spain*, the *Castilians* fearing to be disturbed in their Conquests there, and the *Portuguese* pretending it appertained to them. Many Messengers and Embassadors passed between the two Kings, at last, their Ministers meeting at *Tordesillas*, divided the World betwixt them. To the *Portuguese* was allotted from 370 Leagues to the Westward of *Cabo Verde*, all to the Eastward; and all to the West from that Place, to the *Castilians*, drawing a Line

1492.  
Columbus  
after disco-  
vering of  
America,  
arrives at  
Lisbon

Spain and  
Portugal  
divide the  
World by  
what they

a Line there from North to South, so that commencing from that Point, one half of the Globe remained to each Crown. Many Persons of Note came about this time from Foreign Parts to see, and some to serve King *John*. Among them was a *French* Prince, whom the *Portuguese* call *Monsieur de Lion*, who offered to serve in *Africk* with 300 Horse at his own cost. The King of *Naples* also sent his Embassador with Rich Presents.

3. This Year and part of the next the King spent in taking a Progress through his Kingdom, and settling the Affairs of greatest Importance, for being grown sickly, he could not apply himself to Business of less moment. He also fitted out the Ships in the River of *Lisbon*, that were to sail to discover the way to *India* by the Ocean, and gave the Command of them to *Vasco de Gama*, with Instructions how to proceed. His Distemper increased, and not only cost him his Life, but laid a lasting stain upon the Good Name of his Subjects. Some of those who designed to have murdered him by the Sword, now executed their Design with Poison. A Woman, held in Esteem for her Sanctity, warned him to have a care of Poison, which nevertheless he drank out of a Spring near *Evora*, which Water he liked best. That this was true, appeared by that two Gentlemen, who drank with him at the same time, died as well as he. His Distemper seemed to turn to a Dropsie, and the Physicians advised him to go to the hot Baths at *Alvor* in *Algarve*. One of them opposed the rest, affirming, this would shorten his Days, but he was a Jew, and therefore found no Credit. The King fell into a Flux, which being stopped, he became wholly Lethargick. Coming a little to himself, he asked, how the Tide was; and being told, said, he should die within two hours. Just at Sun setting he gave up the Ghost on the 25th. of *October*. Being sensible he must die, he commanded the Plate furnished by the Churches for the late Wars, to be restored. He ordered Duke *Emmanuel* should Succeed him, having first used all possible means to leave the Crown to his Bastard-Son *George*, which was the greatest Act of Injustice he was guilty of, or indeed that could be. Having offended the Queen, Princess *Beatrix*, and the Clergy in his Life time, he now begged Pardon of them.

1494.

King John  
poisoned.

1495.  
His Death

4. Tho' the King earnestly desired to see Duke *Emanuel* before his Death, he could not compass it, some Persons perswading that Prince, his Design was to kill him. There was a small Box, whereof he always kept the Key, which was generally supposed to contain nothing but Poison: But this Box being opened after his Death, there was found in it a Book of Instructions for to make a good Confession, a Hair-cloath, and a Discipline stained with Blood. Hence the People took occasion to call him a Saint, as many before accounted him a Tyrant. In his Will the King ordered 3000 Masses should be said for his Soul, that 41 Orphans should be married, that the like number of Captives should be redeemed, that the great Hospital of *Lisbon* should be finished, that half the Plate taken from Churches by his Father for the War against *Castile*, should be restored, that Duke *Emanuel* should Succeed him in the Throne, that his Bastard-Son *George* should have the City *Cimbra*, with all the Royalities wherewith Prince *Peter* had it before, that in case Duke *Emanuel* died without Issue, the aforesaid *George* should Inherit the Crown, and that none of the Persons banished the Kingdom by him, should be restored. After his Death he had the Commendations of his very Enemies. His Body was conducted with great State from the Cathedral of *Silves* to the Monastery of *Batalha*, where it is said to have been found long after uncorrupted, which increased the Opinion of his Sanctity. He married his Cousin-German, *Ellenor*, Daughter to Prince *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viseo*, and the Lady *Beatrice*, Daughter to Prince *John*. She was a Princess endued with singular Beauty, Wit, and Vertue, and lies buried in the Monastery of the Mother of God at *Lisbon*, founded by her self, in the Cloister among the Nuns is her Grave, without any distinction.

5. Let us now give some Specimen of the many Vertues that adorned this King. First, for his great Zeal in Matters of Religion, Pope *Innocent VII.* publicly called him The Eldest Son of the Church. Daily he performed several Devotions upon his bare Knees, and in the Holy Week spent whole Nights in mourning before the Sepulchre. He forbid the use of Mules, and because the Clergy said, they would have recourse to the Pope on that account, he made it Death for any Body to use them, and so that Dispute ended. His Justice

was

was such, that he rewarded some Judges, before whom he was Cast in Law Suits; and hearing a Man was condemned to Death, who had been Fourteen Years in Prison, he pardoned him, saying, *They better deserved to die, who had kept him so long, to Condemn him at last.* Few ever exceeded him in Liberality and Gratitude, for having borrowed 1500 Ducats of *Peter Pantoja*, and kept them but five days, he then sent him his Money, and 250 Ducats for the Use of it. *Pantoja* complaining that the Interest was too great, he ordered him as much more, and said, *He would do so as often as he complained.* *James Fernandez Correa*, his Factor in *Flanders*, having lent *Maximilian* the King of the *Romans* 30000 Ducats without his Order, he sent him Thanks for so doing, and gave him 1000 Crowns. *Edward del Casal*, a Man of Worth, having employed another to beg some Favour for him, the King seeing him, said, *Since you have Hands to serve me with, why have not you a Tongue to speak to me?*

6. There was nothing that daunted him, in so much that others fearing to go aboard the Fleet, because of the Plague, he went himself, and is said to have spoke unconcerned with the Ghost of a Gentleman that was dead, and came to warn him of the Conspiracy of the Duke of *Viseo*. Favourites he never had any, and was such an Enemy to those sort of Ministers, that the Cardinal *George da Costa*, who had entire influence over his Father, fled to *Rome* before his Accession to the Crown. None that deserved well, passed unrewarded, for he carried about him a Table-Book, in which were the Names and Services of all those that merited of him. All Men had access to him, their Business was heard and answered. Truth was so much admired by him, that he made *D. Joao de Meneses* his Lord Steward, only because he said, *He always spoke the Truth, tho' it were displeasing to him.* As for Learning, he understood Philosophy, was skilled in Mathematicks, well versed in History, and a great admirer of Poetry. Tho' his Countenance represented much of Gravity, and his Carriage had much of Majesty, yet at times he was pleasant and facetious. To conclude, his Government was inferior to none of the best Kings that preceded him, and may be a Pattern to all those that come after him. Scarce any excelled him in all sorts of Vertues, and for

his Zeal to Religion, he was the first that propagated it in the *Torrid Zone*. In short, he was a Father of his People, Bountiful, Just, Merciful, Generous, Brave, a lover of Truth, and sure rewarder of Merit.

His Issue.

7. King John had only one Lawfully Begotten Son, which was Prince *Alonso*, born at *Lisbon* in the Year 1475. and who died, as has been said, unfortunately, by a Fall off his Horse in the Year 1491. being newly married to the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Ferdinand*, and Queen *Elizabeth* of *Castile*. This King had also One Bastard-Son, called *George*, created Duke of *Coimbra*, Marquis of *Torres Novas*, Master of the Military Orders of *Santiago* and *Avis*, and Lord of the Lands that had belonged to Prince *Peter*. He had also the Town of *Aveiro*, and of him are descended the Dukes of that Title, who keep the surname of *Lancaster*, taken by them in Memory of Queen *Philippa*, Daughter to the Duke of *Lancaster*. King John at length fixed the Arms of the Kingdom in the manner they are used at this Day, reducing the Castles in the *Orle* to the certain Number of Seven, and setting the Five middle Escutcheons upright.

Discoveries.

8. Discoveries in the Reign of King John were as following. *James Lano* sailed to the River and Kingdom of *Minicongo*. *James Alonso de Aveiro* to that of *Beni*, and brought thence the first Pepper that came from those Parts. *Bartolomeu Diaz* to the Cape of *Good Hope*, and passed beyond it, to the River called *Del Infante*. *Peter Covillan*, and *Alonso de Paiva*, Men versed in many Languages, went to *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*; then embarking on the *Red Sea*, saw the City *Adem*, where parting, *Paiva* went into *Ethiopia*, *Covillan* to *Cananor*, *Calicut*, *Goa*, *Sofala*, *Mozambique*, *Quiloa*, *Mombara*, and *Melinde*. then returned to *Adem*, and *Grand Caire*, where his Companion and he had appointed to meet; but the other being dead, he returned again to *Adem*, thence to *Ormus*, and then traversed *Abissinia*, being the first Man that ever performed those Travels. *Christopher Columbus* offer'd his Service to King John, but not being encouraged by him, he discovered the *West Indies* for King *Ferdinand*, and Queen *Elizabeth* of *Castile* and *Aragon*.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. IX.

*The first Part of the Life and Reign of Emanuel, the First of the Name, and Fourteenth King of Portugal; from the Year of our Lord, 1469, till 1509.*

1. **T**Hough the late King John laboured all that in him was to have left the Crown to his Bastard-Son *George*, yet neither the Queen, nor the Subjects would consent, because Duke *Emanuel* had a most undoubted Title to it. This *Emanuel* was Son to Prince *Ferdinand*, Grandson to King *Edward*, and Great Grandson to King *Alonso V.* and Cousen German to his Predecessor King *John*, whose undoubted Heir he was, that King leaving no lawful Issue. He was born in the Town of *Alconchete*, in the Province of *Riba Tejo*, upon Thursday the last Day of *May*, being the Feast of *Corpus Christi*. His Mother being in Labour was delivered of him just at the time that the Blessed Sacrament passed by her Door, and therefore she called him *Emanuel*, the proper Name of Christ, which signifies, *God is with us*. During his Infancy *Emanuel* was one of the Hostages between the King of *Castile*, and King John the Second. The very Day King John killed *James*, Brother to this *Emanuel*, he gave him all the other's Estate, only changing the Title from Duke of *Viseo*, to that of *Beja*. He also constituted him Master of the Order of *Christ*, Constable of the Kingdom, and General of the Frontiers betwixt the Rivers *Tagus* and *Guadiana*, so that his Revenue amounted to above 70000 Crowns per Annum, which was very great in that Age, and that Kingdom. His Family was encreased when he went the second time into *Castile* to conduct the Princess *Elizabeth*, Wife to Prince *Alonso*, into *Portugal*. King John, as is said, dying without any lawful Issue, and not able to prevail for his Bastard-Son *George*, *Emanuel* was proclaimed King with the usual Solemnity, upon Tuesday the 27th. of *October*, 1495, and in the 26th Year of his Age.

King Emanuel his Birth and Descent.

1469.

1494.

1495.

King Emanuel proclaimed.

2. The New King went away to *Alentejo*, where *James Hernandez de Alentejo*, Prior of *Alentejo*.



Crato, presented to him *George*, King *John's* Bastard-Son, whom he received favourably, and treated as if he had been his own. Here the *Cortes* or Parliament met, but did little Business, as well by reason of the Plague, as for that King *John* had left all Things in good Order. After sending Embassadors to *Rome* and *Castile*, the King gave the Tenth of all his Revenues in *Africk*, to the Churches there, and reinforced those Garrisons. At  
 1496. *Setuval* came to him the Sons of the late Duke of *Braganza*, executed by King *John*, their Uncle *D. Alvaro*, and *D. Sancho*, Son to *Alonso*, another of that Duke's Brothers, who were all restored to their Estates. He now sent another Embassador to *Rome*, to obtain the Pope's Dispensation for Knights of the Military Orders to marry, which was granted. At *Torres Vedras*, whither he fled from the Plague, he received Embassadors from the State of *Venice*. The *Jews* whom King *John* had made Slaves, in great Numbers had now Liberty to depart the Kingdom; and though they offer'd the King a Present of a considerable Summ of Money, he would not accept it. A time was set for them all to depart, and it was order'd that they should leave behind them all their Children that were under Fourteen Years of Age. Many of them rather than deliver their Children to be bred up Christians, murdered them; and some there were that killed themselves as well as their Children. The time of their Departure being put off, they offer'd, if their Children were restor'd them, and Twenty Years allowed them in which they could not be punished for Offences against Religion, that they would become Christians. This granted, the greatest part of them was Baptized, the rest were sent over into *Africk*, together with the *Moor*s then also expelled, but these were allowed to carry their Children with them. Those that remained in *Portugal* committed many Enormities, in contempt of the Christian Religion, and becoming Rich, had the Opportunity of corrupting all the Nobility of the Kingdom, by mixing their Families.

1497. At *Alfama* the King had it debated in Council, whether the Discovery of *India* ought to be prosecuted or not; and after much contesting, it was resolv'd in the Affirmative. *Vasco da Gama* was thereupon pitched upon to command Four Ships designed for that Voyage. The Particulars of his Success may be seen in the first

Vol.

Vol. of the *Portuguese Asia*. The King, by his Embassadors, having concluded a Match for himself with *Elizabeth*, Princess of *Castile*, Widdow of the late Prince *Alonso* of *Portugal*, in the Month of *October* she was brought to *Valencia de Alcantara*, where King *Emanuel* waited for her. Presently after the King and Queen were married, came the News of the Death of *John*, Prince of *Castile*, Brother to the new Queen, and Heir of that Kingdom. New Charters were now given to all the Cities and Towns of *Portugal*, which were all contained in Five Books, One of each Province. About the end of the Year, the Queen being with Child, Embassadors came from *Castile* to induce the King and her to go into *Castile*, to be sworn Heirs to that Crown. The King took the Advice of the *Cortes*, or Parliament therein; and it was resolved he should go. On the 29th. of *March* they set forwards with a small Retinue, not exceeding 300 Horse. All this Company was in Mourning for the Prince of *Castile*. The Duke of *Medina Sidonia* met them at *Badajoz*, with a Retinue somewhat less. Soon after the Duke of *Alva*, and Count *de Feria*, with a like Number. King *Ferdinand* came out of *Toledo* to receive them, and they were entertained with extraordinary Magnificence. On the 28th. of *April* King *Emanuel* and his Queen were sworn Heirs of *Castile*, in the Cathedral Church. This Ceremony being over, they travelled towards *Zaragoza* to be there sworn to the Succession of *Aragon*. They entred that City on the first of *June*, where many Disputes arose concerning the Privileges of that Kingdom. On the 24th. of *August* the Queen of *Portugal* was delivered of a Son, and died before she could be laid in her Bed. She was buried in the Church of *St. Hierome*, without any Pomp, because she had so ordered it in her Will.

4. King *Emanuel* returned to *Portugal*, and was received at *Lisbon* with great Joy in *October*. He now understanding that his Son *Michael*, born of his late Queen, had been sworn Heir of the Crowns of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Aragon*, resolv'd to have him sworn in like manner in *Portugal*. To this purpose he assembled the *Cortes* or Parliament at *Lisbon*, on the 7th. of *March*, where all the Representatives took an Oath to him, as lawful successor, the King confirming his former Grant, that no *Castilians* should at any time be admitted to Places of Honour.

*Emanuel marries Elizabeth, Widdow of the late Prince Alonso.*

1498.

Honour and Trust in *Portugal*. About the end of this Year, which was the 4th. of his Reign, the King resolved to translate the Body of King *John* his Predecessor, from *Silves*, where he was buried, to the stately Church of *Batalla*, the burial Place of the *Portuguese* Princes. He went in Person to *Silves*, and found the Body whole, as it was seen Fifteen Years after by the Cardinal *Henry*, and others, which confirmed the Opinion of Sanctity that was conceiv'd of him. The Body was honourably conducted to the Church of *Batalla*, and there laid in a Marble Tomb. This Year also the King dispersed several sorts of new Coins of Silver and Gold, as he did again in the Years 1504, and 1517. He had before given large Revenues to *George*, the late King's Bastard-Son, and this Year 1500 gave him the City *Coimbra*, with the Title of Duke, made him Lord of *Montemayor el Viejo*, and bestowed on him the Mastership of the Military Orders of *Santiago* and *Avis*. Next he married him to the Lady *Beatrix de Villena*, Daughter to *D. Alvaro*, the Brother of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Bragança*, Beheaded by King *John*.

5. Now came the News that Prince *Michael*, King *Emanuel's* Son, and sworn Heir of all the Kingdoms of *Spain*, had departed this Life at *Granada*, being not yet Two Years of Age. It was requisite the King should marry again, and a Match was accordingly concluded with *Mary*, Daughter to King *Ferdinand*, and Sister to King *Emanuel's* late Queen. Her Portion was 200000 Crowns down, and 10000 a Year settled upon the Revenue of *Sevil*. The Archbishop, *D. James Hurtado de Menezes*, conducted her to the Borders, where the Duke of *Bragança*, attended by several of the Nobility, received her. The Marriage was solemnized at *Alcacer* on the 30th. of *October*. No sooner was the King married but he resolved to make an Expedition into *Africa* in Person, and to that effect had assembled an Army of 26000 Men. The *Venetians* at this time, hard pressed by the *Turks*, made use of the Pope's Mediation, to obtain of our King to desist from the Enterprize he had in Hand, and to employ his Forces in their Assistance. The King consented, and sent them Thirty Sail, under the Command of *D. John de Meneses*, Son to the Earl of *Viana*; and for his Encouragement before his Departure, he was created Earl of *Tarazona*. In this Squadron

were 3500 fighting Men. Another Squadron followed, being designed for the Coast of *Oran*, in order to attempt taking the Fort of *Mazalquivir*. They sailed from *Lisbon* about the middle of *June*, and having assaulted that Place in *July*, with the loss of 20 Men, and no prospect of Success, the Squadron, provided for that Expedition, returned to *Lisbon*. *D. John de Meneses*, with his 30 Sail off of *Tunex*, took 3 *Genoese* Ships full of *Turks*, *Moors* and *Jews*, the *Genoese* he set at liberty. Near *Corfu* he was met by Twenty five *Venetian* Galleys, and five Galleons, where both Fleets saluted each other with great Joy. The *Turks* understanding the Fleets were joyned, retired to their Ports, and the *Portuguese* Squadron returned home.

6. The King had yet reaped no Advantage from *India*, but the bare Discovery of it by *Vasco de Gama*, and yet as if the Treasures of that Empire had been brought him, he in Thanksgiving laid the Foundation of that wonderful Structure of the Church and Monastery called *Belem*, or *Bethlem*, on the Banks of *Tagus*, about a League from *Lisbon*. This Fabrick is Magnificent for its Greatness and Workmanship, but above all for the largeness of the Arch above the Chancel, where, after the manner of all Cathedrals, it opens into a Crois, which Arch, tho vastly spacious, has no Pillar to support it. This Monastery was given to the Fryars of the Order of *S. Hierome*, and is plentifully endowed. Opposite to the Monastery, in the very River, the King erected a Fort, which, tho not large, is Beautiful, and Commands the River, serving at the same time for a Rampart to the Church; it is called the Fort of *S. Vincent*. *D. Jayme*, or *James*, Duke of *Bragança*, who was restored to that Honour by King *Emanuel*, laboured under such a deep melancholy, that he sometimes forbore taking his natural Sustenance. Nevertheless, through the King's Perswasions he married the Lady *Isabel*, Daughter to *D. John de Guzman*, third Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. But no sooner was he married, than he absented himself with only one Servant; leaving a Letter for the King, in which he begged of him to bestow all his Possessions upon his Brother *Denis*, because he was resolved to spend his days at the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*. Messengers were sent several ways with orders to bring him back. Some of them found him at *Calutaya*, in the Kingdom of *Aragon*, and prevailed upon him to return.

Being

Being brought back, he had by his Wife a Son called *Theodosius*, who succeeded him; and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, married to Prince *Edward*, Son to King *Emanuel*. His first Wife dying, he fell in Love with the Lady *Joanna de Mendoza*, Daughter to the Governour of *Mou- rain*, and having obtained leave of the King, married her; and by her had Four Sons, and as many Daughters.

1502. 7. Queen *Mary*, second Wife to King *Emanuel*, was delivered of her first Son on the 6th. of June, 1502. At the time of his Birth happened a violent Storm of Rain; and when he was Baptized a Fire broke out in the Palace; we shall see in his Life what these Prodigies portended. A Fleet sailed from *Lisbon*, under the Command of *George de Melo*, and *Gaspar de Aguiar*, designing to take the City *Targa*, on the Coast of *Africk*, but returned, having sustained Loss, and effected nothing. The King for the Success of his Fleet, undertook a Pilgrimage to *Santiago* in *Galicia*; presented that Church with a rich Silver Lamp, made in the Form of a Castle, and gave Bountiful Alms. In his return, at *Coimbra*, he resolved to erect a stately Tomb for *Alonso*, the first King of *Portugal*, whose Body lay there in a very mean Sepulchre. At *Porto* he finished the Silver Shrine of *S. Pantaleo*, Patron of that City. The King had now a second time resolved to pass over into *Africk*, and had all things in readiness for the Expedition, when he was again prevented; being obliged to attend to the Relief of his own Kingdom, labouring under a Famine. He remedied this Evil, by bringing in Plenty of Corn from all the Northern Countries. In the Year 1500, sailed from *Lisbon*, *Gaspar Cortereal*, to attempt some Discovery in the Northern Seas. He discovered a Country, which by Reason of its delightful Groves, he called *Verde*, that is Green. The People were but Barbarous, of a middle Stature, very Swift, expert at shooting with the Bow, and skilful at casting Darts, whose Points are hardened in the Fire, clothed in Skins, living in Caves and Cottages, and having no Religion, but believing in Auguries, and very jealous of their Women. The following Year, he returned thither to make some farther Discovery, but he staying long, his Brother *Michael* went out in Quest of him, with two Ships, in *May* 1502; and neither returning, another Brother prepared to seek them, but was hindered by the King. It being believed both these Brothers

1503.  
A Famine  
in Portu-  
gal.

Discoveries  
in North  
America.

thers were lost in that Country, discovered by the first, the Name of it was changed to that of *Tierra de Cortereales*. About the middle of this Year, the Cortes being Assembled, the King caused his Son to be sworn Heir to the Crown. The Country, tho Poor, gave the King 50000 Duccats, to carry on the War in *Africk*. On the 4th. of October, was born at *Lisbon*, the Princess *Elizabeth*, her Birth being attended with the same Prodigies of Storms, as her Brother's was; she was afterwards married to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, her Dower above a Million of Ducats, 900000 in Money, and the rest in Jewels.

8. *Elizabeth*, Queen of *Castile* and *Aragon*, died this Year 1504, at *Medina del Campo*. Her Death was concealed from *Elizabeth*, Queen of *Portugal*, her Daughter, because she was near her time of Delivery, and accordingly on the last Day of *December*, was brought to Bed of a Daughter, called *Beatrix*, after Dutcheß of *Savoy*. There followed upon it such Terrible Earthquakes, that whole Towns being swallowed up, the People fled Distractedly to the Mountains. The New Year began with Threats from the Soldan of *Egypt*, that he would destroy the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, unless the *Portuguese* desisted from their Conquests in *India*, where *Edward Pacheco* was now doing Wonders, and King *Ferdinand* of *Castile* from invading the *Moors*. But these Menaces were little regarded, both Kings proceeding in what they had undertaken. Now returned the King's Embassadors, sent to Pope *Julius*, and with them came a Merchant Ship, which being infected with the Plague, spread it throughout all *Spain*. *Edward Pacheco* returned at this time from *India*, leaving that Part of the World, astonished at his Actions. King *Emanuel* himself went out to receive him at landing, with a numerous Train; he walked under a Canopy with the King, his Actions were set out in the Church, by the Bishop of *Lisbo*. An Account of them was also given to all Foreign Princes, and they were made known to all the Kingdom. After all this Honour, the same *Pacheco* was cast into Prison loaded with Irons, and tho he cleared himself of all that could be laid to his Charge, he was only turned out of Goal, and left to live upon Charity, as did his Son and Grand-Son after him; till in the time of King *Sebastian*, the prime Minister *Giles Tanes de Costa*

1504.

1505  
The Soldiers  
of Egypt  
threatens  
Jerusa-  
lem.  
An Account  
of the Por-  
tuguese  
Conquests  
in India.

*Costa*, obtained him the grant of a Commendary, and because none was then Vacant, gave him that he had obtained for his own Son.

1506.

Birth of  
the King's  
fourth Son.

9. On the third of *March*, 1506. at *Abrantes* was born the King's fourth Son, *Lewis*, an admirable Prince for his Judgment, Learning and Valour. So addicted to Warlike Affairs, that a Fleet of 60 Sail was provided for him, to go into *India*, but the Design was disappointed. He served under the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, at the taking of *Tunis*, and gained Honour. He was never married, but had a Bastard-Son by the Lady *Violante Gomez*, this was *Antony*, who afterwards, upon the Death of *Henry* the King and Cardinal, aspired to the Crown. Upon the 6th. of *April*, it being *Sunday*, certain Persons in the Church of *S. Dominick*, fancied a Crucifix in one of the Chappels, cast forth a miraculous Light; a New Convert that had been a *Jew*, said it was the Reflection of the Sun from a Window. Hereupon, without farther Examination, they dragged him out of the Church and burnt him. The Rabble assembled about the Fire, one of the Friars with vehement Speeches Encouraging them. Two other Friars ran about the Streets, crying out, *Herésie! Herésie!* with Crucifixes in their Hands. Above 500 Men gathered in Arms, who slew as many of the New Converts, burning their Bodies. The number increasing, upon *Monday* Morning they murdered Men, Women, and Children, dragging them from the very Altars, whither they fled for Sanctuary; so that this Day above 1000 perished. This was continued the third Day, to the number of 400 being destroyed, so that in all they amounted to 2000 murdered, among them many that were not New Converts; for the desire of Plunder was more than the Zeal of Religion, as it is in all Mutinies, whatever the Pretences be. The King then at *Avis*, was highly offended at this Insolency. He took away the City Charter, and sent thither the Prior of *Crato*, and Baron of *Alvito* to punish the offenders. Some were hanged, others had their Goods confiscated, and the two Friars burnt, all that belonged to the Monastery were banished.

1507.

Birth of  
the King's  
fifth Son.

10. *James de Azambuja* was sent to erect a Fort on a Point of Land in *Africk*, opposite to the Island *Magador*, it was called *Fort Royal*. *July* the 5th. the King and Queen being at *Abrantes*, was born their fifth Son, whom they

they called *Ferdinand*. He was a great lover of History, and no less addicted to Warlike Affairs. The following Year, the Limits of the Conquests, on the Coast of *Africk*, were settled betwixt the two Crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal*. All Eastward of *Belez de la Gomer*a was assigned to the *Spaniards*; thence Westward was allowed to the *Portuguese*. This Year 1509, was born the Prince of *Portuguese* Poets, *Luis de Camoens*. On the twenty third of *April*, the Queen was delivered at *Evora*, of her sixth Son, called *Alonso*. At Seven Years of Age, Pope *Leo* the Tenth, sent him a Cardinal's Cap; afterwards he had both the Archbishopricks of *Lisbon* and *Evora*, and the Abby of *Alcobaça*, all at one time. This Year also the Work continued from the time of King *John* the First, and Founder of the famous Church and Monastery of *Battalla*, which ought to have been finished, was interrupted, and nothing done to it since, so that ever after, that mighty Fabrick remains Imperfect. *Mondragon*, a *French* Pirate, having the foregoing Year, taken a Rich Ship coming from *India*, had now fitted out Four great Galleons upon the same Design. The King sent out some Ships against him, under the Command of the Renowned *Edward Pacheco*, who after a sharp dispute near Cape *Finisterre*, sunk one of the Pirate's Galleons, and took the other three. *Mondragon* was presented to the King, who freely forgave him.

1508.

1509  
Birth of  
Camoens,  
the great  
Portu-  
guese Poet.

## CHAP. X.

*The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of Emanuel, the First of the Name, and Fourteenth King of Portugal; from the Year of our Lord 1510, till 1521.*

1. **N**othing remarkable happened the Year 1510, but that many *Moors*, and Hords of *Arabs*, along the Coast of *Africk*, submitted themselves to King *Emanuel*, and became his Tributaries. The following Year threatened a Breach between *Cassile* and *Portugal*; because King *Ferdinand* fitted out a Fleet at *Malaga*, with Design to invade the *Portuguese* Conquests. The Pope calling upon him for Succour against the *French*, obliged

1510.

1511.



King Emanuel receives the Order of the Garter, from King Henry the Eighth of England.

1512. Henry, Son to the King of Congo, comes into Portugal,

1513. The King punishes his Lord Steward for his cruelty to a Servant.

him to desist from that Enterprize. Nevertheless, that Faithless King as if his Designs had not been known, solicited King *Emanuel* to joyn with him against *France*, and highly resented that he Courteously entertained a *French Squadron* in his Ports. *Henry* the 8th. King of *England*, who had married *Katherine*, Sister to the Queen of *Portugal*, now sent King *Emanuel* the Garter, having received him into that most Noble Order. On the last Day of *January*, was born at *Lisbon*, Prince *Henry*, the King's Seventh Son; a mighty Snow falling just before his Birth, which is a thing rarely seen in *Lisbon*. We shall have more occasion to speak of him hereafter, when he ascends the Throne. *Alonso* King, and Apostle of *Congo*, this Year sent his Son *Henry*, and his Brother *Emanuel*, with many Young Noblemen into *Portugal*, to be instructed in the Christian Faith. With them came *Peter*, that King's Cousin, whom he sent as his Ambassador to *Rome*, to submit him and his Kingdom to the Pope. King *Emanuel* sent the Black Prince *Henry* with the Ambassador; they arrived at *Rome* the following Year, where they were courteously received, and dismissed by *Leo* the Tenth, then sitting in *S. Peter's* Chair.

2. *D. Alvaro de Castro*, was Lord Steward of the Household, and in great Favour. He finding a Servant of his own, whom he had turned away, talking with a Slave in his House, caused him to be so cruelly lashed, that all his Body was but one continued Sore. The Servant putting nothing on but his Cloak, came into the King's Presence, where letting it fall, he said, *Ecce Homo*; Your Lord Steward has done this to me, only for talking to one of his Slaves. The King astonished at this Barbarity, immediately sent *Andrew Perez Landin*, his Clerk of the Closet, to acquaint *D. Alvaro*, that he deprived him of his Charge, ordered he should remain a Prisoner in his House till farther order, and pay 500 Crowns to that Man. *D. Alvaro's* Kindred came to the King to intercede for him, but finding the King implacable, they went away Discontented, and returned not to Court; whereupon the King ordered the Two Sons of *D. Alvaro*, to be struck out of his Books. At last upon the humble Application of *D. Alvaro's* Wife, he was sent for to Court, severely reprimanded, and then pardoned. Last Year began the Preparations, and now was fitted out a Fleet of above 400 Sail, carrying 18000 Foot, and 2600 Horse

Horse, all under the Command of *Jayme* or *James* Duke of *Bracanga*. He sailed from *Lisbon* about the middle of *August*, and landing on the 28th. of the same Month in *Africk*, took the City *Azamor*. Those of *Tite* and *Almedina*, being abandoned by the Inhabitants, he also possessed himself of with ease. Then having ravaged the Country, without any opposition, he returned to *Lisbon*. The Particulars of this Expedition, properly belong to the *Portuguese Africk*.

3. King *Emanuel* resolving to Dedicate to God, the First Fruits of *India*, thought the shortest way was to present them to the Pope, his Vicegerent. With this Present he sent Three Embassadors, the chief whereof was *Tristan da Cunha*, with a most magnificent Retinue. The Present consisted of an Elephant covered with Cloth of Gold, and governed by an *Indian*; a *Persian* Horse with rich Furniture; a Panther that would Hunt, and was at Command like a Dog; and a whole Suit of Vestments, for all occasions, all of Cloth of Gold, so thick Embroidered with Pearls, and precious Stones, that the Ground of it could not be discerned. The whole was valued at 500000 Crowns. *Bernardin Freyre*, and *Francis Pereyra Pestana*, arriving now from *India*, the King caused them to be cast into Prison; being informed how unworthily they had treated *Mathew*, Embassador from *Ellen*, Grand-Mother of *David*, Emperor of *Ethiopia*, and Regent of that Empire, during her Grand-Son's Minority. There they remained till the said Embassador interceded for them. He was an *Armenian* Christian, Judicious, Learned and Bold. The King received him with Respect, and by him a Letter, from the Empress, Five Medals of Gold, and a great Cross made of the Wood of that our Saviour suffered upon; and kept in a Gold Case. In her Letter the Empress offered her assistance towards forwarding the King's undertakings in *Asia*; and desired since they were both Christians, that their Families might be allied by mutual Marriages, that so they might be the better enabled to destroy the *Turks*, and *Moors*, in those Parts. On the 7th. of *September*, 1515, was born at *Lisbon*, *Edward*, the King's 8th. Son, of whom more at the end of this Chapter. Embassadors were sent to *Castile*, to condole with Queen *Germana*, upon the Death of her Husband King *Ferdinand*; and to *Flanders*, to *Charles*, afterwards the 5th. of that

*Azamor*, on the Coast of *Africk*, taken.

Presents of the First Fruits of *India*, sent to the Pope.

1515. The King's Eighth Son born.

1515

Name, Emperor, to offer him *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Emanuel*, in Marriage; and ask his Sister *Ellenor*, for Prince *John*. This Year ended with the Birth and Death of *Mary*, *Emanuel's* Ninth Child.

1517.  
Birth of  
the King's  
tenth  
Child.  
The Queen  
dies.

4. Prince *Antony*, the King's Tenth Child, was born at *Lisbon*, on the 9th. Day of *September*. He lived but a few Days, and left his Mother so Weak, that she died the 7th. of *March* following, of an Impostume in her Bowels; being but 35 Years of Age. She was generally lamented, being extremely beloved for her Fruitfulness, her great Love to the King, her liberality to the Poor, her Devotion, Affability, Modesty, Piety, Industriousness in the good spending her Time, and special care of Instructing her Children. As to Features, she was neither beautiful, nor deformed. She founded the Monastery of *S. Hierome*, in the *Berlings*; and lies buried in the Church of *Belem*. Before the Queen's Death, the King put an Elephant, and a Rhinoceros together, to see the manner of their Fight, being naturally Enemies; but the Elephant being young was frightened, and forcing his way through a Place that was barred, ran about the City, overturning all he met. The Rhinoceros was afterwards sent as a Present to the Pope, but the Ship was cast away; however the dead Rhinoceros being cast a Shoar, was taken up, and the Skin stuffed and carried to *Rome*. *John Diaz Golez*, a Portuguese Pilot, flying from Justice, escaped into *Castile*; where he perswaded certain Merchants to fit out Two Ships, and Trade into *Brasil*. King *Emanuel* complaining to the Young King *Charles*, these Encroachers were punished. *John Wallop*, an English Gentleman of Worth, afterwards Governour of *Callis*, came into *Portugal*, offering to serve in *Africk* upon his own Expence. He served Two Years at *Tangier* honourably, and then returned home; having received the Order of Knighthood of *Christ*, and other considerable Favours, and continued always a great Favourer of the Affairs of *Portugal*.

5. *Soliman* the great Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Grand Cairo*, and all the Dominions of the *Egyptian* Soldans; King *Emanuel* pressed the Pope, to excite all the Christian Princes to joyn their Forces against him, but without success. The Body of *S. Ana*, one of the 11000 Virgins, was now brought to *Lisbon*, and placed in the Monastery of the Mother of God, where it

is held in great Veneration. The King being extremely afflicted for the Loss of his Queen, had thoughts of retiring to *Algarve*, contenting himself with that little Portion of his Kingdom, and leaving the rest to the Prince his Son. But the Prince led away by his Favourites, being too forward, and dropping some disrespectful words of his Father, moved him to change that Resolution; and not only to retain the Power in his own Hands, but to marry the Wife he had designed for him. To this purpose, *D. Alvaro da Costa* was sent Embassador into *Castile*, and the Treaty so privately managed, that the Bride was contracted to the King by Proxy; before the Design of the Embassador was known in *Portugal*. Her Portion was 200000 Crowns down, and 5000 per Annum; during her Life. She was conducted to the Borders of the two Kingdoms by several Noblemen of *Spain*, and there received by *Jayme* or *James* Duke of *Bragança*, accompanied by a great Train of Persons of Quality on the Twenty third of *November*. At *Crato*, the next Day, she was married by the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. Thence they went to *Almeyrin*, because the Plague was brief at *Lisbon*. Here the King, on *St. Andrew's* Day, received the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, sent him by his Brother-in-law King *Charles*.

6. *Ferdinand Magellanes* a Gentleman of Worth, who had served well in *India* and *Africk*, being refused some small Addition to the Pension he enjoyed for his good Services, some envious Persons dissuading the King from showing him any Favour, discontented at this hard Usage, solemnly Unnaturalized himself as the Custome was then, and went over to *Castile*, at such time as the *Molucco* Islands were thought to appertain to the Conquests of that Crown. He there offered to find out a New way to those Islands, and being furnished with Five Ships, sailed from *Sevil* about the beginning of *August*, and discovered those *Streights*, which will Eternize his Name, being of him called the *Streights of Magellan*. The Particulars of this Voyage, as more properly appertain- ing to that History, are to be seen in the *Portuguese Hist.* of his The King laid a Duty upon Corn, to which Imposition some Places consented. *John Mendez Ceceço*, Mayor of *Eyora*, opposed it. The King sent for and promised to reward him if he would comply; but he persisting obstinately was confined to his House. Soon after he commen-

1518.  
The King  
marries  
again.

1519.  
Magellan  
discovers  
the

1520.

ded him for his Resolution, and remitted that Tax. The Commonalty of *Castile* now rising in Rebellion against their King, who was gone into *Germany*, being chosen Emperor upon the Death of *Maximilian*, sent the Dean of *Avila* to offer the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon* to King *Emanuel*. He believing no Confidence could be reposed in those that were Rebels to their Lawful Sovereign, not only advised them to return to their Obedience, but sent Supplies of Ammunition and Money to the Cardinal *Adrian*, afterwards Pope, the Constable, and Admiral, then Governours during the King's Absence.

1521.

Beatrice,  
Daughter  
to King  
Emanuel,  
married to  
the Duke  
of Savoy.

7. *Ellenor* the new Queen of *Portugal* was the last Year at *Evora*, on the 18th. of *February* delivered of a Prince called *Charles*, who lived but Fifteen Months. This Year on the 18th. of *June*, at *Lisbon*, she brought forth the Princess *Mary*. Many Matches were proposed for this Lady, but none took Effect, so that she died a Maid at the Age of 57 Years. After long Debates, and Three several Embassies sent by *Charles* Duke of *Savoy* to obtain *Beatrice*, King *Emanuel's* second Daughter for his Wife, the Match was concluded. She had 150000 Crowns Portion, and was conducted to *Savoy* with extraordinary Expence. Eighteen Sail were fitted out to transport the Princess, and a most splendid Retinue accompanied her. In fine, she embarked on the 5th. of *August*, lay Five Days a Board on the River, and then set Sail on the Day of the Feast of *S. Laurence*. By this Princess the Duke of *Savoy* had his Son *Emanuel Filibertus*, from whom the Dukes of that House are descended. *Bernardin Ribeyro*, a Man well born, and an ingenious Poet, was in love with the Princess, and she favoured him for his Wit. Seeing her depart he became a Hermit at *Sintra*; thence he went a Pilgrim into *Italy*, and returning through *Savoy* he received Charity of the Dutchess, who knowing him, ordered he should not stay in the City. He returned Home, and ended his Life with his Pilgrimage. The *Venetians*, who had for many Years enjoyed all the Trade of Spice, being now deprived of it by the *Portuguese* having discovered *India*, sent an Embassador to pray they might be allowed all that was above what the Kingdom consumed, at a certain Rate. This Embassador was honourably entertained, but received not a satisfactory Answer.

8. Such

8. Such was now the flourishing Estate of *Lisbon*, that it was thronged with Foreign Embassadors and Merchants from all Parts. In the height of this Prosperity and Grandeur King *Emanuel* fell sick of a Lethargy, then the epidemical Distemper reigning. Perceiving his End draw nigh, he performed all the Acts of a good Christian, and died the 13th. of *December*, 1521. King Emanuel the Ninth day of his Sickness, the 53d. Year of his Age, and 27th. of his Reign. His Body was Interred in his Church of *Belem*, where his Son built him a stately Tomb. Before his Death happened a most cruel Famine, and after that, a terrible Plague. The Pestilence continued the following Year, and such prodigious Earthquakes shook the Island of *S. Michael*, that Mountains fell upon some Villages, and others were overturned into the Sea, with great slaughter of the Inhabitants. King *Emanuel*, as to Stature, was tall, somewhat lean, his Hair dark-brown, his Forehead high, his Eyes green and pleasant, his Arms so long, that when hanging down, his Fingers reached below his knees. He was much addicted to all Sports, as Riding, Dancing, Musick, and Feasting; very Devout, and therefore on Holy-days went to several Churches; extraordinary Charitable, a lover of Astrologers and Jesters. He reformed several Religious Houses, that lived not regularly.

9. His Structures were so many, and so great, it would swell to a Volume to particularize them; in short, they were Thirteen Monasteries in *Portugal*, besides all those in *Asia*, *Africk*, and *America*; and besides Repairs in other Places, Eight great Churches, the great Hospital of *Lisbon*, Five Palaces, Custom-houses, Store-houses, many Magazines plentifully stored, and above Twenty Forts of considerable Magnitude, besides many of less note. Also several Bridges, Moles, Fountains, and other Works were begun and finished by him. To encourage Gentlemen to serve in *Africk*, he instituted new Commandaries to reward those that deserved well, and allowed Wages to an Hundred Knights for their Entertainment there. He first gave the hundredth Penny of his Revenue to Pious Uses. By him the Laws of the Kingdom were digested into Method, and Registers made of all Estates and Foundations, as also a Book of the Arms of the Nobility. Kings at Arms, and Rules of Blazon, were of his introducing into *Portugal*, Antonio

His Structures, and other Works.

Y 4

Rodriguez.

Rodriguez, the first Master of that Science here, being sent to most Courts of Christendom, to inform himself perfectly therein. The Chronicles down to his own days he caused to be corrected, Rewarding *Edward Galvã*, and *Ruy de Pinã*, who laboured in that Affair. He had three Wives; the first, *Elizabeth*, Widow of Prince *Alonso*, in her Right he was at *Toledo* sworn Heir to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*. The second was *Mary*, Sister to the former, both Daughters to King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Elizabeth* of *Castile* and *Aragon*. The third was *Ellenor*, Daughter to King *Philip* the First of *Spain*, Sister to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, and Niece to both his former Wives.

His Wives  
and Issue.

10. By his First Wife he had Issue, Prince *Michael* who died at *Zaragoza*, not quite Two Years of Age, having been Sworn Heir to all the Kingdoms of *Spain*. By the Second Wife, he had, First, *John*, his Successor. Secondly, *Elizabeth*, Wife to *Charles* the Fifth, and Mother to King *Philip* the Second. Thirdly, *Beatrice*, Wife to *Charles* the Third Duke of *Savoy*. Fourthly, *Lewis*, Duke of *Beja*, and Constable of *Portugal*, Father to *Antony*, Prior of *Crato*; who tho a Bastard aspired to the Crown. Fifthly, *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Guarda*, who left no Issue. Sixthly, *Alonso*, the Cardinal and Archbishop of *Lisbon*. Seventhly, *Henry*, the Cardinal and Archbishop of *Braga*, *Lisbon*, and *Evora*; who afterwards was King. Eighthly, *Edward*, Duke of *Guimaraens*, who married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heiress of *James* Duke of *Bragança*, by whom he had two Daughters; *Mary* the eldest married to *Alexander Farnesius*, Duke of *Parma*; and *Katherine*, Dutcheß of *Bragança*, from whom, tho the younger, are Descended the late Kings of *Portugal*. Ninthly, *Mary*. Tenthly, *Antony*, who both died in their Infancy. By the Third Wife, First, *Charles*, who died an Infant. Secondly, *Mary*, who died a Maid at the Age of 57 Years, having been disappointed of several Matches that were proposed for her.

C H A P.

C H A P. XI.

*The First Part of the Life and Reign of John, the Third of the Name, and Fifteenth King of Portugal; from the Year of our Lord 1502. till 1543.*

1. **K**ing *John* the Third, was Second Son to King *Emmanuel*, and the First, by his Second Wife, born at *Lisbon* on the 6th. of *June*, 1502, about Two in the Morning. It was observable, that this being the midst of Summer, when the Weather is usually settled fair, just at that time, there arose such a terrible Storm of Wind, Rain, Thunder and Lightning, that none living had ever seen the like. Whilst this Prince was Baptizing, there broke out such a Fire in the Palace, as alarmed the whole Court; and gave occasion to various Conjectures on what it might Prognosticate. The Prince was just a Year old, when his Father Assembling the *Cortes*, or Parliament at *Lisbon*, caused him to be sworn Heir to the Crown. At three Years of Age he was weaned. Being come out of his Infancy, he was given in charge to *Gonzalo Figueyra*, a Noble Citizen of *Lisbon*, the Queen his Mother still overseeing his Education. The Bishop of *Tangier* taught him his Grammar, and *Lewis Texeyra* instructed him in the Laws, yet he profited little in either, never thoroughly understanding any Book that belonged to them. Nor was he more successful in Astrology, taught him by *Thomas de Torres*, then famous in that Science and Physick. In short, at the end of his Studies, the Prince was found very ignorant; for tho he had an excellent Memory, he never applied himself to Learning, and his Matters feared disoblighing him. In the Year 1512. the Prince fell down from a Gallery in the Palace, so that for 24 hours the Doctors despaired of his Life. After that, he came to himself, and recovered, a small scar of a hurt received in the fall remaining on his forehead. Next, he had a violent Fit of Sicknets, which once passed, he continued healthy all the remaining part of his Life. At this Age the King began

King John  
the Third  
his Birth.

1503.

1512.



began to make himself acquainted with Business, to which he applied himself better than to his Book.

1515.

2. The King, later than had been expected, settled the Prince's Family, and appointed all the Officers of his Household, among which, his principal Favourites were D. Lewis de Silveira, and D. Antony de Ataide. D. Lewis de Silveira was suspected to incense the King against his Father, after his marrying Queen Ellenor, Sister to Charles the Fifth, once designed for the Prince, as was

1519.

said in the forgoing Chapter. Hereupon D. Lewis was banished the Court, but as soon as ever King John came to the Crown, he was recalled. It being the Custom to Proclaim the new King the third day after the Death of his Predecessor, this Solemnity was, for several urgent Reasons, deferred till the sixth day, when it was performed with the usual Ceremonies. The new King understanding that a Fleet was fitting in France, in order to make new Discoveries in India and Brasil, and that several French Pirates infested the Portuguese Seas, sent

1521.  
King John  
proclaim'd.

D. John de Silveira to put that King in mind of the Ancient Friendship betwixt those two Crowns, and require redress of those Wrongs. This Ambassador had an Honourable Reception, but no Success in his Business. Ayres

1522.

de Sousa went Ambassador to the new Pope Adrian, then at Zaragoza, in his way to Rome, to Complement him upon his Promotion to S. Peter's Chair. D. Lewis de

1523.

Silveira, King John's Favourite, was sent to the Emperor Charles the Fifth, to offer him Elizabeth, the King's Eldest Sister, in Marriage. Yet of a sudden his Instructions were altered, and he ordered only to Complement that Prince upon his happy Arrival in Spain. The cause of this sudden change was this: The Ship, called the *Victory*, the first that sailed round the World, and the only one that escaped of those that discovered the Straights of Magellan, arriving at the Islands of Cabo Verde, the Inhabitants understanding she came from the Molucco Islands, designed to secure her; but they on board having some Jealousie of it, immediately set Sail, leaving behind their long Boat, with thirteen Men, who were sent away Prisoners to Lisbon, whilst the Ship made her Voyage, and arrived safe at Sevil. The Emperor complained hereof to the King, and he again that the Emperor's Ships invaded his Conquests, demanding the Lading of the Ship *Victory*. D. Lewis de Silveira spent Eight

Eight Months in his Embassy at the Emperor's Court, without dispatching any Business, and then returning to Portugal, found the King at Almeirin, where at his first access, forgetting or neglecting to kiss his Hand, he found himself quite out of favour; for D. Antony de Atayde, making his Advantage of the others absence, had quite worked him out of his Master's Affections. Nevertheless, D. Lewis continued at Court, without ever expressing the least Resentment for his Fall.

3. D. Antony de Atayde, now the only Favourite, was a Person well deserving that high Honour for his singular Prudence and Moderation. There are sufficient Testimonies of the former, and I will bring one that may fully evince the latter. The Lord of Azambuja, Head of one of the ancientest Families in Portugal, designed to sell that Town to supply his present wants. The King told D. Antony, it would be proper for him to buy it, because it joyned to his Estate. He answered, It was more for his Highness's Reputation, to supply the wants of so Ancient and Honourable a Family, than to suffer it to fall to nothing, by selling an Estate of that Antiquity. The King took his Advice, and so generously relieved that Gentleman, that he was enabled to preserve his Patrimony. This is a good Remark for those, who, to advance their own Fortunes, are so far from regarding any Private Person, that they stick not to ruin Kings, and overturn Kingdoms. It was now thought time that the King should Marry, and James, Duke of Bragança, proposed to him Queen Ellenor, his Mother-in-law, as Wife to the late King, who was vastly Rich. This Proposal being noised abroad, was so well liked, that the Council of Lisbon addressed him, in behalf of themselves and the whole Kingdom, praying he would condescend to it. The King could not approve of Marrying his Father's Wife, and was freed from their Importunities by the Emperor's desiring he would suffer his Sister to return to Castile, which was accordingly performed.

4. A Match being proposed for the King with Katherine, Sister to the Emperor Charles the Fifth. Ambassadors were sent to Burgos, where that Prince then kept his Court, to treat about it. The Articles agreed upon were, That the Bridegroom should pay the Charge of the Dispensation; the Emperor should be at the Expence of her Journey; That she should have 200000 Ducats down,

The Character of  
D. Antony  
de Atayde  
the King's  
Favourite.

1524.  
King John  
Marries  
Katherine,  
Sister to the  
Emperor  
Charles  
the Fifth.

down, and 5000 a Year for her Portion, besides Jewels and other Necessaries. That the third part should be given to her at her Marriage, and that her Joynture should be 10000 Ducats a Year, with all the Lands and Towns the Queens used to possess. The former Peace was confirmed, and Supplies promised reciprocally in case of need. About the end of the Year she was conducted to the Borders by the Bishop of *Siguenga*, and Duke of *Vejar*, and there delivered to the Princes *Lewis* and *Ferdinand*, sent to attend her. The King received her at *Crato*, and she proved one of the best Queens in the World. She was happy in bringing forth many Children, but unfortunate in the shortness of their Lives, which gave occasion to the Multitude to say, It was a Judgment of God on the King, for the Familiarity he was suspected to have with the Queen his Mother-in-law. At the beginning of the Year a motion was made

1525.  
The Emperor Charles the Fifth Marries Elizabeth, Sister to King John.

of a Match betwixt the Emperor and our King's Sister, the Princess *Elizabeth*. Embassadors of the Emperor and the King's Commissioners meeting upon this Subject, agreed, That the Emperor should be at the Expence of the Dispensation, and the King defray the Charge of her Journey, as had been done in the Marriage of the Emperor's Sister; but the Portion now given with this Princess, far exceeded that, for it amounted almost to a Million of Crowns. In *November* the Emperor's Embassador was contracted for the Emperor to the Princess, and the day after they set forward with the King and Princes.

1526.

5. The Empress's Journey into *Spain* was delayed till the Dispensation came from *Rome*, and then being attended to the Frontiers by many of the Nobility, she was there delivered to the *Spanish* Noblemen sent to receive her. She was conducted to *Sevil*, and there received with Pomp suitable to so great a Princess. Soon after came the Emperor, and in *March* the Marriage was solemnized.

1531.  
A great Earthquake.

We must now pass over seven Years, without mentioning any thing of the Affairs of this Kingdom, because we find nothing Remarkable, except that in the Year 1531. there happened a most terrible Earthquake, which overthrew many Buildings, but chiefly at *Lisbon*, and round about it, where whole Towns were overwhelmed. About this time also the Tribunal of the Inquisition

Inquisition was erected for suppressing of the Jews. *Muley Hazen*, expelled the Kingdom of *Tunis* by the Famous Pirate *Hariaden Barbarossa*, fled to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth for Succour. The Emperor undertook his Protection, and in order to it, desired Assistance of King *John*, particularly praying him to send an extraordinary Galeon, then Famous for its greatness, called the *S. John*. The King sent him that, and two others of great Bulk, besides 20 smaller ones loaded with store of Ammunition, and bravely manned. The Command of this Squadron was given to *Antony de Saldana*, who had served well in *India*. At *Barcelona* he joyned the Emperor, and was by him Honourably received. Prince *Lewis* stole away from Court, to serve under the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth; but of this we spoke at the time of his Birth, in the Reign of King *Emanuel*. The King sent him 100000 Crowns, and the Emperor received him at *Barcelona* with all possible marks of Honour. They set out with 400 Sail, and made themselves Masters of *Guelletta* and *Tunis*.

1534.

1525.  
King John sends Succours to the Emperor.

6. From the Year 1535. we find nothing worthy of Memory till 1539. a Year Remarkable for the Death, first, of Prince *Philip*, who was scarce Six Years of Age, who departed this Life at *Lisbon*; and then of the Empress *Elizabeth*, who ended her days at *Toledo*. Nor was the following Year less fatal, since in it were snatch'd away, first, *Antony* the King's Son, being but Eleven Months old, then the Cardinal *Alonso*, and lastly, Prince *Edward*, both Brothers to the King. D. *Michael de Silva*, Bishop of *Portalegre*, and Clerk of the Closet, at this time fled privately to *Rome*, where he had before negotiated for a Cardinal's Cap, which was given him immediately upon his arrival at that Court. The King was so highly offended at this Contempt, that he disclaimed him as a Subject, and deprived him of all the Benefices and Honours he enjoyed in the Kingdom. All Persons that should presume to hold Correspondence with him, were subjected to the same Penalties; yet the Cardinal's Brother, D. *George*, transgressed against this Decree, and was therefore committed Prisoner to the Fort of *Belem*, to answer that Misdemeanor. The Princess *Mary*, the King's Daughter, at the time of her departure to *Castile* to Marry Prince *Philip*, begged and obtained of her Father that the said D. *George* might be pardoned,

1529.

Death of Prince Philip, and of the Empress.

1530.

And of others.

1541.

1542.

1543. pardoned, only upon the Penalty of going to serve at *Arzila*, where he behaved himself in such a manner, as gained him great Reputation.

Prince Philip of Spain and the Princess Mary of Portugal. 7. The Match betwixt Prince Philip of Spain and the Princess Mary of Portugal was concluded by the Spanish Ambassador, *Lewis Sarmiento de Mendoza*, who stood Proxy for the Prince at the Ceremony of Contracting the Princess to him, which was performed by Prince Henry. About the middle of *October* the Princess set forward towards *Castile* with a most Splendid and Honourable Retinue, consisting of 5000 Horse, and 2700 Sumpture Mules. *Francis*, King of France, hearing of this Match, whereof the King had given him no Account, was highly offended, and expressed his Resentment to D. *Francis de Noronha*, the Portuguese Ambassador at his Court. That Gentleman, tho' unacquainted with the Affair, so mitigated that King, and soothed him with such convincing Reasons, that he appeared wholly satisfied, and by his Prudence, a Breach that might have happened between the two Crowns, so strictly allied for many Years, was prevented. In *August*, *Edward*, the King's Bastard-Son came to *Lisbon*, and was received with general Applause by the King, Queen, and all the Court. He was Born in the Year 1525. and brought up in the Royal Monastery of *S. Hierome da Costa*. He was a promising Youth, but cut off in his Prime, for he lived not much above two Months after his coming to Court, and died in the 22d. Year of his Age.

## C H A P. XII.

*The remaining Part of the Life and Reign of John, the Third of the Name, and Fifteenth King of Portugal, from the Year 1544, till 1557.*

1546. 1. THE Years 1544 and 1545 passed without any thing Remarkable, or at least Historians do not give us Account of any Passages in them. Nor is there any thing of more note in the Year 1546, besides that King John received the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, sent him by

by the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth. In *March* following, the King being at *Almeyrin*, King *Henry* of France sent Monsieur *de Biron* to him, desiring he would stand Godfather to a Son he had newly born; which the King granted, and D. *Constantine* of *Bragança*, Brother to that Duke, went to represent his Person. It was found necessary, for the security of the Conquests in *Africk*, to erect a Fort over the Bay of *Alcaçar*. The King ordered his Ambassadors residing at *Brussels* with the Emperor, and with Prince *Maximilian*, then Governing Spain, to encline them both to send some Auxiliary Gallies for carrying on that Work, the particulars of it may be seen in the *Portuguese Africk*. Prince John was now Twelve Years of Age, and still continued under the Government of Women, when the King began to think of settling his Family, which was accordingly done in *February* following. *Antony de Pesquera* had some Years since set out a Ship at *S. Lucar*, and traded in the *Portuguese* Conquests of *Guinea* and *Brasil*, and was now returning to those Parts. King John sent out *Vasco Lorenzo*, with Orders not to take him, unless in the Conquests, but he over-hastily seized him in the *Canary* Islands; whereof Prince *Maximilian*, who then governed Spain, complaining, he was released, and *Vasco Lorenzo* for a time confined to the Castle of *Ovidos*, but soon discharged. *George*, Bastard-Son to King John the Second, who had absented himself from Court all the time of his Youth, came now to it at 70 Years of Age, and fell in Love with one of the Queen's Ladies, not above 16. They were privately contracted, yet never married, the King obstructing it, and so the Young Lady was left under some Scandal.

2. The King considering long Peace had disarmed the Kingdom, ordered all People should furnish themselves with Arms. Such as had 2500 Royals per Annum, were obliged to keep compleat Armour, a Sword and Spear; every Man that had double this Yearly Income, to keep a Musqueteer; and so forward for every time that Revenue was doubled. Because Horses were scarce, he forbid Mares engendring with Asses for Mules. The Wolves being numerous, and destroying much Cattle, general Huntings were appointed upon certain days, and Rewards assigned to such as brought in the Skin of a Wolf. The King, weary of multiplicity of Business, retired



remitted a great part of his Care to the Council, and from this time the Kingdom began to decline. Pope Paul III. dying about the end of this Year, Dr. *Baltasar Faria*, the Portuguese Embassador at Rome, used all his Interest for Prince Henry of Portugal, but on the 17th.

1550.

of February, Cardinal John Maria was declared Pope, by the Name of Julius the Third, and King John sent D. *Alonso de Lancastre* to Complement him upon his Promotion to S. Peter's Chair. Most of the Copper Coin of the Kingdom having been carryed out, because the Metal was worth more than it was coined for, the King

New Coin.

new coined other Pieces, which being much under the value, the Kingdom was soon filled with it counterfeit from other Parts. Tho' Prince John had his Family settled before, yet he kept not House apart from his Father till this Year 1551. Certain French and Turkish

1551.

Pirates infesting the Coasts of Spain and Portugal, the King prevailed with the Emperor to fit out some Ships to scour those Seas; he did the same himself, and they

1552.

were appointed their several Stations, with Orders, upon occasion, to joyn and assist one another.

1553.

Prince  
John Mar-  
ries Joan-  
na, Daugh-  
ter to  
Charles  
the Fifth.

3. A Match being concluded for Prince John with the Princess Joanna, Daughter to Charles the Fifth, and Elizabeth, the Prince's Aunt, and her Portion settled at 360000 Ducats; the Duke of Aveiro, and the Bishop of Coimbra went with a numerous and splendid Retinue to receive her upon the Frontiers. She came to Elvas

about the end of November. At Barreyro the King met and conducted her thence to Lisbon, where a few days after she was married to the Prince, to the general Joy of all the Kingdom, hoping a numerous Issue from them. But all Humane hopes are vain, for the Prince

1554.  
Prince  
John dies.

died the Second of January following. His Dis temper was an inward consuming Fever, which being supposed to proceed from too much use of his Wife, she was removed from him to the Queen's Apartment. There the Prince's Death was kept from her knowledge, the King visiting her without Mourning. The Princess was left with Child, and on the 19th. of January brought forth a Son, who was called Sebastian. The Princess being out of danger, was acquainted with the Death of the Prince, and went into strict Mourning. She would have cut off her Hair, in token of Sorrow, but the King would not permit it. Being one Night in Bed with her

Husband,

The Prin-  
cess deli-  
vered of a  
Son.

Husband there appeared to her a Woman in Mourning, who giving one blast vanished, as if she had foretold all her Delights would vanish into Air. Other Nights she perceived the Lights in her Chamber put out without seeing any Body to do it. Twice being at a Window with her Ladies, she saw many Men cloathed after the Moorish Fashion, with Torches in their Hands, cast themselves into the River. All these were looked upon as unhappy Omens of the Prince's Death, and other Calamities that ensued.

4. Prince Philip of Spain, Brother to the Widow Princess, being upon his Departure for England, to marry Mary the Heiress of that Crown; by his Embassadors desired of King John, that he would suffer the Princess to return to Spain, to Govern that Kingdom. In May,

the Princess set forward from Lisbon, attended by Prince Lewis, as far as Arroyolos; where he delivered her to the Duke of Bragança, who conducted her to the Borders of the Kingdom, and there gave her up to the Bishops of Osma and Badajoz, and to D. Garcia de Toledo, who was Lord Steward. She Governed Spain with Discretion, and

Founded a Monastery and Hospital in Madrid. This Summer sailed from Lisbon, D. Peter da Cunha with Five Ships and Four Gallies, to Guard the Coast of Algarve. Being in the Bay of Tavira, he discovered the famous

Turkish Pirate, Xaramet Arratz, with Eight Gallies. D. Peter gave orders to engage them, but the Ships not being able to come up for want of Wind, he engaged with only his Four Gallies. The Admiral Gallies attacked

one another, and at first the Portuguese had the worst; whereupon the Turks boarded her, but were beaten out; and Fortune changing, D. Peter took the Turk. The other Three Christian Gallies boarded as many of the Infidels, whereof they took two, and sunk the Third. The remaining Turkish Gallies, seeing these lost, fled. Of the

the Turks 150 were killed, and 100 taken, 230 Christian Slaves were released, and 40 Portuguese perished. Two Portuguese left ashore when the Gallies went out to meet the Enemy, swam aboard with their Swords in their Mouths. D. Peter returned Victorious to Lisbon, where he maintained the Turk his Prisoner, till he was exchanged for a Turk, who turning Christian, was called Peter Paul, and had behaved himself so well, that the Command of the Galley was given him; but he being taken by the

Z

Infidels



Infidels and carried to *Mazagam*, had certainly been put to Death, but was spared only upon Account of *Xaramet*, for whom he was exchanged.

1555.  
Prince  
Lewis  
dies.

5. On the the 27th. of *November*, 1555, died Prince *Lewis* the Delight of *Portugal*, and a Person of singular Learning, Judgment, Courage, Generosity, and Piety. He went twice into *Castile*, once to agree with the Emperor about reducing the King of *France* to forbear trading in the *Portuguese* Conquests, which he effected. The Second time, to Conclude a Peace betwixt the Emperor and King of *France*. He built a stately Palace at *Salvaterra*, but lived not to finish it. The following Year, the King settled the Rules of Precedency, about which there had been great Contests; ordering that all Titles should take place according to Seniority. Now the Misfortunes of this Crown seem to be Compleat, for the King died aged 55 Years, when he was ripest for Government, and left the Crown to Prince *Sebastian* then unfit for Rule, as being but Three Years old. He was suddenly snatched away, yet not so but he had time to end his Life like a Christian. He was of a mean Stature, rather inclined to Fat than Leanness, his Complexion ruddy, his Eyes dark Blew, but lively, In matters of Justice he always inclined most to Mercy, was a great lover of Peace, made an excellent choice of Ministers, and loved not to heap many Employments upon one Man. In the Year 1553, he founded the University at *Coimbra*, and afterwards with great charge brought Professors to it from *Paris*. The Ancient Aqueduct, built by *Sertorius* at *Evora*, was by him repaired; much was added by him to the Building of the Monastery of *Belem*; by him also the Custom-House, and Arsenals were erected; as also the Churches of our *Lady of Grace*, *S. Francis*, and *S. Rocque*; besides many other publick Works. All the religious Orders were by him reduced to live up to the rigor of their Rules; and Houses founded for all sorts of Women to retire to. He instituted the Council of Conscience, and that of the Military Orders. No want ever prevailed with him to lay heavy Taxes on his Subjects. Tho' he heard the Advice of many, he always followed his own Opinion, which was the Cause he often erred.

6. To conclude, King *John* proved an excellent Prince, and singular Champion of the Catholick Religion. His Children were as follows: First, *Alonso*, who died a Child. Secondly,

Secondly, *Mary*, First Wife to *Philip* the Second of *Spain*. Thirdly, *Elizabeth*. Fourthly, *Beatrice*. Fifthly, *Emanuel*. Sixthly, *Philip*. Seventhly, *Denis*, all which died young. Eighthly, *John*, who married the Princess *Joanna*, Daughter to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, and died soon after. Ninthly, *Antony*, who lived not out a Year. His Bastard Issue was: First, *Emanuel*, who died a Child. Secondly, *Edward*, Archbishop of *Braga*, a Prelate of Piety and Learning.

7. In *India* *Nunho da Cunha* overthrew the King of *Monbaga*, and slew him of *Cambaya*. D. *John de Castro* with such wonderful Courage, as rather seemed Rashness, Engaging a vast Multitude at the Second Siege of *Diu*, obtained one of the most wonderful Victories that raised the Renown of the *Portuguese* Valour. *Hector de Silveira*, besides many other remarkable Actions, subdued the King of *Adem*. *George de Albuquerque* with only 80 Men, held out a Siege against the King of *Bintam*, who had 12000. D. *Simon de Menezes* burnt the City *Bracalor*. *Peter de Silva* defended *Mallaca* against the Power of Five Confederate Kings. Thus many others in *Asia* and *Africk*, and even the *Portuguese* Women at *Zafu*, shewed their Valour, helping to defend that Place against the *Moors*. The Particulars of these Actions belong to the Books of the *Portuguese Asia* and *Africk*, to which we refer the Readers; our intent here being to Treat only of the *Portuguese* Affairs in *Europe*.

*Actions abroad during his Reign.*

The END of the FOURTH BOOK.

Z 2

THE

# THE HISTORY OF PORTUGAL.

## The Fifth BOOK.

### CHAP. I.

*The Life and Reign of Sebastian the First of the Name, and Sixteenth King of Portugal; with the total Destruction of him and his whole Army in Africk, from the Year 1554. till 1578.*

*The Birth of King Sebastian.*

**P** Prince John, Son to King John the Third dying, left his Wife the Princess Joanna, Daughter to the Emperor Charles the Fifth, with Child. On the 18th. Day of her Widowhood, she was delivered of Prince Sebastian, at Lisbon, it being the 20th. of January, 1554. This Prince's Birth cleared up the Clouds of Sorrow contracted by the Death of his Father, and all the Kingdom resounded with Expressions of Joy. On Account of his Name, Pope Paul the 4th. sent him one of the Arrows taken out of the Body of S. Sebastian.

## The History of PORTUGAL.

bastian, which this Prince took for his device, and instituted the Military Order of the Arrow, which lasted not long. He was Three Years of Age, when, by the Death of his Grand-Father, he inherited the Crown, being left under the Government of his Grand-Mother Queen Katherine, a Princess extraordinarily qualified for that Charge. Yet the Queen, thinking it a dangerous Employment, quitted it when she had held it little above Two Years. From her the Government was transferred to the Cardinal Henry, the King's Uncle, who was judged to undertake it with a willing Mind. He being much affected to the Jesuits, sent for F. Lewis Gonzalez de Camara from Rome to be the King's Preceptor, and joyned with him F. Amador Rabelo, and F. Maurice. D. Alexius de Meneses was appointed his Governour. He took upon him the Government on the Day of S. Sebastian, which was his Birth Day, he being then just Fourteen Years of Age, and was warned by Peter Nunez, the famous Mathematician that it was an Unhappy Day.

1557.  
*His Accession to the Crown.*

*Cardinal Henry, Regent.*

1563.

2. King Sebastian, tho he shewed great Zeal in matters of Religion, yet had some actions so Extravagant as seemed to foreshew his Destruction. After going to Bed he would rise at Midnight and go out with D. Alvaro de Meneses his Page, whom also he would leave behind and spend an Hour or Two by himself, on the Shoar, after which he returned home. Other times he would cross the River Tagus in a Boat with Sancho de Toar, at the same time of Night, where landing, a Boat was seen to bring another Man from towards Belém; they two would walk together two Hours, and no Body could tell who the Man was, or what they discoursed about. Near Sintra there is a thick Wood where he used to spend two Hours, at Night, alone. At Almeirim he lay in wait on a Tree, for a wild Boar, and hearing the Boughs shake, he discovered a Bulk which he ran at, and laid hold of it; some of his Company coming in, found him Wrestling with a wild Black, who having fled from his Master, had lived long on the Mountain. Having ordered that none should be suffered to pass by the Forts of Belém and S. Julian, without being obliged to come in and give an Account of themselves; To see if his orders were observed he went into a Boat, passing both these Forts through showers of Bullets sent after him, and returned without discovering himself. He would put out to Sea in a Gal-

*Odd Actions of King Sebastian.*

ley, when the Weather was most Stormy, and laughed at the Danger. D. *Alvaro de Castro*, his Favourite, dying, he went some Nights to his Grave, where he was heard to talk, and returned with Tears in his Eyes. Most of his time he spent among the wild Beasts in the Woods, seldom applying himself to Business, for the dispatch whereof, by the Advice of Cardinal *Henry*, he made choice of two Gentlemen, which were D. *Martin Pereira*, and *Martin Gonzalez de Camara* a Priest. These two discharged that Trust with much Honour; but *Martin Gonzales* wholly Monopolized all the King's Favour to himself.

*The King prepares for an Expedition into Africk.* 3. Tho the Kingdom was miserably exhausted, the King, who had fixed his Mind upon the Conquest of *Africk*, ceased not to make vast Preparations for that Enterprize. All that Flattered him, upon this score, were advanced to his Favour; but such as more prudently represented the mighty difficulties and dangers of that Enterprize, were soon removed from his Presence. Even his Grand-Mother, for giving Advice against this undertaking, became so irksome to him, that she was upon departing to *Castile*; yet he was again reconciled to her. Whilst the Kingdom was thus tossed with various agitations at home, several Fleets arrived from *India*, and brought Advice of the Progress the Portuguese made in those Parts. D. *Constantine*, Son to *James Duke of Bragança*, had taken the City *Damam*. D. *Lewis de Ataide* made *Bragalor* Tributary, and with 600 Portuguese defended the City *Goa*, against *Hidalcán*, who Besieged it with 100000 Indians, 2000 Elephants, and 400 pieces of Cannon. D. *Francis Mascarenhas* held out nine Months in *Chaul*, against *Nizamalucó*, who Besieged it with 150000 Men. *George de Moura*, and *Antony Chale*, raised the Siege of *Onor*, the same was done at the Town of *Chale*. D. *Leonis Pereira* defended *Malava* against the King of *Achem*. D. *James de Meneses* destroyed many Places on the Coast of *Malabar*, and all the Kingdom of *Mangalor*: These, and many other such notable Victories, which may be seen at large in the Portuguese *Asia*, excited the young, unadvised, but ambitious King, to attempt the Conquest of *Africk*, that he might not be outrun in glory by any of his Subjects.

4. Inflamed with these aspiring Thoughts, he went the first time into *Africk*, at twenty Years of Age. To this purpose

1574. He sent D. *James de Sousa*, Governour into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, with Orders to Ship off the Forces raised for that Expedition. *Antony*, Bastard-Son to Prince *Lewis*, was sent before to *Tangier*; many Gentlemen followed him, so that he made up a Body of 800 Horse. The King was resolved for *Africk*, and yet had no Fleet, and all his Friends dissuaded that Voyage. He feigning he went to divert himself at *Sintra*, ordered D. *Alvaro de Noronha*, with Three Galleys, to meet him at *Cascais*, where on a sudden he Embarked, ordering *Simon de Vega*, who guarded the Coast, with one Galley and five Ships to follow him. All that followed him, seeing themselves shipped just in their Hunting Apparel, stood amazed. From Cape *S. Vincent* the King sent Messengers with Letters to all Cities, Towns, and the Gentry, informing them with his Designs, that they might follow him. Many from all Parts resorted to him, both by Sea and Land. The Cardinal, Prince *Henry*, was left Governour of the Kingdom. The King was received in *Africk* with great Joy by his Subjects; but not with much Terror of his Enemies, for they perceived his Preparations were not suitable to the Undertaking. He hunted there as if he had been at home, and made several Inroads into the Country, which provoked the Moors in great numbers, under the Command of the *Alcayde Cid Admubenania*, Viceroy of *Mequines*, to draw together to oppose him. The Multitude was great, and advanced Confidently, seeing the small number of Christians. Our Cannon played upon them, and the Infidels gave the first Onset, in which many of them that were foremost fled. The King was always in the Front, and with his Example, so encouraged his Men, that they cleared the Field of the Enemy. Next Day the King expected the Enemy in the same Place, but they thought not good to attack him; nor did he prosecute his Victory, saying, He came not to make War, but to visit his Garrisons. He returned to *Lisbon* in *November*, at such time as it was feared he was lost; for News was brought of his embarking at *Tangier*, and a violent Storm had long tossed him at Sea.

5. Before this time a Match had been proposed for King *Sebastian*, with *Margaret*, second Daughter to *Henry* the second, King of *France*. An Embassador was sent to King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, by King *Sebastian*.

He defeats the Moors, and returns to Lisbon.

1576.

He has an  
interview  
with the  
King of  
Spain.

*Sebastian*, at his return out of *Africk*, to incline him to give him his Daughter *Clara Eugenia* to wife; she was afterwards married to the Archduke *Albertus*, and the result of the Embassy was, That the two Kings should meet at *Guadalupe*. To save expence, King *Sebastian* travelled by the Post, with several Persons of Quality, and as soon as he came into the Borders of *Castile*, was Magnificently Entertained at the Cost of King *Philip*, who had also ordered all the Keys of the Towns he passed through to be delivered to him. Nine Days after the King's Departure, the great Warehouses of Merchant Goods, next to the King's Palace, were accidentally Blown up, with such force, that the Noise was heard at *Santarem*, which is fourteen Leagues distant, and great Stones, and pieces of Timber were cast far from the Place, and many remote Buildings were shaken. King *Philip* met our *Sebastian* the Day before Christmas-Eve, half a League from *Guadalupe*. They embraced friendly, and then *Philip* saluted the Portuguese Noblemen; *Sebastian* as the Stranger went first into the Coach. Fifteen Days they staid at *Guadalupe*. *Philip* endeavoured to dissuade the Portuguese from his designs upon *Africk*, but not prevailing, promised to assist him with 50 Gallies, and 5000 Men; and contracted at his return from that Expedition, to deliver to him his Daughter. After this they parted, with the same expressions of Love and Affections as they had met, and King *Sebastian* in his return home, presented the Spanish Gentry and Officers that attended him.

1577.

Preparations  
for a  
second Voyage  
into  
*Africk*.

6. Being come to *Lisbon*, he hastened his Preparations for a second Voyage into *Africk*; to which he was the more encouraged by *Muley Hamet*, who was at War with his Uncle *Muley Maluco* for the sovereignty of *Morocco*, and being worsted offered to remain Tributary to *Portugal*, if enthroned by the King. *Cid Adetcherim*, Lord of *Arzila* having sided with *Hamet*, delivered up *Arzila* to *Edward de Meneses*, Governour of *Tangier*, who sending for Succours to the King, there was scarce enough found in the Magazines to furnish him; whereby, King *Sebastian* perceived how impossible it was for him to fit out a Royal Fleet that Year. Nevertheless, he ceased not to use all possible means for forwarding his Design. To this effect he had a free Gift of 15000 Ducats from the Clergy. The Croisade was set on foot to raise Money: a Tax laid upon Salt, Donatives required

of the People, Money borrowed of rich Men, the Revenues of the Crown anticipated, and a great Summ raised of the Convert *Jews*, on Account of a general Pardon granted them. Besides this, they lifted none but the basest sort of People that had no Money to buy themselves off, and were carried away by force. King *John* the Third's Ghost is said to have appeared to *F. Lewis de Moura*, foretelling the ill success of this Enterprize. About the same time a vast number of Fishes called *Espadas*, or Sword-fish, were cast a Shoar, one whereof of an extraordinary Bigness, had upon it a Cross, from the Arms of which hung two Scourges, and the number of that Year, which was 1578. Armies were seen fighting in the Air; in the Province bewixt *Duero* and *Minho*. Colonel *Vasco de Silveira* always heard a doleful Voice following of him; and one Night, in the Field of *Almeyria* saw a great Fantome it proceeded from, which being by him asked the cause of its Groans, answered, *I bewail myself and you, seeing you and those I always loved, engaged in so great a Disaster*. This same Hobgoblin was seen by him near the King's Tent, in the Field of *Alcazer*, the Night before the Battle.

1578.

7. Notwithstanding all these Preparations, there wanted not some who urged the King ought not to expose his Person; but he, to divert them, caused *Edward de Meneses*, Governour of *Tangier*, to signify by Letters to him, that the *Moors* were wholly unprovided. These he shewed in Council, and because *D. John Mascarenhas* persisted to contradict him, he caused a Consult of Physicians to declare, That tho a Man had been brave in his Youth, he might become a Coward in his old Age. *D. Lewis de Ataide* known for his brave Exploits in *India*, he sent thither again, after having chosen him General of his Army, and this because he advised him to be very circumspect in this Affair. The Citizens of *Lisbon* protested to the King, that if he persisted in his Resolution they would detain him by force. The King of *Morocco*, tho he were well provided against this Invasion, failed not to exhort King *Sebastian* to Peace; but neither these Motives, nor King *Philip* of *Spain* his failing to send the promised Supplies of 50 Gallies, and 5000 Men, could stop this unfortunate Prince from running headlong to his Ruin. All things being in readiness for his Departure, the King would have appointed *Henry* the Prince Cardinal

The King  
not to be  
moved  
from his  
Resolution.



to Govern the Kingdom in his Absence; but he refusing, Five Governours were appointed, viz. *D. George de Almeyda* Archbishop of *Lisbon*, *Peter de Alcaçova* Surveyor of the Revenue, *Fraucis de Sa*, *D. John Mascarenhas*, and the Secretary *Michael de Moura*.

The King  
and Nobility  
Embark.  
A Fleet of  
1000 Sail.

Landmen.  
18000

The Army  
lands at  
Arzila.

8. On the 14th. of *June*, King *Sebastian*, attended by all the Nobility and Gentry, rode to the Cathedral, where his Standard was Blessed, on which was the Figure of our Saviour Crucified. He returned not to Court, but to expedite what was yet wanting, went directly aboard his Galley. The River was covered with 1000 Sail, all filled with such gaudy, but ill disciplined Forces, that they seemed rather to carry a rich Prey to the Enemy than Weapons to Fight. On the 24th. of *June*, the Fleet sailed from *Lisbon*. The Land Forces made up the number of 18000. At *Cadiz* the King staid Seven Days to gather all his Fleet, and sailing thence, anchored before *Tangier* on the 6th. of *July*, about Midnight. The *Moor*, *Hamet* sent his Son *Muley Xêque* that Night to visit the King, and came himself in the Morning. Hence the King removed to *Arzila*, where the *Moors* that were of his Party joined him. *Larache* is Five Leagues distant from this Place; Thither he was first designed to go by Sea, and now the Resolution was taken to March by Land. The Forces landed, and numerous Troops of the Enemy approaching to discover, the King threw himself into all Dangers, envying others every opportunity of gaining Honour. Here he staid longer than he ought to have done, and Provisions began to grow scarce. Having given all necessary Orders, and taking five Days Provision, the King advanced on the 25th. of *July* towards *Larache*, and continued his marches till the 4th. of *August*, when he encamped between the Rivers *Hainad*, *Maccharim*, and *Lucus*, and where he was informed that the King of *Morocco* was himself at hand, which was not then expected. The Enemy immediately passed the River *Lucus*, covering the Hills and Plain with 150000 Men, most of them Horse.

The Christian,  
and Moorish  
Armies  
engage.

9. The Christians had marched Seven Days with only Five Days Provision, and therefore it was thought necessary not to delay the Fight till next Day. The Enemy perceiving it, advanced in the Form of a Half Moon to enclose the *Portuguese* Army, which was drawn up in the best manner time would permit. Both Kings having with their

their Presence in all Parts encouraged their Men, the signal of Battle was given on both sides. Having well nigh encompassed the Christians, the Infidels began to play their Cannon, which disordered those that had charge of it in the *Portuguese* Army. After a short pause, the King gave the Charge; others following his Example, great slaughter was in a short time made among the *Moors*. Yet the Multitude began to prevail, when the *Castilians*, *Italians*, and *Germans*, falling on, routed a multitude of *Barbarians*; so that the Christians, in the heat of the Action, began to cry Victory. On a sudden a Voice was heard to cry, *Halt, Halt*; which most Men obeyed, till seeing the Enemy return upon them, they renewed the Fight with almost as great Success as before, the King in Person doing Wonders. He of *Morocco* thinking all lost, advanced a Horseback to Encourage his Men, but soon fell down dead. *Hamet Taba*, a Renegado, put him into a Litter, *Morocco* and feigned he gave out Orders from him. *Halican*, a *co slain* Renegado *Portuguese*, Encouraged the Infidels, and was by some taken for the King himself. The *Germans* did Wonders, but the *Portuguese* Foot being undisciplined was disordered by the Enemies Cannon. Now all began to be in Confusion, which the King perceiving, he performed Actions beyond belief, rushing into the midst of his Enemies, not as a General, but as the bravest of Soldiers. *George de Albuquerque* meeting him gave him his Horse to carry him off, but he mounting Charged again into the thick of the Enemy. *D. Antony*, Bastard-Son to Prince *Lewis*, was much wounded, and the King offered him his Horse, as did *Christopher de Tavora*. King *Sebastian* meeting *Lewis de Brito*, with the Royal Standard stripped and wrapped about him, cried out, *Hold it fast, and let us die upon it*. *Christopher de Tavora* advised the King to suffer himself to be taken, but he being offended at the Advice, fell in again among the *Moors*; where being seized, *Brito* rescued him, and was himself made Prisoner, and with him the Standard was taken, which afterwards certain *Portuguese* bought at *Fez*, for a small matter. *Brito* taken saw the King at a distance, no Enemy pursuing him; and afterwards *D. Lewis de Lima* met him making towards the River. This is the last time he was seen by any of his People, tho others say he was found dead after the Battle; and others more fondly expect his return to this Day; but where he died only

God

God knows. *Hamet the Moor*, that sided with him, was drowned in passing the River.

of 18000 Men, only 50 escape. 10. To reckon what Men of Note were slain, were tedious and needless, since of 18000 Combatants, that composed that Army, only 50 escaped being killed or taken. The Body of *Hamet the Moor* being carryed to the new King of *Morocco*, he caused it to be flea'd, and hung on the Walls of *Fez*; his Son *Muley* was brought to *Portugal*, and became a Christian. Some will have it, that the Body of King *Sebastian* was also found, but others deny it. A rumour of this Disaster was spread abroad at *Lisbon* before any body brought the News, till at last *D. James de Sousa* the Admiral returned home, after having waited two days at *Larache* to take up any that escaped, and chiefly in hopes of the King, who was not known to be dead. Some would have it, that he came in the Fleet, but Landing, had absconded for shame. However, there being no tidings of him, till an Account was brought from *Africk*, that his Body was found, it was resolved that the Cardinal, Prince *Henry*, should succeed him in the Crown. Nevertheless, upon the vain Rumour of King *Sebastian's* being still alive, four or five base Fellows had afterwards the Impudence, to Personate him, causing thereby no small Troubles. Many other Prodigies are reported to have happened, besides what we before related; but being very dubious, it will be needless to repeat more of them.

Some Counterfeits Personate King Sebastian.

The Character of King Sebastian.

11. King *Sebastian*, as to his Inclinations, was Religious, Merciful, a Lover of Justice, and no less Bountiful than any of his Predecessors. As to Stature, he was of the largest size, and well proportioned; fair of Complexion, his Eyes blue, his Countenance Majestick, his Strength more than ordinary, and his Heart undaunted. He died in the 25th. Year of his Age, and 11th. of his Reign, but the 11th. after he took the Government into his own Hands, and lies buried in the Monastery of *Belem*. In his Time the value of Copper Money was abated, to prevent the Importation of it from Foreign Parts. On the contrary, the Silver was raised, which drew much out of *Spain*. King *Sebastian* coined some Pieces of Gold, worth 1000, others of the value of 750 Royals, for himself to give away with his own Hand.

## C H A P. II.

The Life and Reign of Henry, the First of the Name, and Seventeenth King of Portugal; from the Year 1512, till 1580.

1. Cardinal *Henry*, Eighth Son to King *Emanuel*, and Birth of Seventh by his Second Wife, Queen *Mary*, was K. Henry. Born at *Almeyrin* on the last day of January, 1512. Pope *Paul* the Third sent him the Cardinal's Cap, and he was at once Archbishop of *Braga*, *Lisbon*, and *Coimbra*, Abbot of the Famous Monastery of *Alcobaga*, and twice Governour of the Kingdom; tho' unfit for the Crown, so fit for the Mitre, that upon the Death of Pope *Paul*, he had many Votes in the Conclave to succeed him. Whilst Governour, he never forbore to Act as a Prelate; and tho' a Prince of the Church, he performed all the Duties of a private Priest. He was at *Alcobaga* when the News was brought of the loss of the King his Nephew, and his Army. The Governours sent him this Advice by *D. John Serran*, Provincial of the *Jesuits*. He immediately set out for *Lisbon*, where, upon his arrival, the publick sorrow was renewed, upon the Consideration that the Inheritance of the Crown should fall to him, then 67 Years of Age, and the last of the Male-Line. *Henry* being come to *Lisbon*, called to him the Duke of *Braganga*, and other Persons of Knowledge and Experience; and seeing there was yet no certain Account of his Nephew's being dead or alive, the Council, and a number of able Lawyers were ordered to Consult what was to be done in that Case. They agreed, the Cardinal, tho' a Priest, was capable of Inheriting the Crown; but it being yet doubtful what was become of the King, he should therefore take upon him the Government, with the Title of Protector, which he accordingly did in the Palace of the Duke of *Braganga* on the 22d. of August. 1578.

Cardinal Henry first declared Protector.

2. Soon after his entring upon the Government, the News of the King's Death was brought, and his Funeral Obsequies were performed with general Lamentation. On the 28th. of August, after having said Mass, the new King and Bishop, *Henry*, proceeded to the Church of

He is crowned King.

of *All-Saints* Hospital, where he had before received the Mitre, now to put on a Crown. He was the second *Melchisedech*, for since the first, till him, none ever was at once both Priest and King. The Ceremony of his Inauguration was performed with no less Lamentation than Pomp, and he returned from the Church to the Palace a Temporal as well as Spiritual Prince. A few days after his Exaltation, came the News, that *Antony*, Bastard-Son to Prince *Lewis*, having escaped out of Slavery, was at *Arzila*, and tho' much offended at him before, he extremely rejoiced to hear of his Safety. *Antony* by his Affability had gained the Affections of all Men, and the People looked upon him to have as good a Title to the Crown as King *John* the First had almost two Ages before; and in Truth, the Right was the same, for they were both Bastards. *Antony* had fallen into the Hands of a poor *Moor*, who ransomed him for a small matter, being told, he was a Priest, and if not presently redeemed, would lose his Benefice, and thereby become incapable of paying his Ransom. About 16000 Persons remained in Captivity, to Redeem whom, 20 *Trinitarians* were sent to *Fez* and *Morocco*. *F. Francis da Costa* settled the Ransom of 80 Gentlemen at 400000 Ducats, and paid down 300000, remaining himself an Hostage for the rest; yet those Gentlemen getting home, never thought of releasing him, till he was bought off by the Kingdom, the *Moor* refusing to take any thing for him but Pearls. *F. Amador Rebelo*, a Jesuit, was sent to *Argiers*, to Ransom those that had been sold thither. King *Philip* of *Spain* obtained of the *Moors* the Body of King *Sebastian*; which he afterwards brought into *Portugal*. He also redeemed the Duke of *Barcelos*, Son to *John*, Duke of *Bragança*, and afterwards entertained him with all possible expressions of Affection in *Castile*.

Ingratitude of certain Gentlemen.

Several Pretenders to the Succession of the Crown,

3. No sooner was the new King enthroned, but all those who pretended a Right, began to put in their Claims to the Inheritance of the Crown. *Philip* the Second of *Spain*, afterwards the First of *Portugal*, sent *D. Christopher de Moura* to condole with King *Henry* for the late Loss, and to Congratulate his Accession to the Crown, without mentioning his Title to the Succession, but with private Instructions to advance his Interest. The Candidates were, First, King *Philip* of *Spain*, as Son to the Empress *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *Emanuel*.

Secondly, the Lady *Katherine* of *Bragança*, Daughter to Prince *Edward*, who was Brother to the Empress. The difference betwixt these two Pretenders was, that the Lady, tho' a Female, claimed the Crown, as descended of the Male; and the King, as being himself the Male, tho' descended of a Female. Of these the former was the better Title without dispute, but neither so good as that of *Alexander*, Prince of *Parma*, in the Right of his Mother, who was elder Sister to the Lady *Katherine*. The Duke of *Savoy* had a Title, but not so good, by his Wife, the Princess *Beatrix*, Daughter to King *Emanuel*. *Antony*, Prior of *Crato*, pretended to be Lawful Son to Prince *Lewis*, Brother to Prince *Edward*, the Empress, and Dutchess of *Savoy*; but having never been owned as such by his Father, or any other Person, that was meer Pretence. The People pleaded, the Right of Election was in them, and shewed Prescription, as in the case of their first King, of King *Alonso* the Third, and King *John* the First, all which in reality were but Fortunate Usurpers. The Pope also would Inherit this Crown, as being now devolved to the Church, being in the Hands of a Cardinal, and urged, that it had been Tributary to the See of *Rome*; which was true, but a poor Title for Inheritance. *Katherine* of *Medicis*, Queen of *France*, alledged, she was descended of King *Alonso* the Third, by his first Wife *Maud*, Countess of *Bologne*, on whom he had a Son; but her Title was rejected, as over antiquated, being above 330 Years standing. *Savoy* and *Parma* were soon thrown out, because too weak to carry on their Pretences, not because they wanted a Title. The People attempted to carry it by Election, but miscarried. The Dispute rested betwixt *Philip* of *Spain*, *Katherine* of *Bragança*, and *Antony*, Prior of *Crato*; we shall soon see where the Controversie ended.

4. Several Methods were proposed to determine these Differences. Some would have one of King *Philip*'s Sons Marry the Daughter of the Duke of *Bragança*. Others, more inclined to *Antony*, would have that Daughter given to him. Others there were, who advised the Cardinal, tho' old, and a Priest, should Marry. Many Pamphlets were spread abroad, some of them against King *Philip*, and others for him, which last were so well penned, that they seem to have inclined King *Henry* to his Interest, as they did many others throughout the Kingdom.

Means proposed to reconcile the different Pretensions



Kingdom. But the City of *Lisbon* openly declared its aversion to him, offering to raise 20000 Men, and threatening to burn the Houses of those that favoured him. *Antony*, Grand Prior of *Crato*, that is, of the Knights of *Malta* in *Portugal*, laboured in vain to prove himself Legitimate, and King *Henry* seeing him persist obstinately in that Design, banished him the Court. The City of *Lisbon* now again pressed King *Henry* to obtain a Dispensation of the Pope to Marry; he excused himself on account of his Ecclesiastical Dignity, rather than his Age or Infirmities. No Excuses availing, *D. Duarte de Castello-Branco*, and *Dr. Ruy de Castanheda* were appointed to go Embassadors to *Rome*; but they went not, for the King still urging his Inability, and his Infirmities being apparent, his Excuses were at last received.

Five Persons appointed to Govern after the King's Death.

5. Since there were no hopes of Issue in King *Henry*, he was pressed to declare who ought to Succeed him, which he refused, leaving it to Governours and Judges to determine after his Death. For appointing of them, he presently summoned the *Cortes* or Parliament, who named Fifteen Persons for Governours, of whom the King chose five, which were *D. George de Almeyda*, Archbishop of *Lisbon*, *D. John Mascarenhas*, *Francis de Sa*, *James Lopez de Sousa*, and *D. John Tello de Menezes*. Also 24 Lawyers were nominated, and of them 11 elected to be Judges; and the Names of them all to be kept close, till the Death of the King. All swore to stand by these Decrees. The substance of the Oath was, That the King dying, they would obey the Governours appointed, and would acknowledge him for their Lawful Sovereign, that should be declared such by them. The Duke of *Bragança*, as one of the Candidates, swore to stand to their Determination; the same did *Antony*, the Grand Prior, yet afterwards he recanted before the Pope's Nuncio, alledging, he had sworn for fear of his Uncle. King *Philip's* Embassadors refused to take the Oath for their Master, pleading, he was Lawful Heir of the Crown, and therefore not obliged to allow of that Decision. The *Cortes* being broke up, each of the Candidates, which were now but three, viz. King *Philip*, the Duke of *Bragança*, and the Grand Prior, began to speak their Thoughts more boldly. The two latter were soon banished the Court by King *Henry*, who perceiving that *Antony* grew haughty, having obtained

The same appointed to decide the Controversie concerning the Succession.

obtained a surreptitious Judgment of his Legitimacy, got leave of Pope *Gregory XIII.* to inspect into and determine that Affair. After some time spent in enquiring into it, he at length positively declared him illegitimate. The Grand Prior, dismayed at this Sentence, and the great Power of his Adversary, proposed to King *Philip's* Embassadors, that he would be content with the Kingdom of *Algarve*, and Title of King, or else that he might have the Government of the Kingdom for Life, with a Revenue of 300000 Ducats, half of them to remain to his Heirs. King *Philip* answered, That Kingdom was too small for so many Kings.

6. King *Henry* ceased not to prosecute the Grand Prior, and sent Orders to Apprehend him at *Coimbra*, where he then was, but he made his Escape, and lurked about in the Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Mynko*. Next, he issued out his Proclamation, Summoning him to Surrender himself, but he obeyed not. The King was now at *Almeyrin*, whither he fled from the Plague that raged at *Lisbon*, and spread it self through-  
out the Kingdom. There he summoned before him the Principal Members of the *Cortes* or Parliament, and the Embassadors, before whom he declared himself for King *Philip*, ordering them to Capitulate with him. The Lords Spiritual and Temporal were easily brought to approve of the King's Proposition, but the Commons opposed it. Soon after, the King Assembles the *Cortes*, intending to put an end to this Controversie; but all he or the Nobility could do, availed not, so that the Division ran as high as ever it had been. The King's Death now drawing on apace, *Katherine*, Dutchess of *Bragança*, came from *Villa Viciosa*, to try if she could prevail with him to declare her his Heiress. He heard her, and soon after, without returning any Answer, gave up the Ghost.

The Plague at Lisbon

1580  
K. Henry dies.

His Embody.

7. King *Henry* was of a middle Stature, in shape like his Father, of a lively Spirit, patient of Labour, and in his Youth trained in all the Exercises that belong to a Prince. *Damianus de Goes* says, he understood *Latin*, *Greek*, and *Hebrew*, and was well read in *Mathematics*, *Philosophy*, and *Divinity*. He says further of him, That he had an absolute Command over his Passions, was temperate in Speech, a great lover of Truth, a notable keeper of Secrets, an Enemy to Detraction, an admirer of Justice, free in giving Advice, averse to Favourites,

A a

and



and inclinable to all Vertue. Notwithstanding all these Qualities, he was a better Priest than King. His first Spiritual Promotion was to the Priorship of *Sancta Cruz*, which Monastery he reformed, and increased its Revenue. Next, he had the Archbishoprick of *Braga*, where he spent his Revenue, relieving the Poor in time of Famine. The same he did at *Evora*. He maintained many Foundlings, gave Portions to Young Maids, redeemed Captives, and performed himself all the Duties of a private Priest. At *Braga* he assembled a Synod, endowed Schools in that City, repaired the Monastery of *S. Fructuosus*, punished severely all Crimes in the Clergy, especially Incontinency. The See of *Evora* being added to his other of *Braga*, he did the same good Offices there, and founded the University under the Jurisdiction of the Jesuits. Many other notable Works he performed, and being created Cardinal and Legate to the Pope, still increased in Works of Piety.

Observations on the Rise and Fall of Portugal.

8. In this *Henry* expired the Kingdom, erected by another of the same Name; the first died in the Year 1112, and the latter was born in 1512. So that the Name of *Henry*, and Number 12, were the beginning and end of this Monarchy. Thus the Seventeenth was the last Native King of *Portugal*. The Moon laboured under a great Eclipse when he died, in the 68th. Year of his Age, and second of his Reign. His Body was deposited at *Almeirim*, where he died, till King *Philip* translated it to the Monastery of *Belem*.

### CH A P. III.

*The short Administration of the Five Governours. Antony, Grand Prior of Crato, or the Order of Malta, proclaimed King by the Multitude, the short time of his Usurpation.*

NO sooner was King *Henry* dead at *Almeirim*, but the Five Governours began to exercise the legal Power. The Commons held their Assembly, and appeared inflexible; *Almeirim*

*Camara* was sent to appease them, and promise they should have all the Records relating to the Succession. It was proposed the Governours should remove to *Santarem*, and disband the Forces they entertained. The Prior of *Crato* drew near to *Lisbon*, thinking the City would receive him; they ordered him to remove farther, yet he approached nearer, and at last was admitted. The Governours and Commons were at variance, and could agree upon no one Point. King *Philip* wrote to the Governours, Parliament, and chief Cities, admonishing them to Proclaim him King, and at the same time suspecting them, gathered his Forces. He chose *Ferdinand Alvarez de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, then a Prisoner at *Uzeda* for Miscarriages in *Flanders*, to be General of this Expedition. *Philip* removed to *Guadalupe* on Pretence of Devotion, thither came to him the Portuguese Embassadors, desiring him to forbear Force, and stand to the Determination of the Judges; But he told them he could not lay down Arms till he was proclaimed King. The Governours, weary of the Commons, sent them word, they were dissolved, and might depart. They doubted at first, but soon after obeyed. This done, the Governours, to rid themselves of such as opposed King *Philip*, sent them away to the Frontiers and other Parts, on pretence of securing the Kingdom.

2. King *Philip*, now at *Merida*, spread his Forces along the Borders of the Kingdom, ordering the Commanders to treat such Portuguese as resorted to them, courteously. The Portuguese, tho' they knew of these Preparations, yet because the King courted them, they thought he was weak. Such of the Governours as favoured him, were afraid to discover it, and therefore *Francis Barreto* was sent into *France* to obtain 6000 Foot of that King, which done, he was to go to *Rome*, to move the Pope to Mediate that King *Philip* might stand to Judgment. *D. Eliso de Portugal* was sent to the Emperor. The Fleet was also ordered to be fitted out. *D. Emanuel de Portugal* erected a Wooden Fort on a Bank of Sand at the Mouth of the River, to secure the Harbour. There being great want of Men, the Fryars from the Pulpits encouraged them to take up Arms, and became more insolent when they incensed the Rabble to Rescue *Antony Suarez*, who was hanged for murdering *Ferdinand de Pica*, an Ancient Grave Man, and Alderman.

of the City, for that he opposed *Antony* the Grand Prior by whose order he was assassinated, and he now pressed the Governours to declare him Legitimate. *D. John Tello*, one of the Governours was sent to *Belem* with absolute Power, and there joyned with *D. Emanuel de Portugal*, both of them being Mortal Enemies to *Castile*. These Two wanting Money designed to sell the Crown Jewels but *Christopher de Moura* deterred any from buying, affirming, They would lose their Money, for that the King would take them from them, and their Persons would be in Danger.

3. The Portuguese Embassadors followed the King to *Badajoz*, where he dismissed them, with the same Answer as before. The Governours still remained irresolute, but resolved to secure themselves, and therefore removed to *Setuval*, that being a stronger Place. The Duke of *Bragança* and Spanish Embassador followed them, and they began to talk of summoning the Cortes or Parliament, as if the Duke of *Alva* were not now upon his March. In the mean while, the City *Elvas* was delivered up to King *Philip*, there being Two Parties in the Place, and Sixty Horse appearing before it and cutting off its Water. The same happened at *Olivienza*. *Serpa*, *Moura*, *Campo-Major*, *Aronches*, and *Portalegre* did the same. *Antony*, the Grand Prior at *Santarem*, was by the Rabble proclaimed Protector of the Kingdom, and he going to lay the Foundation of a Fort, a Base Fellow called *Antony Baracho* flourishing a Clout on the point of his Sword, cried out *Antony, Antony*, King of *Portugal*. All the Multitude took the word, and pursued it, so that none durst contradict them. Only he made some seeming Opposition, which was but to heighten their Desires. Mounting on Horseback he was conducted to the Church, and thence to the Town-Hall, where all present swore Allegiance to him. This done, he resolved to set forward for *Lisbon*, believing himself secure if received there. This News was soon carried to the Governours at *Setuval*. But before we proceed, let us give some further Account of this *Mob* King.

4. *Antony*, Prior of *Crato*, that is of the Order of *Avila*, was born at *Lisbon* in the Year 1531, being Bachelor-Son to Prince *Lewis*, the Son of King *Emanuel*, by *Christine Gomez*; yet he made efforts to prove himself Legitimate, but all unsuccessfully. He was bred to Learning,

ing, but made but little progress, only understood Latin, and had some rudiments of other Sciences. His Particular Talent was a smooth Tongue, which was very Attractive. Incontinency was so predominant in him, that in the depth of his Misfortunes he could not refrain from it. Upon some Distast given him at Court, he went into *Castile* and was kindly Entertained by King *Philip*. At *Tangier* he served against the *Moors*, and gained Reputation; and Accompanied King *Sebastian* in both his Voyages to *Africa*, where, as we have seen, he remained in Captivity. Being ransomed, he returned to *Portugal*, and soon began to aspire to the Throne. Finding King *Philip* so powerful an Enemy, he offered to Compound, but his Proposals were rejected. What followed till his being proclaimed King at *Sintarem*, we have seen above. The Governours hearing thereof, and fearing he would soon be upon them, Fortified themselves. At *Lisbon* all things were in the greatest Confusion imaginable. King *Philip* was at *Badajoz*, and the power of his Army much extolled; which spurred all *Antony's* Followers to press the Kingdom to Declare for him, that so united, they might the better oppose the *Spaniards*. The Council of *Lisbon*, refused to admit *Antony* as King, but would receive him as Protector; which he refusing, they prepared to oppose him.

5. *Antony* advanced to *Lisbon*, and tho' but slenderly attended, entered the City; all that saw him saluting him as King. He went to the Town-House, and being there proclaimed; all that were present swore Allegiance to him, which done, he immediately sent to acquaint the Duke of *Bragança*, the Governours, and other Noblemen, of his Exaltation. His next care was to raise Men, and dispatch Expresses to *England*, and *France*, to crave Succours. Having gathered 1500 Men, he set forward for *Setuval*, where the Governours were, sending before the young Count *de Vimieira*, his great Favourite, with a Letter, admonishing them to submit. They thought to have defended themselves, but the Count being possessed of the Gates, they fled away privately, and met again at *Cajubian*, where they gave their definitive Sentence in Favour of King *Philip*. *Antony* hasted to *Setuval*, and having secured the City, returned to *Lisbon*, where the Forts of *S. Julian* and *C. ...* were intended to be ...

1531.  
The Birth  
and Edu-  
cation of  
*Antony*,  
Prior of  
*Crato*.

1533.  
1568.

*Antony*,  
enters *Lis-*  
*bon*, and  
is saluted  
King.

who had retired to his Town of *Portel*, sent thence to King *Philip*, offering to come to Composition, but it was now too late, for that Prince was too far advanced. The Duke of *Alva* had passed the River *Caya* in *June*, which parts the two Kingdoms, with 20000 Men, 6000 Carts, and 25 pieces of Cannon. He marched peaceably as if it had been through a Country subject to his Master, all Places submitting themselves as far as *Estremoz*. This Town was soon persuaded by *D. Christopher de Moura* to surrender, but *D. John de Azevedo* held out in the Castle, till seeing the Cannon planted against him, he endeavoured to escape, and being taken, was sent Prisoner to *Villa Viciosa*; the Duke of *Alva* declaring he spared his Life in regard to his want of Experience. Hence the Army moved, and took in *Evora*, and *Monte-Mayor*, and so proceeded to *Setuval*, without committing any waste in all the Country.

The Spanish Forces, under Duke de Alva, were near to Lisbon.

6. The grand Prior provided for his Defence, but wanting Men, and no Succours coming from *France*, he sent the *French* Consul residing at *Lisbon* to hasten them, and he went to spend the Money he carried. Now perceiving the Duke approached, having taken *Alcacer do sal* near *Setuval*, and being wholly unprovided to oppose him, he suffered his Officers to commit many Extortions to raise Money. Slaves had their Freedom given them to take Arms, Money was coined of less Weight than usual, all the Jewels of the Crown were sold, the Money designed for Redemption of Captives seized, Convents were searched for Money deposited in them, and the Plate of the Churches was seized. The Fryars took Arms, and went about the Streets, exciting others to do the like. *Setuval* was soon surrendered to the Duke of *Alva*, and only a Tower held out that secures the Haven, under which lay Three Galleons. *D. Alvaro Bazzan*, Marquis of *Santa Cruz*, coming up now with 60 Galleys, and 25 Ships, and some Cannon being planted on an Eminency, at the first shot the Galleons surrendered, and soon after the Tower. The Grand Prior seeing the best Part of the Kingdom in the Power of King *Philip*, and the Nobility daily resort to him, began now to suspect his own Followers. The Duke of *Alva* after long consulting where to pass the River *Tagus*, at length took the Advice of the Portuguese that adhered to him, which was, to go over in the Galleys to *Cascais*. *D. James de Meneses* lying with

Duke de Alva, passed the River Tagus.

some Men behind a Mountain, did not hinder the landing, and was therefore accused of Cowardize. The Grand Prior marched out to *Belem*, with some few ill armed Troops, but soon retired. The Duke took and plundered *Cascais*, where *D. James de Meneses*, being taken, had his Head cut off. This put *Lisbon*, and the Grand Prior, into a great Consternation; and he gathered about 8000 undisciplined Men, with which he marched towards *Belem* on the 5th. of *August*. On the 4th. Day after, he removed and posted himself on an Advantageous rising Ground over against the Bridge of *Alcantara*. In the mean while the Duke advanced to batter the Fort of *S. Julian*.

7. *D. James de Cazamo*, a Spaniard, who had served the Grand Prior, came now to him, and prevailed with him to submit himself to King *Philip*, but the King remitted the whole Affair to the Duke of *Alva*, who broke off that Negotiation. The Castle of *S. Julian*, after being Two Days battered, was delivered up to him. The Wooden Fort at the Bar was abandoned by the Defendants, and the Spaniards possessed themselves of it. King *Philip* now published his general Pardon to all Persons whatsoever concerned in these Broiles, except the Grand Prior, and some other of the Heads, conditionally, that they submitted by a Day appointed. *Lisbon* was willing enough to embrace this offer, but feared as much to be plundered by its armed Rabble, as by the Enemy. Eight Days the Two Armies lay close by each other, without doing any thing. At length the Duke sent *Sancho de Azula* with 15 Horse, and some Foot, to discover which way the Tower of *Belem* might be attacked. A greater number of Portuguese met them, and a Skirmish passed, tho not considerable, the Spaniards retiring. That Night they planted their Cannon, and the next Day the Tower was delivered to them. The Duke perceiving the Grand Prior kept his Ground, which prevented the City *Lisbon* from surrendering, he went in Person to take a view of his Camp, and found it well seated, but not fortified. He resolved to attack it at Midnight, and gave strict Orders that the City should not be plundered; King *Philip* having given it him particularly in Charge. At the time appointed he marched, the Spanish Ships and Gallies then riding in the River. The Grand Prior encouraged his Men, which were now but a small number, and as brave and disciplined. The Spanish Army consisted of

The Fort upon the River taken by the Spaniards.

Antony's Cannon having played on both sides, the Spaniards assaulted the Bridge, where was a sharp dispute, but that once gained, the Portuguese soon fled to the City, where Antony opened the Prisons, and then with some few that would follow him, shifted for himself.

Lisbon  
plundered  
by the Spaniards.

Antony  
forced to fly  
and ab-  
scond.

8. Notwithstanding the contrary Orders, the Spaniards during Three Days plundered Lisbon, which so displeased King Philip, that he threatened to punish all the Officers, and so severely reprov'd the Duke, that he is thought to have died of Grief. Antony having staid at *Sacavem* near Lisbon, removed to *Santarem*, which Place, tho' the first that declared him King, refused now to admit him. Thence he fled to *Coimbra*, where he fortify'd himself, and having gathered 5000 Men, sent Orders to the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, to own him King, and entered *Aveiro* by force. The Towns in *Africk* immediately submitted, but the *Tercera* Islands stood by Antony. *Sancho de Avila* set out from Lisbon, with 400 Horse, and 6000 Foot, to pursue Antony. *Coimbra* opened her Gates to him, and Antony removed to *Porto*, which Place refusing him admittance, he began to batter, and thereupon it was surrendered to him. *Sancho de Avila* followed the Grand Prior close, and coming to *Porto*, battered it from the same Place the other had done, and entering plundered it. Antony escaping thence, and being forsaken of all Men, absconded for a long time in the Mountains. Being close pursued at the River *Lima*, he had certainly been taken, but that one *Thomas Cacheyro*, who still followed him, swam over the River with him on his Back. In this manner he fled from Place to Place, narrowly escaping in several Disguises. King Philip offered 80000 Crowns in Gold to any that could discover him, and tho' many poor People were concerned in his Escape, none ever offered to betray him. Antony came in disguise to Lisbon, and thence to *Setuval*, where a Woman assisted to hire a small Vessel for him, which carried him into England; whence he passed into France, and was there favourably entertained by the Queen Mother *Katherine of Medicis*, and her Son the Duke of *Alençon*, who aspired to a Crown, and hoped if he could get Forces into Portugal, to secure that to himself.

9. The *Tercera* Islands still held for Antony, and at the same time expected King *Sebastian*, who was killed in

*Africk*.

*Africk*, and many pretended to prophecy the Day he *The Tercera* would come to them. King Philip being about to make *ra Islands* his Entry into Lisbon, received this News from the *for Anto-* Islands, and therefore sent thither *Peter Valdez* with 600 ny. Men and some Cannon to reduce them. He found a very ill Reception, and therefore kept at Sea, not knowing what to do. Advice was brought him, That D. *Lope de Figueroa* was preparing at Lisbon to follow him with a greater Force; and he, that the other might not have any share in the Honour of subduing those Islands, rashly adventured to land. With much difficulty he got ashore upon S. James his Day, and at First took some pieces of Cannon from the Portuguese. But *Cyprian de Figueyredo*, the Governour, coming out of the City with all the Force he could make, drove before a Herd of Oxen, which being pricked forwards upon the Spaniards, put them into disorder, and he then falling on, drove them into the Sea, where 450 of them perished. Many Barbarities were committed towards the Dead, some being cut in Pieces, and others dragged about the Streets. *Valdez* was in this miserable Condition, when D. *Lope de Figueroa* came to be a Witness of his rashness; for he could do nothing after that Loss. Upon the News that Levies were making in England, France, and Flanders, to bring Antony into Portugal, the King sent the Prior of *Malta*, to secure the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*. *Ambrose de Aguiar*, and *Peter Peixoto*, were sent to the *Terceras*. The Marquis de *Santa Cruz* returned from *Sevil*, with Twelve Gallies, and Twenty Galleons, and found there Thirty Vessels gathered from Portugal, Biscay, and other Places. With this Force he sailed towards the Islands in July. Antony at the same time sailed from France with fifty eight sail, in which were above Seven thousand Men, commanded by *Philip Strozi*, and *Montieur de Brisco*. He arrived at the Island of S. *Atichael*, before the Spaniards, and plundered the Town of *Laguna*. The Inhabitants of *Punta Delgada*, the chief Town of the Island, fled to the Mountains. *Ambrose de Aguiar*, who had been Governour, was dead, and now *Peter Peixoto*, and *Laurence Nogueyra* commanded. They marched out with about Three thousand Spaniards and Portuguese, to meet the French, by whom they were defeated, and *Nogueyra* flying to the Fort, died there of his Wounds. Antony, after

Antony  
arrives at  
the Ter-  
ceras with  
a fleet from  
France.



after summoning the Fort, in vain prepared to batter it when the *Spanish* Fleet appearing, diverted him from that Design.

1582.  
Antony's  
Fleet de-  
stroyed by  
the Span-  
ish.

10. After several Essays made, the Two Fleets joyned Battle on the 26th. of *July*. The Engagement lasted Five Hours, in which the *French* Admiral, and Vice-Admiral, being taken, Two great Ships sunk, and about Two thousand of their Men slain, the rest fled. *Philip Strozzi* being taken died of his Wounds, as did *D. Francis de Portugal*, Earl of *Vimioso*. *John de Jaen*, Chaplain to the Major General, frightened by the Cannon, ran down into the Hold, where he died with fear. *Anthony* thinking some of his Commanders had not done their Duty, as being corrupted by the *Spaniards*, cut off *D. Duarte de Castro's* Head, on suspicion that he was one of them. He was not himself in the Fight, being then received ashore in the Island *Tercera*, where he was received as King. Some of the *French* Ships returned to *France*; others plundered the Island of *Fayal*. The Marquess after his Victory, having Twenty eight Lords, Fifty Gentlemen, and a great number of Marriners and Soldiers, Prisoners, beheaded all the former, and hanged the latter. This done, he returned to *Lisbon*, carrying with him Two *India* Ships he met in the way. *Anthony* coined Money, much under Weight, wracked the People to raise more, incited the religious Men to take Arms, and forbore not too, in the midst of his Misery, to endeavour to corrupt Nuns. He sailed thence in *November*, with Thirty Sail for *France*, but some of them forsook him by the way. About the middle of *February*, King *Philip* returned to *Castile*. As soon as the Season was fit for sailing, Monsieur de *Chartes*, a Knight of *Malta*, came from *France* with 1200 Men to secure the Islands to *France*. In *July* arrived there the *Spanish* Fleet, consisting of Sixty Sail, and among them Twelve Gallies, which caused admiration; for that those Vessels had never before been used in the Ocean, but for Coasters. In this Fleet were One thousand two hundred Men commanded by the Marquess de *Santa Cruz*. On the 24th. of this Month, the Admiral would have proclaimed a general Pardon, but could not be heard. He landed at *Fort Adil*, and after Three Days resistance became absolute Master of the Islands, the Defendants flying to the Mountains. Monsieur de *Chartes* intended to depart with

with the *French*, leaving their Colours. *D. Emanuel de Silva* the Governour, after absconding some time, was betrayed by a Slave, taken and beheaded. His Head was put up where he had set up that of *Belchior Alfonso*, for siding with King *Philip*, and it is remarkable, he had said it should be taken down when his were fixed in the Place. Some were beheaded, others hanged, and all that had any Honours or Employments conferred by *Antony*, were deprived of them. All the other Islands were easily reduced.

11. *Antony* having left all he possessed in the Seas, and *Antony* having no hopes of Succour in *France*, went over into *England*, the differences betwixt King *Philip* and Queen *Elizabeth* encouraging him to hope for assistance there. The Queen was easily perswaded to embrace this Enterprize, and offered her Ships, and Two thousand Men that had served in *Holland*, but upon very hard Terms, which were granted, and are these; That the Queen should furnish 120 Sail, 15000 Landmen, and 5000 Marriners, for which *Antony* within Two Months after he was in possession of *Lisbon*, should pay down Five Millions, and 300000 Duccats a Year for ever. That the *English* should Traffick freely in *Portugal* and *India*. That the Queen might bring her Fleet into *Lisbon* River, and *Antony* should be obliged to assist her against King *Philip*. That the Garrisons in *Portugal* should always be in the hands of *English*, maintained by the Kingdom. That Bishopricks should be conferred on *English* Catholics, and so others too tedious to relate. Sir *Francis Drake* had the Command of the Fleet, and Sir *John Norris* of the Land Forces, which were 22000 Men. They sailed from *Plimouth*, and arrived at *Cornwall* the 24th. of *May*, where they landed, and having spent Five Days before the Place without any success, returned to their Ships with loss. In the mean while, King *Philip* sent Advice to *Lisbon*, That the Cardinal *Albertus* who was Governour, and the Count de *Fuente* who was General, might be in readiness. The *English* landed some Horse, and 12000 Foot at *Peniche*, which Place they took, and thence coasting along, entered the River of *Lisbon*. The Count de *Fuente*, with some Troops of Horse, endeavoured to secure the Country, yet *Norris* marched with a great Body of Troops towards *Lisbon*, and fortified himself close to the City. There

There he lay some time, but still finding that not one *Portuguese* came over to him, nor that *Drake* did not come up the River, he marched back and embarked his Forces. Many of his Men died by the way, of the Plague, which was got among them in *Portugal*, and the rest arriving at *Plimouth*, spread it through all *England*.

12. *Antony* seemed now only to have come to take his last Farewel of his Country, for ever after he resided in *France*, tho' never quitting his claim to this Crown, till he died at *Paris* in great Poverty, and the 64th. Year of his Age. His Body was buried in the Church of the Nuns of *Ave Maria*, and the Inscription on his Tomb, calls him King. He was endued with several good Qualities, his Person was comely, and his Countenance pleasing. He was not unlearned, especially in Divinity, and wrote a Paraphrase upon the Penitential Psalms. He could not marry, as being of the Military Order of *Malta*; but by several Women had the following Bastard Children: First, *D. Emanuel de Portugal*, who married *Emilia*, Daughter to *William* Prince of *Orange*. Secondly, *Christopher*, who died in *France*. Thirdly, *Peter*, who became a *Franciscan* Friar, and was called of the *Desart*, remarkable for Piety and Learning. Fourthly, *Denis*, who took the Habit of *S. Bernard*, in the Monastery of *Valbuena*. Fifthly, *Alonso*, who served in the Gallies of *Naples*, where he died. Sixthly, *John*, who died very Young. Seventhly, *Philippa*, a *Bernardin* Nun. Eighthly, *Luisa*, a *Franciscan* Nun. Ninthly, and Tenthly, Two Daughters, whose Names are not extant, but they were both kept in the Monastery of *Huelgas*, near *Burgos*, by King *Philip* the Second.

## CH A P. VII.

The Reign of Philip, the Second of Spain, and First of Portugal; and Eighteenth King, from the Year 1580, till 1598.

1. Philip the Second of Spain, and First of Portugal, Son to the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, and the Empress *Elizabeth*, Daughter of King *Emmanuel* of *Portugal*.

*Portugal*, was born at *Valladolid* on the 23th. of *March* 1527. After the loss of King *Sebastian* in *Africa*, he sent Don *Christopher de Moura* to condole with the New King, and Cardinal *Henry*, offering his assistance in reestablishing the Kingdom in its former Splendor, and Money for the redemption of Captives. The First he ransomed, was the Duke of *Barcelos*, Son to him of *Bragança*, and with him several Gentlemen. King *Henry* dying, and the Kingdom being in a Confusion, for that the Governours feared to declare who was the next Heir, and the Multitude began to declare for *Antony* the Grand Prior; King *Philip* came to *Badajoz*, hoping his approach would induce the *Portuguese* to declare for him; but being deceived of his Expectation, he sent the Duke of *Alva* who reduced all the Country with much ease, as we have seen in the foregoing Chapter. At the time the King intended to enter the Kingdom in Person, he fell so dangerously Sick that he was given over. He suddenly recovered, and *Ann* his Queen who was with him died. Being restored to his Health, he was received at *Elvas*, *D. Christopher de Moura*, and *Nunho Alvarez* He enters *Pereyra*, attending upon him as Ministers of State for *Portugal* this Kingdom. *Lisbon* was not yet quite clear of the Plague, and therefore he ordered the *Cortes* or Parliament to meet at *Tomar* on the 15th. of *April*. In his way thither he met the Dutcheß of *Bragança*, and they were long together, tho' their Discourse was not over pleasant; for the King treated her not with all the Complement she expected, and she never gave him the stile of Majesty. Being come to *Tomar*, before the opening of the Parliament, he caused himself to be Sworn King, according to the *Portuguese* manner, and his Son Prince *James* Heir of the Crown. Next he granted a general An Am- Pardon to all that had sided with *Antony* the Grand Pri- nity. or, only excepting Fifty two Persons, and excluding all religious Men, that espoused his Quarrel, from Spiritual Promotions.

2. The Parliament was opened the 19th. of *April*, the He holds a King sitting on his Throne. The King bountifully be- Parlia- stowed his Favours upon all there, and yet there were ments. more discontented than pleased. It was proposed to suppress the University of *Coimbra*, because it had supported the Grand Prior, but the King would not suffer it to be done. What the King granted of his own will to the

Priviled-  
ges gran-  
ted to Por-  
tugal.

the Kingdom in general, was as follows. That he will keep all their Ancient Priviledges, and Immunities. That the Parliament shall always meet within the Kingdom. That none shall be Governour of *Portugal* but a Native, unless it be a Prince of the Blood. That all Places of Trust and Honour, shall be given to Natives. That all the Officers of the Houshold shall be kept up, and none but Natives shall be such. That the same be observed in *India*, and *America*, and none but *Portuguese* Ships shall be allowed to Trade thither. That all the Money coined in the Kingdom, shall be stamped with only the *Portuguese* Arms. That all Church Preferments, and Commendaries of Military Orders, shall be given to Natives. That no New Imposition shall be laid upon the Church. That there shall be always a *Portuguese* Council with his Majesty, for the Affairs of the Kingdom. These are the Principal Heads, the others being much of the same Purport, or less Material, I omit for brevity sake. They were in all Twenty five Articles. King *Philip* bound himself by Oath to perform them, left his Blessing to such of his Heirs as preserved, and his Curse to those that violated them.

Philip's  
publick En-  
try into  
Lisbon.

3. The *Cortes* being broke up, King *Philip* resolved to make his solemn Entry into *Lisbon*, but because the City had not yet finished the Works designed for his Reception, he staid some Days at *Almada*, a Town on the opposite side of the River. On the 29th. of *June* he entered the City, attended by all the Nobility, with the greatest Splendor and Majesty imaginable. Thus ended the Calamities of this Kingdom, which had lasted Two Years, during which short time there may be reckoned Five several Reigns; which were that of *Sebastian*, of *Henry*, of the Five Governours, of *Antony*, and now of *Philip*. For the easier dispatch of Business, the King ordered there should be but Two prime Ministers, viz. *Antony Pincyro*, Bishop of *Leyria*, and D. *Christopher de Moura*, the former because he had no Kindred, and the latter because he made no Account of them, for *Moura* was never known to prefer any of his, tho' he had many. *Nunko Alvarez Pereyra* was made Secretary, and was equal in Power to them. tho' not in Title. The King had appointed to return to *Castile* in *November*, but Prince *James* dying, he was forced to call a Parliament, to cause his Second Son *Philip* to be sworn Heir to the Crown.

Crown. The Parliament met the beginning of the New Year, and swore the Prince; and among other things the King granted leave for wearing of Silks. *Mary* the Empress, Sister to King *Philip*, and her Daughter *Margaret*, came to meet the King at *Lisbon*. The *Portuguese* expected the former would have been left to govern them; but the King made choise of her Son the Cardinal *Albertus*, Archduke of *Austria*. On the 11th. of *February* the King set forward for *Castile*, carrying with him the Lady *Juliana de Lancastro*, Heiress of the Noble House of *Aveiro*.

1533.  
Another  
Parlia-  
ment held.  
  
Philip re-  
turns to  
Castile.

4. All Men began to observe how the Cardinal *Albertus* was qualified, and they found his Inclinations were good. Only two things remarkable happened during the time of his Government. One was the *English* Invasion, under *Antony* the Grand Prior, before spoken of. The other the counterfeit Sanctity of a Nun. She pretended to live without eating, and indeed had no other Sustainance, but what she got out of artificial Candles she pretended to burn in her Oratory. She also imprinted on her Body the Five Wounds of our Saviour, to artificially, that the cheat was scarce to be discerned, even after she was discovered. During the short time this Hypocritical Scene was acted, she wrought some Miracles. Being at last examined, she was punished, and from thenceforth led so Godly a Life, as almost purchased her the Opinion of Sanctity, she before endeavoured to gain by Hypocrisie. The King tho' he left the Cardinal in *Portugal*, governed the Kingdom himself with the assistance of his *Portuguese* Council, composed of very worthy Persons, in the choice of which he never erred. The conceit some People entertained that King *Sebastian* was yet living, gave Occasion to some Persons to take upon them his Name and Character. The Son of a Tiler, born at *Alcobaza*, who had been Apprentice to a small Turner of Heads, in *Lisbon*, and expelled the Order of *Carmelites* in his Noviceship, went away and lived like a Hermit, on the Borders of the Kingdom, near *Algarquerque*. After some time the People censuring his course of Life, he left it, and putting on good Apparel, he travelled about that Country well mounted. Some presently gave out he was King *Sebastian*, which he at first denied, but finding them positive, at last complied with their Humour, and suffered two of his followers to call themselves, the one *Christopher de Tercera*, and the

Cardinal  
Albertus,  
Governour  
of Portu-  
gal.  
  
The Hypo-  
crisie of a  
Nun.

1535.  
Comte de  
Sebastian.

the other the Bishop of *Guarda*, both which had been slain with the King in *Africk*. Some few days they lived well among their Adherents, and gathered Money, but being apprehended by Order of the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, the Counterfeit *Sebastian*, after having been shewed at *Lisbon*, was sent to the Gallies, and his Companion, the pretended Bishop, hanged.

5. Scarce was the last Impostor punished, when another started up in his place. This was one *Gonzalo Alvarez*, the Son of a Mason, who, like the other, became an Eremite, and did much seeming Penance, lashing himself, and then crying out, where he might be heard, *O unhappy Sebastian, all thy Penance is but little, in respect of thy Crimes*. A Rich Farmer, called *Peter Alfonso*, joyned with him, and concealed him, giving out Orders in his Name. At length he gathered 800 Men, calling himself Earl of *Torresnovas*, Lord of *Cascais*, and Governour of *Lisbon*. None saw the pretended King but the Daughter of the false Earl, she being designed Queen, and also the Wife of *Antony Simoens*, a Rich Man. Whensoever this Pageant King was forced to appear abroad, he wore a great pair of Spectacles, which covered most part of his Face. He sent a Son of *Simoens* to the Governour *Albertus*, to Order him to quit the Palace, for that he was coming to undeceive the People. This Messenger being taken, and then let go, increased the Opinion of the People, that it was King *Sebastian*, because *Antony Simoens* having known him, would not otherwise have suffered his Son to go on that Message. The Judge of *Torresvedras* was ordered to Apprehend them, but he attempting it, was, together with his Clerk, cast headlong from a High Place, and killed: *Gasper Pereira*, for reproving them, was also murdered, with his Son and Nephew, and his House plundered. *Antony Fonseca*, an *Alcalde de Corte*, went next with 400 Spaniards, commanded by Captain *Calderon*, who, after killing a few of the Mutiniers, took the Upstart King. At *Lisbon* he was hanged and quartered, as was the false Earl, *Peter Alfonso*, with others. Some were sent to the Gallies, and the Towns of *Ericeyra*, *Carbonero*, and *Mafra* were left almost desolate, the Inhabitants flying for fear of Punishment. Yet after all this, many thought King *Sebastian* must come out from the Desert, and there was scarce any that lived an Eremitical Life in *Portugal*, who was not imagined to be that King. 6. *Elizabeth*,

The false  
Sebastian  
executed.

6. *Elizabeth*, Queen of *England*, not regarding that she owed her Life to King *Philip*, joyned with the Rebels of *Holland* against him. She sent over to them Assistance *Robert*, Earl of *Leicester*, with 3000 Men. Sir *Francis Drake* also sailed from *Plymouth* in *August*, and Landing at *Bayona*, was beaten off thence. Next, he fell upon the Islands of *Caboverde*, where he took a considerable Booty, and all the Cannon of the Fortifications along the Sea-coast. Thence he sailed to *Santo Domingo* in the *West-Indies*, which City he took and plundered. The same he did at *Cartagena*, and then passed over to *Florida*. About the beginning of this Year King *Philip* set out the Proclamation for regulating the Stile to be used in Letters, which till then caused much Confusion, every one aspiring to greater Titles than belonged to them. King *Philip*, provoked by the many Wrongs done him by Queen *Elizabeth*, resolved upon the Conquest of *England*, and to that purpose gathered a Mighty Fleet in the vast Port of *Lisbon*. It contained 130 Sail, most of them very large, under the Command of *D. Alonso Perez de Guzman*, Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, and Generalissimo. The Land Forces amounted to 20000, the Mariners above 11000. They sailed from *Lisbon* the 27th. of *May*, and after being dispersed by a Terrible Storm, met again at *Cornua*. Sailing thence, the greatest part of this Mighty Fleet was destroyed, either by the *English*, or by violent Storms, which drove it round *Scotland* and *Ireland*, so that the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* with a very few returned to *Santander*. In Revenge of this Attempt, Queen *Elizabeth* sent the Fleet, we before spoke of in the Life of *Antony* the Grand Prior, to Invade *Portugal*. The Disappointment she met there, made her think of Intercepting our *India* Fleet. To this purpose she fitted out 50 Sail, commanded by the Earl of *Essex*, who sailed directly to the Islands *Azores*. King *Philip* sent out his Fleet, under the Command of *D. Alonso Bazan*, against him. Near the Island *Flores* the two Fleets engaged, with so much Advantage on the part of the Spaniards, that they took the *English* Vice-Admiral, yet presently after, some of the *Spanish* Fleet perished in a Storm. However, the *English* took the Flag-Ship of three that came from *India* in the Year 1593. tho' *D. Alonso Bazan* sailed from *Lisbon* to prevent them. He

Queen Elizabeth's  
Provocations, and  
King Philip's Design  
against her

1586.

1588.

1591.

1593.

B b

found



found seven *English* Ships in the Island *Flores* waiting for the other two that came from *India*, and he took them.

1594.  
Portugal  
governed  
by Com-  
missioners.

7. The Arch-Duke, Cardinal *Albertus*, being called away to *Madrid*, to receive the Archbishoprick of *Toledo*, the Government of *Portugal* was committed to *D. Michael de Castro*, Archbishop of *Lisbon*, the Counts *D. John de Sylva* of *Portalegre*, *D. Francis Mascarenhas* of *Santa Cruz*, *D. Duarte de Castelobranco* of *Sabugal*, and *Michael de Moura*, Secretary. The *English* Fleet again appeared before the *Tercera* Islands, hoping to meet with the Ships from *India*. The Earl of *Essex* was Admiral, he destroyed *Fayal* and *Pico*, then Landing upon *S. Michael*, plundered *Villafranca*. Lastly, one of the *India* Ships falling into his Fleet, he thought to have carryed it off, but was disappointed by her being fired. This done, he sailed from the Islands. Prince *Charles*, Son to King *Philip*, was naturally of a turbulent Spirit, and is said to have held Correspondence with his Father's Enemies, and to have practised against him. Hereupon he was cast into Prison, and Judges appointed to inspect into the Cause, who passed Sentence of Death against him. His Father allowed him no other Favour, than to choose what Death he would die; and he said, they might kill him as they pleased. Being prepared for it, four Slaves strangled him with a Silken Rope. *D. John* of *Austria*, tho' a Bastard, was no less haughty, and aspired first, to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, then, to that of *England*; but the King lowered all his haughty thoughts, and he is believed to have died a violent Death. King *Philip* having been some time sick, at last was confined to his Bed, as well by reason of Weakness, as that the Gout was broke out in Sores upon his Hand, Foot, and Knee. Fifty three days he lay in such condition, that his Bed could not be made, and on the last of them he died. His Patience in his Sufferings was wonderful, for he pityed those that attended him more than he did himself. Having performed all Offices of a good Christian, he gave up the Ghost the 13th. day of *September*, being *Sunday*, at Five in the Morning, in the Year 1599, in the Famous Monastery of the *Escorial*, the 71st. Year of his Age, the 18th. of his Reign over *Portugal*, and 41st. over the rest of *Spain*. He was the first King, since the *Goths*, that possessed all this Monarchy entire.

1599.  
King Phi-  
lip dies.

S. King

8. King *Philip* was of a middle Stature, an awful His De-  
Prefence, had a high Forehead, blue and beautiful Eyes, scription.  
a handsome Nose, thick Lips, the lower somewhat fallen,  
as is usual to the House of *Austria*, fair Hair; and taken  
altogether, his Person was Majestick. He wanted  
the Sense of Smelling, or at least had very little of it.  
He had four Wives; First, *Mary*, Daughter to King  
*John* the Third of *Portugal*. Secondly, *Mary*, Queen His Wives  
of *England*, Daughter to *Henry* the Eighth, by whom and Issue.  
he had no Issue. Thirdly, *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Henry*  
the Second, King of *France*. Fourthly, *Ann*, Daughter  
to the Emperor *Maximilian*. By the first he had *Charles*,  
whom he put to Death, as has been said. By the third,  
*Elizabeth Clare Eugenia*, Countess of *Flanders*, Wife  
to the Arch-Duke *Albertus*. Also *Katherine*, Wife to  
*Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*. By the fourth, first,  
*Ferdinand*; secondly, *Charles Lawrence*; thirdly, *James*,  
all three died young; fourthly, *Philip*, who succeeded  
his Father; fifthly, *Mary*, who died an Infant.

## CHAP. V.

The Reign of Philip the Third of Spain, and  
Second of Portugal, and Nineteenth King,  
from the Year 1578. till 1621.

1. Singular was the Wisdom of the late King, and  
consequently the loss of him was extraordinarily  
lamented by all his People. Their Sorrow was much  
mitigated by the great hopes conceived that his Successor,  
*Philip*, would prove no less capable to wield the Sceptre  
than his Father had been. This Prince (being the Birth of  
Seventh Child of his Father, and Fourth of his Mother Philip the  
Queen *Ann*) was Born in the renowned Town of *Ma- Third.*  
*drid*, on the 14th. of *April*, 1578. and was the Second 1578.  
of the Name in *Portugal*, and Third in *Spain*. He was  
sworn Heir of *Portugal* on the first of *February*, 1582. 1582.  
and afterwards of his other Kingdoms, this being the 1598.  
first of them that took an Oath to him. The many  
Embassages he received with singular Grandeur, the Fleets  
he set out, the great Supplies he sent to Pope *Paul* the  
Fifth,

Bb 2

The Mo-  
riscoes  
banished  
Spain.

Fifth, and the Emperor *Ferdinand*, and many other particulars of his Reign, as appertaining more properly to the History of *Spain*, where he resided, are purposely omitted here, because we design only to adhere to what particularly belongs to *Portugal*. His Resolution was wonderful in banishing the *Moriscoes*, or those that were descended of the Race of the *Moors*, who pretending to become Christians, committed many Villanies and Sacrileges, at the same time underhand holding Correspondence in *Africk* and *Turky*, in order to bring over the *Moors* into *Spain* again. *Charles* the Fifth, *Ferdinand* and *Philip* the Second, had all of them entertained thoughts of putting this same Design in execution, but the many Inconveniencies that attended it, still deterred them. 400000 of these base People were dispersed throughout the Kingdom, who all upon the King's Edict departed the Kingdom, having liberty to carry away with them all they were worth. Upon the Birth-day of this King, a Preacher Prophetically foretold the Banishment of the *Moriscoes*, threatening them with the New-born Prince.

1619.  
Philip the  
Third comes  
into Por-  
tugal.

His Recep-  
tion.

2. Often did this King promise to Visit his Realm of *Portugal* in Person, but still failed, being put by his Resolution by his Favourites, who for their private Ends dissuaded this Journey, not regarding how much a King loses the Affections of his People, who never suffers himself to be seen by them. At length, when least expected, he suddenly set out in *April*, 1619. bringing with him Prince *Philip*, and the Princesses *Elizabeth* and *Mary*, and (as his Father had done) he made his Publick Entry into *Lisbon* on *S. Peter's Day*. His Reception was the greatest that ever till then had been heard of; for the *Portuguese*, ravished with Affection and Joy to see their Prince among them, erected such Fabricks on the Land, and made such mighty Works on the River, as seemed to fill up both those Elements of Land and Water, and scarce left room for the admiring Multitude to behold him that all those Expences were made for. It is impossible to describe the particulars of this most Glorious Entry. The River *Tagus* was covered with an innumerable multitude of Vessels, built in the shape of several Fishes and Sea-Monsters. The King was brought in a Galley (attended by many others) built with such admirable Workmanship, that the like was never before seen, and it obliterated the Memory of the Famous one made by *Ptolemy*, King of

*Egypt*.

*Egypt*, which at that time was the Wonder of the World. Whilst this multitude of Vessels rowed down the River, the thundring of the Cannon from the Vessels themselves, and from the Castle, shook the Earth, and rent the Air. Being come on shoar, the King proceeded to the Cathedral, and thence to the Palace, entertaining his Eyes with such prodigious Sights of Gold and Silver, that the time falling short to view all, he returned the next day to behold the lofty Fabricks, which expressed the greatness of their Affection who received him. Such was the Magnificence of the Piles erected, such the Cost bestowed on them, and such the solid Strength of them, that they seemed as if designed for many Ages, not for the use of one only day, which was too short a space even to demolish them.

3. The Majesty of these Works was so amazing, that the King, tho' used to Regal Entertainments, said, He never till that day thought himself a great King. Hereby seeming to call *Lisbon*, *Felicitas Philippica*, as once *Julius Caesar* gave it the Name of *Felicitas Julia*. In the Palace he performed the two Solemn Acts of Swearing the Prince and holding the *Cortes* or Parliament, which met with extraordinary Joy and Satisfaction of all Men, but in the end disappointed them of their hopes. First, for that the King was scarce seen by his Subjects, and next, for the unsatisfactory Answer he gave to their Demands. The Reason of it was, that his coming to the Kingdom, and calling the Parliament, were Actions proceeding from his own Inclination; but the disobliging of them, was wholly the product of the ill Advice of his Ministers. His Favourites fearing he should take an Affection to the *Portuguese*, and perhaps continue among them, were uneasy at the Splendor of his Entertainment, and so much Influence had they over him, that he gave more Credit to their Words, than to those marks of Respect and Loyalty he saw with his Eyes. This is the greatest Misfortune can befall a Prince, to be so led away and insatuated by the Flatteries of Favourites, who only attend their private Interest, as to forfeit the Affections of their People. This is the height of Tyranny in Ministers, to covet all for themselves, and allow nothing to others.

He holds  
Parlia-  
ment.

4. Seven Months the King spent in his Journey to *Portugal*, staying there, and returning home. Being come to *Madrid*, he departed this Life the last day of *March*, in

His stay,  
and re-  
turn to *Madrid*.

1621. the Year of Grace 1621. the 43d. Year of his Age, and  
*His Death.* 23d. of his Reign. His Body lies buried with his Prede-  
 cessors in the Royal Monastery of St. *Lawrence*, com-  
 monly called the *Escorial*. His Picture, drawn as he  
 appeared at the *Cortes* or Parliament held at *Lisbon*, in  
 his Robes, with the Collar of the Golden Fleece, and the  
 Steptre in his Hand, represents him of a pleasing Aspect,  
 yet full of Majesty. Of Stature, he was rather little, but  
 proportionable; his Forehead high, his Eyes blue, his Lips  
 thick, his Complexion fair, with a fresh Colour, his Hair  
 yellow, his whole Countenance beautiful, and represent-  
 ing much Grandeur. He was a most Holy Prince, and  
 at his Death seemed to have only one thing to lament,  
 which was, that he fulfilled what his Father had Pro-  
 phetically foretold, *viz.* That he suffered his Favourites  
 to have so much the Ascendant over him. Had he given  
 less Ear to his Ministers (who always mind their own  
 Advantage, tho' with the loss of their Master's) and been  
 more absolute in taking his own measure, he had proved  
 one of the greatest and most successful Princes in the  
 World. For he was so Fortunate, that notwithstanding  
 all the Miscarriages of those that governed him, he still  
 came off with Honour and Reputation, adding new  
 Conquests to his Dominions, both in *India* and *Africk*.

*His Wife  
 and Issue.*

5. His only Wife was *Margaret* of *Austria*, Daughter  
 to the Arch-Duke *Charles* and his Dutches *Mary*. She  
 was one of the most Renowned Queens this Kingdom  
 ever had, and it enjoyed many that deserve Immortal  
 Fame. After her Death, the King in Contineny imitated  
 his Predecessor *Alonso* the Fifth, for he never would Marry  
 again; and it is generally believed he never had to do  
 with any Woman but his Queen. His Issue was, First,  
*Ann Mary Mauricia*, Wife to King *Lewis XIII.* of *France*,  
 her Dowry 500000 Crowns in Gold. Secondly, *Philip*,  
 who succeeded him. Thirdly, *Mary*, born at *Valladolid*  
 the 18th. of *August*, 1606. afterwards Queen of *Hun-*  
*gary*. Fourthly, *Charles*, born at *Madrid* the 14th. of  
*September*, 1607. Fifthly, *Ferdinand*, born at the *Escu-*  
*rial May* the 17th. 1609. he was a Cardinal, Archbishop  
 of *Toledo*, Prior of *Crato*, and Abbot of *Alcobaca*. Sixthly,  
*Margaret*, born at *Lerma* in *May* 1610. and died the  
 11th. of *March* 1617. Seventhly, *Alonso*, born at the  
*Escorial September* the 22d. 1611. and died the fol-  
 lowing Year. His Mother also died in Childbed of him,  
 leaving

leaving her Subjects in unspeakable sorrow and want of  
 her.

6. In this King's Time the Plague raging in the City *Prodigies.*  
 of *Lisbon*, was observed to cease immediately after the  
 Image of the glorious Martyr S. *Sebastian* had been  
 seen to sweat plentifully. A Year before the King's  
 Journey to *Lisbon*, two Comets of a wonderful Magni-  
 tude appeared in the Signs of *Virgo* and *Libra*, one of  
 them so prodigiously great, it renewed the Memory of  
 that which appeared at the Birth of *Mithridates*, that  
 extended over one quarter of the Heaven. After them  
 ensued the Death of Popes and Kings, the overturning  
 of States, and the fall of Great Ministers, whose Ruin  
 is by nothing more evidently foretold than by the unlaw-  
 ful means they use to rise, and yet none takes warning  
 by him that went before, to avoid the Precipice. At the  
 City *Bagaim* in *India* there happened such a violent  
 Storm, as carried away Churches, Houses, Trees, and  
 Mountains. Several Apparitions were seen in the Air, re-  
 presenting Men, Fires, and Battles. The Holy Man, F.  
*Bartholomew*, of the Martyrs, Archbishop of *Braga*, was  
 beatified; his Body is in the Town of *Viana*. *Margaret*  
*de Chaves* now flourished in Sanctity, and made a mi-  
 raculous end.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Reign of Philip the Fourth of Spain, and  
 Third of Portugal, and the Twentieth King,  
 from the Year of our Lord 1605, till 1628.*

1. King *Philip* the Third of *Spain*, and Second of Por- *Birth of*  
*tugal*, being at *Valladolid* with his Wife Queen *Philip the*  
*Margaret*, their Son *Philip* the Fourth of *Spain*, and Third *Fourth of*  
 of *Portugal*, was born upon Good-Friday, which fell then *Spain, and*  
 upon the 8th. day of *April*, in the Year 1605. His Birth *Third of*  
 was celebrated with the greatest Demonstrations of Joy, *Portugal.*  
 and most of Expence, that had ever till then been seen. 1605.  
 His Father dying, he retired to the Royal Monastery of  
 S. *Hierome*, whence a few days after he returned to take 1621  
 Possession of his Crowns left him by his Ancestors, his  
 Magnificent Entry dispelling the Clouds of Sorrow that

His Accession to the Crown.

R. Charles the First of England, then Prince of Wales, in Spain.

hung over the Heads of the Subjects, and filling their Hearts with Joy. He entred upon the Government, giving ample Testimonies of a more pregnant Judgment than could have been expected at those tender Years, for he reformed the Councils, established wholsom Laws, punished evil Ministers, and ordered that all those who were in Office, should give in true Estimates of what they were worth, that it might afterwards appear how their Estates were advanced in his Service. On the 16th. of May, Charles, Prince of Wales, afterwards King of England, land, came incognito by the Post to Madrid, and went to Lodge at the English Embassador's House, and by him made known the design of his coming. The Catholick King made a Publick Entry with him from the Escorial with that Solemnity that is only used at the Reception of the Spanish Kings, giving him the Right Hand under the Canopy, and attended by all his Court, every Man that day vying to outdo the rest in Splendor, and in testifying his Joy. Afterwards, several Sports were made, to Entertain the Prince, the King himself, at the Riding used with Canes instead of Spears, signalized his Dexterity. The Match betwixt the Prince and Princess Mary being proposed, learned Men were consulted, and agreed upon the Conclusion, but not the Formalities. It was hoped it would have succeeded, but Providence had ordered otherwise.

The Dutch in Brasil.

2. The Arms of Spain were at this time employed in several Parts, in all which many Portuguese served with singular Reputation. The Rebel Hollanders having Intelligence of the evil Posture of Affairs in Brasil, resolved to attempt the Conquest of that Country, and to that effect, moved several of the Northern Princes, grown envious of the Power of Spain, to assist them in the Enterprize. They fitted out a Fleet in Holland and Zealand, it consisting of 35 Sail, under the Command of Admiral John Vandort, and carried 3000 chosen Men, a good Train of Artillery, with all other Necessaries. The Design was kept very private. In December the Fleet set Sail, and having passed the Line in 6 Degrees of South Latitude, according to the Orders given, the Admiral opened his Instructions, and found he was commanded to invade Baya de Todos Santos, or the Bay of All-Saints. This Bay is thought to be the greatest in the World, and is the Port to the City S. Salvador, seated on a rising Ground along

along that Mountainous Shoar, extending out in length from North to South. It has a Cathedral Church, and had once a Court of Chancery, which has been taken away with good cause; for the greatest Injustice that can be in a State is to be pestered with too many Officers of Justice. This City is the Metropolis of all that vast Province of Brasil in America, and on the East side of that Continent, stretching forth 1200 Leagues along the Coast, being a Delightful, Rich, and Pleasant Soil.

3. The Fleet entred this Bay, and began to batter the Suburb next the Sea, where was begun a Fort in the Water, in which Antony de Mendoza, Son to the Governour James de Mendoza, commanded, but was forced to abandon it, because in no condition then to withstand the fury of the Enemy's Cannon. In the mean while 1000 Musqueteers landed, and advanced towards the City without any Opposition. They halted in the Suburb of S. Benedict. Night came on, and all the Inhabitants fled out of the City, which the Enemy took Possession of in the Morning. The Governour staid in his House, and was thence carried away aboard the Admiral. All the People had forsaken their Houses, leaving an inestimable Booty to the Rebels, who polluted the Churches, and committed all manner of Sacrilegious Outrages. D. Mark Teyxeira the Bishop with his Clergy had offered to withstand the Enemy, but none adhering to him, he retired to a Village. Mathias de Albuquerque, who was next in Command to the Governour, then a Prisoner, was 100 Leagues off at Pernambuco. He sent an Account of what had happened into Portugal, where the Advice arrived in July. The King writ to the Governours of Portugal a Letter with his own Hand, in which he expressed how much he valued the Portuguese Loyalty, and what returns he expected from them upon such an Exigency. The Portuguese, to answer their King's Expectation, speedily reformed from all Parts of the Kingdom to Lisbon, and in the space of three Months fitted out a Fleet of 26 Sail, in which was most of the Gentry of the Kingdom, all at their own Cost, without putting the King to any charge. D. Emanuel de Moura Corte Real, Marquis of Castel Rodrigo, gave the Example to others, raising a lightly Company of Musquetiers, which he sent upon this Expedition at his own Expence. This stirred up others to do the like, for among the Portuguese Emulation is more prevalent than

The Dutch Land, and take the Capital City of all Brasil, called Baia.

A Fleet sent against the Dutch.



than Vertue. D. *Alonso de Noronha*, tho' old, that had been Governour of *India*, lifted himself, and many Gentlemen of Quality followed his Example. I shall not name them, because among the *Portuguese* every one had rather his Name should be omitted, than that his Neighbours should be inserted with him.

1625. 4. The *Portuguese* not being a sufficient Power to recover *Brasil*, a *Spanish* Fleet was at the same time fitting out, but not so soon ready, for the former stay'd a Month for the other in the Port of *Lisbon*; and sailing thence in *November*, expected it at the Island of *Santiago* the chief of those of *Cabo Verde* till *February*, which delay proved not a little advantageous to the Enemy. The *Portuguese* Squadron consisted of 26 Ships, and in them 4000 Men; in the *Spanish* were more Ships, and 8000 Men; the former commanded by D. *Emanuel de Meneses*, the latter by D. *Frederick de Toledo Ossorio*, Marquess of *Valdueva*. Whilst these Squadrons, now united, make their Voyage, let us see what was doing at *Baia*. The *Hollanders*, possess'd of the City, took several Vessels, which knowing nothing of what had happened, fell ignorantly into that Port. They sent five Ships laden with Booty to their Country, with the News of their Success, and with the Governour, and Provincial of the *Jesuits*, that had been taken Prisoners. After the taking of the City, D. *Mark Teixeira* the Bishop took upon him the Command of General, for the Defence of the Country, and drew near to the Place with 1500 Men, the third part of them *Blacks*. Several Encounters happened betwixt his Men and the Enemies, in which he lost 7 or 8 Men, and the Rebels above 300. In one of these Skirmishes Capt. *Francis de Padilla* killed Col. *John Dort*, and cut off his Finger, on which he wore a Ring, the Soldiers stripping his Body, cut off his Privities to shew them to his Men. These Barbarities were a greater shame to them that acted, than to him that suffered them. Two runagate *Portuguese* repenting, and deserting back from the Enemy, were received by our Men upon the points of their Swords, and cut in pieces. The Port of *Tapagipe* was recovered from the Rebels, and the Commander of it sent Prisoner to *Lisbon*. The Bishop fell sick, and died, and *Francis Nunez Marinho* succeeded him in the Command, who behaved himself well till D. *Francis de Moura* was sent thither by the King with some Supplies, till the Fleet could

Other  
Actions of  
the Dutch  
after tak-  
ing *Baia*.

could come. He pent up the Enemy within the Town, recovering from them the Suburbs of the *Carmelites* and *S. Benedict*, but the City was strong, and in the Port were 26 Ships well manned. Their whole Force consisted of 3000 Men of several Nations, and 500 *Blacks*.

5. The *Spanish* and *Portuguese* Fleet arrived at *Baia* 1626. upon Good-Friday, to the great Terror of the Rebels. The *Spanish* and *Portuguese* 4000 Men landed immediately. The General, D. *Emanuel de Meneses*, and the Admiral, D. *John Faxardo*, remained aboard, drawing up their Fleet like a Half Moon, to hinder the flight of the Enemy. *Peter Roiz de San Estevan*, Marquess of *Cropani*, marched with the 4000 Men to the City, D. *Frederick de Toledo*, the *Spanish* General, following him. They took their Posts, and began to carry on their Works, when about 300 of the besieged sallying, killed 50 of our Men, most of them Persons of Note, yet they were forced to retire. The Cannon being planted, the Bullets flew so thick, that in a few days all was full of Ruins, and the besieged began to be dismay'd. The same Fate attended their Fleet, for D. *Emanuel de Meneses* landing, from a Battery he raised on the Shoar, sunk several of their Ships, destroying many Men. The Enemy's only hope was in the Succours they expected, but they came only to be Spectators of their shameful quitting the Town. Their Soldiers began to complain they had been decoyed thither, and were weary of the Service, their Commander in Chief proclaimed, that all such as would go over to the *Portuguese* Camp, should have leave, but two that declared for it, were hanged. This silenced them for a while, but soon after they proposed the surrendering the City, and the Governour opposing them, was not only affronted, but wounded. To prevent their deserting him, he designed to burn the Fleet, but before he could put it in execution, they surrender'd, Articling only for their Lives. In the Town was found an extraordinary Rich Booty, which the *Spanish* Soldiers made the most of. The Merchandize found there was valued at above Three Millions, in Money 300000 Ducats, 2000 Quintals of Powder, each Quintal is an Hundred Weight, an infinite quantity of Ball, 230 Pieces of Cannon, 3000 Musquets, 800 Corislets, the same number of Saddles, 600 *Blacks*, 6000 Bushels of Meal, 50000 Hides, and 2000 Pipes of Wine. The two Squadrons returning home, suffered by Storms, some perished, the rest arrived in their Ports.

*Baia* recovered.

6. King

King Philip Rewards the Portuguese.

Cadiz assaulted by the English.

Two great Losses to Portugal.

The Conclusion.

6. King Philip most generously rewarded the Portuguese, who so signalized their Zeal upon this occasion, for his Council Advising, that he should grant to the Sons of those that were killed in his Service, all that they possessed belonging to the Crown, he not only consented to it, but afterwards, without being asked, he added more with his own Hand; That forasmuch as he was desirous such Subjects might live, he not only allowed that Favour to those that were killed, but to all that went in the Fleet. This same Year a Fleet of above 100 Sail of English assaulted the Island of Cadiz, whither many Portuguese Gentlemen, after providing for the Security of their own Coasts, resorted, to express their Zeal for the King's Service. After some time, the Enemy was repulsed with loss, and retired, leaving many of their Men dead behind them. Before this Invasion of the English, the Famous Bell of Villilla in the Kingdom of Aragon, is said to have rung out of it self. Portugal sustained two inestimable Losses, the one before the Passages we have spoke of happened, the other after. The first was the taking the City Ormuz by the Persians, with the assistance of the English. The other, the Destruction of its Fleet, which being set out to Convoy the Ships from India, was wrecked on the Coast of France, where all the Ships, and most of the Men, among whom were many of Note, perished. Since the loss of King Sebastian in Africk, this Kingdom had not so great a Misfortune.

7. Here our Author, Emanuel de Faria, puts an end to his History. He composed the whole at Madrid, and being there at the time of the Revolution, durst not proceed any further, because as a Portuguese, he would not write any thing that should derogate from the Honour of his Country; and as being in the hands of the Spaniards, it was dangerous to say any thing that might be offensive to them. He only adds an Account of the Children King Philip had till that time, and some short Remarks upon the Publick Affairs of the World, which make nothing to this History. Let us therefore put an end to this Part of the History, and proceed to the Supplement, wherein will be found all that was worth our Knowledge, from the Time where he leaves off, to our Days.

The End of Emanuel de Faria y Sousa his History of PORTUGAL.

The Supplement to Emanuel de Faria e Sousa his History of Portugal, from the Year 1640, where he left off, till this present time, collected from the best Authors that have written thereof, and from Authentick Information of Eye-Witnesses.

Anno 1640.

1. THE Spaniards had now been near 60 Years 1640. possessed of the Kingdom of Portugal. Philip the Second of Spain, after the Death of Henry the Cardinal-King, had carryed it against the House of Bragança by force of Arms, tho' with no good Title, and that Kingdom was insensibly become a Province of Spain, without any appearance that the Portuguese could ever be able to withdraw themselves from that Foreign Subjection. The Nobility of the Kingdom durst not appear in that Splendor which became their Quality, or claim all the Priviledges due to their Birth, for fear of raising a Jealousie in the Spanish Ministers, at a time when Riches, Birth, or Merit were thought sufficient to render a Man suspicious, and cause him to be persecuted. The Gentry were in a manner banished to their Country Houses, and the Commonalty groaned under the heavy Burthen of the Taxes. The Count Duke de Olivares, Prime Minister of State to Philip the Fourth of Spain, thought a new Conquest could never be too much weakened. He knew that the Natural Antipathy which was betwixt the two Nations could not but render the Sovereignty of the Spaniards odious to the Portuguese. That it must be ever offensive to them to see all Places of Trust filled by Strangers, or else by Men of no Extraction, who were wholly devoted to the Interest of Spain. Therefore he thought to secure his Masters Authority by keeping the Nobility out of Employ, the Gentry remote from Business, and the Commonalty so poor, that they could not have the heart to aspire to any change. Besides, he drew out of the Kingdom all the Young Men that were fit to bear Arms, employing them

in Foreign Wars, lest those turbulent Spirits should disturb the Peace of the Government. Yet this proceeding, which might have succeeded, if not pushed on too far, had a far different consequence than was expected, both by reason of the ill Circumstances the Court of Spain then lay under, as also because of the Prime Minister's Character, who was naturally morose and inflexible. No pleasing Methods were now used in raising of Taxes, but they were rather collected as if they had been Contributions gathered in an Enemy's Country. The Portuguese having now nothing more to lose, and as little to hope for, thought of casting off that Subjection, which they always believed unjust, and was now become insupportable.

Margaret of Savoy, Dutchess of Mantua, governed Portugal with the Title of Vice-Queen, yet she bore only the Title circumscribed within a limited Power. The whole Intrigue of the Government, and all the Authority was in the Hands of Michael de Vasconcellos, a Portuguese, who, under the Character of Secretary of State, was the absolute Minister in the Kingdom. He received his Orders immediately from the Count Duke, whose Creature he was, and became most acceptable to him by finding Methods to draw great Sums of Money out of Portugal, and by sowing the Seeds of Sedition among the Nobility, favouring some, and depressing others, which raised implacable Enmity betwixt them. This Discord was the Minister's Security, he believing they could never Plot against the Government, who meditated how to exercise their Revenge upon one another.

Only the Duke of Braganza could give the Spaniards Jealousie. 3. In all Portugal there was none but the Duke of Braganza who could give the Spaniards any Disturbance. That Prince was of a soft and agreeable Temper, much given to his Ease, his Judgment rather sound than piercing; in Business he aimed at the main Point, and could easily dive into such Matters as he applied himself to, but loved not application. His Father, Duke Theodosius, who was of a fiery Temper, had laboured to ingraft in him his Natural Hatred to the Spaniards; that he might regard them as Usurpers of his Right, and had done all that in him was, to inspire into him Ambition and Resolution enough to attempt the Recovery of a Crown which was due to him. D. John had imbibed his Father's Sentiments, but that in such measure as was most

most suitable to his Peaceable Temper. He hated the Spaniards, but not so as to seek Revenge with the Expence of his Quiet. He was ambitious, and did not despair of ascending the Throne of his Ancestors, but was not so impatient as his Father had been. He thought it enough to keep within Prospect of his Hopes, without hazarding an easie Life, and more than Private Fortune in Possession, for a Crown that was very uncertain. Doubtless, had he been the Man Duke Theodosius would have had him, he could never have compassed what he aimed at. His Actions were so narrowly looked into by the Count Duke's Order, that if he had not been so entirely given up to his Ease and Pleasure, he must of necessity have been discovered; and if once discovered, his Repose and Fortune had both been sacrificed. The Court of Spain would never have put such Power into his hands, and suffered him to live in the midst of his Country. Nature made him more Politick than Art could have done. His Birth, Estate, and Right to the Crown, were no Crimes, but his being Formidable, was Crime enough, according to the Laws of true Policy. He was not ignorant of it, and found there was no way to wipe off that Guilt, but by rendring himself less to be feared, and appearing wholly devoted to his Pleasure. Nothing was to be seen at Villaviciosa, the ordinary Residence of the Dukes of Braganza, but Hunting, Feasting, and such-like Country Divertisements, as if Nature and Fortune had conspired to qualify him for those Times. In short, such was his course of Life, as gave not the Spaniards the least Umbrage of his aspiring to the Crown, and yet it furnished the Portuguese with assured hopes of a wise and mild Government, if they themselves would attempt to Enthrone him.

4. His Conduct could breed no Suspicion, but an Accident that happened some time before, in which he had no hand, had begun to raise a Jealousie in the Prime Minister. The People of Evora, provoked by certain new Taxes, had mutinied, and in the heat of that Fury, amidst their Complaints against the Tyranny of the Spaniard, some Acclamations had been heard for the House of Braganza. Here it first appeared how much Philip the Second erred in leaving within the Kingdom a Family so Powerful, and that had so good a Title to the Crown. Hereupon, the Council of Spain resolved to

to secure the Duke of *Bragança*, or at least, to remove him out of *Portugal*. Immediately the Government of *Milan* was offered him, which he refused, pleading want of Health, and Knowledge in the Affairs of *Italy*. The Prime Minister seemingly approved of his Reasons, but found out another Method to draw him to Court. The King being about to March to the Frontiers of *Aragon*, to punish the Rebellion of the *Catalonians*, he wrote to the Duke, exhorting him to be present in that Expedition at the Head of the Nobility of his Country. The

The Duke of  
Braganza  
refuses to  
go into Ca-  
stile.

Duke, who was upon his Guard against all Artifices of the Court, answered, He was not in a Condition to defray the Expence he must be at in that Expedition, to support the Grandeur of his Family. These repeated Denials gave the Prime Minister ground to fear the Duke, notwithstanding his Natural Propension to Ease, had still some thoughts of a Crown. Considering therefore of what Importance it was to the King his Master, to secure his Person, he omitted nothing that might conduce to the compassing his Design. But it being dangerous to use Force, because of the great Affection the *Portuguese* always bore to the House of *Bragança*, he resolved to bring him to his beck by all imaginable exterior marks of Affection, and of an entire Confidence in him.

The Duke  
made Ge-  
neral.

5. There was War at that time betwixt *France* and *Spain*, and the *French* Fleet having appeared on the Coast of *Portugal*, furnished the Prime Minister with a fair Pretence for carrying on his Designs. It was requisite there should be a General to Command the Forces that were to Guard the Coast. This Commission was sent to the Duke with such an Absolute Power, as seemed to put the whole Kingdom into his hands: Yet this served only the better to hide the Bait. For at the same time, *D. Lope de Ossorio*, Admiral of the *Spanish* Fleet, had Orders to put into the nearest Port to the Duke, as if he were drove in by stress of Weather, or on some other Pretence, and having drawn him aboard, as to an Entertainment, to carry him away to *Spain*. But Fortune ordered it otherwise, for the *Spanish* Admiral lost several Ships in a Storm, and the rest being dispersed, he could not gain the Coast of *Portugal*. This no way discouraged the Count Duke, who looked upon the Disappointment as merely accidental, and therefore he laid his Project another way, writing to *D. John* in such terms, as expressed

expressed the greatest Confidence, lamenting the loss of the Fleet, which left the Coast open to be insulted by the Enemy, and advising him to visit and strengthen those Places that were most exposed. At the same time he sent him 40000 Ducats to raise new Forces, if requisite, and to defray the Charge of his Progress. In the mean while, the Governours of all Strong Holds being for the most part *Spaniards*, had private Instructions to secure him, if a favourable Opportunity were offered, and send him into *Spain*. *D. John* suspecting these extraordinary marks of Kindness, made the Minister fall into the Snare he had laid for him. Tho' he returned Thanks for the Trust reposed in him, and gave special Assurances of Fidelity; yet he made use of this Opportunity to prefer his Friends to such Posts as might be most for his own Interest. He made use of the Money to Purchase new Creatures, and always visited the Forts so well attended, that there was no hopes of seizing his Person.

6. All the Court of *Spain*, being ignorant of the Design it was grounded upon, loudly exclaimed against the Prime Minister for putting such Power into the hands of a Person so suspicious; but the King liked the Project the better, because no Body could dive to the bottom of it. Thus the Duke of *Bragança*, under colour of executing his Employment, freely traversed all *Portugal*, laying at the same time the Foundation of his future Greatness. He had a Magnificent Retinue, which drew the Eyes of the People after him; he heard all Men with extraordinary Courtesie; he curbed the Insolency of the Soldiers, and at the same time commended the Officers, and used all possible means to oblige them. His Behaviour charmed the Nobility, for he received them with obliging marks of Distinction, according to every Man's Merit and Quality. To be short, he bestowed Favours where-ever he came, and yet gained more Friends upon the hopes of what they might promise themselves from him, than what at present they received. So that those who saw him, thought they prayed for their own Interest, when they offered up their Vows for his exaltation to the Throne. His Partisans did not neglect at the same time to do all things that might be for the establishing of his Reputation. *John Pinto Ribeiro*, the Comptroller of his Household, was the Man that laboured most to reduce to an exact Method the hopes of his Masters.



Master's Exaltation, which were yet but in Prospect. This was a vigilant active Man, expert in Business, and passionately zealous for his Master's Promotion, as hoping to have no small hand in the Government, if the Duke ascended the Throne. His Master had owned to him, that he would willingly embrace a fair Opportunity of seizing the Crown, but would not do it like one who had nothing to lose; that therefore he gave him leave to manage that Affair, yet so, as it should never appear that he was any ways concerned.

Pinto, the Duke's Agent, Conspires with some of the Nobility. 7. Pinto had long applied himself to discover what discontented Persons there were at Lisbon, and to increase their number. He spread Complaints against the present Government. He put the Nobility in mind of the Honourable Employments their Families enjoyed under their Natural Princes, and represented their being summoned to the War in *Catalonia*, as an Honourable Banishment. Among the Merchants and Shop-keepers he complained of the loss of their Trade, discoursed of the Tyranny they lay under, and extolled the *Dutch* and *Catalonians*, who had asserted their Liberties. The Clergy he stirred up, by shewing how the Privileges of the Church were infringed, and Benefices given to Strangers, which ought to be the Reward of Merit and Learning among the Natives. Such as he knew to be Malecontents, he discoursed about his Master's Qualities, to found their Inclinations. So cunningly did he manage their several Humours, that after having secured many in private, he at last gathered a Number of the Nobility, and among them was the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. This Prelate was of the Family of the *Cunhas*, which is one of the best in the Kingdom; a Man of Parts, beloved by the People, but hateful to the *Spaniards*, for whom he had no less aversion, because they had, through the Interest of the Vice-Queen, given the Archbishoprick of *Braga* to *D. Sebastian de Matos de Noronha*, and made him President of the Council, called *d'O Paço*. The rest that made up this Assembly, were *D. Michael de Almeida*, so great an Enemy to the *Spaniards*, that he could never be persuaded to appear at Court, *D. Antony de Almada*, and his Son *D. Lewis*, *D. Lewis da Cunha*, Nephew to the Archbishop, *Alcelo*, the great Master of the Game, *D. George* his Brother, *Peter de Mendonça*, *D. Roderick de Saa* the Great Chamberlain, and many Officers of the Household,

whose

whose Employments were become only Titular, since *Portugal* had lost its Native Kings. To these, the Archbishop, who was naturally a well-spoken Man, made a Speech, representing the state of the Kingdom, since it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, in its most hideous form. He shewed them, how *Philip* the Second, to secure his Conquest, had put to Death many of the Nobility, not sparing even the Clergy, having to that effect obtained a Bull from the Pope. How the *Spaniards* had ever since followed the same Maxims of Government. That no Man's Life or Estate was safe. That the Nobility was slighted, Benefices given to unworthy Persons, the People consumed with Taxes, the Country lay waste, and Towns desert, the Men being carried away by force to the War in *Catalonia*. That the last Orders from Court for Summoning the *Arrier-Ban*, served only to draw away all the Nobility, that they might end their days in Exile, whilst their Estates were given away to Strangers. In fine, that he would rather wish to die, than survive the utter Ruin of his Country, and hoped so many Worthy Persons were not met there to no purpose.

8. This Discourse renewed the Memory of every man's private Grievances, but above all, they resented the Summons for *Catalonia*, as designed for their utter Ruin. These Considerations, and the desire of Revenge, made them resolve to take the necessary Measures for shaking off so heavy a Yoke. They blamed themselves for having suffered patiently so long, and concluded it was absolutely necessary to expel the *Spaniards*, but were divided upon what Form of Government to choose. Some were for a Commonwealth, like that of *Holland*. The others were for a King, but differed about the Person; some proposing the Duke of *Bragança*, others the Marquess of *Villarcid*, and others the Duke of *Arce*, all three Princes of the Blood-Royal of *Portugal*; every Man speaking according to his private Affection, or prospect of Advantage. The Archbishop, who was entirely devoted to the House of *Bragança*, making use of the Authority of his Character, declared to them, that the choice of a Governour was not Arbitrary, since they could not in Conscience break the Oath of Fidelity they had taken to *Spain*, unless it were to enthrone the Rightful Heir to the Crown, which was the Duke of *Bragança*.

C c 2

Besides

Besides that, his Power and Interest was such, that without him, they could hope for no Success, tho' he were not, as indeed he was, the first Prince of the Blood. Then he descanted upon the Duke's good Qualities, and so managed the Assembly, that they all resolved to make him their King, and that every Man should use the utmost of his Endeavours for carrying on that Design. Thus the Assembly broke up, having first fixed the Time and Place for another Meeting, wherein they should take the necessary Measures to secure a speedy and happy Success to their Enterprize. Pinto seeing all well disposed in favour of his Master, writ privately to him, to draw near to *Lisbon*, as well to encourage the Conspirators by his Presence, as to take Order with them about putting the Design in execution. Upon this Advice, the Duke some days after set forward from *Villaviciosa*, and came to *Almada*, a Village opposite to *Lisbon*, on the other side the River, as if he had fallen in there accidentally in his Progress through the Kingdom. He had so splendid an Equipage, and was followed by such a Numerous Train of Persons of Quality and Officers, that he looked more like a King going to take Possession of his Crown, than a General that was visiting the Posts under his Charge. Being so near *Lisbon*, he could not omit paying his Respects to the Vice-Queen. When he entered the Great Court before the Palace, all the Avenues were thronged with People flocking to see him, and all the Nobility came to Conduct him before the Vice-Queen. Such was the Joy throughout the City at the first sight of him, that he seemed either to want only a Herald to Proclaim him King then, or else courage to seize the Crown. But he was too wise, to commit his Fortune to the wild Sallies of the giddy Multitude; and therefore having visited the Vice-Queen, he instantly retired to *Almada*, without so much as entering the House of *Bragança*, for fear of heightning the Jealousie of the *Spaniards*, who were already too much alarmed.

9. Pinto having made the Conspirators observe his Master's fearful Cautionness, said, they must make their Advantage of his stay at *Almada*, and use a sort of Violence to oblige him to accept of the Crown. His Advice being approved of, they gave him in charge to know of his Master, when they might wait upon him with their Proposals; which he did, upon Condition only three of

The Duke  
visits the  
Vice-Queen

The Conspirators Deputies confer with the Duke at Almada

the Conspirators should come to him. *Michael de Almeida*, *Antony de Almada*, and *Mendoza*, were accordingly privately conducted into the Duke's Closet at *Almada*. *Antony de Almada* represented to him the miserable state of the Kingdom, the little Security any Man had of his Life or Estate, and that even he himself had no other Refuge to fly to but the Crown. He shewed him the low Condition the *Spaniards* were reduced to, the Assistance he might expect from Foreign Princes who were Enemies to the House of *Austria*, and particularly from *France*, the Conveniency of the Sea for bringing of Succours; and lastly, the small Number of *Spaniards* that were left in *Portugal*, the Garrisons being drained to supply the Army in *Catalonia*. This Discourse was pleasing enough to the Duke, yet nevertheless keeping himself within the Bounds of his Natural Timidity, he answered so as they might not have cause to despair of him, nor to hope much more than they did before; telling them, He was sensible of the deplorable Condition of the Kingdom, and of his own Danger; that he commended their Zeal for their Country, and was beholding to them for their good Wishes towards him; but that it was not as yet time to think of applying such violent Remedies, which might prove of fatal Consequence. To this dubious Answer, he added such Carresses and particular Thanks, that they could no longer doubt but that their Proposals were acceptable, and yet they found he would make no advances till the Success of their Enterprize was past all danger. After some private Conference with *Pinto*, he returned to *Villaviciosa*, but not with that inward quiet which he used to enjoy as a private Man, and therefore immediately communicated the whole Affair to the Dutchess. This Lady was by Birth a *Spaniard*, and Sister to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, a Grandee of *Spain*, and Governour of *Andaluzia*. She was naturally ambitious, and her Father had endeavoured to improve that Inclination in her. Besides her Knowledge in other Languages, she was so perfect in her own, and had such an insinuating way, that she drew all mens hearts. All the Customs of *Portugal* she had made Natural to her self, and had by her extraordinary Application and Carriage gained an absolute Ascendant over her Husband, who never undertook any thing of moment without her Advice, and therefore could not

proceed farther in this Affair without consulting her. To her he revealed the whole Conspiracy, the Parties concerned, their Zeal in carrying it on, and all that had happened to him at *Lisbon*, and at *Almada* in the Conference. He told her how much the Nobility were offended at the Expedition against *Catalonia*. That nevertheless, the greatness of the Danger discouraged him, as did the fear that the Great Ones, out of Envy, would oppose him; that the Power of the King of *Spain* was formidable, and little Confidence to be reposed in Foreign Princes. These Considerations weighed more with the Duke, than the desire he had of a Crown. But the Dutcheß, whose Ambition was more rooted, presently embraced the hope of a Crown, and used all the Arguments her Rhetorick could furnish her with to persuade him, yet so, as that he should see a greater Number of Conspirators engaged, and never openly espouse the Cause, till the moment it should be put in execution.

10. The Court at this time was not free from Care. The extraordinary Joy the People express'd at *Lisbon*, at the sight of the Duke, alarmed the Prime Minister. He suspected there were Private Cabals held at *Lisbon*, and certain groundless Reports, which are commonly the fore-runners of great Revolutions, increased his jealousy. Several Councils were held hereupon, and it was finally resolved to call the Duke of *Bragança* to *Madrid*, that so the *Portuguese*, wanting a Head, might have no hopes left of succeeding in their intended Revolt. On the 20th. of *October*, 1640. the Count Duke de *Olivares* sent an Express to the Duke of *Bragança*, to acquaint him, the King expected him at Court, to be informed by him of the Posture of Affairs in *Portugal*, assuring him he should receive all marks of Honour that were due to his Birth and Quality. This Positive Command strangely surprized him, as knowing, should he refuse to Obey, the next Orders would be, for carrying him away by force; and thinking he was betrayed, concluded himself fallen into the depth of all Misfortunes. Nevertheless, that he might gain time, and advertise the Conspirators of his Danger, by the Advice of his Dutcheß, he sent a Gentleman to *Madrid*, to assure the Prime Minister of his Resolution to appear suddenly before the King. This Gentleman had private Instructions to find some counterfeit Excuses for his delay from time to time. Being

The Prime Minister of Spain resolves to draw the Duke out of Portugal.

1640.

The Duke's Arts in refusing.

come to *Madrid*, he assured the King that his Master followed him. He hired a great House, bought Rich Furniture, hired Servants, and lay'd out much Money, as if he daily expected his Master. Soon after, he pretended he had received Advice, that his Master was sick; and finding this Fraud would not last long, presented a Memorial to the Prime Minister, desiring that the King would ascertain in what manner his Master should be received at Court. This was done, in hopes that the *Grandeess* opposing him, the Dispute might be held on foot some considerable time. But the Count Duke, to avoid all delays, persuaded the King to decide the Controversie in favour of the Duke of *Bragança*; so that he could no longer doubt of as Honourable a Reception as he could himself desire.

11. As soon as the Conspirators understood what Orders the Duke had received from Court, they sent *Mendoza* to assure him of their steadfastness, and to persuade him openly to joyn with them. They met a Hunting, and being withdrawn into a Wood, *Mendoza* made use of the most pressing Arguments to engage him to espouse his own Quarrel. The Duke answered, He approved of their Proceedings, and was fully resolved to Head them. *Mendoza* returning to *Lisbon*, informed the Conspirators how he had sped, and that the Duke would have *Pinto* repair to him. He was sent, and with him the whole Scheme of their intended Proceedings. *Pinto* acquainted his Master, how great a Misunderstanding there was betwixt the Vice-Queen and the Secretary *Vasconcellos*, and withal told him, nothing could have fallen out more advantageously for advancing his Affairs. The Duke, who was fully convinced of the force of his Reasons, found himself more pressed forward by the Gentleman he had sent to *Madrid*, for he writ, that the Prime Minister would admit of no longer delays. This made him resolve to lose no time. However, he writ to that Gentleman, that he should acquaint the Count Duke de *Olivares*, that he would have been at *Madrid* long since, but for want of Money to support his Dignity, which as soon as it could be raised, he would set out towards the Court. The Duke carryed *Pinto* to the Dutcheß's Apartment, where several Methods were proposed about the Execution of their Design. At length the Duke concluded that *Lisbon* should be secured, for

that being the Capital City, would shake the whole Kingdom, and that the same day it was done, he would cause himself to be proclaimed King in all the Towns that depended on him. That such of his Friends as were Governours of Towns should do the like where they commanded; and that the People should be made to rise, even in the Villages that were subject to any of the Conspirators; to the end that the Conflagration being general throughout the Kingdom, those few Spaniards that were in it might not know which part to have recourse to first. That he would march his own Regiment into *Elvas*, the Governour of which Place was wholly at his Devotion. That as to the securing of *Lisbon*, he must leave it to them to Act as Opportunity should offer. Nevertheless, his Advice was, that their first Ports should be made against the Palace, that having seized the Vice-Queen, and all the Spaniards, they might serve as Hostages to oblige the Citadel to Surrender, which might otherwise incommode the City. He gave *Pinto* two Letters of Credence, directed to *Almeida* and *Mendoza*, only requiring them to give entire Credit to the Bearer, and to be faithful and courageous in putting what they had promised in execution.

The Conspirators contrive how to incense the Citizens of Lisbon against the Spaniards.

12. Being come to *Lisbon*, *Pinto* delivered his Credentials to *Almeida* and *Mendoza*. Then they sent for *Lemos* and *Correa*, two Citizens of the Duke's Faction, who employing many Workmen, and having gone through all the Offices of the City, were in great Reputation among the People. They had before made it their business to incense the Citizens against the Spaniards, by spreading Reports of new Taxes to be raised, and had designedly discharged many of their Workmen, pretending that the Trade being lost, they had no Business for them; but in truth, that Want might make them the readier to rise; and yet from time to time they relieved them, that they might be entirely at their Devotion. Besides, they held Intelligence with the chief Men of every Quarter, so that they assured the Conspirators, that having but one day's Warning, they could raise the greatest part of the People at an hour appointed. Having made sure of the Tradesmen, *Pinto* admonished the other Conspirators to be ready upon the first Notice given them, and to secure as many Friends as they could, as it were upon some Private Design, without entrusting them with the Secret.

All

All things being disposed as they could desire, *Almeida*, *Mendoza*, *Almada*, *Melo*, and *Pinto* met, and fixed Saturday, the first of December, for putting their Enterprize in execution. Advice was immediately sent to the Duke, that he might the same day cause himself to be proclaimed King throughout the Province of *Alentejo*, which for the most part held of him; and it was agreed, they should have one Meeting more, to fix their ultimate Resolutions. On the 25th. of November they met at Night, as had been agreed, in the Palace of *Bragança*. They found they could make up near 150 Gentlemen, most of them Chiefs of Families, with all their Servants, and about 200 Citizens and Tradesmen, who by their Reputation could easily draw the greatest part of the People after them. It was resolved *Vasconcellos* should fall a Victim to the Resentments of Portugal. Some there were who proposed that the Archbishop of *Braga* should undergo the same Fate, as being a great Friend to the Spaniards, and formidable for his great Parts. But *D. Michael de Almeida* opposed it, representing how odious the Murder of a Person of such Dignity would render them to the whole World, and that it would draw the Indignation of all the Clergy upon the Duke of *Bragança*. Nothing remained now but to order the manner of their Rendezvous, and giving the Attack. It was agreed, that they should divide themselves into four Bodies, which at one and the same time should rush into the Palace, that having possessed all the Avenues, the Spaniards might be kept asunder, and so disabled from relieving one another. That *D. Michael de Almeida* should Attack the German Guard at the Palace Gate. *Melo*, the Great Master of the Game, his Brother, and *D. Stephen da Cunha*, at the Head of the Citizens, were to Attack a Company of Spaniards that mounted daily at a Place, called *The Fort*. *Tello de Meneses*, *Emanuel de Saa*, the Great Chamberlain, and *Pinto*, were to secure the Apartment of *Vasconcellos*, and to make him away immediately. *D. Antony de Almada*, *Mendoza*, *D. Charles de Noronha*, and *Antony de Saldanha* had it in Charge to seize the Vice-Queen, and all the Spaniards that were in the Palace, to be kept as Hostages, in case of need. That whilst they were busie in making themselves Masters of their several Posts, some Horsemen should be detached to Proclaim John, Duke of *Bragança*, King of Portugal, about the City. That having gathered the Multitude into the Streets, they might make use of them as there should be occasion. The Assembly broke up, having agreed to meet on Saturday the first of December, some at *Almeida's* House, and others at those of *Almada* and *Mendoza*, where the Conspirators were to Arm themselves.

13. Whilst



13. Whilst the Duke of *Bragança* and his Friends thus pursued their Ends, the Prime Minister, alarmed at his Delays, sent away an Express to him, with positive Orders for him to come away instantly; and that he might have no Excuse, sent him a Bill upon the Treasury for 10000 Ducats. This Command admitted of no Demurs, and therefore in the presence of the Gentleman that brought the Express, he gave Orders for his Family to set forwards towards *Madrid*, and dispatched a Gentleman to the Vice-Queen, to acquaint her with his Departure. He writ to the Prime Minister, assuring him, he would be at Court within Eight Days, and at the same time acquainted the Conspirators with what had happened, shewing them the absolute necessity there was of executing their Designs on the day appointed. Nor were the Conspirators backward; but some odd Accidents had like to have put off the Execution, if not broke all their Measures. *Almada* revealed the whole Design to a Man of Quality, that used always to rail violently against the Spaniards, but finding him timorous, with his drawn Sword made him swear Fidelity. Nevertheless, suspecting the Man, he kept his Eye upon him, and acquainting his Associates with his Jealousie, they resolved to delay their Enterprize; yet the next day perceiving all was quiet, they were ashamed to have been so easily terrified, and persisted in their first Resolution. Another thing fell out, which cast a great Damp on them; for on the Eve of the Day appointed to rise, *Vasconcellos* the Secretary was seen to cross the River, which they imagined he did upon some Intimation of the Design, and that he went to bring over some Forces from the other side; but he returning at Night, having only been at an Entertainment, all was calm again. It was late before the Conspirators parted. *George de Melo*, who lodged at a Kinsman's House out of the Town, thought he would take it ill, that he had not been acquainted with the Design, and therefore at his return home, gave him a full Account of the whole Matter. The other, tho' surprized, seemed to rejoyce at it, and thanked *Melo* for reposing such Confidence in him. They parted, and *Melo* being in his Chamber, began to blame himself for his rashness, in trusting a Man he was not well assured of. Walking in his Room full of these troubled Thoughts, he heard some noise, and looking out of his Window, could perceive his Kinsman ready to take Horse. He ran down in a rage with his Sword in his hand, and by force made him return to his Chamber, then taking the Keys of the House, secured him till the next day, at which time the other complied, and resolved to joyn with the rest of the Conspirators.

14. At length the Day came which was to decide whether

The Duke  
presses the  
Execution  
of the Con-  
spiracy.

the Duke of *Bragança* should deserve the Title of King, and Deliverer of his Country, or be called Rebel, and Enemy to the State. The Conspirators met early at the Houses of *Almeida* and the other great Men, where they were to Arm themselves. In all their Countenances appeared such Confidence, as gave assured hope of Victory; but what is most Remarkable, is, that among so many Persons as were concerned, and some of them Women, none should fail of their Word, or betray their Trust. All being armed, they repaired to the Palace by several ways, and most of them in Litters, the better to conceal their Number and Arms. They were divided into four Bodies, as had been agreed, and expected the Clock should strike Eight, which was the moment appointed to fall on. As soon as the Clock struck, *Pinto* gave the Signal agreed upon, by firing a Pistol, and then all Parties fell to their Work. *D. Michael de Almeida* fell upon the German Guard, which being surprized, for the most part unarmed, was overcome without much struggling. The Great Master of the Game, his Brother, and *D. Stephen da Cunha* charged the Spanish Company before the Palace, at the Place, called *The Fort*. Most of the Townsmen, who knew of the Design, were in this Action, and boldly fell in with Sword in Hand upon the Court of Guard. None signalized himself more than a Priest, who carrying a Crucifix in one hand, and a Sword in the other, amidst his loud Exhortations ceased not to Act beyond the most desperate of the Conspirators. None could stand before him; so that after some small Resistance, the Spanish Officer and his Soldiers were forced to Surrender themselves, and for safety of their Lives, to cry out with the rest, God save the Duke of *Bragança*, King of Portugal. *Pinto* having made his way into the Palace, headed those that were to Attack *Vasconcellos* his Apartment. At the foot of the Stairs they met *Francis Soares da Albergaria*, Judge of the Civil Causes, who seeing this Tumult, would have interposed his Authority to appease them; but hearing all cry God save the Duke of *Bragança*, he thinking it the Duty of his Office, cry'd, God save the King of Spain and Portugal. This cost him his Life, for one of the Conspirators shot him with a Pistol, thinking it meritorious to punish that Fidelity which now became Criminal. *Antony Correa*, first Clerk to the Secretary, ran out upon the noise, and was stabb'd by *D. Antony de Meneses*, yet he turned up his Eyes full of Revenge, and said, *What! dare you strike me?* All the Answer *Meneses* returned, was to stab him three or four times again, till he fell, yet he survived all these Wounds, to die some time after by the hand of the Hangman. Being quit of this Obstacle, the Conspirators pressed forward towards the Secretary's Chamber. *James Carlos Dalcin*, a Captain of Foot, was then with him, who

The Conspi-  
rators meet  
and execute  
their De-  
sign.

seeing so many armed Men, and supposing they fought the Life of *Vasconcellos*, tho' he owed no Obligation to that Minister, yet out of meer Generosity he endeavoured to keep the Door with his Sword, till the Secretary could make his escape; but being wounded in his Right Arm, so that he could not hold his Sword, and over-powered by the Multitude, he leaped out at a Window, and had the good Fortune to escape. Immediately the Conspirators broke into the Chamber, and not finding the Secretary, tho' they searched all corners, they threatened an Old Woman-Servant with present Death, if she did not discover him; and she, to save her Life, pointed to the Place where he was, being a close Cupboard or Closet, taken out of the thickness of the Wall, where they found him covered with Papers. Fear prevented his uttering one word, and *D. Roderick de Saa* gave him the first Wound, firing a Pistol at him; after which, several of the Conspirators having struck him, they cast the Body out at the Window, crying, *The Tyrant is dead, let Liberty live, and D. John, King of Portugal.*

15. The Multitude, who had flocked to the Palace, gave great shouts of Joy, seeing the Body cast down, and falling upon it, every one endeavoured to have a stroke at it. Such was the end of *Vasconcellos*, a Man of great Parts, and indefatigable, who had gathered vast Riches, part whereof was plundered in this hurly-burly. *Pinto* losing no time, hastened to joyn the Party that was to seize the Vice-Queen, and found they and all the rest were already successful. Those who were to enter that Princess's Apartment being come to the Door, and the enraged Multitude crying out, they would set fire to it, if not opened quickly, the Vice-Queen with her Ladies, and the Archbishop of *Braga*, appeared in her Chamber, believing her Presence would appease the Nobility, and cause the Commonalty to retire. Whereupon advancing some steps towards the chief of the Conspirators, she said, *I confess, Gentlemen, that the Secretary has justly incurred the hatred of the People, and your Indignation, by his Austerity and insolent manner of proceeding. His Death is a sufficient Revenge. Believe that what has hitherto passed, may be attributed to the hatred conceived against the Secretary, but if you proceed in this Uproar, you cannot avoid being reputed Rebels, and you will deprive me of means of excusing you to the King.* *D. Antony de Meneses* answered, That so many Persons of Worth were not met only to punish a Wretch, who ought to have died by the Hands of the Hangman; that they came to do Right to the Duke of *Braganza*, to whom the Crown of Right appertained. She would have replied, but *Almeida* fearing the Conspirators might cool, said, *Portugal* had no King but the Duke of *Braganza*; and then all the Conspirators cried out,

God

The Vice-Queen and others seized.

God save *D. John*, King of *Portugal*. The Vice-Queen seeing them past reclaiming, thought to find more Respect in the City, but as she offered to go down, *D. Charles de Noronha* prayed her to retire to her Chamber, and not expose her self to the fury of the incensed People. In a Rage, finding her self forcibly detained, she cried out, *Why, what can the People do to me?* To which *Noronha* rudely answered, *Nothing, Madam, but throw your Highness out at the Window.* The Archbishop of *Braga*, enraged at what *Noronha* said, snatched a Sword from a Soldier, and offered to run upon the Conspirators in Vindication of the Vice-Queen; but *D. Michael de Almeida* laid hold of and told him the danger of provoking those, who, but for him, had decreed his Death. This made him curb his Passion, in hopes of a more favourable Opportunity of Revenging himself upon *Noronha*. The rest of the Conspirators seized the *Spaniards* that were in the Palace, or City. The *Marquess de la Puebla* Steward to the Vice Queen, *D. James Cardenas*, Major-General; *D. Ferdinand de Castro*, Intendant of the Sea, the *Marquess de Baintetto*, an Italian, Master of the Horse to the Vice-Queen, and several Sea-Officers, were made Prisoners; which was done with as great ease, as if they had been apprehended by Order of the King of *Spain*. No Man stirred to defend them, and they were in no condition to do it, being most of them taken in Bed.

16. This done, *Antony de Saldanha* led the People to the Courts of Judicature, where he made an Harangue to them upon the present Happiness of *Portugal*, in being delivered from Tyranny, and restored to their Natural Prince. His words were received with general Applause, and all Proceedings for the future ordered to run in the Name of *D. John*, King of *Portugal*. In the mean while, *D. Gaston Coutinho* released all those out of Prison, who had been committed through the Severity of the *Spanish* Ministers; and they thus unexpectedly delivered, formed themselves into a Body, no less Formidable than that of the first Conspirators. Amidst this general Joy, *Pinto* and the other Principal Men were not free from Care. The *Spaniards* were still possessed of the Citadel, whence they might Canonade the City, and whilst it held out, the King of *Spain* had always an inlet at Command. Therefore thinking they had done nothing, till they were Masters of that Place, they went to the Vice-Queen, demanding of her an Order for the Governour to deliver it up to them. She rejected them with scorn; but *Almada* swearing, if she persisted, he would instantly Murder all the *Spaniards* that were taken; For fear of Sacrificing so many Persons of Quality, she signed the Order, believing the Governour knew his Duty too well, to obey an Order, he could not but be convinced, was extorted from

All Proceedings ordered to run in the Name of *D. John*, King of *Portugal*.

The Citadel taken from the *Spaniards*.

her.

her. It fell not out as expected, for the Spanish Governour, D. Lewis del Campo, a Man of no Resolution, seeing all the Conspirators in Arms before the Citadel, vowing they would put the Garrison to the Sword, unless they instantly surrendred, was glad to depart with so good a Pretence to hide his Cowardize. The Citadel being surrendred, and the Conspirators now secure on all sides, they immediately dispatched Mendoza, and the Great Master of the Game to carry the Happy News to the Duke of Braganza, and assure him there wanted nothing to compleat the People's Happiness but the Presence of their King. Yet was not his Presence equally desired by all Men. The Nobility looked upon his Exaltation with an envious Eye; The Gentry, who had no hand in the Conspiracy, stood dubious. Some said, they knew not whether he would justifie those proceedings. The Creatures of Spain were in a Consternation, and only took care to save themselves from the Fury of the Multitude. The Duke's Friends, knowing his Intention, prosecuted their Business. They met at the Palace to settle Affairs till the Arrival of the King, and unanimously chose the Archbishop of Lisbon President of the Council, and Lieutenant of the Kingdom. He refused at first, saying, there was more need of a General, than a Person of his Character, but soon complied, upon Condition, the Archbishop of Braga should be joyned in Commission with him. This subtil Prelate's Design was, to make the other as guilty, in respect of the Spaniards, as himself, if he accepted; or if he refused, to render him odious to the new King and People. He of Braga perceived the Snare, but being wholly devoted to the Spaniards, positively refused to have any share in the Government. Thus the whole Power fell into the Hands of the Archbishop of Lisbon. D. Michael de Almeida, Peter de Mendoza, and D. Antony de Almada, were appointed his Counsellors.

Three Spanish Galeons seized in the River of Lisbon.

17. The Governour's first care was to make himself Master of three great Spanish Galeons that were in the Port. Several Barks were fitted out, and manned with the choice Youth of the City, each endeavouring to signalize himself, but they met with no Opposition, the Officers, and most of the Soldiers having been secured ashore, at such time as the Conspiracy took effect. Expresses were sent the same Evening to all the Provinces to excite the People to give Thanks to Heaven for the Recovery of their Liberty, and Commanding all Magistrates to cause the Duke of Braganza to be proclaimed King, and to secure all the Spaniards. The next care was to dispose all things for the Reception of the new King. The Archbishop acquainted the Vice-Queen she must withdraw, to make room for the King and his Family. He

caused

caused an Apartment to be furnished for her in the Royal Mansion-House of Xabregas, which is in the Suburbs. The Vice-Queen, upon the first Order, left the Palace, but with a Countenance full of Indignation, and without speaking one Word. Only a few of her own Servants, and the Archbishop of Braga, though with the hazard of his Life, attended her. Still the Duke of Braganza was in suspense, not knowing how Affairs had succeeded at Lisbon, till Melo and Mendoza arriv'd at Villaviciosa. By the joy of their Countenances, and their casting themselves at his Feet, more then by their Words, he understood he was King of Portugal. He conducted them to the Dutches, to relate what had happened, and they gave her the Title of Majesty; whereas the former Kings and Queens of Portugal had only the Stile of Highness given them. That same Day D. John The Duke was proclaimed King in all the Towns that depended of him. Alfonso de Melo did the same at Elvas. The new King set forward for Lisbon with the same Equipage he had provided to go to the Court of Spain. He was attended by the Marquess de Ferreira his Kinsman, the Count de Vimioso, and many other Persons of Quality. The Queen was left at Villaviciosa to confirm that Province in its Obedience, by her Presence. All the ways as he went were thronged with People, that ran to see him, pouring Blessings on him, and Curses on the Spaniards. All the Nobility, Officers of the Crown, and principal Magistrates went out to receive him far from Lisbon, where he made his Entry amidst the joyful Acclamations of the Multitude, on the 6th. of December. All that Night the City was enlighthned with Bonfires and Illuminations, which gave occasion to a Spaniard to say, That he was a happy Prince, since all that Kingdom had cost him but one Bonfire.

18. The whole Kingdom followed the Example of Lisbon, as if there had been a particular Conspiracy in every Town. Expresses arriv'd at Court daily, bringing the King Advice of Towns, and whole Provinces that had expelled the Spaniards, and submitted themselves to him. The Governours of other strong Places had no more Courage than he of Lisbon, most of them shamefully marching away without so much as firing a Musket. Thus within Fifteen Days the Spaniards were drove out of all the Kingdom of Portugal. Only D. Ferdinand de la Cueva, Governour of the Castle of St. Julian, at the Mouth of the River Tagus, appeared resolutely set down to keep that Fortrefs for the King his Master. The Garrison consisted only of Spaniards, commanded by brave Officers, who made a vigorous Resistance at the first Approaches of the Portuguese. There was no remedy but to besiege the Place in form. Heavy Cannon was brought

Port St. Julian, at the Mouth of the River, taken.

1000



from *Lisbon*, the Trenches opened, and carried on to the Counterscarp, notwithstanding the continual Fire, and frequent Sallies of the besieged. But Treaty being the surest, and often the shortest way, the King made such Advantageous Proposals to the Governour as he had not the Power to withstand. The great Summs the King offered him, together with a Commendary of the Order of *Christ*, prevailed with him. The Treaty was concluded, and the Fortress surrendered, upon pretence he had not a sufficient Garrison to defend it, notwithstanding the principal Officers refused to sign the Capitulation, and principally *D. Roderick Chalon*, a young Gentleman of *Andaluzia*, of great Courage, and Colonel of a Regiment, who offered to hold out three Weeks longer to expect the Succours from *Spain*, which they heard to be at Sea, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Maqueda*. The King thought it not fit longer to delay his Coronation, that his Royal Authority might become the more Sacred, and his Person more respected among the People. This Ceremony was performed on the 15th. of *December*, with all possible Magnificence. The Duke of *Aveiro*, the Marquess of *Villareal*, the Duke of *Caminha* his Son, the Count de *Monsanto*, and all the Nobility of the Kingdom assisted at the Ceremony. The Archbishop of *Lisbon*, at the head of his Clergy, and attended by several other Bishops, received the King at the Gate of the Cathedral, and there all the Three Estates took the Oath of Fidelity to him. A few Days after the Queen came to *Lisbon*, having been received at a distance by the whole Court, and the King himself.

How the  
News of his  
revolt was  
received in  
Spain.

19. The News of this Revolution being soon carried to the Court of *Spain*, struck to the Heart of the Prime-Minister; yet making the best of that Disaster, he accosted the King with a Countenance chearful, and full of Assurance, saying, Sir, I bring you happy News, your Majesty has just now gained a great Dutchy, and a considerable parcel of Lands. The King, in a surprize, asked in what manner. Sir, replied the Minister, the Duke of *Braganza* is run mad, he has suffered himself to be deluded by the Multitude, who have proclaimed him King of Portugal, now all his Lands are forfeited to the Crown, and that Family being extirpated, your Majesty will, for the future, possess that Kingdom in Peace. The King was not much taken with these plausible Words, and only told him, That Care must be taken to suppress a Rebellion that might prove of dangerous Consequence.

Anno

Anno, 1641.

1. THE new King of Portugal omitted nothing that might conduce to his Establishment on the Throne. After his Arrival at *Lisbon*, he presently appointed Governours for all the Frontier Towns, choosing for that purpose Men of Fidelity, Valour and Experience, who immediately went away to their Posts with what Forces they could gather, and used all possible diligence to put the places committed to them into a posture of defence. Commissions were given out to raise Forces, and immediately after the Coronation, the Cortes or Parliament was Summon'd: They met the 28th of *January*, and by a solemn Act acknowledg'd King *John* to be their lawful and rightful Sovereign, as descended by the Princess his Mother from Prince *Edward*, Son to King *Emanuel*. In this Assembly of the three Estates, the King declared, that for the support of his Household, he would content himself with his own private Revenue, and would lay apart all those of the Crown to supply the necessities of the Kingdom, and that the people might relish the sweetness of his Government, he abolished all new Taxes imposed by the *Spaniards*. The most considerable employments he gave to such of the Conspirators as had best deserved, yet, *Pinto* had no share in this promotion, but nevertheless, had so great an influence over the King, that though he had not the Title of a Minister of State, nothing of moment was done without him. Having settled all things at home, the King next bent his thoughts towards Foreign Princes. He dispatched Ambassadors to all the Courts of *Europe*, to move them to own him, and at the same time to gain Allies and raise new Enemies to the House of *Austria*. A League offensive and defensive was concluded with the *Hollanders* and *Catalonians*, both at that time in Rebellion against the King of *Spain*. That Monarch not being in a condition to use immediate force for the reducing of *Portugal*, still hop'd he might by fair means or threats work upon the new King, and to that end writ a Letter to him in the Stile of a Sovereign, but in most affectionate terms. The Answer was such as no less touched the King of *Spain*, than the News of the Revolt had

New Governours placed in the Frontiers.

Ambassadors sent to all the Courts of Europe.

D d

had



had done before. He had his hands full in *Flanders*, *Italy*, *Roussillon* and *Catalonia*, and yet rather than seem to abate any thing of his Royal Grandeur, resolved to hazard all, rather than suffer this Affront to pass unrevenge'd. The Duke of *Medina Sidonia* was order'd to raise Forces in *Andaluzia*, the Count de *Monterey* in the two *Castiles*, and the Marquess de *Valparaiso* in *Leon* and *Galicia*. And because a Fleet was the most absolutely necessary, the Duke de *Maqueda* Admiral of the Ocean, had Orders to gather all the Vessels that were fit for Service, and to infest the Coast, whilst the others acted by Land.

The Bishp of  
Lamego, going  
Ambassador  
to  
Rome, re-  
turn by the  
Spaniards.

2. Of all the Ambassadors sent by the King of Portugal to the Christian Princes, only the Bishop of *Lamego* designed for *Rome*, miscarried: The Master of the Vessel that carried him, put into *Cartagena*, a Port of the Kingdom of *Murcia*, and delivered him up to the *Spaniards*, for which Treachery, he received a Reward of 2000 Crowns. That Prelate's Life was in great danger, for he had certainly been Executed but that the King was put in mind that the Marquess de *la Puebla*, and five or six other persons of Quality were Prisoners at *Lisbon*. This Consideration mov'd him to order the Bishop should be civilly Treated, least, the Prisoners at *Lisbon* might suffer for his sake. Fortune, which the Year before had so highly favoured the new King, still seemed wholly devoted to his Party. All the Forts on the Coast of *Africk*, (except *Ceuta*, and *Tangier*, which at last afterwards submitted) upon the first News of what had hapned in *Portugal*, withdrew themselves from their Obedience to the *Spaniards*, and sent to acknowledge King *John*, and assure him of their utmost Fidelity. Nor was this all, for the Vice-Roy of *Brasil*, having Intelligence of the Revolution, sent his Son at *Lisbon* to take the Oath of Allegiance to the new King in his Name, and in the Name of all the Inhabitants of that Coast, who testified an extraordinary satisfaction for that Change. The Islands *Azores*, resolv'd not to be the last that declared for the King, and to give him some proof of their Fidelity, at the very beginning of his Reign, they seized 10 Ships coming from *India*, that knew nothing of the Revolution, and sent them to *Lisbon*, after having taken off all the Soldiers that were aboard them. In May also this Year, a *Cornet* dis-

ch:

ched Express from *India*, by *John de Sylva Tello*, the Vice-Roy, brought the News that the King had been Proclaimed in all his Dominions in *Asia*, and as far as King *John* the Coast of *China*. The *Hollanders* at this time were Proclaim'd in *India*, very powerful in those Seas, and being at War with *Spain*, did all the harm they could in the Portuguese Colonies and Factories, endeavouring with the assistance of the *Indians*, utterly to extirpate all others, that they might themselves ingross that Trade. To this purpose, they omitted not any manner of Villainies that might conduce to their advantage, and particularly though they had afterwards certain Intelligence of King *John's* being Proclaimed, and being in amity with their State, yet they ceased not to prosecute their ends in those remote parts, as shall appear in the Sequel of this History. However, before the Revolution reached *India*, they had got footing in *Ceylon*, laid Siege to *Malaca*, which they took, and had their designs against *Goa*, and all other the Portuguese Conquests in *India*. In *America* also they were possessed of *Pernambuco*, *Paraiba*, *Rio Grande*, *Ciara*, the Islands of *Tamaraca* and *Ferdinand de Noronha*, and towards the South of *Porto Calvo* and *Segeripe*, all places appertaining to the Crown of *Portugal*. But after they had information of the Truce concluded betwixt *Portugal* and *Holland*, they perfidiously made themselves Masters of *Angola*, and the Island of *St. Thomas* in *Africk*, of *Maranhao* in *America*, and of *Malaca* in *India*. To compleat this Prince's Happiness, though before there was a mortal Enmity betwixt the Portuguese and the *Hollanders*, yet now on the 12th of June a Cessation of Arms betwixt the two Nations was agreed upon and concluded, at the *Hague*, for 10 Years, and soon after the States sent an Ambassador to Congratulate the King, upon his Accession to the Crown. The *Portugal* Ambassador returning, brought with him Two Regiments of Horse, and considerable supplies of Arms and Ammunition. The *Catalonians* also sent the Lord *Salu* on the same Account, and to Ratifie the League before concluded by the Portuguese Ambassador.

A Cessation  
of Arms  
with the  
Dutch.

3. All new erected Monarchyes are subject to a thousand accidents, and unless protected by some Heavenly power, can scarce continue long in their full splendor. The King of *Portugal* was raised to the Throne of his Ancestors, in a manner almost miraculous, he

A Conspiracy  
against  
the New  
King, disco-  
vered.

D d 2

mounted

mounted without any opposition, 600 Towns, and 15000 Villages, submitted to him in less than eight days, and all the people of the Kingdom declared they were never happy till his Accession to the Crown. Nevertheless, no sooner was he seated on the Throne, but he found many Enemies, and among them some of those who had helped to raise him to that Grandeur. About 100 of the Greatest Men in his Kingdom, Conspired to destroy him, and if Heaven had not protected him, there had been but a short space betwixt the Birth and Grave of his Sovereignty. The Arch-Bishop of *Braga*, the chief Inquisitor, two other Bishops, the Marquess of *Villareal*, and his Son, the Duke of *Caminha*, were the principal Conspirators: *D. Lorenzo, Pidez de Carvalho*, the Count of *Armamar*, and *D. Augustin Manuel*, were brought in as Associates, the Jews of *Lisbon* were concerned in the Design, and there was a party in the Fleet then lying at *Belem*, one Man being aboard every Ship, in order to Fire it upon a signal given. *Laurence Pidez de Carvalho*, was to break into the Queens Apartment with 100 Men, to secure all there. It was given in Charge to the Jews, to fire the City in 8 or 10 places, that the people being busied there, they might have time to force the Palace. The Inquisitor General sent Letters into *Spain* to acquaint the King with the Design, that the Forces on the Frontiers might be ready to March to *Lisbon*, upon the first Advice, and the Duke of *Maqueda* to enter the Port with the Fleet of *Spain*. Concerning the manner of discovering this Conspiracy, there are three several Accounts. One is, that the Letters being directed to the Marquess of *Ayamonte*, who was Governour of the *Spanish* Frontiers, he broke them open, and sent them back to the King of *Portugal*, when he had seen the Contents, which is most probable; he being afterwards Convicted of High-Treason, and put to Death, at *Segovia*, for Conspiring against his King, with the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, and the new King of *Portugal*. Another says, that a Spy employed by the King to go often into *Spain*, meeting a *Bohemian* who was employed to carry the said Letters, and suspecting something by his Discourse, made him Drunk, then Stabbing him, and having taken the Packer, brought it to the King; but this seems not to have any thing of probability, or consequently of Truth. The third is, that *D. Alfonso de Portugal*,

*Portugal*, Count of *Vimioso*, being deprived of his Command on the Frontiers, and grievously resenting that Affront; the Arch-Bishop of *Braga*, conceived the desire of revenge would easily engage him to enter into the Conspiracy. He therefore discover'd the whole design to him, and the Count seeming to embrace the proposition acquainted the King with the whole matter. The Conspiracy being discovered, the King so ordered the Affair, that most of those persons therein concerned were apprehended, without the least noise or confusion. The 5th of *August*, at 11 at Night, was the time appointed, for putting the Conspiracy in execution. That very morning the King caused all the Troops that Quartered in the neighbouring Villages, to march into *Lisbon*, upon pretence of a review to be taken in the large place before the Palace. He with his own hand, gave several Billets Sealed up, to persons he could confide in, with positive Orders to every one, not to open his Billet till 12 at Noon, and then punctually to obey what it directed. Then having sent for the Arch-Bishop of *Braga*, and Marquess of *Villareal* under colour of communicating some important Affairs, they were both seized in the King's Lodgings about Noon, without any noise: At the same time a Captain of the Guards publicly apprehended the Duke of *Caminha*, in the place before the Palace. Those who had received the Billets having opened them, found each an Order to take up one of the Conspirators, and secure him in such a Prison, till further order, which was so punctually executed, that 47 were taken without any difficulty, none endeavouring to escape. When the News of the Conspiracy was noised abroad, it is not possible to express the rage conceived by the multitude against those that were the fomenters of it, every Man desiring to be the Executioner of them, as is the nature of the Rabble, wherever they conceive a hatred. The Wreck, forced a Confession from many of the Criminals, and the Arch-Bishop, the Inquisitor, the Marquess of *Villareal*, and Duke of *Caminha*, to save themselves that misery, owned the whole Design. The Marquess, the Duke, the Count of *Armamar*, and *D. Augustin Manuel*, were sentenced to be Beheaded. The Arch-Bishop and Inquisitor, because of their Character, the King Condemned to perpetual Imprisonment: All the others were adjudged to be Drawn, Hanged,

The principal Conspirators seized and punished.

Hanged, and Quartered, and they all suffered according to the Sentence pronounced against them, upon the 29th day of *August*. It is remarkable, that when the Marquess on the Scaffold had spoke to the people, they cried out furiously, *let him die, let him die*: To which the Marquess answered; *So the Jews cried out against Christ*.

Several  
Military  
expeditions.

4. These Executions having secured the Prince, he bent all his Thoughts upon War, and having to that purpose obtained of the King of *France* five Colonels of Horse, three of Foot, and two of Dragoons, he ordered them to be ready to march to the Frontiers, and raised new Troops to reinforce his Army that lay then before *Badajoz*: However, they were otherwise employed, for the Council not thinking it expedient to wait an Army before a Town that did them no harm, those Troops that besieged it were recalled to serve elsewhere. The first Act of Hostility I meet with betwixt the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*, was in the Province of *Alentejo*, near *Elvas*. A Party of *Spaniards* having broke into that Province, exercised all manner of Cruelties to terrifie the People, sparing neither Age nor Sex, nor even the Churches. *D. Febn de Acofta*, who Commanded at *Elvas*, having notice hereof, sent out five Companies of Foot under the Command of *Gaspar de Sequeira Manuel*; These were followed by 400 Men under the Conduct of *Luis Mendez de Vasconcellos*: These being joy-ned by certain Troops three Leagues from *Campo Major*, marched towards the *Spaniards*, who still continued their Ravages, and Charging them, killed 200 upon the spot, pursuing the rest to the Gates of *Badajoz*, where they took shelter. This fortunate beginning was followed by like consequences; 600 *Spaniards* advancing into the Province of *Alentejo* to surprize the Town of *Montalvao*; *Mascarenhas*, Collonel of a *Portuguese* Regiment, with only four Companies Attacked them before they came to the Town, and with such good success, that having killed 18 or 20, the rest retired to the Pass on a small River, and he fearing some ambush, because Night drew on, pursued no further. In the morning perceiving they were quite gone, he followed them as far as the Town of *Ferreira* in *Castile*, which he Plundered and Burnt without any opposition, though it might easily have been defended against a greater power. Beyond the Mountains, the *Spaniards* had sack-

ed

ed and Burnt four open Towns, to revenge which, *Luis Gomez de Figueiredo* passed over into *Galicia*, took the Town of *Monterey*, and having pillaged reduced it to Ashes. To requite this, another party of *Spaniards* fell into the Countrey about *Braganza*, but the Inhabitants and Soldiers who Quartered thereabouts assembling, cut most of them in pieces, and then piercing into *Castile*, burnt seven Villages, and the Town of *Geronda*, of which, they left nothing standing but the Walls: At the same time, *Luis Gomez de Figueiredo* with 1500 Foot and 300 Horse fell upon the Marquess of *Tarrasona*, who marched towards *Valverde* with 2000 of the former, and 200 of the latter, and after a Fight, which lasted about four hours, obtained the Victory, which had been greater but that Night coming on hindred the pursuit.

5. Daily Action more and more incensed the two Nations, and an implacable hatred had taken possession of their hearts, so that the Frontiers were never free from slaughter and Rapine. *D. Gaston Coutinho* the *Portuguese* General, being informed that 6000 *Spanish* Foot, and 800 Horse had fortified themselves in two Villages, one whereof was in *Galicia*, the other in *Portugal*, he marched with 30 Horse to view them, and finding their Works weak enough to be overthrown, if Attacked with vigour, ordered his Foot to advance: A Party of the Enemies Horse that advanced, was easily Repulsed, which causing some Consternation in the main Body, gave time to plant two pieces of Canon against them. These two pieces having played some time, *D. Gaston* who had made four Battalions of his Foot courageously assaulted the Works in as many places: The Soldiers being as forward in the pursuit of Honour as their Officers, nothing could withstand them: They forced the Entrenchments, took four redoubts, entered the place and took all the Baggage, but not contenting themselves with this Victory and the gaining of 11 Colours, they burnt all the Villages for two Leagues about. Above 400 *Spaniards* were killed upon the place, 14 Officers, and 70 Soldiers were taken. Nor was this all, the *Portuguese* General making his advantage of the Enemies Consternation, the next day marched into *Galicia*, and pursuing those that having escaped, had fortified themselves in another Village, forced them again to retire, burnt nine Houses, and then returned home

Other War  
like ex-  
ploits.

D d 4

with



with Honour, and his Soldiers enriched with Plunder. In the mean while, *Vasco de Azevedo Coutinho*, and *Emanuel de Sousa de Abreu*, being continually infested by the Excursions of the *Spaniards*, gathered all the Forces they could and marched to *Lobos*, in the Castle of which place, the *Spaniards* always had a safe retreat, after committing their ordinary Ravages. This Castle they assaulted and carried with the loss only of 22 Men, which done, they burnt 700 Houses, as well in the Town of *Lobos*, as in the neighbouring Villages. This was not yet the last stroke of ill fortune the *Spaniards* felt. *Martin Alfonso de Mello*, understanding a great body of them was marched from *Badajoz* to Attack *Olivenza*, a Town seated on the River *Guadiana*, which parts *Spain* and *Portugal*, assembled all the Forces he could to relieve that place. Being on his March, an Express came to him from the Governour, giving an account that they had assaulted the Town in two places, but met with such a vigorous opposition that they were forced to retire with the loss of 200 Men; nevertheless, he desired some succour, lest they should return. They accordingly returned, hoping to surprize the place, feigning themselves a *Portuguese* Convoy with Provisions, yet met they with no better success, being again repulsed with the loss of 140 Men. *Martin Alphonso*, still hoped to be able to overtake them in their return, but they taking another way than was given out, he missed of them, and therefore dismissed his Troops to their several Garrisons.

It was a generally received Opinion throughout all *Spain*, though the Author of it was not known, that the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, held secret Correspondence with the King of *Portugal*, and favoured his Cause. The ground of this Suspicion was, that King *John* had to his Queen the Sister of that Duke, and upon this Jealousie, it is thought the King of *Spain* talking one Day with the Count Duke de *Olivarez*, complained to him, That he had three or four times observed the Family of *Guzman* was fatal to his Grandeur: The Count Duke who was himself of that Family, immediately dispatched an Express to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, summoning him to appear at Court with all possible Speed. He obeyed, and being come to *Madrid*, he was perswaded, that to clear himself of the imputation of Disloyalty

The Duke of Medina Sidonia, being suspected in Spain, Challenges King John.

cast upon him, he should publish a *Manifesto*, containing a Challenge to the new King of *Portugal*. Others are of Opinion, that the Duke knowing himself to be in some measure guilty, published the said Declaration and Challenge of his own accord, to blot out the ill Opinion conceived of him: Whatsoever the grounds were that moved him to it; Certain it is, he published and dispersed throughout *Spain* and *Portugal*, a Cartell in Vindication of his Honour, charging the new King with the Crime of Rebellion; and challenging him to single Combat with all the Formalities used in those Cases. This Cartel was dated at *Toledo*, the 29th. day of September, 1641. and is too long to trouble the Reader with in this place; nor is it significant, since as it happens to most things of that Nature, no Notice was taken of it.

7. The Bishop of *Lamego* betrayed to the *Spaniards*, as has been said above, being now exchanged for certain *Spaniards* of Quality; continued his Journey to *Rome* on his Embassy to his Holiness. Upon his Arrival, the *Spanish* Ambassador protested, that he would immediately return to *Spain*, in case the Pope received him as Ambassador from *Portugal*. Hereupon the Pope to prevent Disorders that might happen, ordered he should come to Town by Night, but suffered him to be visited as an Ambassador. He of *France* sent his Coach to fetch him from *Civita Vecchia*, with a Guard of all the *Portuguese* and *Catalonians* that were then at *Rome*. Being come thither, he took up his Lodging at the *French* Ambassadors, who received him at his Door with all possible marks of Respect: We shall see what became of this Embassy in its proper place. On the 27th. of September, arrived at *Lisbon* a Fleet of 18 Sail from *Angola*, richly laden; two days after came in another from *Rio de Janeiro* of no less value in sundry sorts of Commodities.

The Portuguese Ambassador at Rome.

Anno, 1642.

THE Island *Terzera* was the only Place which had refused to submit to the new King of *Portugal*, the Governour thereof proving more faithful then the rest to the King of *Spain*. He began to want Provisions and Ammu-

The Island Terzera reduced.



Ammunition, which being known in Spain, two Ships were sent to him laden with all Necessaries for his Relief. These Vessels were taken by the Ships of Portugal, which lay about this Island, on purpose to intercept all Succours. D. Alvaro de Viveiro who commanded in the Fort, being now reduced to great streights, and seeing no likelihood of being reliev'd; capitulated, and march'd out with 263 Men, two pieces of Canon, and all other marks of Honour, leaving behind 800 sick Men, who according to Articles were to be taken care of, and sent away as soon as well. D. Emanuel de Souza Pacheco was sent to govern that Island. The Portuguese Fleet consisting of 13 Sail, sailed together with the Dutch, designing to intercept the Spanish Galeons; but the Dutch treacherously forsook the Portuguese, who in a Storm lost their Admiral and Vice-Admiral, the other Ships being much shatter'd.

Foreign  
Alliances  
concluded.

2. Soon after the Surrender of the Island, News was brought that the Portuguese Ambassador in Sweden, had concluded an Alliance betwixt the two Crowns, which the King for the satisfaction of his People, caused to be proclaimed by his Heralds. To confirm which, in a few Days there arrived at Lisbon four Swedish Ships laden with Naval and Warlike Stores, sent by the Ambassador; and Letters were brought from the Queen of Sweden, in which she gave their Portuguese Majesties assurances of her firm Adherence to them in all that should be for their Service. Tristram de Medoza had in like manner established a firm Friendship and Alliance with the Hollanders. However, the Dutch Fleet that was upon the Coast of Goa in India, took some Portuguese Ships commanded by Sancho Faria de Silva, who was kill'd in the Action with 50 of his Men. At the same time they took several places in Brasil, driving out the Portuguese. D. George Mascarenhas, who was Vice-Roy there, sent Advice to the King, and he immediately writ to Francis de Andrade Leitao his Ambassador in England, ordering him instantly to go over to complain to the States of the taking of those Places. The States considering how incapable the King was at that time to do himself right, made small account of his Ambassador demanding restitution. Goa was at the same time Besieg'd by the same Fleet, which not being strong enough for such an Enterprize, begged the assistance of a Neighbouring King:

King: That Prince blocked it up by Land, but as soon as he understood of the Revolution of Portugal, he rais'd the Siege, joyn'd in League with the Portuguese Vice-Roy, and by this Means, the Dutch Fleet was forc'd to retire.

3. All this while the Frontiers of Castile and Portugal were full of Soldiers: The Garrison of Campo Mayor of- gress of the ten broke into Estremadura. Parties of Horse from Ba- War in the dajoz appeared frequently at the Gates of Elvas, and the Province of Governor of this last Place, as often drove Cartel from a- Alentejo. bout Badajoz. Though these inroads were not very considerable, yet they were not performed without Bloodshed; Time heightning the hatred betwixt the two Nations, both Parties encreased their Troops. The King of Portugal erected six places of Arms on his Frontiers, and put 5000 Men into each of them. The Spaniards assembled on all sides, and four or five Armies appeared in as many places to oppose and infest the Portuguese. Hereupon daily Action ensued, sometimes the one, and sometimes the other being superior: Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses Governor of the Province of Beira, was one of the first that gained upon the Spaniards. He made an inroad into Old Castile, where he took and burnt the Towns of S. Martin and Elvas, with the Castle of the latter, which commands all the Territory of Gata. Having made himself Master of Valverde, and finding it conveniently seated to annoy the Enemy, he left in it a Garrison well provided. A small Body of 2500 Spaniards endeavouring to give a check to his Proceedings, was put into Disorder at the first Charge; and the Portuguese using their Advantage, cut in pieces most of their Enemies. Martin Alphonso de Melo Governor of Elvas, was no less successful about the same time. For having received intelligence that a party of 300 Spanish Horse ravaged the Country betwixt Badajoz and Valverde; he sent out a good Body of Horse, with 150 Musqueteers, ordering them to attack the Enemy wherever they met them. This was so courageously performed, that most of the Spanish Horse being slain upon the place, the rest quitted their Horses to save themselves in a small Wood hard by; so that 274 Horses became a prey to the Victors. These were yet but small Advantages; D. Francis de Melo General of the Portuguese Horse in the Province of Alentejo, entred Estremadura, where finding no Forces to op-  
pose

Ammunition, which being known in Spain, two Ships were sent to him loaden with all Necessaries for his Relief. These Vessels were taken by the Ships of Portugal, which lay about this Island, on purpose to intercept all Succours. D. Alvaro de Viveiro who commanded in the Fort, being now reduced to great streights, and seeing no likelihood of being reliev'd; capitulated, and march'd out with 263 Men, two pieces of Canon, and all other marks of Honour, leaving behind 800 sick Men, who according to Articles were to be taken care of, and sent away as soon as well. D. Emanuel de Souza Pacheco was sent to govern that Island. The Portuguese Fleet consisting of 13 Sail, sailed together with the Dutch, designing to intercept the Spanish Galeons; but the Dutch treacherously forsook the Portuguese, who in a Storm lost their Admiral and Vice-Admiral, the other Ships being much shatter'd.

Foreign  
Alliances  
concluded.

2. Soon after the Surrender of the Island, News was brought that the Portuguese Ambassador in Sweden, had concluded an Alliance betwixt the two Crowns, which the King for the satisfaction of his People, caused to be proclaimed by his Heralds. To confirm which, in a few Days there arrived at Lisbon four Swedish Ships laden with Naval and Warlike Stores, sent by the Ambassador; and Letters were brought from the Queen of Sweden, in which she gave their Portuguese Majesties assurances of her firm Adherence to them in all that should be for their Service. Tristan de Medoza had in like manner established a firm Friendship and Alliance with the Hollanders. However, the Dutch Fleet that was upon the Coast of Goa in India, took some Portuguese Ships commanded by Sancho Faria de Silva, who was kill'd in the Action with 50 of his Men. At the same time they took several places in Brasil, driving out the Portuguese. D. George Mascarenhas, who was Vice-Roy there, sent Advice to the King, and he immediately writ to Francisco de Andrade Leitan his Ambassador in England, ordering him instantly to go over to complain to the States of the taking of those Places. The States considering how incapable the King was at that time to do himself right, made small account of his Ambassador demanding restitution. Goa was at the same time Besieg'd by the same Fleet, which not being strong enough for such an Enterprize, begged the assistance of a Neighbouring King.

King: That Prince blocked it up by Land, but as soon as he understood of the Revelation of Portugal, he rais'd the Siege, joyn'd in League with the Portuguese Vice-Roy, and by this Means, the Dutch Fleet was forc'd to retire.

3. All this while the Frontiers of Castile and Portugal were full of Soldiers: The Garrison of Campo Mayor of- were broke into Estremadura. Parties of Horse from Ba- dajoz appeared frequently at the Gates of Elvas, and the Governor of this last Place, as often drove Cartel from a- about Badajoz. Though these inroads were not very considerable, yet they were not performed without Bloodshed; Time heightning the hatred betwixt the two Nations, both Parties encreased their Troops. The King of Portugal erected six places of Arms on his Frontiers, and put 5000 Men into each of them. The Spaniards assembled on all sides, and four or five Armies appeared in as many places to oppose and infest the Portuguese. Hereupon daily Action ensued, sometimes the one, and sometimes the other being superior: Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses Governor of the Province of Beira, was one of the first that gained upon the Spaniards. He made an inroad into Old Castile, where he took and burnt the Towns of S. Martin and Elgas, with the Castle of the latter, which commands all the Territory of Gata. Having made himself Master of Valverde, and finding it conveniently seated to annoy the Enemy, he left in it a Garrison well provided. A small Body of 2500 Spaniards endeavouring to give a check to his Proceedings, was put into Disorder at the first Charge; and the Portuguese using their Advantage, cut in pieces most of their Enemies. Martin Alphonso de Melo Governor of Elvas, was no less successful about the same time. For having received intelligence that a party of 300 Spanish Horse ravaged the Country betwixt Badajoz and Valverde; he sent out a good Body of Horse, with 150 Musqueteers, ordering them to attack the Enemy wherever they met them. This was so courageously performed, that most of the Spanish Horse being slain upon the place, the rest quitted their Horses to save themselves in a small Wood hard by; so that 274 Horses became a prey to the Victors. These were yet but small Advantages; D. Francis de Melo General of the Portuguese Horse in the Province of Alentejo, entred Estremadura, where finding no Forces to op- pose

pose him, he took *Aroses*, *Villar del Rey*, *Codiffera* and *Ancinasola*; defeated some Troops that adventured to oppose him, took a vast Booty, and so many Prisoners, that the King of Portugal ordered many of the least considerable to be set at Liberty. D. John de Garay Governor of *Badajoz*, sent out 800 Horse, and 2000 Foot, with design to surprize *Olivenza*, but D. Francis de Melo charging them by the way, put them to flight with the slaughter of 300 Men.

Other Military Assistance.

4. These continual Incurfions kept the Spaniards always upon their Guard, and made them think of securing themselves. To this purpose they began to fortifie *Aldea del Obispo*; but Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses being unwilling to suffer that Work to go forward, marched with 500 Foot, and four Squadrons of Horse, attacked the Place, and carryed it, though obstinately defended: 140 Spaniards were kill'd in the Assault, and 116 taken, and all the Works, as well Old as New, were levelled with the Ground. Then passing on, he did the same to the Town of *Castillejo*, which was no less offensive to the Portuguese Frontiers, then the other would have been. The King to shew he was no less formidable by Sea then by Land, even in the first rise of his Greatness; fitted out 13 great Men of War, under the command of Antony Tellez, ordering him to seek out the Spanish Fleet, or in case he found it not, to attempt some Sea-port Town; the Spaniards, though weak, omitted not to make their utmost efforts, and infest their Enemies Country, as much as in them was. *Chelas*, a considerable Town of *Estremadura*, and seated near the Frontiers of *Alentejo*, did often send out Parties, which did incredible damage in that part of the plain Country subject to Portugal. Francis de Melo who had the charge of those Frontiers incensed hereat, marched with all the Force he could gather, with a resolution to carry that Place; nor did he fail of his Design altogether, for meeting a Squadron of Spanish Horse he cut them off, and then applying his Scaling Ladders, after a Dispute of five Hours, entred the Town. His Men immediately fell to the Plunder, which lost them the opportunity they might have had of entring the Castle with the flying Enemy. Francis de Melo seeing nothing more could be done then plundering the Town, returned leaving the

Streets

Streets full of dead Bodies, and having lost but 16 of his own Men.

5. Whilst the War continued in this manner betwixt these two Neighbouring Nations, those of a greater distance sought the Friendship of the new King of Portugal. That King near *Goa* whom we mentioned before, was the first that moved for this Friendship, when he rais'd his Siege from before the City: The King of Morocco was not long behind him, for he understanding how fast the Crown was settl'd by the unanimous approbation of the whole Kingdom, and so many Alliances with most Princes of Europe, except those that were devoted to Spain, sent now into Portugal, to desire leave of the King that an Ambassador might come to put an end to the Animosities which had been produced by the violent procedure of the Spaniards.

6. The ill Fortune of the Spaniards raised in them an implacable desire of Revenge. They assembled 1500 Foot, and 300 Horse, to take a Fort that Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses had built in *Val de Mula*, on the Frontiers of the Province *Tralos Montes*, and march'd till they came in sight of the Fort; there discovering Portuguese Horse, and 400 Foot, they halted to consult what was to be done. D. Sancho Manuel, the Portuguese Camp-Master having obtained Leave of Ferdinand Tellez; though so unequal in Number, charged the Enemy so vigorously, that at the first shock the Foot fled, and the Horse seeing the Rout, durst not come up to support them. Having with such ease overthrown those Troops, the Portuguese General resolved to make use of the Advantage, being informed they were retired to *Fuentes in Castile*, where some Fortifications were begun to be thrown up. Being too weak to attack them there, he stayed till 500 Foot more had joyn'd him, and then advanced; he planted some Canon against the Place, and began to batter it, but seeing no effect, thought of sending for more Troops to carry it by *Escalade*, when he was told the Spaniards assembled in great Numbers from all parts to cut off his Retreat. His danger drew D. Alonso Furtado de Mendoza to his Assistance, but being still much inferior to the Enemies, they retired with Speed, and unmolested by the Spaniards. Nor was there any more quiet on the Frontiers of *Galicia*; for D. Martin Daram the Governour of that Kingdom, not being in a condition



dition to oppose two *Portuguese* Armies that broke in upon him at once, they burnt 150 Villages in that Country, and returned home with a considerable Booty.

7. It was now but reasonable the Forces should have been put into their Winter Quarters; nevertheless the Duke *d'Alva* having gather'd all the Power he could sent them under the Conduct of his Son to wait the Province of *Beira*. *Ferdinand Telles de Menezes* having Notice hereof, formed a Body of 7000 Foot and 2700 Horse, resolving to prevent the *Spaniards*, whose Forces were no less Considerable; he marched to *Val de Mula*, and encamped before the Town of *Guarda*, which he Summoned, and finding no Disposition in the Governor to surrender, batter'd it with two pieces of Canon. The Battery was of little effect, and therefore *Ferdinand Telles* commanded *Peter Sousa de Castro* to attack the Out-works with all the Musqueteers, and *Gaspard de Seixas* with some other Battalions to sustain him; The Attack was begun with great Resolution, and continued for three Hours, at the end whereof the Besieged put up a white Flag, and sent a Drum to offer to Capitulate. The Garrison marched out upon forty Terms, the Governor and Officers being only allowed to carry their Swords, and all the Souldiers to the number of 340, being sent Prisoners to *Lisbon*. The Booty was great, besides much store of Provision and Ammunition found in the Place; but the main Consequence of taking this place was, that it secured the *Portuguese* Frontiers, and laid those of *Castile* open to IncurSIONS. Whilst this was doing, about the Province of *Beira*, without the *Spanish* General, who had taken the Field, his attempting to succour the Town; *D. Antony Mascarenhas* commander of *Valladores*, took *Quintas* and *Corga*. *D. Sancho Manuel* plunder'd and burnt the Towns of *Sorvo*, *Avilar* and *Chalenga*; the Captains, *Edward Miranda*, and *Immanuel de Andras*, did the same to those of *Bisquilha*, *Villar del Puerto*, and *Sarantho*, and so did others all along the Frontiers. *D. Francis de Melo*, General of the Cavalry in *Allentejo*, being abroad with 300 Men, the Governour of *Badajoz* upon Notice of it, marched out with 700, and leaving half of them in Ambush, with the other half advanced to draw on the *Portuguese*: *Melo* thinking he had no more Enemies to deal with but what were in sight, charged them, and they as soon retired, till they drew

him into the ambush. He was at first surprized, seeing himself Attacked by that fresh body, but recovering himself, divided his men, and sent one part to charge those that had drawn him on whilst the other engaged those that lay in ambush. In this manner the Fight continued a considerable time, after which, fresh Troops appeared, coming from *Badajoz*, to the assistance of the *Spaniards*, and others from *Elvas*, to sustain the *Portuguese*. These last were 1600 Foot, and four Squadrons of Horse, under the Conduct of the Count *de Obidos*. Now the face of Affairs was changed, for the *Portuguese* obtained a Compleat Victory. The first of the *Spanish* Troops were cut in pieces, and the last retired with the loss of 176 Horse. Of the *Portuguese*, 37 were killed in the ambush, and 16 in the Engagement after it.

8. The Assembly of the States, or Parliament of *Portugal*, being the only Authority that could establish the Crown, and raise such supplies as were necessary for the support of it; the King fixt their Meeting for the 18th. of September, and that day the Session was commenced with all the Ceremonies usual upon such occasions. The Bishop of *Elvas* performed the Office of Chancellor; acquainting that Assembly in the King's Name, with the causes of their being convened: He represented the great Blessing of Liberty, the King's extraordinary Care to repair the Harms done by the *Spaniards*, the mighty Power he had, as well by Sea as Land; the Alliances he had made Abroad, and put them in mind how he had never lay'd any Impositions upon his People, but maintained the expence of his House upon the private Patrimony of his Family; and that being now much exhausted, he recommended it to them to find out means to support so great a Charge, assuring them of his Royal Protection, and that their Liberties and Privileges should be religiously preserved. Great was the expectation the King had conceived of this Assembly, nor was he disappointed, for they gave such Testimonies of their Duty, as exceeded even his Hopes. They returned Thanks for his Care in asserting their Liberties, for delivering them from the Yoke of *Spain*; for the Alliances he had made Abroad, and for all his good Intentions, offering him their Lives and Fortunes, and tending him a Blank Paper, that he might dispose of their Estates as he thought fit for the support of the State, and purchasing his Brother's

The Cortes  
or Parliament held.

Liberty.



Liberty, who was kept Prisoner by the *Spaniards* ever since the beginning of the War, having been put into their hands by the King of *Hungary*, in whose service he had been nine Years. The King returned the blank as it was sent to him, and had more plentiful supplies granted him than he himself would have demanded. The Parliament settled two Funds, the one for Land, the other for Sea-Service: All other expences were to be supplied out of the Patrimony of the House of *Braganza*.

9. D. John Rodriguez de Souza, y Vasconcellos Count of Castelmelhor, went over to *Brazil* in the *Spanish* Fleet, in the Year, 1639. In 1641. he was sent by his General to the *Spanish* Plantations, in the *West-Indies*. The News of the Revolution of *Portugal*, being then brought to the Fleet, the *Spaniards* cryed down the New King's Title, and exclaimed against the *Portugueses* as Rebels. This sensibly touched the Count de Castelmelhor, yet he was forced to bear with it, being in no condition to make his resentment appear without his certain destruction. There were seven *Portuguese* Gallions in the Fleet, and in them 3000 Men. With the Officers of these Ships, he conspired to seize the Fleet; as also the Town and Citadel of *Cartagena*, in new *Spain*, before which, they were then at Anchor. Most of the Officers were already engaged in this Design, and all disposed for putting of it in execution, but the Count having communicated it to Antony Tenezedo a *Portuguese*, in whom he confided, as having done him many signal favours; he discovered the whole matter to the Governour of the Citadel, who immediately apprehended the Count, and had him Condemned to Death. This Sentence had been executed within two days, had not the Count appealed to the Court of *Madrid*, and the Admiral of the Fleet having had the Sentence confirmed by the Council there, no hopes remained for his deliverance but in God. Whilst the Admiral sent into *Spain* to have the Sentence confirmed, the King of *Portugal* got intelligence of what had hapned. He immediately sent away a Caravel, Commanded by a Captain, in whose Conduct he had great confidence, ordering him to sail for *Cartagena*, and use all possible means to deliver the Prisoner. The Weather proved favourable to the Design, the Captain Arrived safe; and found means to let the

the Count know he was come to rescue him. To this purpose, he agreed with a *Dutch* Captain who Commanded a Frigate in that Port, for the Caravel being so leaky, that it could not be put to Sea again; he burnt it. In the mean while, the Count with ready Money and large promises, corrupted a Corporal, and two *Spanish* Soldiers, that had the keeping of him; and they altogether got aboard the *Dutch* Frigate, which carried them safe to the Island of *Tortuga*, where they were favourably received by the *French* Governour. Thence they went over to the Island *Tercera*, and lastly arrived at *Lisbon*, where they were bountifully rewarded by the King.

Anno, 1643.

1. THE hatred the *Spaniards* and *Portugueses* bore to one another, was too great to suffer them to lie still: Though the Season was not yet fit for Action, the Frontiers were never free from incursions. D. Sancho Manuel a *Portuguese* Major-General, thinking no difficulties too great to be surmounted, marched out with 150 Horse, judging that a sufficient number to plunder the Town of *Fituro* in *Castile*, four Leagues from the Frontiers of *Portugal*. His Design being divulged, and the *Spaniards* believing his Forces greater than they were, they abandoned the Town, leaving it to be ransacked by the Soldiers without the least opposition. But the retreat proved not without danger, for the *Spaniards* of the neighbouring places assembling to the number of 200 Horse, Charged them before they could recover their own Frontiers, and that with such resolution, that the *Portugueses* were at first forced to give ground. But having quitted all the Booty which encombred them, they rallied, and giving a fresh Charge, worsted those by whom before they had been drove. Night coming on, put an end to the Battle. The number of the Dead was equal, and the Victory had been dubious, but that the *Spaniards* got away in the dark, leaving the Booty and the Field to the *Portugueses*. This small Action was the cause of a greater, for the Marquis de *Elecha*, General of the *Spanish* Horse, resolving to revenge that loss, entered *Portugal* with 500 Horse, and 300 Muske-

300 Musketers, surprized the Town of *Sabugal*, fired 13 Houfes, killed seven of the Inhabitants he found in Arms, and drove away all the Cattle he found. Not content with this, he returned by the way of *Alfayates* to brave the Garrison, but this boldness cost him dear. *Ferdinand Tellez de Menezes* the General who was within two Leagues of that place, gathering 200 Horse and three Companies of Foot, sent to the Governour of *Alfayates* to joyn him with the best men he had, which was accordingly performed; that Governour bringing with him 200 Men. With this force they pursued the *Spaniards*, and having overtaken, fell upon them: The Fight was bravely maintained, for the *Spaniards* and *Portugueses* gave three several Charges in such a manner, that it was not discernable who had the better: being now fallen in after the Fire, with Sword in hand, and the *Marquês de Elecha*, the *Spanish* General, and *D. Francis de Erasso*, who was next in Command to him, being both Slain, Victory began to incline to the *Portugueses*, for the *Spaniards* dismayed at the loss of their Commanders fled, leaving the Field strewn with Dead Bodies, Arms and Plunder which they quitted to save their Lives. The *Portugueses* were forward enough to have pursued them, but *Ferdinand Tellez* held them in, fearing to fall into some ambush, being to pass before the Enemy. The Duke of *Alva's* Enterprize redounded more to the honour of the *Spaniards*. He being desirous of doing something considerable in *Portugal*, drew together 8000 Foot and 900 Horse, with which he entered *Portugal*, burnt four open Towns, put many of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and finding a vigorous resistance at *Eschallam*, which place, he had caused to be Attacked at the same time, he retired again, to avoid meeting all the Troops of the Frontiers drawn together to oppose him.

2. It was not only the success on the Frontiers that rendered the King of *Portugal* fortunate. Two Jesuits being procurators for the Provinces of *Cochin* and *Goa* in *India*, arriving at this time, brought him an Account how well affected the people in those distant Provinces were to his interest. This happy News was a great addition to the joy of his success in War, for they assured him that most of those *Eastern* Princes had joyned in League with his Vice-Roy, as soon as they understood

that he was restored to the Crown of his Ancestors. The King who omitted nothing that might encourage his faithful Servants, and gain him new Friends, sent away two Gallions, and six other Vessels, with all necessaries to the former, and with assurances to the latter, that they should always find in him a brotherly return of affection, as long as they continued their friendship towards him.

3. *Francis de Lucena*, Secretary of State ever since the Revolution, had upon complaints preferred against him by his Enemies been committed Prisoner to the Castle of *St. Julian*, but nothing being proved against him, after a long Imprisonment, the King had resolved to restore him to his Honour, when an unfortunate accident on a sudden brought him to an untimely end. The Count *de Obidos* General of the Province of *Aleitejo* happened to take a fellow coming from *Badajoz*, who proved to be Servant to *Peter Bonet* Adjutant to the Major-General. Upon examination, this Man declared that his Master held Correspondence with the *Spaniards*, and he being thereupon Apprehended and put upon the Rack, made a Confession, which at his Death, he declared to be false; but wherein he accused *D. Joseph de Meneses*, Governour of *Fort St. Julian* of a Design of betraying it to the *Spaniards*, *Francis de Lucena*, the Secretary of holding Correspondence with them, and several others of joyning with them in these Treasonable practices. All the persons accused being put to Torture, some of them to the last, denied their knowledge of any such Treason, but others, to be eased of their misery, owned all that was laid to their Charge. Upon this weak evidence, several were put to Death. *D. Joseph de Meneses*, endured the Rack constantly, denying it, and being cured, the King offered him again a Command, but he refused it; saying, *He was now resolved to serve him, who knew how to Reward services, and punish Offences.* The unfortunate Secretary, *Francis de Lucena*, being put upon the Rack, and being weak with Age fainted away without Confessing. Nevertheless, though all had recanted that accused him, he was Condemned to Death as a Traytor, and suffered accordingly, positively denying any guilt in the matter he was accused of, to the last minute of his Life. The Rabble would have torn him in pieces when he was

The Secretary Francis Lucena, put to Death upon account of a supposed Conspiracy.

brought Prisoner from the Castle of St. Julian, for in all Countries they are ready to devour the innocent, but he was then preserved by the Guards, to be made a Sacrifice to that many headed Monster in a more solemn manner, being publicly beheaded upon a Scaffold.

King John rewards those that suffered for the Conspiracy at Carthage-  
 4. Whilst due Examination was making into this piece of Treachery, the King of Portugal made generous acknowledgments to the Count de Castelmelhor, on account of his good Endeavours and Sufferings before-mentioned. The post of General of the Frontiers, betwixt the Rivers Duero and Minho, given him as the first Reward of his Fidelity in the West-Indies, seeming too small a Recompence for a Service of such Consequence; he added to it a pretent of a considerable Sum of Money, a Commendary of the Military Order of Christ, worth 2000 Crowns a Year, gave the reversion of it to his Children, and confirmed that Earldom to his third Generation. To Father Ambrose a Benedictin, concerned in the Counts Escape, he gave a Benefice. To Antony de Abien, Captain of the Caravel, that went for him a considerable Commendary. And because Dominick de Sylva, Antony Rodriguez the Spanish Corporal, two Souldiers that were upon the Guard, and the Dutch Captain that lent his Vessel to forward the undertaking, had all contributed to the Earl's Deliverance; they also were made partakers of the King's Bounty. The Dutch Captain had 2000 Crowns, Dominick de Sylva was Knighted, and had a Company in a Marine Regiment with a Pension. The Spanish Corporal had also a Company in the Land-Service, with a Pension as the other. The two Souldiers were likewise made Captains, but without any other addition of Honour or Pension. These Acts of Generosity in the King, redounded much to his Honour, as did no less his Prudence in placing good Commanders upon the Frontiers. George de Melo General of the Gallies, was put into the Fort of St. Julian, to secure that Place, whilst D. Joseph de Menezes the former Governour was proceeded against. D. Francis de Sousa Coutinho, returning from his Embassy of Sweden, had the Government of the Island Tercera conferred on him. D. Alvaro de Abranchoz was appointed General of the Frontiers of Beira, and D. John de Sousa, of those of the Province Tralos Montes.

5. About

5. About this time News was brought to Lisbon of The King's two several Accidents which moved different Passions in of Spain's the People. One was, that the Count Duke de Oliva-Favourite rex had lost the favour of the Catholick King, whose disgraced. prime Minister: he had been for the space of 22 Years; and because his Government had appeared Tyrannical to the Portugueses, there were few of them, who did not express extraordinary satisfaction at his fall. The other piece of News produced great Compassion in such as were least Zealous for Religion. F. Antony Francis Car- Several din a Jesuit, and general Procurator for the Society in Persons suf- the Province of Japan, gave an account, that four Por- fered Mar- tuguese Ambassadors from Macao, being at the Town of tyrdom in of Nangassagui, with 66 Persons in their retinue, for Japan. the settling of Trade, and to endeavour the planting of the Faith there; the Emperor of that Island, whose Name was Toyogun, had cast them all into Dungeons, then put to Death the four Ambassadors, with 53 of the chief of their Retinue, and sent home the other 13 in derision of the Apostles, to carry the News of that Bloody Execution to Macao. The Dutch notwithstanding the Cessation of Arms, betwixt the Crown of Portugal and the States of Holland, entred the City Negapatan in India; the Portugueses not being able to withstand them, and obliged them to ransom it for 110000 pieces of Eight. A Treaty was afterwards set on foot for settling a Truce betwixt the two Nations in those parts, but the Hollanders thinking it more for their Advantage to continue the War, soon broke it off. The next Act of Hostility they committed, was in the Island Ceylon, where thinking to surprize the Portugueses quarter'd in the Village Curaza, as relying on the Truce betwixt the two Nations, they marched against them; but they having intelligence of their coming, charged them with such Bravery, that of 400 Hollanders, scarce any escaped being kill'd or taken. This Victory gave the Portugueses in that Island quiet for some time. But still the War was continued in other parts. After the Dutch had left Negapatan, it was besieged by a Neighbouring Naygae or Prince of the Indians, but he meeting with a vigorous opposition, soon desisted.

6. In America, the Portugueses under the command of Antony Teyxeyra, after a long Siege, recovered from the Dutch the City St. Luis of Maranhao, they being forc'd

E c 3

to

to abandon it for want of Provisions, and most of them afterwards perished by the hands of the *Indians*, whom they had barbarously used. Our Affairs were not so successful in *Angola* where our Men under the Command of *Peter Cesar* were worsted by the *Dutch*, who afterwards concluding a Truce with them, treacherously fell upon them, killing 40, taking 187 Prisoners, and forcing the rest to fly for safety to the Mountains. Our Fort at *Mozambique* enjoyed most Peace, for the Emperor of *Monomotapa* having been lately converted to the Faith, by the religious of the Order of *St. Dominick*, professed an inviolable Friendship towards the *Portuguese*, and had obtained a number of them of *Julius Moniz*, the Governor of that Fort for his Guard.

*The Portuguese Ambassador at Rome not being admitted, returns home.* 7. The Pope always continuing fix'd in his Resolution, not to give Audience to the Bishop of *Lamego*, sent by the King of *Portugal*, with the quality of his Ambassador to *Rome*, that Bishop was at length oblig'd to return home. He was conducted by some of the Duke of *Florence's* Horse to *Leghorn*, where four *Portuguese* Ships lay ready to carry him to *Lisbon*. *D. Luis Pereira de Castro* Counsellor in his Majesties Council of Conscience, was nevertheless chosen to undertake another Voyage to *Rome*. But because the rejecting of a second Ambassador might be of ill Consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, this Counsellor took only the stile of Deputy of all the Clergy of the Kingdom, to represent their wants, and how prejudicial it was to refuse to admit an Ambassador from his *Portuguese* Majesty, who had omitted nothing that might tend to convince the Christian World of his Zeal for Religion, and his Respect to the Holy See.

Anno, 1644.

*Great Preparations both in Spain and Portugal.* 1. IN pursuance to the League concluded betwixt the Kings of *France* and *Portugal*; the former excited the latter, to invade the Territories of *Spain* with all his Power by Sea and Land, that so he might be put into a Condition to make the greater progress in *Catalonia*. Hereupon King *John* gave Orders for gathering an Army of 12000 Foot and 2000 Horse, which was to enter *Castile* by the way of *Alentejo*. The Catholick King having

having Advice hereof, the better to secure his Dominions on that side, whilst he attended the Affairs of *Catalonia*, gave the command of his Army in *Estremadura*, to the Marquess de *Torre-cusa*. *Mathias de Albuquerque* having served the King of *Portugal* well, was by him continued General of the Frontiers. The first attempt made by the Marquess proved unfortunate, for he could not make himself Master of *Ougela*, a little Town in *Portugal*, which after the Gate had been forced with a Petard, was bravely defended by the Inhabitants, for the space of six Hours. Among the other Defendants, a Woman did Wonders with a Baker's Peel; and though wounded, could never be perswaded to retire till the Assault was given over. The *Portuguese* after this were not slack to return the *Spaniards* their Visit at *Mentejo*; ra. which place, though well fortified and defended by four Companies, they assaulted and took by Scalade, where falling disorderly to Plunder, the *Spaniards* took the opportunity to rally, and fell upon them so resolutely, that they had all Perished, but that the *Monteiro Mor* came in opportunely with his Horse, and forced the *Spaniards* to retire to the River *Guadiana*, where many of them were drowned. Hence the *Portuguese* advanced, and raised *Membrillo* an open Town, save a Trench that had been thrown up about it. The same they did to *Villa Nueva de Barcarota*, but attempted not the Castle, in which was *D. Francis de Velasco*, Lieutenant General of the Horse of *Castile*, who having but 500 Horse with him, was not able to appear in the Field against the *Portuguese*. They being now 6000 Foot and 1100 Horse, with 6 pieces of Canon, took and destroyed *Villar del Rey*, *Roca de Almanacite* and *Puebla*, all Towns of *Estremadura*. These Actions of the *Portuguese* struck to the Heart of the Marquess de *Torre-cusa*, as perceiving a sort of Faintness in his Soldiers, which looked like insatiation, being wholly opposite to the natural Bravery of the *Spaniards*. He called a Council of War, in which he proposed to take the Field, and give the Enemy Battle. Many applauded his Propositions, yet others advised to besiege *Olivenza*, as the strongest of the Enemies Garrisons, which would draw their Forces out of *Spain*, and perhaps necessitate them to give Battle upon Terms of Disadvantage. This opinion wanted not some to support it, but the Marquess and others persisting in the Resolution



solution of hazarding a Battle, their Authority prevailed. The Spanish Army consisted of 7000 Foot, and 2600 Horse in 34 Troops, under the command of the Baron de Moliuquen, who was now to command the whole Army, because the Marquess was to stay at Badajoz. These Forces met the Enemy sooner than they expected.

The Spanish Forces defeated.

2. On the 26 of May, 1644, Albuquerque the Portuguese General, finding himself reduc'd to that necessity, that he must either fight or fly, chose rather to hazard a Battle, than forfeit his Reputation. He performed the Office of a Major General, ordering his Battle himself. The command of the Right Wing he gave to the Montevia Mor, and the Left to the Commissary General, who had under him the Dutch Horse, commanded by Captain Piper. The two Armies engaged, and the Spaniards gave such a furious Charge on the Portuguese Left Wing, where the Commissary commanded, that the Dutch Horse fled, and running upon their own Foot, so disorder'd that part of the Army, that the Spaniards drove them from their Ground; their General being in danger to be bruised to Death, his Horse falling upon him, but a French Captain saved him, giving him another Horse that ran loose, and sustaining the shot of the Enemy till he mounted. Being deliver'd from that Danger, he had recourse to the Body of reserve, which advancing to the Place, which the Spanish Horse had left to pursue the Dutch, and others that fled, made such Havock among the Foot, before Victorious, that they were forced to fly. The Horse returning from the pursuit, and seeing the Foot broke, could never be brought to a Charge, but betook themselves to their Heels, quitting their Cannon and Baggage. Of the Spaniards, about 2000 Foot and 700 Horse were killed and taken, with about 40 Colours and Standards. Of the Portuguese, 750 were slain, and among them two Collonels. The Portuguese continued a Day in the field of Battle, lest the Spaniards should return and vaunt they had kept it. King John rejoicing at this Victory which secured his Crown, created the General Earl of Alegrette, giving him a Pension of 4000 Crowns, and rewarded many other of the Principal Men in the Army. The Marquess of Torrecusa laboured to gather all the Forces of Estremadura; being grieved he was not present at the Battle, as believing it

lost

lost for want of Conduct, and it troubled him the more, because he was the adviser of it.

3. Whilst these things hapned in Estremadura, several Incursions were made on all the Frontiers of the Kingdom, but in them was nothing Memorable, for the Portuguese were most upon the Defensive, and the Spaniards only kept the War afoot, till the affairs of Catalonia might be settled, that then they might turn their whole Force to this side. About this same time, D. George de Mascarenhas, Count de Monte Albano who was of the Council of State, and had other great Employments, was impeached of Conspiring with others against the King, for which he was committed to the Castle of Belem, and the rest to other Prisons. Upon Examination, the Accusation was found malicious and groundless, whereupon he and all the others on the second of November were honourably discharged, and restored to their Estates and Honours. At this time also dyed the Arch-bishop of Braga, one of the managers of the first Conspiracy against the King. Dying, he made it his request to the King, that he would pardon his Treachery, and grant that his Body might be Buried without some Parish Church, without any inscription upon it, to the end, no Memory might survive of one that hath been Traytor to his King.

A sham Conspiracy.

4. The Portuguese Governors on the Coasts of America at length concluded a Truce with the Count de Nassau, of America who governed at Pernambuco for the Hollanders. Yet so far were they from observing the Articles of it, that they rais'd a new Fort at Segeripe, took several of our Ships, and committed many Barbarities against the Portuguese, that according to composition, remained under them at Pernambuco. These things moved John Fernandez Veigra, and Francis Berenguer, to lay the design this Year of expelling them that Province; the success of their Enterprize belongs to another place. In Africk, Tangier had till this time held for the Spaniards, but now the Garrison secured their Governor, sent him Prisoner to Lisbon, and declared for King John. The Moors thought to have surprized that City, and gave a desperate Assault, but were repulsd with great Loss. The Dutch in India, notwithstanding their repeated Orders from the States to cease from all Hostilities, still found pretences to carry on the War; and landing a great number

The Dutch contrary to Faith given, take several places in India.

ber of Men in Ceylon, took the Fort of Negumbo, having first overthrown the Portuguese that were to defend it; they presuming, though much inferior in Number, and contrary to their Orders to meet the Enemy in open Field, who pursuing them after the defeat, entered the Fort in that Heat, putting above 300 of our Men to the Sword. The City Macao in China was near falling again into the Hands of the Spaniards; many of the Inhabitants favouring their interest, and raising a dangerous Tumult to promote the same, but by the Courage of Sebastian Lobo the Governour, who fired from the Castle upon the City, together with the Interposition of the Jesuits, it was again reduced to Obedience. Gonzalo Sequeyra was sent Ambassador by the King to the Emperor of Japan, but through the Instigation of the Hollanders was not received.

Anno, 1645.

Actions in  
the Province of Alentejo.

**T**HIS Year the King having regard to the good Service done by the Earl of Castella-Melhor, in the Province betwixt Duero and Minho, appointed him General of Alentejo. In April he took possession of that Command, and at the same time received intelligence that the Marquess de Leganez was come to Badajoz, to command the Spanish Army. Soon after the Counts Arrival at Badajoz, 500 Spanish Horse made an Incurſion into the Territory of Campo Mayor, whence they retired with great Booty. In their retreat, the two Captains Emanuel de Gama Lobo and D. Charles Jordano, charged them with 300 Portuguese Horse, recovered the Prey, and took from them 80 Horses. The Count de Castella Melhor, presently after attempted to drive the Country about Badajoz, and to that purpose marched with 800 Horse and 1500 Foot, but returned without doing any thing more, than driving the Enemies advanced Parties to the Walls of Badajoz. In return, the Spaniards with a Body of 700 Horse, fell into the Country of Barbacena and Sancta Olaya, which is two Leagues from Elvas and Campo Mayor; the Horse of both which Places, to the Number of 500, joyning, charged them in their Retreat, recovered all the Booty, and took 60 of their Horses. The Count

Count de Castelmelhor having thoroughly examined the strength of Badajoz, thought to have surprized that place, and in order to it marched with 5500 Foot, and 1200 Horse, two Petards, and eight pieces of Canon, which last being useless for a surprize, were the cause he failed of his design, for the Carriages breaking by the way, (as was thought rather through the malice of those who had them in charge than neglect) so much time was spent in fixing them again, that it was day before he could reach the Fort of Telena, which being a League from the City, he was forced to return without attempting any thing to Elvas.

2. The King having certain intelligence that the Spanish Army daily increased at Badajoz, gave out all the necessary Orders for his Troops to Rendezvous at Elvas, and to be himself the more at hand, went over to Aldea Gallega, which was the cause that many of the Nobility and Gentry repaired to the Army. On the 25th day of October, the Marquess de Leganez, marched from Badajoz, with 12000 Foot, 3000 Horse, 10 pieces of Cannon, and a Train proportionable, and halted in sight of the Bridge of Olivenza, and Fort St. Antony. In two days he took the said Fort, and another at the foot of the Bridge, both which, he demolished, and broke several Arches of the Bridge, to cut off the Communication of Olivenza. Whilst the Spaniards were busy at this work, a Party of 600 of their Horse, meeting 400 of our Foot, under the Command of Major John da Fonseca Barreta, within two Leagues of Estremoz, cut most of them off, the Major being the first that Fled; whereas, he might have easily drawn his Men within an Inclosure which was by, and have thereby secured them against any Horse. The King of the Maldivy Islands, in India, being now come to Portugal, to crave Aid of the King against a Brother who had Usurped the Crown; served in the Army this Campaign, and was treated with all imaginable respect. Count Castelmelhor, having drawn together all the Force he could, and being yet inferior to the Enemy, kept himself still within the Olive-Gardens at Elvas, but continually sent out Parties to Alarm the Enemy. D. Roderick de Castro, with 1000 Horse, and 500 Musketers, sustaining one of those Parties, the Enemy Charged it, and pursuing too far, he cut off 90 of their Horse. Another

another of our Parties being beyond *Badajoz*, took the Count *de Izinguen*, who came to be Lieutenant-General of Horse, in the *Spanish* Army, and being sent to *Lisbon*, continued a long time Prisoner in the Castle of *Belem*. The Marquess *de Leganez*, having done nothing more than break the Bridge, and demolish the two Forts, returned towards *Badajoz*, and in 12 days erected a new Fort at *Telena*, near that City, destroying at the same time a Tower, in which, was an Ensign and 15 of our Men, a League from *Elvas*. This is all that was done of moment, in the Province of *Alentejo*, and both Armies went into Winter-Quarters.

The War in the Provinces betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, and *Tralos Montes*.

3. In the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, there was no memorable Action; only small inroads made on both sides: But the Province *Tralos Montes*, enjoyed perfect Peace, both Parties lying still, each fearing to provoke the other. *D. Ferdinand Mascarenhas*, Count *de Serem*, Governed *Beira*. At his first coming thither, the Spaniards drove a Prey from about *Villa Tropim*, and *Malpartida*, but Captain *Ruy Tavares de Brito*, overtaking them with 100 Horse, recovered all, though at the cost of his own Life. Soon after, the Enemy layed Siege to *Salvaterra*, but without success; for the Count having drawn together all the Force he could make to relieve it, and being reinforced from *Alentejo*, they broke up the Siege and departed. They being gone, the Count fortified the Frontier places, and obliged the Countrey People to retire farther from the borders, because he was inferiour to the Enemy in Forces.

Actions of John Fernandez Vieyra in Brazil against the Dutch.

4. We left *John Fernandez Vieyra*, the last Year in the Mountains of *Pernambuco*, expecting succours from *Bahia*, to make War upon the *Hollanders*. They laid several designs to take him, but he having timely notice, still escaped their hands. They promised 1000 Florins Reward for his Head, and he on the other side offered 8000 *Crusados* for any of the Heads of those of their supreme Council. *Henry Hus* was sent with 1500 Dutch, and 800 *Indians*, into the Mountains, to cut him off with all his Party; but he having gathered 1200 men, whereof only 200 had Fire-Arms, posted himself so advantageously, and received them with such resolution, that after a dispute of several hours, they were totally routed with much slaughter, and had not the Night sheltered

tered them, none had returned to carry the News. The Arms taken in this Action were the principal part of the Booty, because of the great want of them there was among the *Portugueses*. *John Hus*, revenged himself upon the innocent Inhabitants of the Towns of *St. Lawrence* and *Apopucos*, who lived under the protection of the Dutch, robbing and putting them to the rack. Soon after *Antony Philip Camarao*, and *Henry Dias*, with the Blacks and *Indians* under their Command, joyned *John Fernandez Vieyra*. *Andrew Vidall*, also sent with some Foot, by *Antony Tellez*, Governour of *Bahia*, to apprehend *John Fernandez*, for breaking the Truce with the Dutch, took part with him against them. Advice being brought them that the *Hollanders* plundered *Varzea*, and carried away the Women that were there, they marched with all speed and defeating them in the Field, obliged those that retired into a House to surrender themselves. Though the *Hollanders* complained that *Andrew Vidal* being sent to their assistance, had joyned their Enemies, yet they as soon as he was landed, had burnt the Ships that brought him from *Bahia*.

5. The Dutch going about to disarm the *Portuguese* Inhabitants of the Town of *Sirinbaem*, they were so incensed, that gathering together under *Hypolito de Vercoza*, they drove them not only out of the Town but out of the Fort, whither they had fled for safety. At *Pontal de Nazareth*, our Men had also Besieged the Dutch in the Fort, and *Martin Sourez Moreno*, with his Regiment coming to the assistance of the Besiegers; *Theodosius Straet*, the Governour, underhand contrived how to deliver it up to them, and he with most of his Men entred into their Service. *Andrew Vidal*, who had been in this last Action, having again joyned *John Fernandez Vieyra*, they resolved to block up the place called *Arrecife*, and the City *Mauricea*, which was immediately put in execution, all the Forces being posted in the most convenient places, to cut off the Enemy from all relief by Land. They Attacked and took the Fort *St. Cruz*, seated betwixt the *Arrecife* and the Town of *Olinda*, the Commander with 60 Men taking Service among the *Portugueses*. The Fort of *Porto Calvo*, was also taken by *Christopher Lins*, the Garrison being streightned for Provisions, and he having intercepted a Vessel coming to their relief.

Faithless proceedings of the Dutch in Brazil.

6. Whilst

6. Whilst these things were doing, the *Portugueses* of the River of *St. Francis*, following the example of the rest of their Countrey-Men, falling upon the *Dutch*, who would have secured the principal Men among them, slew some, and drove the rest out of Town. Then besieging them in the Fort, and being reinforced by some Companies sent by the Governour of *Bahia*, they obliged them to surrender, and rased the Fort, that the Enemy might never think of recovering it. *Andrew de Rocha de Antas*, and *Valentin de Rocha* were the principal promoters and managers of this enterprize, who having delivered their own Province, marched with the Soldiers and such others as would follow them, to joyn *John Fernandez*, and his Forces before *Arrecife*. Here it was resolved to Attack the Island *Itamaraca*, whence the Besieged had all their sustenance. The Design was put in execution with 800 Men, who falling to plunder before they had secured the Victory, were repulsed, 80 of them being slain, and many wounded. The Besieged made a great sally upon the quarter where *Henry Dias* Commanded, but his Blacks received them with such bravery that very few returned to the Town. Nevertheless, having agreed with a Regiment of *Dutch*, that served the *Portugueses*, that in the heat of the Action they should fall upon them; they ventured to make another Sally, but with no better success, the Treachery of the *Hollanders* being timely prevented by their Colonel, who suspected their fidelity. A few days after, 130 of them Deserted, whereupon the rest were disarmed, and sent away to *Bahia*, except only the Colonel, *Theodosius Straet*, who was found innocent, and served to the last. But it is time we leave them to the next Year.

7. At *Tangier*, the new Governour *D. Gaston Continbo*, made an inroad into the Countrey, with 150 Horse, overthrew a Party of *Moors*, and returned with a great booty, which proved fatal to *Tangier*; for the Plague then raging among the *Moors*, was brought into the Town, and in half a years time carried off 1700 persons; a great number for that small place. The Affairs of *India* we related in the last Year, and have nothing more, but that *D. Philip de Mascarenhas*, the new Vice-Roy Arrived at *Goa*, from *Ceylon*, and entred upon the Government. The Truce with the *Hollanders*

is the cause there will be little to say relating to those parts. Six Ships sailed this Year from *Lisbon* for *India*, and arrived in safety.

Anno, 1646.

1. *D. John Mendez de Vasconcellos*, the Portuguese General for the Province of *Alentejo*, had an Army of 10000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, about *Elvas*, rather to serve the interest of the *Catalonians*, than for any desire King *John* had to make any incursion into *Estremadura*. *D. Roderick de Castro*, General of the Horse, and his Lieutenant, *D. John Mascarenhas*, were ordered to march with 600 Horse, carrying 300 Foot behind them to *Olivenza*, where they should receive farther Orders, of what was to be done on the 17th of July, at Night. They marched with great secrecy, and having there received instructions, continued their march thence all Night, and at break of day without meeting the least opposition, entred, plundered and burnt the Town of *Sta. Marta*, bringing away a great booty, though the place was eight Leagues up the Countrey, betwixt *Badajoz* and *Casra*. The Portuguese of the Province of *Beira*, were not idle, but made a road as far as *Valverde*, driving away all the Cattle, and taking many Prisoners. Not content with what was done, they advanced to *Silleros*, a place six Leagues higher in the Countrey; but here they met not with their usual success, for after some skirmishing, they were forced to retire. The Spaniards to divert the Enemy from ravaging *Castile*, on the 5th of August, Attacked *Fiaces*, but to no purpose, for tho' the Wall was low and weak, it was so resolutely defended that they were forced to quit the enterprize.

2. Wherever the Portuguese came, they utterly destroyed all before them, that the Enemies Frontiers being bare and desolate, they might find the greater difficulties, if they attempted to invade *Portugal*. Now to remove the Spaniards still farther off, and in case the War continued to employ them about recovering of their own, or if a Treaty of Peace were set on Foot, to have something to restore, they were resolv'd to attempt the taking of *Codisseira*. This place was considerable as well for its Riches, as the Strength of the Castle and

The Portuguese ravage the Frontiers of *Estremadura*.

The same from the Province of *Beira*.

The Portuguese take *Codisseira*.



and Number of its Garrison. The Count *de Alegrette*, who as has been said, was rewarded with that Title by the King, to show himself worthy of it, resolved to use his utmost Endeavours to gain this place. It was difficult to carry it by open Force and a Siege, and therefore he concluded upon a Surprise. Having chosen 600 Foot, and some Troops of Horse, backed by a good Number of Volunteers, and provided Scaling Ladders, Petards, and all other Necessaries, he Marched by the way of *Portalegre* and *Elvas* to *Aronches*, where he was reinforced by other Troops and Volunteers, with which Forces he posted himself within a League of *Codisseira*. There he halted till Night, having secured all the Men he met by the way; That none might carry Intelligence to the Enemy. His eagerness made him think it dark enough sooner than really it was; And therefore approaching the Place, whilst yet some glimmering of Light was abroad, he was discovered at a distance, by a Sharp sighted Sentinel, who giving the Alarm in the Town, was soon answered by the Castle, in both which Places, As well the Inhabitants as Souldiers, Ran to the Walls, and put themselves in a posture of Defence. Notwithstanding, all the opposition made from the Walls, the *Portugueses* boldly made up to the Gate, and Fired the Petards at the Town and Castle Gates, which were torn in pieces, and they Entering put to the Sword, all they found in Arms. *D. Joao de Guevara*, was retired into the great Market-place with many of his Officers, hoping there to Maintain his honour; but the harm they did among the *Portugueses*, enraged them the more, so that they were scarce satisfied to disarm and make them prisoners of War. The Danger being over, they fell to plundering the Town, and not so content set fire to it, reducing to ashes the place they designed to have maintained. This success made the Victors think of attempting *Badajoz*. They marched to *Telena*, a Fort Built the foregoing Year, by the Marquess *de Leganez*, as an out-work to *Badajoz*. There were in it, 150 *Spaniards*, who at the first Summons, basely Surrendered upon discretion; and the Fort was demolished. Whilst the Engines were at work, the Forces advanced to *Badajoz*, where the Marquess *de Moringuen* was Governour, who presently marched out with 7000 Foot, and 150 Horse. The *Portugueses* tho' much inferior in

They At-  
tempted Ba-  
dajoz.

number

number stood their Ground, and obstinately defended themselves for the space of seven Hours, but were at last forced to retire, having lost many Men, besides many more wounded. The *Spaniards* say, the Fort of *Telena* was not Demolished, but left in the same Condition the *Portugueses* found it, they wanting time to ruin the Works, or remove any thing out of it, being forced to retreat with Precipitation.

3. Nothing better was the success of the Marquess *de Affons* in *Aytona*, the Catholick King's General, betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, in his design of surprizing *Salvaterra*. He marched with 600 Foot, and 500 Horse, but the Count *de Castelmellhor*, who commanded the *Portugueses* in that Province, understanding his Design, posted himself under the Walls of that Place; and the Marquess perceiving his Intentions had taken Air, posted himself not far off, and being master of the Field, erected a Fort upon an Eminence, that might serve as a Bridle upon the Garrison of *Salvaterra*, and where he might be at Hand upon any Opportunity, to throw himself into that place which was very considerable, as being upon the Frontiers of *Beira*. Some considerable Action might reasonably be expected here, the *Spaniards* keeping to their Strength, and the *Portuguese* to theirs, and the Forces on both sides daily encreasing. The *Spanish* Army grew up to the Number of 10000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, which on the 20 of November, undertook the Siege of *Salvaterra*, and pressed it so vigorously, that they soon lodged themselves upon the Ditch, and had begun to mine, hoping in few days to carry the place. This was the posture of their Affairs, when understanding that all the Forces of the Province of *Beira*, commanded by Count *Seren*, reinforced by others of *Alentejo*, under the Conduct of *D. Sancho Manuel*, were marching with all possible speed to the Relief of the Town, they raised the Siege with such Precipitation, that they left behind them much Provision, Ammunition, their Baracks, and about 300 sick and lame Souldiers. The *Portugueses* coming later then they had hoped, as those who were stayed by the violent Rains, were much troubled to be disappointed of meeting the *Spanish* Army, the routing of which they had promised to themselves, and greater Security to their Frontiers for the future. Having burnt the Baracks, and the

F f

Coun-

*Both sides  
cease from  
Hostilities.*

Country round about, they returned to their Winter-quarters, as the *Spaniards* had done on their side.

4. Thus stood all the Affairs on both sides, when as well the one as the other perceived that this sort of Action served only to harraiss themselves. The Catholick King seemed to maintain an Army to no purpose, since in 5 or 6 Years time, he had done nothing but waste Money, and loose Men and Ground. All the *Portugueses* did, was to destroy Towns, frighten the Country People, and kill some few Soldiers. These Considerations moved both Parties to put their standing Forces into Garrisons, and forbear farther Hostilities. Whilst the Catholick King attended the Affairs of *Catalonia*, and made his Interest at *Rome*, to obstruct the new King's being treated as such by the Pope, and the vacant Benefices in *Portugal*, to be filled by Men of that Princes presenting; he laboured to heap up Treasure of the Riches brought him from *India*, that whenever the Catholick King should renew the War, he might not want Money, which is the Life and Sinews of all Armies. He also took care to strengthen himself with Friends and Confederates, and having secured the King of *France*, his Ministers endeavoured to joyn in Amity with the new Common-wealth of *England*. It remained to sollicit the Friendship of the See of *Rome*, not only by performing the publick Act of Obedience, and filling the vacant Churches, but by satisfying that Court, as to two Points, which it seemed to resent. One was, that King *John* persisted in retaining some Revenues taken from the Church. The other, that he kept the Arch-bishop of *Braga* Prisoner, for which he was excommunicated, and therefore the Pope demanded, that the Revenues should be restored, and the Arch-bishop put into his Hands, as being his proper Judge. To those things the *Portuguese* Ministers answer'd, that had the Pope sent his Nuncio, the Dispute about those Revenues, might have been easily accommodated; it being made appear, that the Crown was in possession of them for about 600 Years. And as to the Arch-bishop, that he being guilty of High-Treason, what the King had done, was justifiable according to the Canons, and therefore he could incur no Censure of the Church. Nevertheless, the King was ready to commit the Tryal of that Cause to such Judges, as his Holiness should appoint; but not to deli-

*Portugues  
Affairs at  
Rome.*

ver

ver his Person, because of the danger there was, that he should be set at Liberty by the way, if he touched at any port of *Spain*; as also, because King *John* not being yet owned as such at *Rome*, they would not adjudge the Arch-bishop guilty of High-Treason. The Court of *Rome* seemed satisfied as to this Point, but not as to the other.

5. In this place it will not be amiss to relate the end of the Misfortunes befallen to *Edward*, Brother to King *John*. It was said above, how he was taken in *Germany*, where he served the Emperor, and delivered up to the Ministers of *Spain*, as guilty of being privy to the revolt of *Portugal*. It was layed to his Charge, that being a Subject of the King of *Spain*, he had not discovered to him the designed revolt of that Kingdom. On this account, he was put into the Castle of *Milan*, where fresh Evidence was found against him. He was kept with Guards upon him in the very Room, all his own Servants being removed from him, upon Suspicion that they contrived his Escape. The Governor of the Castle imagining that his Confessor who was a Jesuit, might have a hand in that Contrivance; sent him word to chose another, so it were a Subject of the King of *Spain*, and no Jesuit, letting him also know, that every now and then he must change his Confessor. This Message being delivered by the Lieutenant of the Castle, *D. Edward* broke out into a Passion, which he had never done before, and among many other rash Expressions, said, *His Comfort was, that he suffered for the King his Brother, for his Family and Country, for which he was willing to lay down his Life.* This the Lieutenant deposed against him; and several Soldiers also testified, that being upon his Guard, they had heard him drink a Health to the King his Brother. The Governor having taken those depositions, there came a Commission from *Spain*, appointing three Judges to try him, and they again examined all the Witnesses; then they proceeded to examine the Prisoner himself, who being asked what he knew of the design of revolting in *Portugal*; utterly denied he had any knowledge of it, but unadvisedly in his Discourse, added, that being at *Lisbon*, *F. Bartholomew Gerreiro* a Jesuit had told him, that many *Sebastianists* (so they called those affected to the line of *Braganza*) desired him not to depart *Portugal*, because they thought his

*Of Edward  
Brother to  
King John*

F f 2

Pre-

Presence necessary for carrying on their Designs; that nevertheless he would not see any of them, but went away for *Germany*. Next, they asked him whether he had given the King (meaning the Catholick King) an account of those Words; he said he had not, as making no account of them, but had immediately departed the Kingdom. They also put Questions to him about the Healths he had drunk, and the words he spoke upon the changing his Confessor, but they laid the chief stress on the words spoke by *F. Guerreiro*, and his not discovering them to the King, for which they pretended he was guilty of High-Treason, and consequently deserved Death. *D. Edward* pleaded, that he being a Knight of the Military Order of Christ, the judgment of secular Judges against him was void. To this they answered, that in cases of High-Treason, those Priviledges cease; besides that, two of the Judges were also Knights of Military Orders. Death put an end to this Controversie, for the Prisoner falling Sick, either through his long Suffering, or some other Cause, put the same period to his Life and Imprisonment.

*The Cortes or Parliament meet.* 6. For the better settlement of the Affairs of the Nation, then in some disorder, through the long continuance of the War; the King had summoned the Cortes or Parliament to meet in *December*, of the foregoing Year. They being accordingly assembled, redressed many Grievances, occasioned by the Army; ordered, that for defence of the Frontiers, there should be kept in Pay, 16000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, and as well for the payment of them, as other Expences of the War, assigned 2150000 Cruzados, which in *English Money*, is 286666 *l.* 13 *s.*—4 *d.* allowing 3000 *Reis* to the pound, according to the common Computation.

*The War in Brazil.*

7. We left the *Portugueses* at *Pernambuco* last Year, successful on both sides, and besieging the *Hollanders* in their Towns, all along the Coast. These last, erected a new Fort, to secure the Communication between *Sinco Pontas*, and *Assigados*, but their Garrisons attempting to cast down the Woods that were in the way, were obliged to quit that Work, with the loss of many Men. At the same time, *D. Antony Philip Camarhao*, who was gone to reduce the *Indians* of *Rio Grande*, gave a great overthrow to the *Dutch*, who came to attack him with 500 Men of their own, and 1000 *Indians*. The News of this suc-

cess,

cess, being brought to *John Fernandez Vieyra*, he sent for *Andrew Vidal*, with six Companies to reinforce the Victors. To the end, the Enemy might not perceive his Forces were lessened, he kept them in continual Alarm; and *Henry Diaz*, who commanded the *Blacks*, with only his own Men, took the new Fort the *Dutch* had erected, putting all within it to the Sword. *Andrew Vidal*, at *Paraiba*, having laid himself in Ambush, sent out 40 *Portugueses*, who drew 220 *Dutch* and *Indians* into the Snare, where they all perished. Both the Besieged and the Besiegers at *Pernambuco* suffered great Want, but several methods were found to relieve the latter. The former had no hopes, but in a Fleet they expected from *Holland*. They had three Ships, which lay to secure their passage to the Island *Itamaraca*, and other parts of the Continent, which *John Fernandez Vieyra* perceiving, he attack'd them with 500 Men in Boats, who took one, and burnt the other two, then passing over to the Shore, he drove the Defendants from several small redoubts, and erected a Fort at the Port St. Mark, in which he left 200 Men with 18 pieces of Cannon, which he had taken from the Enemy.

8. The *Dutch* were now reduced to the last Extremity, when 3 Ships arrived from *Holland*, bringing Provisions, Ammunition and Men; as also an Account, that two Fleets were fitting out, the one to secure *Pernambuco*, the other to conquer *Bahia*. Near the same time, a small Ship and two Caravels, brought some relief to the Besiegers from *Portugal*. *John Fernandez Vieyra*, was several times warned, that a Conspiracy was carryed on against his Life; yet he still slighted the Advice, till being one day advanced from his Company, he saw three Fire-locks levelled at him, whereof only one gave Fire, and shot him through the Shoulder. Nevertheless he pardoned the Conspirators, contenting himself with only a verbal Check, given them Face to Face. Now at length, arrived a great Fleet from *Holland*, under the Command of *Sigismund Van Scop*, with 4000 Men, and all other Necessaries. To oppose this great Power, the *Portuguese* Commanders gather'd all the Soldiers and Inhabitants, that were before dispersed in places of less Consequence, and so considerably encreased their Force, that they stood no longer in fear of their Enemies. On the 5th. of *August*, *Sigismund Van Scop* march-

*The Dutch in Brazil receive Succors.*

ched with 1200 Men, to attack the Town of *Olinda*; but a pass that led to it, being well fortified, he twice assaulted it, and was as often repulsed with great loss, and himself wounded. The following Night, 1000 Men sallied upon one of the *Portuguese* Quarters, but with no better Success. After this, *Sigismund* raised some small Forts in convenient places, as well to secure that Coast, as to amuse his Enemies; his design being as soon as his Fleet could be made ready, to sail for *Bahia*, and make himself Master of that Place, but that belongs to another Year.

*Affairs in Africk and India.* 9. *Africk* this Year affords us nothing remarkable, only some Incurfions of *D. Galton Coutinho*, Governor of *Tangier*, and the Martyrdome of *Sebastian Gomez*, who suffered Death with exquisite Torments, for his constancy in the Faith. *D. Phillip Mascarenhas*, continued in the Government of *India*, where likewise there happened little of moment, by reason of the Truce with the *Dutch*; only about the latter end of *April*, 46 Sail lying at Anchor, without the Bar of *Goa*, ready to sail the next day; such a sudden violent Storm arose, that not a Vessel, or so much as one Man was saved, but all together perished in the Sea.

## Anno, 1647.

*Several Enterprises on the Frontiers of Alentejo.* 1. *John Mendez de Vasconcellos*, who still commanded in *Alentejo*, finding his Forces too weak to withstand the many Incurfions of the Enemy, applied himself with great diligence to fortifie the Frontiers, and particularly *Ouguela*, and *Campo Mayor*; but upon Advice, that the King had appointed *Martin Alfonso de Melo*, Governor of that Province, he retired to *Lisbon*, being unwilling to serve under him. *Andrew de Albuquerque*, General of the Artillery, commanded during the Absence of the Governour. No sooner was he vested with this Power, but the *Spaniards* made an Incurfion with all their Horse, into the Country, betwixt *Geromerla*, and *Eivas*, and carried away a great Prey; *Albuquerque*, though he drew out of *Eivas*, being too weak to oppose them. To revenge this, he sent *Henry de Lamore* with some Troops, to draw out the *Spaniards* of *Albuquerque*, which he managed so dexterously, that

that bringing them into an ambush they were totally routed, and 120 Horses taken. The Enemy made another Incurfion towards *Olivenza*, but as they retired, 200 *Portuguese* Horse Charging them in the Rear, recovered all the Booty. At this time came to *Eivas*, *Martin Alfonso de Melo*, the new Governour. The Baron de *Molinguem* General of Horse, Commanded the *Spanish* Forces. He gathered 1200 Horse, and advanced towards *Eivas*, 800 Horse, and three Regiments of Foot marched out upon the alarm. *Martin Alfonso* sent the Horse before, ordering *Andrew de Albuquerque* to Attack the Enemy, if he found them on this side the Rivers *Guadiana* or *Caya*. *Albuquerque* Detached the Commissary-General, *D. John de Ataide*, with four Troops, and the same Orders. *D. John* finding only a part of the Enemy on this side, would not Charge them, which *Antony Jaques de Payva* perceiving, he fell on with his Troop, but being overpowered, his Men fled; those with *D. John*, instead of seconding, followed their example, as did also those that were with *Albuquerque*. The *Spaniards* pursued, till they discovered our Foot, and *Andrew de Albuquerque* rallying his Horse under their shelter, when having no Foot, they drew off carrying away 40 Prisoners. *John Paschasius Cosmader*, our principal Ingenier, passing betwixt *Estremoz* and *Eivas*, was unhappily taken by a *Spanish* Party. The King offered the Count de *Singuen* in exchange for him, but the *Spaniards* left no methods untried to bring him to their Service, till at last they prevailed.

2. The Count de *Castello Melhor*, who Governed the Province betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, Understanding that the Count de *S. Estevan*, General of *Galicia*, was to March with 1500 Foot, and 400 Horse, to visit the Frontiers, sent out of *Salvaterra*, Collonel *Francis de Franca Barboza*, with 450 Foot, to possess himself of an Advantageous Post called *Maleytas*, near the River *Minho*, and a Musquet Shot from *Salvaterra*. The Adjutant *Labarta*, was Ordered with 20 Horse, to attack the Enemies Scouts, and as if he were Overpowered, to retire and draw the Enemy within the reach of the Foot. *Labarta* Executed his Orders, and was pursued by 5 Battalions of the Enemy. With *Francis de Franca*, were 100 *Dutch*, who fled at the sight of the Enemy, and many *Portuguese* followed their



their example, however *Francis de Franca* with such as stood by him made good his ground till the *Spaniards* retired. The Province *Tralos Montes* still preserved its quiet, both Parties being inclinable to admit of it. Count *Seren* who Governed *Beyra*, having Obtained Leave to quit that Post, the King divided it into two Parts, 'Appointing two Generals because the Province was Large. *D. Roderick de Castro* had the Territory about *Guarda*, *Pinhel* and *Lamego*. *D. Sancho Manuel* that about *Castelbranco*, *Viseu* and *Coimbra*. *D. Roderick* being come into his Province, immediately disposed all things for the Defence of it, and repulsed a Party of the Enemy that broke in by the way of *Alfayates*. His next design was to take the Fort of *Galegos*, 4 Leagues from *Almeyda*, and 2 from *Cuidad Rodrigo*. To this purpose he gathered 60 Foot of the *Standing-Forces*, and 2500 of the *Militia*, with 160 Horse, and 3 pieces of heavy Canon. On the 23d of *August*, he marched from *Almeyda*, and the next day came before *Gallegos*, Planned a battery, and began to play upon the Place, but perceiving it required more time to make a breach than he could well spare, and Understanding the Garrisons of all the Neighbouring places were marched to *Cuidad Rodrigo*, to Relieve *Gallegos*, he thought a Fair Opportunity was offered him of taking *St. Felices*, a Place of more consequence. Wherefore they Instantly broke up, and marched towards it with 120 Foot, and 120 Horse, and by the way Understood, that all the Garrison of the place was marched, except 300 Foot, and 800 of the Country People. Upon this advice he halted forwards, and giving the Assault at several places together, Entred the Town, Plundered and Burnt it. *D. Antony de Isasse*, the Governour having Lost 150 of his Men retired with the rest into the Castle, and *D. Roderick*, Returned with great Honour to *Almeida*. Severall other small Skirmishes hapned, in which the *Portugueses* still had the better, which so Encouraged *D. Roderick*, that gathering 800 Foot, and 150 Horse, he made an inroad into the Territory of *Cuidad Rodrigo*, Burning all the Open Towns, and utterly destroying the Country, without meeting the least opposition. *D. Sancho Manuel*, Governour of the other part of the Province, was not idle, but cut off 100 *Spaniards*, that had taken a prey in his district, and Fortified *Salva-*  
*terra*,

*terra*, upon advice that the Enemy were assembling a considerable body, which he was not able to Oppose in the Field.

3. This Year the King created his Eldest Son *Theo-* *A Design*  
*dofius*, Prince of *Brasil*, and began to Assign the Reve- *to Murder*  
nues of the House of *Braganza*, for the maintaining of *King John*,  
his House. As the King studied all means to secure his Crown, so the Ministers of *Spain* omitted not by all ways, tho' never so unjust, to contrive his destruction, and had now infallibly compassed it, had not a special Providence preserved him. One *Dominick Leyte*, a Native of *Lisbon*, who had been Clark in one of the Courts, and was well descended, fled to *Madrid*, where, having offered his Service to that King's Ministers, he undertook upon several great promises, and some rewards in possession, to Assassinate *King John*. In order to it, he returned to *Lisbon* in *May*, with one *Emanuel Roque*, where, by degrees, he hired several Houses in the *Turners-Street*, next the Church of *St. Nicholas*. He opened Doors all along from one House to another, made loopholes through the walls to the Street, and provided several Fire-locks loaded with Poisoned Bullets, to Shoot the King as he passed that way in procession upon *Corpus-Christi-day*; that if one piece should happen to fail, another might certainly hit. The day being come, and he lying in-wait, tho' he twice attempted to fire, his Heart failed him, and the King being passed, he shut the Doors, and went away to the Monastery of *Our Lady of Grace*, where *Emanuel Roque* expected him with two Horses, and they both returned to *Madrid*. There he framed excuses for missing of his Design; and receiving fresh encouragement, returned again to *Lisbon*. By the way, he discovered his Design to *Emanuel Roque*, who getting to Town before him, on pretence of taking a Lodging, discovered the Treason. *Dominick Leyte*, being Apprehended, Confessed the Crime, had both his Hands cut off, and was afterwards Hanged and Quartered.

4. The Marquess *de Niza*, who had been before Ambassador in *France*, was sent back this Year to sollicite the Concluding a League betwixt the two Crowns. He proposed to Cardinal *Mazarine* a Match betwixt Prince *Theodosius*, and the Eldest Daughter of the Duke of *Orleans*, which the Cardinal seemed to approve of, yet it took

*Negotiations at several Courts.*

took no effect, no more than the League at that time. However, King John sent three Men of War to joyn the French Fleet. At Rome, F. Nunho da Cunha, presented a long memorial to the Pope, pressing him to Confirm the Bishops Elected by the King, because of the great want of Prelates there was in all the Portuguese Dominions, but without any success; for three Popes successively, absolutely persisted in the denial. Francis de Souja Coutinho, who was Ambassador in Holland, after having interposed all the delays that could be admitted to hinder the States sending a Fleet to Pernambuco, finding they had now 30 Sail ready to put to Sea, boldly made use of certain blanks he had of the King's, to assure them that Pernambuco should be restored; which done, he immediately gave the King an Account thereof, desiring he would order him to be secured, and if it were necessary to take off his Head, to satisfy the States, rather than the fraud should be imputed to His Majesty. By this wile the Fleet was kept back from June till December, when it was put out three times, and was still beat back by unseasonable weather, to the great advantage of the Portuguese in Pernambuco. The King on the other hand, always pretended he had ordered his Subjects in that Province to lay down their Arms, that they maintained the War in Contempt of his Commands, and that the succours they had from Bahia, were all by stealth. Several proposals were made for buying those places the Dutch possessed there, but they all came to nothing.

Prosecution  
of the War  
in Brazil.

3. We left Sigismund Vanscop, the Dutch Commander at Pernambuco, preparing his Fleet to attempt the Conquest of Bahia: All things being in readiness, he set sail from the Coast of Pernambuco called Arrecifo, about the end of January steering his course for the River of St. Francis, the better to conceal his Design upon Bahia. There he took in what necessities he wanted, and being joyned by Anderson's Squadron, sent thither before, put to Sea again, and soon appeared before Bahia. Fearing to attempt the City, he Anchored at the Island Taparica, opposite to it, and three Leagues distant, where he speedily erected a Fort, and four redoubts on as many Hills that Command it, then stretched out his Fleet, so that all the Shoar lay exposed to his Cannon. Antony Tellez the Governour of Bahia, fortified the passage,

from

from the Island to the City, but adventuring contrary to the advice of the Council of War to Attack the Hollanders in their strength, was repulsed with great loss. This done, he immediately sent advice to the King, of the Condition he was in, who ordered him speedy relief. Twelve Ships were fitted out, under the Command of Antony Tellez de Menezes, Count de Villa-Pouca, with Orders, that after relieving Bahia, five of them should be delivered to Salvador Correa de Sá, and Benavides appointed Governour of the Province of Rio de Janeiro, and Captain-General for the Kingdom of Angola. His instructions were to endeavour the recovery of that Kingdom, basely usurped by the Dutch, after they had overthrown Peter Cesar de Meneses, under colour of friendship, as was said before. The Fleet set sail, and the Dutch at Pernambuco having intelligence of it, and fearing it was designed against them, earnestly pressed Sigismund Vanscope to quit Bahia, and come to their assistance, for they were much pressed by the Besiegers. The Portuguese Governours at Pernambuco, perceiving that the Dutch about Rio Grande improved that Countrey, which was a great relief to the Besieged, sent Major Antony Dias Cardoso with 300 Men, who destroyed all he found there, driving away 200 Prisoners, and a vast number of Cattle. After this, Andrew Vidal marched with 800 Men to Ceará Merim, on the North of Rio Grande, and wasted all that Territory, killing 70 Hollanders, and bringing away many Prisoners, and as much Cattle as supplied the want of Provisions there was before in the Camp. Whilst these 800 Men were abroad, the Besieged made several Sallies, but without any success, and John Fernandez Vieira to curb them, ordered that several Parties should continually keep the Enemy in alarm. Then the more to streighten them, he raised a Fort opposite to one the Dutch had built to cover the City Mauricia, which he managed with such dexterity, keeping them always upon their guard, that though it was begun about the beginning of October, they never perceived the work till the 6th of November, when our Artillery began to play upon the City, the Shoar and the bar, for all those places were within reach. We also Attacked and carried the Palace of Count Nassau, guarded by two Companies, which having Plundered, our Men returned without any loss. At this time

time *Sigismund Vanscop* returned with his Fleet, having abandoned his Fort at the Island *Taparica*, before the Arrival of our Fleet. The Count *de Villapouca* Arrived at *Babia*, eight days after the Enemy had abandoned the Fort; but eight of their Ships again appeared upon the Coast. Some Ships went out to receive them, and after a long dispute, two *Portugueses* and as many *Dutch* were burnt and sunk. The Count took possession of the Government of *Babia*, and *Antony Tellez de Silva* the former Governour remained there about his private Affairs, but with ill success, as will hereafter appear. The five Ships designed for *Angola*, went away in December, to join *Salvador Correa*, at *Rio de Janeiro*; what they did we shall see in its place.

How things  
stood in A-  
frick and  
India.

6. *D. Gaston Continho*, Governour of *Tangier*, never ceased to infest the *Moors*, and overthrew some parties of theirs that came to ravage the Territories of *Tangier*. This Year the Fleet of *Spain* consisting of 47 Ships and several small Vessels, and Commanded by *D. John of Austria*, appeared before that City, as if it were designed to Land Men, but after some Hours Canonading on both sides, put to Sea again. *D. John Luis de Vasconcellos*, who Commanded at *Marzagam*, sent Presents to the *Alcayde* of *Azamora*, and the King of *Morocco*, to purchase their friendship; yet the *Alcayde* with 300 Horse, made an Incurfion to the Walls of *Marzagam*, and though *D. John* fought with him from nine in the Morning till three in the Afternoon, he was forced to retire, being overpowered by the number of the Infidels. In *India*, the King of *Marava*, commonly called *Teveré*, trusting to the strength of the Island *Ramanancor*, revolted from the *Nayque* of *Madure*, to whom he was tributary. The *Nayque* asked the assistance of the *Portugueses*, for conveying his Forces into the Island. They sent a Fleet to his aid, and by their means the Rebel was reduced, and they received the Reward promised for their assistance. Four Ships sailed this Year from *Lisbon* to *India*, two whereof perished in the Latitude of *Mozambique*.

Anno, 1648.

Anno, 1648.

THE Count *de St. Lorenzo*, govern'd *Alentejo*, and with great industry disposed all things for the defence of that Province. *D. James Mexia* Marquess of *Leganes* came the second time to *Badajoz*, to Command the *Spanish* Forces. His coming was the cause that all the *Portuguese* preparations were redoubled, new Forces raised, and the Frontiers fortified. Whilst the main Bodies were gathering on both sides, the Marquess *de Leganes* sent 600 Horse by the way of *Albuquerque* to plunder the Countrey as far as *Marvao*. The Count *St. Lorenzo*, having timely notice of it, sent *Achim de Tamericourt*, the Commissary-General, with 400 Horse and Orders to fight wheresoever he should meet him. *Tamericourt*, executed his Orders with so much bravery, that meeting the Enemy near *Portalegre*, he soon routed them, took 200 Prisoners, and recovered all the prey. This disaster provoked the Marquess *de Leganes* to hasten putting in execution his Design upon *Olivenza*, which place, the Ingenier *Cosmander* (who before we said was won by the *Spaniards*) had ingaged to put into the Catholick King's hands without much difficulty. On the 20th of June, he appeared at break of day before *Olivenza*, with 8000 Foot and 3000 Horse. *Cosmander*, who had the directing of the Attack, divided these Troops into four parts, ordering them to give the Assault in as many places; reserving to himself a barrier of the covered way, where the Soldiers used to come out to work. The *Spaniards* advanced with resolution, and mounted two Bulwarks before the Centinels gave the Alarm. The Soldiers of the next Guards, and some of the Inhabitants hastening to the places where the danger was, maintained the Fight till the rest of the Garrison came to their relief. *D. John de Menezes* the Governour, at the first Alarm, ran half Naked with his Sword in his hand into the Street, and with his example so encouraged the Soldiers, that they drove the Enemy, forcing many to cast themselves down headlong from the Bullwarks. Yet the danger was not over, for in other places the *Spaniards* had turned some Cannon of the other Bullwarks

Bullwarks upon the City, and many fell on both sides. *D. John*, though he had received three wounds, ceased not to act, as well as give out Orders. The danger lasted till it was clear day; when *Cosmander* thinking to force the barrier of the covered way, was shot dead from the Wall. His death put an end to the dispute, for though the *Marquess de Leganez* dismounted his Horse to carry on the Assault; those that were drove out so discouraged the others that were to come on, that the *Marquess* was forced to sound a retreat, and immediately returned to *Badajoz*. After this in several small rencounters the *Portugueses* were successful against the *Spaniards*; took a considerable Convoy from them near *Albuquerque*; and the Count de *St. Lorenzo* made an Incursion as far as *Talavera*, whence he returned with a great Booty, passing in sight of *Badajoz*, in hopes the *Marquess de Leganez* might be drawn out, but he stirred not. Some difference arising betwixt the Count and *John Mendes de Vasconcellos*, who had governed that Province before, the King sent the latter Prisoner to the Old-Tower, where he remained till the time we shall speak of him hereafter. In all the other parts of the Kingdom, there was no Action of any consideration this Year.

Birth of  
King  
John's Son  
Peter, now  
Reigning.  
Negociations  
in  
France  
and Rome.

2. On the 26th of *April*, was Born the King's third Son, Prince *Peter*, (now King) and was Baptized by the Bishop of *Elvas*, with all Solemnity and publick Demonstration of Joy. The *Marquess de Niza*, who was Ambassador in *France*, ceased not to sollicite the conclusion of a League betwixt the two Crowns, but all his endeavours proved successless; whereupon, in *February* of the following Year, he left *Paris*, and returned home. *F. Nunho da Cunha*, was still at *Rome*, soliciting the Affairs of *Portugal*. Two *Capucins* came to *Rome* with the Title of Ambassadors from the King of *Congo*, to give his Obedience to the Pope, and obtain of him Bishops and Missioners, for propagating of the Faith. The Pope gave them publick Audience, and appointed an Arch-Bishop, two Bishops, and 30 Missioners, *Spaniards* and *Italians*, giving them a Sum of Money, and ordering them to embark in some port of *Spain*. *F. Nunho da Cunha*, opposed the sending of these Bishops and Missioners, because that the Kingdom of *Congo* appertained to the Conquest of *Portugal*, and

*Emanuel*

*Dr. Emanuel Alvarez Corrillo*, was sent from *Lisbon* by the King, to second him as well in that, as solliciting the Expediting of Bulls for the Bishops of *Portugal*, but all they could effect, was only to stop the Voyage of the Bishops and Missioners of *Congo*.

3. Whilst these things happened in *Europe*, the Dutch Success of continued blocked up on the Coast of *Pernambuco*. In the *Portuguese* January, the *Portuguese* Governors of that Province, received Intelligence, that the Fleet under the Count de *gainst the Villa Pouca*, was arrived at *Bahia*, but that no Succour Dutch in Brazil. was to be expected from thence. They were no ways dismayed at this News, but resolved to proceed more vigorously than before. Accordingly they sent *Henry Dias* with his own Regiment, and some Companies of *D. Antony Philip Camarao*, to *Rio Grande*. He march'd with such Secresie and Expedition, that the Enemy knew nothing of it, till they felt the effects of his Arrival, for he Burnt and destroyed all before him. Such as could escape, retired to *Gurairas*, a fortified place in a Lake, but he attacked, and carryed that also by Night, putting all within to the Sword, without sparing Sex or Age. Thence he marched to *Cunbau*, which was also fortified, yet was deliver'd up, those within only compounding for their Lives. The King at last considering of how great Consequence it was to expell the Dutch out of *America*, sent *Francis Barreto de Menezes*, with two small Vessels, and 300 Men to command there, as Camp-Master General. By the way, he met a Dutch Squadron, by whom he was taken, and carryed Prisoner to *Arrecife*, where he was kept in Custody 9 Months, and at last made his Escape, with one *Francis Bra*, Son to the Officer that had him in keeping. Being come into the *Portuguese* Quarters, he joyned with *John Fernandez Vieyra*, and *Andrew Vidal* being positively set down to endure the utmost Extremities, rather than forsake the Enterprize they had in hand. They sent Captain *Paul de Cunha*, to sollicite some Succours from the Count de *Villa Pouca*, at *Bahia*, but he returned without any, at such time as a Fleet was arrived from *Holland*, which consisted of 44 Sail, with 9000 Land-Men aboard it, besides Sea-Men, when it came out, but some had perished in a Storm. Upon the Arrival of this great Power, the *Portuguese* gather'd all their Forces, quitting the most distant, and least advantageous

Posts;



Posts; and yet after all, they could make up but 2200 Men fit for Service. *Sigismund Vanscop*, who commanded the *Dutch*, proclaimed a Pardon to all Slaves, or *Portugueses*, that should come over to him, but it took no effect. On the 18th. of *April*, he took the Field with 7500 Foot, 500 Seamen, 300 *Indians*, 5 pieces of Cannon, and a great quantity of Ammunition; and marching to the Fort *Barreta*, the Captain who commanded there, unadvisedly went out with 80 Men, most of whom were kill'd, the Captain taken, and his Ensign surrendred the Fort. *Francis Barreto*, who commanded the *Portugueses*, having called a Council of War, it was resolv'd to give the Enemy Battle, though at such great odds, rather than stay to be beaten out of all their Posts by degrees. According to this Resolution they march'd, and post'd themselves in a small Plain, at the Foot of the Mountains *Gararapes*, on the 16th. of *April*. They sent out Major *Antony Diaz Cardoso*, with 20 Men to observe the Enemy, who stirr'd not that Nighr, but appear'd next Morning, being *Low Sunday*, upon the Mountains; *Antony Dias* with his 20 Men, and 40 *Indians* that had joyned him, skirmish'd in their Van. The Enemy drawing near, our Men attack'd them with Sword in Hand, and at the first Charge disorder'd their Van, which retiring to the other Troops, endeavour'd to rally. *Henry Dias*, with his Regiment, pressing hard upon them, was overpower'd by the fresh Troops, and forced to give way, so that many of the *Portugueses* who were disorder'd in Confidence of the Victory, began to fly. *Francis Barreto*, in good time rally'd them, and charging the Enemy again, recover'd the Day. Yet the *Dutch* were not soon broke, for the Fight continued four Hours very obstinate. At last the *Dutch* gave way, and retir'd to a Hill, whether *Francis Barreto* thought not good to pursue them, because his Men were spent with Travel, and fasting 24 Hours. There were taken 33 Colours, many Arms, and a great Booty. At Night the Enemy return'd to the Shoar, leaving behind 1000 Dead, and carrying 523 wounded; of the *Portugueses*, 80 were killed, and 400 wounded. This done, *Francis Barreto* march'd back to possess his former Quarters, hoping the Enemy was not in a Condition to destroy them, and so it prov'd; for they had only possess'd themselves of the Fort *Barreta*, and Town of *O-linda*,

*linda*, which last he resolv'd to recover. At Night he sent *Henry Diaz* with his Regiment, and some other Companies, who drove out the Enemy, killing 160 of them, and recover'd 5 pieces of Canon. *Francis Barreto* order'd the Works to be rais'd, and his Men to retire to their Post. *Sigismund Vanscop* sent a Drum, demanding exchange of Prisoners, which was refus'd, and they all sent away to *Bahia*. Some Ships of the *Dutch* Fleet that had been separated by Storm, arriv'd now, *Sigismund* several times attack'd the Quarters of *Henry Dias*, but was as often valiantly repuls'd by the *Blacks*. There was great want of Men and Provisions in our Quarters, which was in some measure remedy'd by the arrival of Collonel *Francis de Figueyroa* from *Bahia*, with 300 Men, and a quantity of Cattle. The joy of this Succour was abated by the Death of *D. Antony Philip Camarao*, Governor of the *Indians*, a good Christian, and resolute Soldier. *Sigismund Vanscop* perceiving Fortune favour'd him not at *Pernambuco*, put to Sea with some Ships, and landing in several parts of *Bahia*, return'd with a great Booty he had gather'd. *Francis Barreto* growing better vers'd in the Affairs of that Country, continued the War with good Conduct, as we shall see in the following Years.

4. It has been said above, that *Salvador Correa* was sent from *Lisbon* with the Title of Governour of *Rio de Janeiro*, and General of the Kingdom of *Angola*. In January, he arriv'd at *Rio de Janeiro*, and found there *Emanuel Pacheco de Mello*, with the 5 Ships sent by the Count de *Villa Pouca*, in pursuance of the King's Orders. *Salvador Correa* was no sooner landed, but he call'd a Council to deliberate about recovering the Kingdom of *Angola*. It was unanimously resolv'd to go upon the Enterprize, and for the carrying of it on, the Inhabitants contributed 55000 Cruzadoes (which is 7333*l.* 6*s.*—54*d.*) This encouraged him to hire 6 Ships, and buy 4 small Vessels. He list'd 900 Land Men, and 600 Sea-men, and having made all necessary Provision for them, sail'd for *Angola* on the 12th. of *May*, with 15 Sail. The weather prov'd so bad, his small Vessels could not keep up with him. However he arriv'd at *Quicombo*, where he was order'd to raise a Fort, and landed to view the place. Five days after, arriv'd his Vice-Admiral, and two of the small Vessels, but the

G g

Nighr

The Dutch  
beaten out  
of Angola  
in Africk.

Night following, the Vice-Admiral sunk in the Bay, without the least Wind, no Man knowing what should be the cause of it. In her perished 360 Men, for only two were saved. *Salvador Correa* called a Council, where he proposed, that though the King's Orders were not to make War upon the *Dutch*, as supposing they lived peaceably with the *Portugueses*, yet finding on the Contrary, that they ceased not to make War upon those who were retired up the Country; he thought it was but reasonable to assist their Country Men, and expell those Usurpers. All that were present answered, they would either recover *Angola*, or dye. With this unanimous Consent he set sail again, and arrived at *Loanda*. Having taken a *Black*, he reported that 300 *Dutch*, with 3000 *Blacks* so streightned the *Portugueses*, who were fled to the City *Mafangano*, that it was impossible to have any Correspondence with them. Having received this Confirmation of the unjust proceedings of the *Dutch*, he sent to summon the Governor of *Loanda* to surrender. This Message so surprized him, that he sent to desire only 8 days, to resolve what was to be done. *Salvador Correa* perceiving this was only to gain Time to call in their Men that were Abroad, replied he would grant two Days, after which they must expect to be treated with the utmost Rigour. They accepted of the offer, and in that time gather'd all the Force they could into the Fort of *St. Michael*, which commands the City, and that of *our Lady* on the Shoar, both which can contain 5000 Men. At the expiration of the two days, *Salvador Correa* sent to know whether they were ready to surrender; but they answered, they were resolved to hold out to the last. Hereupon he instantly landed 900 Men, and marched to the Town, which he entred without Opposition, possessing himself of the Fort *S. Antony* abandoned by the Enemy, who had left in it 8 pieces of Canon, whereof only two were nailed. With the other 6 and 4 Demi-Canon brought from the Ships, he formed two Batteries that Night, which at break of Day began to play on the Fort of *St. Michael*, but not with any considerable effect. *Salvador Correa* displeased at this disappointment, and more at the News, that the *Dutch* had defeated the *Portugueses* at *Mafangano*, resolved to venture upon a desperate Action, which was to assault both the Forts, joyned by a Line of Communication, and de-

defended by 1200 *Dutch*, *French* and *Germans*, and as many *Blacks*. Accordingly at break of Day, the assault was given, and though bravely carryed on, he was forc'd to retire, leaving 163 Men killed, and carrying off 160 wounded. However he resolved upon a second attack, but the Enemy prevented him, by hanging out a white Flag, and surrendring the Forts. Five days after the Surrender, the *Dutch* that were abroad in the Country, being 250, with 2000 *Blacks*, upon Advice that the Forts were besieged, came to relieve them, but finding them lost, agreed to be sent away with the rest; notwithstanding the Queen *Ginga*, and the King of *Congos* Officers encouraged them to continue the War. The Fort of *Benguela* hearing what had happened at *Loanda*, was immediately surrendred by the *Dutch* that held it. *Salvador Correa*, having gathered all the *Portugueses* that were dispersed about the Mountains, repeopl'd the City *Loanda*, and sent some Vessels to recover the Island *St. Thomas*. But those *Dutch* that he sent away, passing by that Island, and giving an account of their ill success, their Country Men there, went away with them, leaving behind their Artillery, and most of their Ammunition, which the *Portuguese* Inhabitants soon made themselves Masters of. Not content with this, *Salvador Correa* sent all along that Coast, to all places where the *Dutch* had factories, and in two Months, wholly cleared the Country of them. Being now rid of the *Dutch*, *Salvador Correa*, resolved to take Revenge of Queen *Ginga*, the King of *Congo*, and their Confederates, who had assisted them. He gave the Charge of this Expedition to *Bartholomew de Vasconcellos*, with whom joyned the King of *Dongo*, and the *Faga* of *Ambaca*, who had always been faithful to the *Portugueses*. *Vasconcellos*, soon reduced the King of *Congo*, and other lesser Princes; the Island of *Loando*, being taken from the former, and new Tributes imposed on him, as a Punishment of his Infidelity. Queen *Ginga* fled 300 Leagues up the Country. This Queen was Daughter to a King of *Angola*, who was beheaded by the *Portugueses*, in revenge whereof, she gathered all the Youth she could, killing the old People and Children wherever she came, and continued a savage Life in the Mountains with these Robbers, always watching all Opportunities of doing harm to the *Portugueses*. Now at length being driven

up the Country, she sent an Ambassador, and concluded Peace with *Salvador Correa*, who so well settled that Kingdom, that it continues ever since under the Dominion of *Portugal*.

*Africk and India.* 5. *D. Gaston Coutinho*, continued in the Government of *Tangier*, making many inroads into the Country in which he gained much Honour; but the Forces in that City being but small, he could not make so great advantages as might otherwise be expected, of his Valor and Conduct. *De Philip Mascarenbas*, the Vice-Roy of *India*, sent *D. Alvaro de Ataide*, with a Squadron, to the Coast of *Coromandel*, to fortifie the Town of *Negapatam*, which the *Portugueses* had lately built. The *Nayque* of *Tanjaor*, in whose Territory it stood, sent an Army to hinder the Work. *D. Alvaro* landed 500 Men, and after a sharp Dispute, put the *Indians* to flight, with much slaughter. This done, he saw the Fortifications finished, and returned to *Goa*; nothing more of Note happened in *India*, during the Government of *D. Philip Mascarenbas*, which lasted till the Year 1651. The War in *Portugal* being prosecuted with small Force on both sides, and the Campaign being often spent in small Incursions, do not afford much matter worthy an History, which is the Reason, the Relations of Affairs at home are so short; and the Actions abroad being very considerable, though I endeavour to reduce them to as small Compass as may be; yet because I would omit nothing that is remarkable, they often swell to a greater Bulk than the Domestick, and force me to insilt longer upon them then I had designed.

Anno, 1649.

*Count St. Lorenzo* 1. **W**E left the Count *de S. Lorenzo*, governing the Province of *Alentejo* with good success. This Year, knowing that some Troops of Foreign Horse were come to *Badajoz*, he promised Rewards to all Soldiers or Officers that should come over to him, performing his Promise to the full, with the first that deserted; so that in a short time, the greatest part of them quitted the *Spanish* Service. At this time, all Prisoners on both sides, as well Soldiers as Officers, not above the Degree of a Captain, were set at liberty on both sides. In

April

April, 600 *Spanish* Horse driving the Cattle betwixt *Fronteyra* and *Cabeza de Vide*, were resolutely Charged by the Commissary General *Tamercourt* with 16 Troops, and utterly defeated, 120 of them killed and double the Number taken. The *Baron de Molinguen* the *Spanish* Camp-Master General after this defeat quitted his Post, and *D. Francis de Tutavilla* Duke of *S. German* succeeded him. At the Request of the Count *de S. Lorenzo* the Commissary General *Tamercourt*, was made Lieutenant General of Horse, and a Commendary given to the other Commissary *Du Quesne*. There being also great want of Horse, King *John* sold Crown-Lands to the value of 4000 *Cruzadoes per Ann*: to buy Horses to Mount the Cavalry, rather than impose new Taxes upon the People. The Horse being recruited, their General *Andrew de Albuquerque* Marched with the whole Body and the Foot of *Elvas*, *Olivenz*, and *Campo Mayor* thinking to reduce *Albuquerque*. He plundered and burnt the suburbs, but was repulsed by the Town and Castle and returned with loss. Neither had *John Homem Cardoso* sent out by him with 100 Horse, to surprise a *Spanish* Troop, better success, for Meeting 15 *Spanish* Horse he charged them and they kept him in play, till 7 Troops came up and took *John Homem* and 60 of his party. *Tamercourt* now Lieutenant General Marched with 900 Horse to Revenge this loss, and having drawn out the Enemy from *Badajoz* and *Talavera*, tho' they were more Numerous than he, put them to flight killing 250, with the loss of 40 of his own. These are the most Remarkable actions of this Year in the Province of *Alentejo*.

2. Count *Castello Melhor*, who till now Governed the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, was called away to go Governour of *Brasil*, and the Viscount *D. James de Lima* succeeded him in his former Post. *D. James* That Province scarce felt any effects of War except de *Lima*, Two or 3 inconsiderable incursions, after which both Governour Parties again rested, as if it were in Time of Peace. *D. Hierome de Ataide* Count *de Atouguia* was now sent to Command in the Province *Trais Montes*, where finding the Standing-Forces very weak, he Endeavoured to secure the Country the best he could with the Militia. Whilst he went to provide for the Safety of *Braganza*, the Commissary General of Horse *La Morle* Commanded

ded at *Chaves*, but had positive Orders only to stand upon the Defensive. Nevertheless he marched with 220 Foot and 90 Horse, to plunder the Town of *Umbra*, which having performed and returned with the booty, he was set upon by 1500 Foot and 350 Spanish Horse, who cut in pieces 140 of his Men and made the rest prisoners, except some few Horse with whom he fled to *Chaves*, where he Dyed of the Wounds he had received.

D. Roderick de Castro in the Province of Beira.

3. D. Roderick de Castro, who by reason of sickness had been absent; Returning to his Government of part of the Province of *Beira*, sent Captain Francis Naper with 100 Horse, and Orders to lay himself close in ambush Two Leagues from *Cuidad Rodrigo*, whence he was to detach a small party to drive the cattle about that City, that so 4 Troops which were in Garrison there might be drawn into the Snare. He Executed his Orders so successfully, that the Spaniards disorderly pursuing the detached Party, he fell in and cut off 30 of them, putting the rest to flight. The Enemy revenged this misfortune upon the poor Country People, killing many unarmed, in return for which cruelty, D. Roderick with 600 Foot and 200 Horse, marched to *Sabugo* a Town Two Leagues from *Cuidad Rodrigo*, of about 300 Houses which he plundered and burnt down to the ground. The Spaniards assembling a good Body pursued him retreating, but he drawing up at their approach, they marched off. After this D. Roderick joyning his Forces with D. Sancho Manuel who Governed the other part of the Province, they both together burnt many open Towns in the Territory of *Cuidad Rodrigo*, and returned with a considerable booty. That part of the Province which was subject to D. Sancho Manuel was this Year free from any acts of hostility.

The Dutch prepare to make War upon Portugal.

4. The affairs of Portugal both at Rome and in France, continued in the same posture we left them the last Year. Francis de Sousa Coutinho still continued in Holland much hated by that People, who looked upon him as a Faithless man, for the many assurances he had given them of the Kings quitting *Pernambuco*, which they saw took no Effect. Nor was the King and Council better satisfied with him, because of the great Expence he made and small Success of his Negotiation. At length the States Ordered Francis de Sousa to depart, being resolved to declare War against Portugal, to which purpose they

they fitted up 25 Sail in *Zealand*, sent supplies to *Pernambuco*, and ordered 12 Ships carrying 2800 Souldiers for that Coast. Not long after they directed Francis Coutinho to obtain a new Commission from the King, for that they had important matters to Treat with him about. He Acquainted the King with it, and D. John de Menezes who was appointed to succeed him dying, he continued there till the following Year. Antony de Sousa de Macedo at this time Embassador in England, was Ordered to withdraw from that Court, that he might not be a witness to the most infamous act that ever subjects committed against their lawfull Sovereign, in the unparalleled Murder of King Charles the I.

5. Whilst these things hapned in Europe, the Forces at *Pernambuco* were not idle. Sigismund Vanscop, as has been said, was Arrived at *Arrecife*; and now the Besieged began to think of some Enterprize. On the other side, Francis Barreto, though weak, still lived in hopes, for he had promise of succours from *Bahia*, and was informed from *Lisbon*, that the King had settled a West-India Company, like that of Holland. Francis Barreto, omitted nothing on his part that could tend to the compassing of his Design. Collonel Brink, Commanded the Dutch, under Vanscop; and some Italians that deserted from the Portugueses, informing him how weak they were, he obtained leave to march into the Field, to undertake some considerable Enterprize, and disposed all things in order to it. Barreto having notice thereof, gathered all his Men that were dispersed, repaired his Works, ordered the Bridge of St. Bartholomew to be fortified, and all the people that attended their Plantations to be ready upon the first Alarm. On the 18th of February, Collonel Brink, marched out with 5000 Foot, 700 Pioniers, and six pieces of Cannon, guarded by 300 Sea-men, and advanced towards the Fort Barreto, whence without halting, they departed towards the Mountains *Gararapes*; upon advice hereof, Barreto called a Council of War, in which, it was resolved to follow and give them Battle; and accordingly he set out with 2600 Portugueses, Blacks and Indians. About four in the Afternoon, they reached the Mountains *Gararapes*, and found the Enemy posted on some of them with Guards in the Valleys. Some were for Charging them immediately, but because the Men

Progress of the Portuguese Arms in Brazil.



were weary, it was put off till the next day. That Night many of the Inhabitants that were dispersed about the Countrey reinforced the Camp. Morning discovered the Enemy in the same posts as the day before, and *Francis Barreto* was resolved to expect they should Attack him. Thus they continued till about One in the Afternoon, when the *Dutch* beginning to move, *Barreto* sent Collonel *Andrew Vidal* along the side of a Hill, to possess himself of the Top. *John Fernandez Vieyra*, with 800 Men advanced along the plain betwixt the Hills. Both of them met with vigorous opposition, but their example animating the Men, they put the Enemy to flight in both places. Thence they marched at the same time to beat the Enemy from the Top of a Hill which Collonel *Brink* himself maintained, in which place, they advanced not much till *Brink* being shot dead, his Men were dismayed, and then all fled outright. The *Portugueses* pursued as far as the Fort *Barreta*, the dispute having lasted from two of Clock till eight at Night. Of the victors 47 were killed, and above 200 were wounded, of the *Dutch*, above 2000 were left dead in the Field, and among them Collonel *Brink*, the Prisoners and wounded Men were yet more numerous. The *Dutch* Standard, 10 Colours, six pieces of Cannon, and a great quantity of Arms, Ammunition, and Provisions were taken. *Francis Barreto* having no more Men than just sufficed to carry on the Siege, undertook no other Action this Year. On the 4th of November, sailed from *Lisbon* to *Bahia*, the first Fleet set out by the new Company. The Count *de Castello Melhor*, appointed Governour of *Brazil*, Commanded it, and *Peter Jaques de Magellaens* was to bring it back.

Tangier  
and India.

6. *D. Gaston Coutinho*, still continued Governour of *Tangier*, and had some small rencounters with the *Moors*, but no Action hapned of moment. He repaired the Walls of the City, cleared the ditch, and settled there the Redemption of Captives, which till then was managed at *Ceuta*. In November he resigned the Government to *D. Luis Lobo da Sylveira*, Baron of *Alvito*, and returned to *Lisbon*. At *Marzagao*, there was nothing remarkable this Year, except the death of the Governour. The King appointed *Nunho da Cunha da Costa* to succeed him. Neither doth *India* afford us any thing, because the Truce continued with the *Dutch*, and *D.*

*Philip*

*Philip Mascarenhas*, the Vice-Roy, was in amity with the *Indian Kings*.

Anno, 1650.

1. THE Province of *Alentejo*, still continued under the Government of the Count *de St. Lorenzo*. Whilst he made the necessary preparations to oppose the Enemy. It hapned that the Princes *Rupert* and *Maurice*, Sons to the Count *Palatin*, put into *Lisbon*, flying before the Fleet of the *English*, which Anchored before the Bar. King *John* generously resolving to protect the two Princes, ordered the Count *de St. Lorenzo*, to send to *Lisbon* three Regiments of Foot, and 200 Horse. The want of these Troops in the Province was supplied by the Militia. The *Spaniards* understanding that the Frontier Garrisons were weakened, sent all their Horse to lie in wait for the Garrison of *Oliveza*, who by Night without being discovered, posted themselves in the Olive-Gardens about the place. *John Homem Cardoso*, going out in the Morning with his Troop to discover, on a sudden perceived his retreat was cut off. However, he was no way dismayed, but closing his Ranks, and joyning Captain *William Lanier*, a French-Man, who supported him, he resolutely forced his way through the Enemies Squadrons; and recovered the Town without any considerable loss. The *Spaniards* returned to *Badajoz*. Some days after, the Count *de St. Lorenzo* sent *Tamercourt* with 800 Horse, to attempt somewhat against the Garrison of that City. *Giles Vaz Lobo*, who led the Van with 50 Horse, Attacked the discoverers that came from the Town, and pursued them to the Gates, taking 20 of them; which done, they drew off, and the next day *Tamercourt* routed two Troops between *Badajoz* and *Albuquerque*. Winter drawing on, the Count *de St. Lorenzo*, procured leave to return to Court, and the Camp-Master-General *D. John de Costa*, governed the Province in his absence. He received intelligence that the *Spaniards* assembled their Troops, and threatened the Territory of *Castello de Vide* and *Portalegre*. *Andrew de Albuquerque*, General of Horse was sent to oppose them, who laying himself close in ambush at *Melrisso*, sent out 40 Horse

The Princes  
*Rupert*  
and *Mau-*  
*rice*, fly to  
*Lisbon*,  
from the  
*English*,  
and are  
protected.

Horse to Charge the advanced Parties of the *Spaniards*, which they did, and retired to their Body. But the *Spaniards* suspecting the Design, would not pursue them, and the *Portugues* Troops rising out of their ambush, the Enemy thought not fit to encounter them, but retired leaving their prey, which was restored to the Countrey people. Of the *Spaniards* in the pursuit, 124 were taken, and among them a Captain of Horse and some sutlers. Not content with this, *D. John de Costa* marched with 2000 Foot, and 1800 Horse, sending *Tamericourt* before with 600 Horse, to plunder the Towns of *Arroyo* and *Malpartida*, ordering him to make his Retreat so leasurly that the Enemy might assemble their Forces. He executed it according to his Orders, and was pursued by a great Body of Horse and Foot, under the Command of *D. Alvaro de Viveros* General of the *Spanish* Horse, who perceiving *Tamericourt*, was supported by *D. John de Costa*, with so strong a Party, retired without doing any thing. *D. John de Costa* pursued him for some space, but to no effect; and Winter being now advanced, he had not the opportunity of undertaking any considerable Enterprize.

Small incursions made by the Spaniards. 2. The Province between the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*, afforded not any matter for History. That of *Tras os Montes* governed by the Count de *Atouguia*, had not any considerable Action; Only the Count de *St. Estevan* who Commanded the *Spaniards* on those Frontiers gathered his Forces, as if he designed some considerable Enterprize; but understanding the Count de *Atouguia*, was in a good posture to receive him, he contented himself with burning two small Towns, and dismissed his Troops to their several Garrisons. After this, a Party of the Enemy, consisting of 1000 Men made an incursion from *Monterey*, and ravaged a part of the neighbouring Countrey, driving away a considerable booty. The Count de *Atouguia*, upon the first notice hereof, marched out with a small number, and meeting a Party of the *Spaniards*, easily put them to the rout, the rest retired with precipitation to *Monterey*. *D. Roderick de Castro*, and *D. Sancho Manuel*, betwixt whom the Government of the Province of *Beira* was divided, as we have seen before, were both this Year employed in raising Forces; the former for *Alentejo*, to make up for those that had been sent thence to *Lisbon*, to oppose the

English.

*English*, and the latter to secure the Conquests in *India*. Both of them had some reincounters with the *Spaniards*, who broke into their Territories; and they also made some incursions upon the Enemy, for the most part with success. But all these Actions being performed by small Parties, and much alike to what have been already related; to particularize them all would swell to a Volume, and will only serve to tire the Reader, wherefore I have thought fit to pass by most of them. The last expedition of *D. Sancho* this Year, was, the taking and burning the Town of *Huelga*, abandoned by the Inhabitants, who secured themselves in a Tower. Hence he returned home, with a considerable booty, which he had gathered in the neighbouring Countrey, without meeting the least opposition.

3. This Year proved unfortunate at Sea. *Antony Tellez de Menezes*, Count de *Villapouca*, having resigned the Government of *Brazil* to the Count de *Castello Melhor*, set sail for *Lisbon*, with the Men of War that had carried the latter. *Peter Jaques de Magalhaens*, Admiral of the *West-India* Company Fleet, set out at the same time with 18 Men of War, and 80 Merchantmen. Having made the length of the *Tercera* Islands, such a Storm arose, that four of the King's Ships were cast away, and in them *Antony Tellez de Sylva*, with most of the Men. The Count de *Villapouca*, and *Peter Jaques*, with the Ships under his Command, arrived safe in *Lisbon*, and brought a considerable return for the great expences the Company had been at. The Princes *Rupert*, and *Maurice*, (as was said at the beginning of this Year) having put into the River of *Lisbon*, and *Blake* Admiral of the *English*, in pursuit of them, coming to an Anchor at *Cascaes*, it was debated in Council, whether the Princes should be protected, and after hearing all that could be said on both sides, the King generously resolved on the Affirmative. *Blake*, resolving to Attack them in the Port, the King fitted out 13 Men of War, under the Command of *Antony de Siqueira Vaz*, an old Soldier. The two Princes joyning this Squadron, they put to Sea to meet the Enemy, having Orders to Fight betwixt the two Capes, but the Enemy upon their approach, standing to Sea, they returned into the Port without engaging. *Antony de Siqueira*, wanted not Enemies to blame him for not Fighting,

The Princes Rupert and Maurice, with a Portuguese Squadron put to Sea, and returned without fighting.

and

and the King hearkning to them, gave his Command to *George de Melo*, who had the Title of General of the Gallies. A few days after, he sailed out, and the Enemy again standing to Sea, they were surprized by so terrible a Storm, that all the Fleet was dispersed, some Ships drove to *Algarve*, and one falling into the *English* Fleet was taken. The Tempest ceasing, the *English* discovered, the *Brazil* Fleet, of which, they took 15 sail, and Winter coming on, returned home. This gave the two Princes an opportunity of putting to Sea again, after acknowledging the many favours they had received of the King, and particularly, that of protecting them, though contrary to his own interest and the Maxims of State Policy.

4. Since the departure of the *Marquess de Niza*, *Christipher Soares de Abreu* continued at the Court of *France*, where by reason of the troubles of that Kingdom no further progress was made as to the Affairs of *Portugal*, but the Friendship before Established continued firm. All his solicitations at *Rome* having proved ineffectual, the King now resolved not to trouble the Pope further, so that nothing new hapned at that Court. *Francis de Sousa Coutinho* was still Ambassador in *Holland*, and dexterously diverted those People from sending supplies to *Brazil*. The States having Endeavoured to corrupt his Secretary, that they might see the Kings Letters, he improved their artifice to his own Advantage. For his Secretary having acquainted him with the overtures made to him, he ordered him to consent to them, and having filled up several blanks he had under the Kings hand, as he thought convenient, delivered them to the Secretary, who conveyed them to the States, and they supposing them to have been the Kings Letters, were thereby induced to defer sending a Fleet they had designed for *Brazil*. It was not long after this, when a Servant of his having accidentally Shot a Coachman, the Rabble rose and made 3 Assaults upon his House, and had certainly Murdered him and his whole Family had he not been relieved by the Prince of Orange his Guards. In September, *Antony de Sousa de Macedo* who had been Ambassador in *England* came to the *Hague*, and *Francis de Sousa* went away to Reside as Ambassador at the *French* Court. Since the departure of *Antony de Sousa* from *London*, there was no *Portuguese* Minister

Proceedings  
of several  
Ambassadors.

nister there, that whole Kingdom being then in confusion.

5. We left *Francis Barreto* the *Portuguese* General in *Brazil* Twice Victorious over the *Dutch*, in the Mountains *Gararapes*. *Sigismund Vanscop* the *Dutch* Commander thinking this success had rendered the *Portuguese* less vigilant, made a sally at break of Day upon the quarter of Captain *Antony Borges Uchoa*, who having Notice of his approach, received him so warmly without his works, that he was soon Forced to retire leaving many of his Men dead behind him. The *Dutch* General made many other Sallies both before and after this, but none considerable till the 7th of October, when he attempted the quarter of Captain *Emanuel de Aguiar* with all the Foot in the Garrison, but neither here was his Success any better than in the former Attempt. On the 15th of December, they again Marched out and lay close in ambush near the Salt-pits, but the *Portuguese* having intimation of the Place they lay in, attacked them there, and after a Vigorous resistance put them to flight with considerable Slaughter. In these and the like attempts the Year was Spent, the Enemy still decreasing in power, as receiving no supplies from *Holland*, our Ambassador *Francis de Sousa* artificially diverting all that were designed for them.

6. The Baron *de Alvito*, who governed *Tangier*, knowing the chief support of that place consisted in the booties brought in from the Countrey, ceased not to surprize the *Moors* in several parts, and brought home considerable preys, which was a great relief to the Garrison. *Nunho da Cunha* did the same at *Marzagao*, and in one incursion killed 300 *Infidels*, and brought away 47 Captives. *D. Francis de Noronha* succeeded him in that post, and entred upon his Command with no less success than his Predecessor went off. In *India*, *D. Philip Mascarenhas* was still Vice-Roy, and this being the last Year of the Truce with the *Hollanders*, they seemed inclined to attempt the Kingdom of *Jafanapatan* before it was expired. This obliged the Vice-Roy to send a Fleet under the Command of *D. Roderick de Monsanto*, to the relief of that place, but the *Dutch* attempting nothing, the Fleet returned to *Goa*. The Count *de Aveyras*, sailed from *Lisbon* this Year, to be the second time Vice-Roy of *India*, but he died by the way. Four Ships and two Caravels, were sent this Year for *India*.

Anno,

Tangier  
and India.

Anno, 1651.

*Enterprizes on the Frontiers of Alentejo.* 1. **D.** John da Costa, governed the Province of *Alentejo*, as was said the last Year, during the absence of the Count de St. Lorenzo, which continued till the Year, 1657. Through the negligence of the Commissaries of the stores, Forrage grew so scarce on the Frontiers, that several Troops of Horse were forced to retire from *Elvas*, and *Campo Mayor*, farther into the Countrey. The Spaniards made their advantage of this opportunity, for a Party of 1200 Horse, and 600 Foot, from *Badajoz*, carried away a great booty from the Territory of *Villaboim*, there being no Troops in readiness to oppose them. To revenge this loss, *D. John da Costa*, ordered *Andrew de Albuquerque*, General of the Horse, with 1000 of them, and 800 Foot, to make himself Master of *Salvatierra*, which is six Leagues from *Olivenza*, and where the Spanish Commissary-General *John de Rozales* then was with some Troops. *Andrew de Albuquerque* assembled his Troops at *Olivenza*, and marched with such secrecy to *Salvatierra* that he had secured all the avenues before the Enemy heard of his approach. The Foot broke into the Town with little opposition, and with as little took the Castle, where they made 100 Horse Prisoners. The booty was very considerable, the Town consisting of 400 Houses. *Andrew de Albuquerque* returned to *Olivenza*, having lost but three Men in this Action, for certain Troops of the Enemy that appeared served only to be Witnesses of the burning of the Town. Some few days after, *D. John da Costa* lay in ambush to cut off the Troops of *Badajoz*, that used to come out to Forrage between the Rivers *Guadiana* and *Caya*, but they not going out that day, his Design was disappointed. His Horse being now much out of Case for want of Forrage, the scarcity till continuing, he studied all means how to disable the Enemies Troops. Being informed that they had turned 400 Horses to grass near *Medellen*, which is 16 Leagues from *Campo Mayor*; he gave charge to Captain *Emanuel de Saldanha* to endeavour to destroy them. *Saldanha* committed this Enterprize to his Lieutenant, *Francis Lobo*, who set forward

twice, with only 10 Men to put this in Execution, but discovering parties of the Enemy both times, he was forced to return. The third time he went through, and having defeated 15 Men that guarded the Horses, kill'd most of them, and returned in safety. The Enemy now making great Preparations to enter upon Action, *D. John da Costa*, who had neither a Force to oppose them in the Field, nor Provisions in the Frontier Towns to hold out a Siege, acquainted the King with his wants, who sent large supplies of Money, whereby the Province was put into such a Posture of Defence, that the Spaniards thought not fit to attempt any thing on that side. But *D. John da Costa* being thus supplied, ceased not to molest them, with continual Incurfions. Not to speak of other small Parties, one of 30 Men, commanded by the Cornet *Stephen de Recha*, came off with more Honour then Success. Being advanced in the Enemies Country, he found his retreat was cut off by 7 Squadrons; whereupon he retired to an old ruined House, he found in the Field. The Spaniards surrounded it, and offered him quarter, which he refusing, they attacked it, and were repulsed. After endeavouring in Vain to burn it, they went away, carrying with them the Horses of those in the House, and the Cornet returned to *Moura*, a Foot, having lost two of his Men. About the beginning of November, Prince *Theodosius*, the King's eldest Son, having privately stole away from Court, without his Fathers Knowledge, appeared at *Elvas*, and was there received with all the Respect due to his Person. The King was not a little disturbed at this Accident, being jealous of the Prince's Designs, and therefore used all gentle Means to draw him back to *Lisbon*; but that which at last prevailed with him, was want of Money, which forced him back to Court about the end of December. He positively resolved to return to the Frontiers, but was detained for some time by the King, till Death put an end to his Designs, as we shall see in its Place.

2. The Province between *Duero* and *Minho*, seemed to spare it self all this while, that it might be the better able to sustain the heavy burthen of the War, which fell upon it the ensuing Years. The Viscount de *Villa Pouca*, was still Governour there, who perceiving that the Towns of *Portela* and *Vieyra*, were the Rendezvous

*The Viscount de Villa Pouca, burns two Towns in Galicia.*  
for



for the Troops of *Galicia*, when they joyned those of *Monterey*, he caused both those places to be burnt down to the Ground. The Garrisons of certain Forts, the *Spaniards* had raised on the Frontiers of *Galicia*, persuading the Country People to rebuild several Places that had been destroyed on the Borders during the War, they began to assemble, in order to restore those Towns. Twice they attempted to rebuild them, but they were as often totally demolished by order of the Viscount, whereupon the Country desisted. The Count de *Atouguia* who governed the Province, *Tras os Montes*, lived this Year free from Action; both sides, as if it had been by Agreement, forbearing to infect one another. Nor was there any considerable Action in that part of the Province of *Beyra*, which was under the direction of *D. Roderick de Castro*; most of the Year being spent in Incursions of no great Moment. In *November*, when the Prince, as has been said, appeared at *Elvas*, *D. Roderick*, that it might be said he had infused new Courage into the Army, marched with 1500 Men, and entering the Town of *Bodon*, plundered and burnt it. *D. Sancho Manuel* who governed the other part of the Province, ceased not all the Summer to infect the Frontiers of the Enemy, and to repulse such of them, as made inroads into the Country, subject to his Command. By agreement this Summer, the Prisoners on both sides were set at Liberty without Ransom.

Negotiations in Foreign Courts.

3. *Francis de Sousa Coutinho*, having left the Ambassy of *Holland*, as has been said, according to the Orders he had received from the King, removed to *Paris*, where he had Audience of Cardinal *Mazarine*, but nothing was concluded betwixt them, by reason of the civil Broils then prevailing in *France*. At *Rome*, the Portuguese Affairs continued in the same Posture, notwithstanding the Sollicitation of the Cardinal d'Este. *Antony de Sousa de Macedo*, who had succeeded *Francis de Sousa Coutinho*, in the Ambassy of *Holland*, followed the Footsteps of his Predecessor, entertaining the States with hopes of an Accommodation, to gain time, whilst the Dutch might be expelled *Brazil*. Having in some measure settled those Affairs, he laboured to enter upon a Treaty with the Parliament of *England*, which was forwarded by *D. Emanuel Percyra*, sent over to that effect, and afterwards commenced by the Envoy *John de Guimaraens*.

Percyra,

4. *Francis Barreto*, with unparalleled Resolution and Constancy, continued the War in *Pernambuco*. About the beginning of *March*, he layed 300 Men in Ambush, betwixt the Forts of *Sinco Pontas*, *Affogados* and *Barreta*, hoping to cut off the Communication between those Places and *Arrecife*. Twelve of these Men discovering a Boat of the Enemies, swam to it, and took it, and the Dutch that came to succour their Boat, discovering the Ambush, retired in time, so that the Portuguese had not the Opportunity of making any further Advantage on them. The *Hollanders* of the Fort *Affogados*, made a sally upon the quarter of *Mendoza*, but were soon repulsed with the loss of 6 Men, besides those that were wounded. *Francis Barreto*, understanding that the Dutch had great quantities of Sugar Canes at *Rio Grande*, whereof they expected very soon to make their Advantage; he sent thither, Captain *John Barboza Pinto*, with 300 Men, who after destroying all the Country, and taking 18 of the Enemy, returned with a great number of Cattel. *Sigismund Van Scop*, the Dutch Commander, desiring to perform some Action, which might encourage the Besieged, resolved to destroy the Thicket, which covered the quarter of *Aguiar*, from the Fort *Affogados*. To put this in Execution, he marched out with the greatest part of his Strength, but *Emanuel de Aguiar*, who commanded there, being in a readiness, received him so roughly, that for six Months after, he never offered to sally again. Continual Success, put *Francis Barreto* out of doubt of Success, and therefore he ceased not perpetually to solicit the King, and Count *Castello Melhor*, then Governor of *Brazil* for Succour, that he might with speed put an end to that War, before the Dutch now at Peace with all the World, had the leisure to send supplies thither, which might much retard, if not wholly destroy, the success of his Labours.

5. The Baron de *Alvito* still governing *Tangier*; it happened that certain Vessels laden with Corn from *Lisbon*, and the Islands, sailing for that City, were cast away, which caused so great a Famine in that place; that the Inhabitants were forc'd to feed on Herbs and Roots they could gather in the Fields. The Baron generously at his own Expence, maintained the Sick, and a multitude of Children, which would otherwise inevitably have perished. This Calamity reached the *Horses*, who could

Tangier and India.

H h

nos

nor be maintained upon Grass alone, so that it was difficult to make Excursions, which added much to the great scarcity of Provisions. *D. Francis de Noronha*, Governor of *Mazagam*, sent an Ambassy, and Presents to the King of *Morocco*, which was by him honourably received, and generously returned. *D. Francis* continued in this Command, till the Year 1654, during which time, nothing remarkable happened there, so that we shall not have occasion to make any mention of him. This was the last Year of *D. Philip Mascarenhas*, his Vice-Royship in *India*, and in it there was little remarkable, only the *Chendarraos*, a vagabond sort of People in the Country of *Hidalcan*, possessed themselves of the Mount or Promontory of *Chaul*, whence they were drove by the Vice-Roy's Order, by *D. Alvaro de Atayde*. This Year two Galeons and a Pink sailed from *Portugal* to *India*, and the Galeon, *S. Philip* built there, arrived at *Lisbon*.

Anno, 1652.

The Prince  
made Cap-  
tain Gen-  
eral of all  
the Forces  
in Portu-  
gal.

1. **T**HE Prince who (as was said) returned to *Lisbon* the latter end of the last Year, used all possible means to persuade his Father to send him again to the Frontiers, but the King jealous of him, could not be worked upon. At length to conceal his own Jealousie and disappoint that Design of his Son, he appointed him Captain General of all the Forces in the Kingdom, thus having the Charge of all, he might not apply himself to command in any one Province. *D. John de Costa*, never ceased to harass the Enemies Frontiers, bringing thence considerable Booty. In revenge, the *Spaniards* drove a great Prey from the Territory of *Telena*, and though Lieutenant General *Tamericourt* marched after them with the Troops of *Olivenza*, they being far before him got safe into *Barcarota*. Before that place was a large Field, encompassed with a Ditch, and lying under the Cannon and small shot of the Town, which the *Spaniards* believed would secure their Prey. However *Tamericourt* coming to *Barcarota*, dismounted part of his Horse, and breaking into the Field before day, drove away all the Cattel, without receiving any considerable Loss. The *Spaniards* sallied out upon him, but suddenly retired; and he marching off with the Booty, restored it to the Country People. Neither was he less suc-

cessful

cessful, a few days after, when engaging the Troops of *Badajoz*, he took the *Spanish* Lieutenant General of Horse, *D. Francis Hibraltar*, with other Officers, and 120 Horses. The Prince being now Generalissimo, sent his Orders to all the Provinces of the Kingdom, absolutely forbidding any Incursions to be made for the future, into the *Spanish* Frontiers. *D. John de Costa*, upon receipt of this Order, replied to it, shewing how disadvantageous it was to the Kingdom, by reason of the great Benefit reaped by those inroads, for he in the space of two Years, had destroyed above 1400 of the *Spanish* Horse, having scarce lost 100 of his own. Besides he looked upon this as so great a check to his Authority, that he desired leave to lay down his Command. The Prince being well satisfied of *D. John's* Zeal and Fidelity, recalled his Order, and the King gave him the Title of Earl of *Soure*. He to appear worthy of this Honour, endeavoured to make amends by his Conduct, for what he wanted in Strength. To this purpose, he secretly gathered 1500 Horse from the Neighbouring Garrisons, which Lieutenant General *Tamericourt*, and Commissary General *Duquesne* divided betwixt them. With these Troops they passed the River *Guadiana*, and lay close in the Wood near *Badajoz*. In the Morning, a Squadron of Horse issuing out of the Town according to Custom, they were drove back by some of our Troops. Fresh Troops seconded the Enemy from the City, and they kept in play, till *D. Alvaro de Viveros* took the Field, with all the Horse of that place, and having drawn them up, advanced further then was thought convenient for the safety of the Town. *Duquesne* who was nearest, thinking it now time, moved towards him with more Courage than Order. The *Spanish* General halted and bravely stood the Charge, in which *Duquesne* received three Wounds, and Captain *Sancho Dias* was kill'd, with several Soldiers; the rest of the Troops missing their Commander, retired with Precipitation. *Tamericourt* perceiving this Disorder, charged furiously with his foremost Troops, which being too open in their Ranks made but little Impression; but those in the Rear coming up, behaved themselves with such Bravery, that after a long Dispute, they broke the Enemy. The Troops of *Duquesne*, and part of those with *Tamericourt*, being wholly blinded by the Dust, fled to *Olivenza*, believing

H h 2

the

the rest were cut off. *Taméricour* rallied the rest, marched off with above 200 Horses he had taken from the Prisoners; among whom, was a Captain of Horse, and other Officers. The Count *de Soure*, being a strict observer of Discipline, commended those that had behaved themselves well, and severely checked those that had fled, giving the King also a particular Account of the Merits of the former, and Demerits of the latter.

2. The Viscount *de Villa Nova*, Governor of the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, still continued in perfect Tranquility, nothing happening in his Command, but that Captain *Labar*, a valiant French-Man, disorderly with a party of Horse, charging another of the Enemy, was himself killed, and most of his Men wounded. The Province *Tras os Montes*, governed by the Count *de Antouguia*, by consent of both Parties, was for several Months free from Action. Some small Incurfions were afterwards made on both sides, but none of Note. The King having now chose the Count *de Penaguiao* his Lord Chamberlain, to go Ambassador into *England*; appointed the Count *de Atouguia* to execute his Office, and *John Mendez de Vasconcellos*, was sent in his place to govern the Province. The most remarkable Action performed this Year by *D. Roderick de Castro*, in his Division of the Province of *Beyra*, was the burning of the Town of *Martiago*, which contained 300 Houses; the other Enterprizes were too small to merit any place here. *D. Sancho Manuel*, who commanded in the other part of *Beyra*, understanding that a Troop of the Enemies was quartered at *Lobeyros*, and had twice repulsed parties of the Portuguese Militia that ravaged the Country thereabouts, ordered the Cornet *Dominick Homen*, with 40 chosen Men to lye in wait for them. He sent before some of the Militia to drive the Cattel; the Spanish Troop backed by a company of Foot, immediately rushed out upon them, but the English who was at hand, furiously falling in upon the Foot, broke them, and with the same Success routed the Horse, killing many, and taking several Prisoners. This Success was soon ballanced by a greater disaster, for *D. Sancho* being informed that the Spaniards gathered a great Power, in order to break into his Province; and not being in a condition to oppose them, he thought to divert them, by making at the same time an inroad

Some Actions in Beyra.

into their Frontiers, hoping he might retire to places of safety, before they could intercept him. With this Design, he gathered 350 Foot, and 200 Horse, and marching to *Segura*, sent before Captain *Gaspar de Tavora* with 140 Horse, to drive the Cattle about *Sacravim*, which done, he had orders to retire to Colonel *John Fialho*, who should expect him with 60 Horse, and the rest of the Foot, at a place called *Salto*, near the River *Lagao*. *Gaspar de Tavora*, executed his Orders with such expedition, that by Noon he had joyned *John Fialho*. But the Spaniards having notice of *D. Sancho's* March, no sooner entered *Portugal*, then they turned back, and marching towards their Town of *Carza*, by which the Portuguese must of necessity pass, appeared before *John Fialho*, when least he expected it, with 600 Horse, and as many Foot. He covering his Horse with the Foot, retired in good order for above a League, till coming to a Pass, the Enemy drew up before him. Necessity now obliging him to charge them, he fell with such Bravery upon the 600 Foot, that he absolutely broke them; but in the mean while, the 600 Spanish Horse charging his 200 now divided from their Foot, after some short dispute overpowered, and totally routed them. The Enemy pursued their Advantage, and *John Fialho* rallying his Foot, recovered an advantageous Post to defend himself. The Enemy ceased their pursuit in care for their Foot, which had been overthrown, and returned to compleat their Victory, by destroying *John Fialho* and his party. He had, as was said, gained an advantageous post; but having spent all his Ammunition, was made Prisoner with all the Officers of Horse and Foot, 140 Horse escaped, the rest with all the Foot, were either killed or taken. After this Disaster, *D. Sancho Manuel* retired to *Idanha Nova*, and garrisoned the Frontiers with the Militia, writing to the Prince for supplies, which were soon sent him. Being recruited, and joyning his Forces with those of *D. Roderick de Castro*, he resolved to revenge the late Affront, by surprizing the City *Coria*. They marched with 1500 Foot, and 700 Horse, some Petards, and other necessaries for such an Enterprize; but the distance being great, they could not come before the City till after day. However, having divided their Foot, they attacked the Suburbs in two places, which they entered, plunder'd and burnt;

H h 3

which

which done, seeing no possibility of forcing the City, they retired, and each returned to his Province.

Endea-  
vours used  
for obtain-  
ing Bishops,  
but in vain.

3. The troubles of France increasing, rendered all Foreign Negotiations so uncertain at that Court, that *Francis de Sousa Coutinho*, having obtained leave of the King, came to Portugal, leaving *D. Felicianus Dourado* Secretary of the Embassy, to Reside there during his absence. At this time there was held at *Paris* a Synod of Bishops, to whose Consideration King *John* recommended the finding of some expedient for prevailing with the Pope to precognize the Bishops of Portugal. They used their utmost endeavours, but the Spanish Interest still prevailing, nothing could be done at this time. *Antony de Sousa de Macedo*, having obtained leave of the King to quit the Embassy of Holland, *D. Antony Rapozo* succeeded him in that employ. He made it his business to heighten the misunderstandings betwixt the English and Dutch, because the latter having sustained great losses by the War they were engaged in with the former, were thereby disabled from sending succours to *Pernambuco*. The King at the same time considering how advantageous the Friendship of England might prove to his Affairs, resolved to send an Ambassador thither, and pitched upon the Count *de Penaguião* for that employ, as we have said before.

Francis  
Barreto,  
his further  
Actions in  
Brazil.

4. *Francis Barreto*, the General of *Pernambuco*, continued the Siege of *Arrecife*, with considerable resolution, hoping at length to reduce the Besieged, whose only hope consisted in the succours they expected from Holland. The first part of the Year passed without any memorable Action. In May, *Francis Barreto*, ordered Major *Antony Diaz Cardozo*, with 400 Men, to lie close in ambush, and send out parties to endeavour to draw the Garrisons of the Forts *Barreta* and *Affogados*, into the snare. The Major possessed himself of the post assigned him without being discovered, and sending out certain small Parties drew out the Enemy, as he had designed, but the number of the *Hollanders* being greater than had been expected, the Fight continued doubtful for above an hour; at length the Dutch were routed and fled to their Forts, leaving the Field covered with dead Bodies. After this, *Barreto* being informed that the Enemy had laid up great store of Brazil-Wood and other Commodities at *Rio Grande*, in order to be transported

transported into Holland, he sent thither the Colonel *Andrew Vidal* with 300 Men, who burnt their wood, wasted all the Countrey, and returned with a great booty and many Prisoners. The Dutch had in those Seas 50 sail of Ships, from 20 to 30 Guns, but so ill Manned and Equipped for want of supplies from Holland, that tho' they met the Portuguese Brazil-Fleet and fought it, yet after a short dispute they were forced to retire without any Prize, and the Fleet arrived safe at Lisbon, on the 26th of October.

5. We left the Baron *de Alvaro*, Governour of *Tan-* The Span-  
gier, labouring under great scarcity of Provisions the last year try the  
Year. He had not as yet received any relief from *Lis-* Governour  
bon, which being known at *Ceuta*, *D. John Soares*, who of *Tangier*,  
Commanded there for the Spaniards, hoping their wants without  
might reduce that Garrison to revolt from their King, success.  
sent two Brigantines and a Bark thither, ordering the  
Commander of the Bark to enter the Port, and convey the Letters he had writ for that purpose, to the Baron, and other Men of note. This being put in execution, the Baron read the Letters, which were to persuade him to submit himself to the King of Spain, with promise of great Rewards, or else to offer him safe passage to Lisbon. The Baron, whose Loyalty was not shaken, having in vain endeavoured to draw those in the Bark ashore, caused another to be fitted out, in which, went several resolute Gentlemen with Fire-Arms, and Orders to Attack the Enemies Bark, when they should approach to receive the Letter they expected. The Barks coming together they fired, killed three of the Spaniards, and carried the rest Prisoners to the City. This Action so exasperated the Spaniards, that they sent three Ships to interrupt any relief that might be designed for *Tangier*, but the Baron ordering the Vessels that came from Lisbon to be detained in *Algarve*, till further advice from him, the Enemy quitted their station, and gave way to five Caravels with Provisions to relieve that City. The Baron being informed that certain Captive Moors in the Town, had by intelligence with those abroad, agreed to let themselves down the Wall of the old Town, near which, the others were to lie hid in order to receive them; he ordered three Soldiers habited like Moors to be let down, and when the Infidels came on to succour them, they were



received with such a volley of great and small shot, as laid many dead before the Town, the rest flying with more speed than they came on.

*The Affairs of India.* 6. *D. Philip Mascarenhas*, having ended his Vice-Royship in *India*, and obtained leave of the King to return home, embarked for *Lisbon*, and died by the way. The Count *de Aveyras*, sent by the King to succeed him, dying also in the Voyage, as was said before; the Sealed Patents, which are always laid up to provide for such exigencies, being opened, it was found that the care of the Government was committed to *D. F. Francis dos Reys*, Primate of *India*, *Francis de Melo de Castro*, and *Antony de Sousa Coutinho*. Having entred upon the Government, they fitted out a Fleet of 22 Sail, Commanded by *Antony de Sousa Coutinho*, one of the Governours. This Fleet set sail in order to recover *Mascate*; some of them entred that Bay, but receiving much harm from the Cannon of the Town, they stood out again, and came to Anchor in the River *Lafette*, 100 Leagues from *Mascate*. They had lain there but a few days before they discovered a mighty Fleet of *Arabs*, Commanded by one *Hali a Moor*. *Antony de Sousa*, received them with such gallantry, that after the Battle had lasted many Hours, he obtained a Compleat Victory, killing above 5000 of the *Infidels*. Captain *Antony Lobo*, in this Action, being boarded by two of the Enemies Vessels, set fire to his own Powder, and blew himself up and both them. *Antony de Sousa* returned to *Goa*, where he found *D. Vasco Mascarenhas*, Count *de Obidos*, whom the King had appointed Vice-Roy, upon the News of the Death of the Count *de Aveyras*. Within a very few days, the whole City running into Mutiny, offered the Government to *Antony de Sousa*, who rejected their offer; then they pitched upon *D. Bras de Castro*, a Turbulent Man, who presently accepted of it, which done, they seized upon the person of the Count, and kept him Prisoner. But God shewed how displeasing to him this Rebellious Government was, by the Judgments that immediately attended the beginning of it, for the *Dutch* before the expiration of the Truce began a War, which proved the most fatal to the *Portugueses*, of any they ever had since the Conquest of that Countrey. The *Hollanders* resolving to break the Truce, fitted out 10 Ships, under the Com-

mand

mand of *John Mansucar*, who coming to *Tutocorim*, seized all the Money laid up there to buy Pearl, and at the same time took a Ship bound from *Cochim* to *China*. *D. Bras de Castro*, immediately prepared to oppose them. *Ceylon* was the place next to danger, as being that they had always aimed at. *Emanuel Mascarenhas Homem*, was Governour there, who hearing of the preparations of the *Dutch*, sent four Companies to secure *Calaturé*, the safety of *Columbo* depending on that Port. This reinforcement not coming in time, the place fell into the hands of the Enemy, and for *Columbo*, all the people of the Countrey flocking thither could not hold out long for want of Provisions. The News of this loss being carried to *Manicavare*, where *Lope Barriga* Commanded, the whole Garrison mutinied, because, according to the Orders received from *Mascarenhas*, he designed to march them to *Columbo*, and killing some that opposed them, sent him away and took the Field. The King of *Candia* thinking to make his advantage of this disorder, marched a good body of Forces towards them, and offered them large terms if they would come over to his Service. They answered him with their Weapons, and after a fight which lasted many hours, retired to *Columbo*. *Emanuel Mascarenhas* the Governour, having gathered what Forces he could into the City, designed to oppose the mutiniers, and fired three pieces of Cannon. They resolved to be revenged, being reinforced by two Companies of Foot, which deserted to them from the City, but the Religious and Inhabitants to prevent the mischief they saw impending, opened one of the Gates and let them in. *Emanuel Mascarenhas*, took Sanctuary in a Monastery, and the City chose for their Governours *Gaspar de Araujo Pereyra*, *D. Francis Rolim*, and *Francis de Barros da Silva*, and to Command in the Field *Gaspar Figueyra da Serpa*, an experienced Soldier. He hearing the *Dutch* with some Natives were abroad gathering Cinnamon, marched to cut them off, but they having intelligence of his march, were gone before; so having reduced some Towns that had revolted, he returned to *Columbo*. The Governours receiving advice that the *Dutch* were raising a Fort at *Angratota*, which would Command all the Countrey about *Columbo*, sent *Gaspar Figueyra* with 500 Foot, to drive them thence. *Gaspar Figueyra*, marched with expedition,

pedition, and having secured all the Avenues by which the Enemies might receive any relief, carried on a Trench so close to their work, that having raised a Platform and planted thereon one piece of Cannon, he so incommoded them, that after 10 days the Dutch surrendered upon discretion; 110 of them were taken, 40 *Jaos*, and 300 *Chingalas*, who were severely punished, as being for the most part Subjects to the King of Portugal. At the same time *John Botado*, who was in the Inland with a Company of Portuguese and some Blacks, was set upon by an Officer of the King of Candia, with 3000 Men, and though the Blacks forsook him, the Portuguese fought so desperately that they put the Indians to flight, leaving so many dead, that those who saw them could not be perswaded they had been killed by so few. *John Botado*, with his Men retired to *Columbo*. Four Ships and one Caravel sailed this Year from *Lisbon* for *India*, and two Ships from thence arrived in Portugal.

Anno, 1653.

The War  
proceeds  
coldly on  
both sides.

1. King *John* had resolved not to make any great Efforts to carry the War far into the Spanish Territories, concluding it his securest course to fill his exchequer, fortify his Towns and build Ships, whilst the Spaniards wasted themselves with their Wars in *Italy* and *Flanders*, were diverted from putting Portugal into any danger. This was the reason that he kept no more Forces afoot in *Alenrejo*, then served to secure the Frontiers, and consequently the actions there were of small moment and few of them worth relating. The most considerable was a party of 950 Horse, and 100 Muskeriers, Commanded by *Andrew de Albuquerque* Generall of the Horse, which defeated 1300 Spaniards, killing 200 of them among whom was their Lieutenant Generall of Horse, the Count de *Amarante*, and taking above 400 Prisoners. Neither did this Year produce any Exploits of note in the other Provinces, which continued in full Peace, bating some small Alarms given on both sides, which only served to keep the Garrisons upon their Guard without any damage done on either side.

2. In

2. In the midst of all his fortunate Successes, the King received one Fatal blow, which outbalanced many of his former prosperities. This was the death of his Eldest Son *Prince Theodosius*, whom for his excellent qualities he entirely loved, The Prince, as has been before hinted, had Laboured under a tedious sickness, and tho' the Force of it was abated, he never after enjoyed perfect health, for there continued a defluxion upon his stomach, which no medicines could ever remove, but on the contrary some that were used seemed to hasten his End. On the 3d of May he took to his bed, and for 6 Days the Physicians Employed all their Art for recovering of him, the whole Clergy and layety offering up their Prayers to God for him. All proved in vain, for the Number of his days was compleat, therefore on the Night he received the Viaticum and on the 15th gave up his Ghost. The *Encomiums* bestowed on this Prince are so great, they will appear incredible, and therefore I think fitter to omit than trouble the Reader with them. He dyed Aged 19 Years, 3 months and 7 days. His body was buried in the Royal Monastery of *Belem*, being Attended thither by an incredible multitude of the People Lamenting the Loss of so hopeful a Prince. Immediately after his death the King assembled the Parliament, in which his Second Son *Prince Alfonso* was Sworn Heir to the Crown. The 3 Estates agreed to Support the charge of the War with the Tenth of all Temporal and Spiritual Estates, and in case the Spaniards should besiege any considerable place, then to add one Fourth part more of the said Tax; but if it should happen the Enemy Invaded the Kingdom with such powerfull Forces as might bring it into danger, then they offered all they had for the Support of the Crown: Before the Parliament broke up, the King sustained another Loss, in the Death of his Eldest Daughter *Joanna*, who departed this Life on the 17th of September, She Lyes buried in the Monastery of *Belem*.

3. The Affairs of Portugal continued much in the same posture we left them at the Courts of *Rome*, *France* and *Holland*, In *England* the Count de *Penaguiao* solicited the settling of a Peace with the Usurper *Oliver*, who was much offended at the protection given in *Lisbon*, to the Princes *Rupert* and *Maurice*. But this Ambassador before the End of his Negotiation met there with a Disaster,

safer, which cost the Life of his Brother. The manner of it in short was thus. *D. Pantaleon de Sa*, the Embassadors Brother walking one Evening in the New Exchange, and resenting an affront which he thought he had received from one *Gerard*, the Night following repairs to the same place attended by the Embassadors retinue, and with Sword and Pistoll, falls upon all he meets. A great Hubub rising, the *Portugueses* were beat off, chiefly by one *Collonel May* an *Irish* man. One *Greenway* was killed in the scuffle. For this Murder *D. Pantaleon de Sa*, as the Author of the Tumult was Tried and condemned. Having in vain pleaded his privilege and made his escape out of Prison by the help of the Lady *Mohun*, being again taken, he was beheaded upon a Scaffold on Tower-Hill.

Francis Barreto holds the Dutch closely besieged in Brazil.

4. *Francis Barreto* who Commanded in *Pernambuco*, tho' his Forces were much lessened and no supplies came, was not at all discouraged, but carryed on the Siege of *Arrecife* with a full Resolution either to Conquer or die. The besieged were now reduced to despair, and therefore determined to attempt gaining the Fort *Arrayal*, which *Sigismund* their Generall knowing to be a difficult Enterprize, endeavoured to divert them from, but perceiving he Laboured in vain, told them, the only means to attack that Fort was by Gaining first the quarter of *Aguiar*. On the 11th of *March*, he marched out of the Fort *Affogados* with the greatest part of that and the Neighbouring Garrisons. Captain *Alonso de Albuquerque* Commanded at the quarter of *Aguiar*. He not thinking it for his honour to receive them in his works, marched out and soon drove them back to their Forts. Twice after this they attempted the same Post, and were both time repulsed with considerable Loss, which caused them to forbear any farther attempts on the besiegers and employ their Men in bringing provisions from the River of *S. Francis*. These Men were met there by 100 *Portugueses* and some Blacks Commanded by Captain *Francis Barregos*, who the first firing was shot through the body, Yet his Men continued the Charge with such bravery, that they drove the *Dutch* to their Fort, and thence to their Ships, without the provisions they came for. Here upon the Council sent one of their body into *Holland* to press for speedy releif, but the *Dutch* having been defeated at Sea by the *English*, were not then in a condition to send any.

Francis

*Francis Barreto* having notice hereof, resolved when the *Portuguese* Fleet arrived to make his utmost Efforts for expelling the Enemy that Country. Accordingly he met the Admirall and Vice-Admirall to concert the measures they were to take, but the result of this Consultation and the Effect that followed belong to the next Year.

5. *D. Roderick de Alencastre* at the Beginning of this *D. Roderick de Alencastre* Year, succeeded the *Baron de Alvaro* in the Government of *Tangier*, which he managed with greater dexterity than many had expected by reason of his Youth. Being informed that about a place called *Gibalcara*, there were certain Hords of Arabs come thither for conveniency of pasture, he sent the Commander in cheife of the Horse, with 92 Troopers to attack them by Night. Being come near them some advised him not to fall on them till morning when he could do better Execution, however he obeyed his orders slew a great Number of *Infidels*, took 17 prisoners and returned with a great booty, in which were six Camels which *D. Roderick* sent to the King. *D. Roderick* performed severall other actions of less note, for a Famine raging among the *Moors* at that time, they brought him intelligence for bread, and others brought Horses and Cattle to sell in the City.

6. The danger increased in *India*, where *D. Bras de Castro* had usurped the Government; for the *Dutch* threatened *Ceylon*, and other places were not free from Apprehensions. The three Governors, who we said last Year commanded in *Ceylon*, sent *Gaspar de Figueyra de Serpa*, with 900 Foot to reduce the Towns that had revolted, and bring in Provisions. The King of *Candia*'s Forces forsook the lower Country, and entrenching themselves strongly, endeavoured to exclude him the Upper. He attacked them vigorously, and their number being great, was repulsed, but they adventuring to pursue him, he rallied, drove them back, and entred their Works with them, making a mighty Slaughter. This Success made many Towns submit, which payed their Arrears of Contributions, and a great quantity of Cinnamon, Provisions, Arms, and other Plunder was conveyed to *Columbo*. Soon after, 10 Companies were sent to attack a Town on the Frontiers of *Candia*, where there was great store of Provisions; and though 10000 *Chingalus* defended a Wood that lay in the way, they were defeated, and the Town taken. On the 11th of

of May, arrived at *Columbo*, *Francis de Mello de Castro*, sent to command in that Island, by *D. Bras de Castro*, with 8 Ships, and 150 Foot. With him went *D. Alvaro de Atayde*, as General of the Forces, but his Age and Diseases rendered him incapable of that Post; whereupon *Francis de Mello* gave it to his Nephew, *Antony de Mello de Castro*, who being drove out of the Field by the King of *Candia*; *Francis de Mello*, at the earnest request of all the People, restored *Gaspar de Figueyra de Serpa* to that Command. No sooner had he received it, but he marched out against the King of *Candia*, and having worsted him in several Encounters, forced him to retire to the City *Candia*, near to which he encamped, and continued a considerable time; underhand raising such jealousies in the King's Mind, that he caused him to behead many of his Favourites. The Dutch at the same time had agreed with *Hidalcán*, to besiege *Goa* by Land, whilst they blocked it up by Sea, promising him the plunder of the Place. They came before it according to agreement with a Squadron, but *Hidalcán* failing with his Forces, they drew off again without attempting any thing. This Year two Galeons sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*, under the Command of *Luis de Mendoza Furtado*. The Ship *Nossa Senhora da Penha de Franca*, returning home from *India*, was taken by the *Hollanders* in the latitude of *Pernambuco*.

Anno, 1654.

1. TO begin this Year, *Taméricour*, Lieutenant General of Horse, by order of the Count de Soure, marched with all the Horse he could gather, and some Foot, to the Valleys of *Mata Moros*, and *St. Ann*, near the City *Xeres*. All the Country people was retired to those Places, and defended them the space of some Hours; but being at length defeated, the Villages were plundered and burnt; which done, the Portuguese Troops laden with Booty, returned to their Quarters. Very few days passed before another Enterprize of more Consequence had the desired Success. *Oliva* was a large Town, not far from the City *Xerez*, defended by an old Castle, and was the Recepracle of the Spaniards, when they made incursions on that side. Thither *Andrew de*

*Oliva taken by the Portuguese.*

*Albuquerque*, though not well recovered of his Wounds, marched with 2000 Foot, and 1500 Horse. By break of day he attacked the Town, and made himself master of it without any difficulty. At the Castle he found more opposition, because two Petards he applied to the Gates, failed of the intended effect, and all the Spaniards able to bear Arms, had retired thither. However, *Albuquerque* lodged himself under the Wall, and began to carry on two Mines. The Besieged perceiving it, began to parley, and after three days, surrendered upon Condition, every one might take with him what he could carry. The Booty was great, because not only the Inhabitants of *Oliva*, but of many other Towns, had conveyed their Goods thither, as to a place of Security. This Conquest cost the Lives of 42 Men. *Albuquerque* added some Works to the place, and leaving a Garrison in it, returned to *Elvas*. The Count de Soure having obtained leave to repair to *Lisbon*; *Andrew de Albuquerque*, was left supreme Commander in the Province of *Alentejo*. The King expressly commanded him to forbear making any Incursions into the Spanish Territories, or driving thence any Cattle, except such Horses as were fit for Service. The Duke de *S. German*, the Spanish General, upon notice hereof, offered to agree, that no harm should be done on either side to the Country people; but *Albuquerque* representing to the King, the great Advantages that accrued to his Army by these Incursions, the King recalled his former Order, and the War was carried on as before. The Spaniards, to shew they had not made those Overtures, for want of Strength, drove a great Prey from the Territory of *Monfarras*; and the Captains, *Denis de Mello*, and *John Ferreyra da Cunha* with their Troops, attempting to recover it, were defeated, and they with 34 of their Men taken, but soon set at liberty, it being agreed that Prisoners should be discharged.

The Spaniards carry off a great Booty.

2. Scarce any thing of Note happened this Year in any of the other Provinces; both sides for the most part contenting themselves to preserve their own, and save the Country People from Destruction. *Antony de Andrade de Oliva*, who had been a Franciscan Fryer, and left that Order upon several Pretexs, had now obtained leave of the King to go into *Spain* upon some odd Project, as he was a Man of a restless Spirit; returning thence



Some Persons apprehended upon a false Information of their correspondence with Castile. thence, he accused *Sebastian Caesar de Meneses*, and his Brother *F. James Caesar*, of holding Correspondence with the Spaniards, whereupon they were both secured and committed to Prison, where they continued a long time. *Francis de Sousa Coutinho*, returned this Year to the Ambassy at the French Court, where nothing occurred worth relating; no more that at Rome, or in Holland, things continuing still there in the same Posture. The Count *de Penaguiao*, not able to bear the loss of his Brother, having concluded a Peace with the Usurper *Oliver*, returned home, carrying with him the Ratification of the Peace.

Francis Barreto turns his Blockade at Arrecife into a formal Siege.

3. *Francis Barreto*, the General of *Pernambuco*, meeting with the Amiral *Peter Jaques*, and his Vice-Admiral at the Town of *Olinda*, to confer together about putting at end to the long Blockade they had made of the Dutch, and having called a Council of War, it was resolved to turn it into a formal Siege. In order to it, they agreed their first attempt must be to gain the Fort called *Rego*, which was upon the Salt pits. *Peter Jaques* went away to the Flëet, with a Resolution so to secure the Bar of *Arrecife*, that no Succour might possibly be conveyed in. On the 5th. of *January*, the Works by Land were advanced nearer, and the Enemy shut up within a narrower Compass, and a Battery of 9 Pieces of Cannon raised against the Fort *Rego*, Collonel *Andrew Vidal* taking up his Post there. On the 11th of *January*, *Francis Barreto* with 2500 Foot, marched to the Fort, raised two batteries the one of 7 and the other of 5 Pieces of Cannon, and began to carry on his approaches with great Art. That Night they came within Musket-shot of the Fort. On the 15th both the Cannon and small shot played incessantly on both sides, the Dutch at the same time attempting to put some succour into the Fort, but were disappointed. That Night *Hugh Naquer* who Commanded in the Fort Surrendred, Capitulating for the Garrison to march out with their Armes, and to be sent to *Portugal*. Before day, he marched out with 70 Men. Two Companies of *Portugueses* were put into it. Hence *Francis Barreto* marched to the Fort *Altanar*, which after some short resistance was delivered upon the same conditions as the other. Before the taking of this Fort the Dutch had abandoned 3 others, and now quitted 3 more, with the same precipitation. *Barreto* designing next

to attack the Fort of *Sinco Pontas*, was informed that the Enemy had secured a Post; he thought to have lodged his Men upon; whereupon he sent Collonel *Andrew Vidal*, with 1000 Men to dislodge them, which he did; and Fortified himself in the same Place. Next Morning the Canon was conveyed thither and the Trenches were opened against the Fort *Sinco Pontas*. The Dutch perceiving the danger to approach, made overtures for a Surrender, which were easily admitted; and after some days Spent in adjusting all differences, they finally agreed upon the following Articles. That the Dutch should remain posselt of all their moveables. That they should have some of their own Ships with Iron Guns; to Transport them to *Holland*. That such as would might stay there and be Treated in point of Religion as they were in *Portugal*. That all the Out-Forts be put into the hands of the *Portugueses* with their Artillery and Ammunition. That a Garrison be immediately received into *Arrecife* and the City *Mauricea*, where the Dutch might continue 3 Months but without any Sort of Armes. That all Ships coming from *Holland* for Four months to come have the Liberty of all those Ports. That the Dutch give hostages to secure the Surrender of all other places they posselt, belonging to *Portugal* on that Coast. That the *Indians*, *Mulattos* and Blacks who served, be pardoned. These were the principall Articles signed on both sides the 26th of *January*. Next day the *Portugueses* took possession of all the Posts where they found 121 brass Guns, 170 of Iron; Ammunition and provision for a Year and great quantity of Stores. The same Night that *Arrecife* was delivered, a Dutch Lieutenant Collonel fled over to the Island *Itamaraca*, and perswading the People there that the *Portugueses* spared neither Sex nor Age, they Shipt themselves and goods on board two Frigates, and Sailing to *Paraiba* spread the same Terror there; obliging Collonel *Autin*, who Commanded, against his will to Embark on a Ship that arrived there from *India*, and leaving the Fort in possession of 50 *Portugueses* who were prisoners there. All other places in *Brazil* were recovered with the same ease to the great honour of *Francis Barreto*, after the Dutch had Tyrannically posselt themselves of them for the Space of 30 years, reckoning from their first coming thither which was in the Year 1624. The recovery of *Pernambuco* hapned 8 days after *D. Hi-*

reme de Ataide, Count de Altouguia had taken possession of the Government of Brazil at Bahia, being successor to the Count de Castello Melhor. Collonel Andrew Vidal, was sent to carry this good News to the King who rewarded him and all the cheif Officers according to their Merit.

The War in  
India un-  
successfull  
to Portu-  
gal.

4. Our Affairs in India were not so successful as in America. D. Bras de Castro continued in the Government, no Vice-Roy being yet come to call him to account for his Usurpation. Francis de Mello, who commanded in Ceilon, sent out Antony Mendez Aranba, with 400 Portuguese, and some Chingalas to endeavour to fight the Dutch, but they avoided coming to blows as much as could be, knowing that want of Provisions would in time ruine us. He marched and in the way to Calature, found an Entrenchment guarded by some Blacks whom he defeated. Then advancing to Diagao a place where he must pass the River, he found it Guarded by two Companies of Dutch, and a Number of Chingalas, upon whom he kept Firing for the Space of 10 days, and having provided boats to waft his Men over, the Dutch quitted the Post and he possessed himself of it. He continued 30 days about Calature hoping to draw out the Dutch, and then finding his Design succeeded not, marched through the Country of Alicao then subject to the Enemy, destroying all that stood in his way. Here he received orders to march up the Country, in order to furnish Columbo with provisions whereof there was great scarcity, and when he had Spent 20 days without finding any, so that his Men were consumed with Labour and want, 700 Dutch with a great Number of Chingalas lay in the way he was to pass at Tebuna to intercept him. Antony Mendez drew up his Men under cover and keeping a continual fire upon the Enemy, who were on a rising ground, drove them thence. After this Action he received advice from Columbo that Five Galeons were arrived there with releif from Goa, yet they left the City in no better condition then they found it, for having in an Engagement near Gale lost their two Commandores, the other Captains fell at odds about the command and putting to Sea met 11 Dutch men of War by whom they were all destroyed. The Dutch now wanting men in other places abandoned Calature, which Antony Mendez possessed himself of as also of the Port Ali-

cao, three Leagues from Gale. His good Services being mis-represented by his Enemies, he was call'd away, and his Command given to Gaspar de Araujo Pereyra, who being soon found incapable of it, Antony Mendez was again restored. The Dutch repenting they had quitted Araujo and Calature, had battered the former, the space of 15 days, and passed the River to attack it, the same day that Antony Mendez arrived there. He seeing no possibility of maintaining it, resolved to march off his Men to Columbo; but the Enemy having wholly cut off his Retreat, he was forced to engage them, having chose an advantageous Post, which his Men maintained with incredible Bravery, till a chance Buller flying into the Enemies Powder, blew up all their Ammunition, killing above 50 of them; whereupon the rest fled, leaving 200 of their Companions dead upon the spot, this was the end of this Years Actions there. Three Ships sailed from Lisbon for India, one whereof was cast away upon the Bar of Goa.

Anno, 1655.

1. THE War in all parts of Portugal, was this Year carried on with so little Vigour, that it is scarce worth the mentioning; but that something must be said to carry on the Series of the History. The Provinces of Alentejo and Entre Duero and Minho, afford us no matter at all. John Mendez de Vasconcellos, who governed that of Tros os Montes, and the foregoing Years had continued in perfect Peace, had now received Orders from the King, as had all the other Governors to infest the Enemies Frontiers with Incursions, which he put in Execution. The Spaniards in revenge, drove all the Cattle about Miranda, but Antony Jaques de Payva, who commanded in that Town, sent out a party, which defeating the Enemy, recovered all the Prey, and brought away all the Cattle of the Spaniards that grazed about Samil. This done, Antony Jaques, with 250 Horse, and 200 Foot, marched to Caravajales, and passing by that place without Opposition, burnt the Town of Tavora, and 19 Villages, returning with a great Booty. Soon after 500 Spanish Foot, and 150 Horse, having gathered all the Cattle about Ifanes, Antony Jaques set upon

Very small  
matter this  
Year of  
marital  
Exploits.

them with a lesser number, yet with such Valour, that few of the 500 Foot escaped being kill'd or taken. The People of *Gallicia* offered *John Mendez* a Cessation of Arms, which he accepted of, but the King not approving of it, it was of no Continuance.

Small incursions in  
Bel. 2.

2. *John de Mello Foyo*, governing that part of *Beira*, which was before subject to *D. Roderick de Castro*, resolved not to be idle. Having borrowed 150 Horse of *Nuno da Cunha*, who Commanded in the other part of the Province, and joyned them to Six Troops of his own, and a Regiment of Foot, he marched to *Villa Vieja* Nine Leagues from the Frontiers, towards *Cuidad Rodrigo*. After plundering *Villa Vieja*, he charged a body of 300 Spanish Horse and as many Foot that was gathered to oppose him, and after a Vigorous resistance made by them, in so much that at the first his party seemed to decline, he put them to flight pursuing them as far as *S. Felices*. *Antony Soares da Costa* Governour of the Castle of *Salvaterra*, held a friendly correspondence which is allowed of in time of War between Gentlemen, tho' serving in opposite parties, with *D. Alfonso de Sande* a Spanish Officer. This familiarity inciting, *D. Alfonso* took occasion to make proposals to *Antony Soares*, for delivering up that Castle to the King of Spain, promising him large rewards for that Service. *Antony Soares* pretending an Inclination to comply, carried on the Negotiation, till he obtained a Letter from *D. Lewis de Haro* prime Minister of Spain, with a seditious under that Kings hand containing Large promises if he delivered the place. Having received these assurances he resolved to Revenge the wrong done to his Reputation, in attempting his Fidelity. He agreed with *D. Alfonso* to receive him with 30 more into the Castle of *Salvaterra*, in disguise as if they came thither to Trade, leaving the rest of the Troops belonging to *Alcantara* ready in a Wood hard by. The day being appointed *D. Alfonso* came according to agreement, and a small wicket of the Castle was opened at which the 30 entered one at a time, the entrance not being capable of admitting more at once. As every one was let in, *Antony Soares* caused his brains to be dashed out with a Club, and in this manner cruelly butchered all the 30 reserving only *D. Alfonso de Sande*, whom after sending an account to the King of his barbarity, he inhumanly

A little  
piece of  
treachery.

tyed

tyed to the mouth of a Canon and giving fire to it shattered his body into atoms. *Antony Soares* might have been faithfull to his King, without committing an act so full of horror, which he himself could not but have abominated if committed by the most barbarous Infidels, and which cannot but appear execrable in the sight of all that profess the name of Christians.

3. The Portuguese Affairs in other parts of Europe continued much in the same posture we left them. For the several proposals made in France for concluding a League offensive and defensive, all came to nothing. Nor could there any thing be done at Rome, the Pope being fully bent against passing the Bulls for the Portuguese Bishops. The Dutch had resolved to revenge the Loss of *Pernambuco* upon the Trade of Portugal, but the plague which raged amongst them disappointed their designs. In England the Peace was concluded and ratified with the Usurper. America yield us no subject for History since the Expulsion of the *Hollanders* out of *Brazil*, where the Count de *Atouguia* was supreme governour. Neither is there much to be said of *Africk* where *D. Roderick de Alencastre* still Governed *Tingier*, which was this year Three days beset by 10000 Moors under the Command of *Gaylan*, who did no other harm save the spoiling of some gardens. *D. Francis de Noronha* Governour of *Mazagao*, having obtained leave to return home, left that Command to *Nuno da Cunha* who had held it before, and he dying, the King sent *Alexander de Sousa Freyre* to succeed him.

4. The Count de *Sarzedas* was sent this Year Vice-Roy into India, who arriving at *Goa*, secured *D. Bras de Castro* his losses of and all those that had any hand in the imprisonment of the Count de *Obidos*, sending them to Portugal, there to receive the punishment due to their crimes. He next applied himself with great care to regulating all disorders in that government, and to relieve *Ceylon* then in distress, but death cut him off in the midst of his progress, which we may conclude to be the principall cause of the loss of that Island, the manner whereof we are now to declare, tho' the surrender was not till the following year 1656. At the beginning of this Year, *Caspar Figueira de Serpa* had waged War so successfully upon the King of *Candia*, that he had reduced him to Peace. The Dutch layed siege to *Calatune* and continued before it 10 days, at the

End whereof finding themselves too weak to carry it, they departed. Before *D. Bras de Castro* was deposed from the government of *India*, he sent *Antony de Sousa* to succeed *Francis de Mello* in the Government of *Ceylon*, with Six Gallions and Two pinks laden with provisions and other necessaries. Meeting Two *Dutch* Men of War, these small Vessels were dispersed, Two of them ran ashore, two made their way to *Columbo*, and *Antony de Sousa* with Two more got into *Jasanapatan*. Thence he went by Sea to the Port *Putelao* 15 Leagues from *Columbo*, where *Antony Mendez Aranha* met and conducted him safe by Land to that City, into which he was received with great joy, and *Francis de Mello* put him in possession of the government. Twelve *Dutch* Men of War arrived at *Ceylon* from *Batavia*, Six of them lay before the Barr of *Columbo*, the other Six made their way to *Calature*, where Landing their men they layed Siege to it, and the place being very ill provided, after the Garrison had endured the utmost Extremities it was at last, surrendered upon honourable Terms. *Gaspar Figueyra de Serpa* not knowing that *Calature* was lost, advanced with 500 *Portugueses* to endeavour to put some succour into it, but being attacked by 1600 *Dutch*, was totally routed and many of his men killed. The *Hollanders* pursuing their Victory came and sat down before *Columbo*, raised Four batteries, and playing continually with 12 peices of heavy Canon, ruined not only the houses but the works of the Town, and gave a furious assault to the Fort *Santa Cruz*, yet without success for they were repulsed with considerable Loss. At the same time severall other attacks were carryed on with great obstinacy, insomuch that at last the *Dutch* broke into the City, where they found no less opposition, than without, most of them that entred being either killed or wounded. At length they were repulied in all parts with the loss of near 1000 men. This discouraged not the *Dutch* who still carryed on their works with great diligence, raising new batteries and lodging themselves upon the edge of the ditch. Then they fell to mining which the besieged understanding, they countermined and drove them out of all their subterraneous works. These losses made the Enemy alter their resolutions and change the Siege into a blockade, whereupon the Governour turned out 300 persons that were not fit for Service, whereof about 200

escaped

escaped into the Mountains. The *Dutch* having received considerable supplies, carry on their works anew, and again fall to battering of the place incessantly. Embassadors from the King of *Candia* were conducted through the Enemies Camp into the City, where they demanded it should be put into the hands of their Master. All the answer they received was by thrusting them out of the gates. Though they shewed this resolution, the City began to be infected with the stench of the dead who were not well buried, and Famine raged so violently that it was proved that Mothers had eaten their own Children. *Gerard Huld* the *Dutch* Generall being killed by a shot in the Head, the Governor of *Galé*, who succeeded him in that Command, fearing least another General might come and rob him of the Honour of taking the Place, carryed on his Works, and plyed his Batteries so briskly, that several large Breaches were made. On the 7th. of May, 1656. he assaults *St. John's* Bulwark, and carrying it, with the same heat enters a new Fort that was raising; thence the *Dutch* venture to break into the Town, whence after a long dispute they were beat out, and the Besieged following their Advantage, recovered the Fort and Bulwark; yet fresh Enemies coming on, the *Dutch* again made themselves masters of the latter, and lodged themselves therein. That Night the Governor of the Town being informed that two Women had eaten their own Children, caused them to be shot to pieces at the mouth of great Guns. Next Day, seeing it impossible to maintain the Place, he call'd a Council, where it was resolved to surrender. After some Debates, the Articles were agreed upon, which were honourable to the Besieged, and in pursuance to them, the Governor marched out with only 94 Officers and Soldiers, and 100 Towns-men. The *Hollanders* committed all manner of Sacriledge in the Town, and without regard to their Articles, plunder'd those few Towns-men and Soldiers that were left alive. But from so infamous a Nation, nothing but Villany can be expected. The Count de *Sargedas*, Vice-Roy of *India* dying, as was said before, upon opening the Patents of Succession, it appeared that *Emanuel Mascarenhas Homem*, was to fill his Place. Four Ships and one Caravel sailed this Year from *Lisbon* to *India*.



Anno, 1656.

No milita-  
ry Exploits  
of moment  
this Year.

1. **T**HE King's Distempers which had long molested him, daily increased, yet he omitted not to apply himself to the Cares of the Government. The War was still carryed on with so little Vigour on both sides, that nothing occurs this Year, but some few Incursions, more like Robberies than military Exploits, and the consequence of them inconsiderable Skirmishes, whereof so many have been already related in the foregoing Years, that to say more of them, will only serve to nauseate and tire the Reader. This quiet was general throughout all the Provinces of the Kingdom, and enabled them the better to bear the Storm that ensued after the King's Death; for the Spaniards then altering their measures, the following Years were full of Action; considerable Armies appeared in the Field; Bloody Battles were fought, and the Portugueses in the end, obtained glorious Victories.

Negotiations  
abroad.

2. Francis de Sousa Coutinho, continued still Ambassador at the French Court, and maintained the good Correspondence that has always been betwixt that Crown and Portugal. The King being desirous before his Death, to have his Ambassador admitted by the Pope, ordered Francis de Sousa to go in that quality to Rome. He obeyed, and though assisted by all the interest of France, and appearing with as great a Train as any other Ambassador, could never obtain to be admitted as such by his Holiness. Antony Raposo, who resided with the same Character in Holland, having received a Letter from the Arch-Duke Leopold, intreating him to discover the Secrets of his Master, upon promise of great Reward, sent the Letter to the King. The Dutch, with the good News of their Success in Ceylon, began to forget their loss at Pernambuco, and consequently appeared more favourable to Antony Raposo. Francis Ferreyra Rebello, who resided in England, after the Ratification of the Peace, had no Business of moment. The Count de Atouguia governed Brazil, much beloved and esteemed by the Inhabitants, for his Generosity and good Conduct.

3. A

3. At the beginning of this Year D. Ferdinand de Menezes, Count de Ericeyra, was sent Governor of Tangier. With him went 11 Caravels, with recruits of Men and Horses, Cloaths and Provisions for the Garrison. D. Roderick de Castro, having put him into possession of the Government, departed, and arrived again at Lisbon, with the 11 Caravels that carryed the new Governor. As soon as the Count had viewed the Garrison, he marched out against the Moors, and having drawn them within the reach of his Entrenchments, where he had placed his Foot, with some pieces of Canon, made a considerable slaughter among them. In May, the English Fleet, under the command of Montague and Blake, appeared before Tangier, and asked leave to water, which was granted them; but they going ashore disorderly, some of them were killed by the Moors. The Fleet being gone, the Count set out his Horse to burn the Corn the Moors had sowed about Tangier, which was effectually performed; but the Moors pressing hard upon those who had fired it, recovered the Cattle they were driving to Tangier. Alexander de Sousa governed Mazagao, but that place affords nothing but the usual skirmishes with the Moors. What happened in India was related the last Year, and this furnishes nothing new, only two Ships sailed thither this Year.

4. The King growing daily more and more infirm, and still continuing his Custom of Hunting once a Week, went out accordingly on the 25th. of October, but feeling a great pain in his Side, returned home before Noon. Some days were spent by the Physicians, in applying all sorts of Medicines they thought proper, but his Distemper still increasing, he at length made his Will, and received the Viaticum with great Resignation. Those few days he lived after this Preparation, were spent in Devotions for the most part, and the rest in giving advice to the Queen, the Princes, his Counsellors, Generals and others, who had any share in the Administration of the Government. At length, on the 6th. of November, being Munday, having given all imaginable Tokens of true Repentance and Christian Piety, he gave up the Ghost into the Hands of his Redeemer. The King being dead, the Lord Chamberlain dressed him in the Royal Robes, and layed him upon a Bed; the Bells throughout the City, and the Tears of his Subjects

The King's  
last Sick-  
ness and  
Death.

jects, equally signifying the loss sustained by the Kingdom. After noon the Council met, and opening his Will, found he appointed the Queen Regent of the Kingdom, and Protectress of his Children, that the Royal Chappel should be finished according to the Model by him begun; that the Monastery of *S. Clare*, at *Coimbra*, should be finished. That several Pensions should be given to Persons there named. That 2000 Cruzados should be immediately distributed to poor Monasteries, and that his Body should be interred in the Church of *S. Vincent*. All the while the Body lay in State in the Guard Chamber of the Pallace, the People thronged to see it. Thence it was removed, attended by all the Officers of the Household, and Clergy of the whole City, to the Church of *S. Vincent*, and there put into the Tomb appointed for it. King *John* was of a middle Stature, very handsome before he had the Small Pox; his Hair fair, his Body gross, but strong. He hated gayety in Cloaths, and therefore was careless in his Dress, always an Enemy to new Fashions. His Discourse was Witty and Pleasant, his Judgment sound, but affecting to have all his Orders unblameable; he was often too slow in his Resolutions. He had but one Wife, which was the Lady *Luisa de Guzman*, Daughter to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*. By her he had Issue, *Theodosius*, who dyed at *Lisbon*, in the 19th. Year of his Age; *Emanuel* and *Anne*, who both dyed in their Infancy, at *Villa Viciosa*, before their Father ascended the Throne. *Alfonso*, who succeeded his Father, and was afterwards deposed. *Peter* now reigning. *Joanna*, who dyed at *Lisbon*, in the 16th. Year of her Age. And *Catherine* Queen of *England*. One Bastard Daughter called *Mary*, who lived and dyed in the Monastery of *Carnide*, near *Lisbon*. In this City, the King dyed upon Monday, the 26th. of November, in the Year 1656, at the age of 52 Years and 7 Months, whereof he was 26 Duke of *Barcelos*, 10 Duke of *Braganza*, and 16, King of *Portugal*.

His Wife  
and Issue.

Anno, 1657.

After the death of the King, the Queen Dowager who was also regent during the minority of her Son, by

ing a Woman of a haughty and active Spirit, presently bent her thoughts upon making some considerable attempt on the Enemies Frontiers, least they should imagine that the loss of their King had discouraged the Portuguese, or dissipated their Councils. To this effect, and to gain her self a greater Reputation among her own People, she ordered the Count *de San Lorenzo*, who then Commanded upon the Frontiers, with all secrecy and expedition to attempt the surprizing of the Fort of *Barcarota*, in which she was informed there was but a small Garrison. At this time *Francis Tutta-villa* Duke of *St. German* was Generall of the Spanish Frontiers, by birth he was an Italian, and as to his person and experience a Soldier of known courage and Conduct. He having private intelligence of the design covertly put 500 chosen men into *Barcarota*, with orders to Stand upon their guard, that they might surprize those who came to surprize them. The Portuguese Forces, who knew nothing of this reinforcement, boldly making up to the Fort before break of day, were on a sudden assaulted by the Spaniards sallying furiously upon them, and they expecting no such reception were soon put to flight, and a great number slain and taken prisoners. This rash and fruitless attempt by which the Queen thought to have made herself terrible to her Enemies, produced a quite contrary effect, for it only provoked his Catholick Majesty to carry on the War against Portugal, with greater vigour than had been done of late years. In order therefore to the Spanish Generall the Duke of *St. German* having been sent for to *Madrid*, and there fully empowered to act, as he should find most expedient, returned to the Frontiers well furnished with money, Armes, provisions, 20 peices of Canon, and an Army of 13000 Foot, and 4000 Horse. He was at first doubtfull whether he should bend his Force against *Elvas*, or *Olivenza*, but considering the damage received from the frequent excursions of the garrison of the latter of these two places, he resolved to attack it. *Olivenza* is seated in a plain almost a League from the River *Guadiana*, and beset on all sides with hills that command it being within Cannon shot. The Fortifications of the place were after the modern manner consisting of Nine bastions, two half Moons and two Forts, and was next to *Elvas* the strongest place in Portugal. The Duke being come before the

The Portuguese as  
tempting  
*Barcarota*  
are repul-  
sed with  
loss.

The Duke  
of St. Ger-  
man the  
Spanish  
Generall  
besieges O-  
livenza.

the Town and perceiving the Siege would be a work of time, enclosed the whole place within his lines, possessing himself of the hills and strengthening his lines with 21 redoubts, and four large places of Armes. Four batteries were presently raised, which played with good success upon the Town, but whatever they cast down in the day the besieged repaired by Night. After which another was planted on the Monastery of St. Francis, which overtopping the Walls slew many in the streets, till such time as a strong work was cast up by the garrison, which covered that part of the Town. The trenches were diligently carryed on and many sallies made by the besieged. The Duke perceiving the conquest of this place to be a work of great difficulty, thought fit to reduce it by Art as well as Main-force. Having therefore suffered his men to lye still severall days, as if he intended to starve the Town, on a sudden in the dead of Night, he assaulted the greater of the two Forts with his whole power. The besieged being at first surprized and not knowing whither to run, gave way to the Enemy, who thought themselves possesst of the Fort till Emanuel de Saldanha the Governour of the Town, coming with fresh supplies drove them out, and the Duke fearful of exposing his men sounded a retreat. Twenty days after the Town was invested, the Count de St. Lorenzo came to the relief of it, with an Army of 12000 Foot, and 3500 Horse. After being four days on the Banks of the River, he moved nearer to the Enemy and planted a battery against their works, but the Duke having raised also another, did such Execution that he was glad to withdraw and return to his Camp near Jurumenba. Three days he lay there, and then again drew near to Olivenza, to discover how the Town might best be relieved, or at least to encourage the besieged by his presence, to which purpose he sent severall Messages to the Governour, with false promises of speedy relief.

The Por-  
tuguese gene-  
rall endeavour  
s to draw away  
the Spanish  
Army from  
Olivenza  
by giving  
a diversion.

At length the Count seeing no possibility of Forcing the Enemy without hazarding his whole Army, thought it better to endeavour to draw them from the Siege by a diversion. In order to it he marched to Badajoz, hoping to surprize that important place in the Night, by sending 3000 men who by the likeness of their habit and Language, might be admitted as if sent from the Spanish Army. These being near the gate were discovered, and the

the Garrison and Townsmen running to Arms were put to flight, after leaving about 300 dead behind, besides several Officers of Note. This Enterprize proving so unsuccessful, the Count de St. Lorenzo marched towards Albuquerque, burning and destroying all the Country in hopes by that means to draw the Spanish Army from Olivenza, and at last sits down before Valencia pressing that place day and Night, but with great loss on his side, for it was no less bravely defended by Sebastian Granero, the Governour an old Souldier of known Valour. In the mean while the Duke of St. German had plyed Olivenza so hotly that the works of the place were all ruined, and the greater Fort almost demolished by the mines he had sprung. Emanuel de Saldanha the Governour seeing the ruin of his works; and that the Army which ought to have relieved him was marched away, obtained a truce of the Duke conditioning to deliver up the place if not relieved by a day appointed. The Count de St. Lorenzo having received this advice before Valencia, immediately raised his Siege and marching first to Portalegre came thence and incamped at Jurumenba, from which place he writ to the Governour of Olivenza in hard Terms, commanding him at the peril of his Life, to defend the place to the last extremity, and promising to come to his relief as soon as he had received some recruits he expected. Saldanha the Governour being sensible of his own weakness, and the vainness of the Counts promises, resolved to perform the Articles he had agreed upon with the Spanish Generall, and accordingly on the day appointed delivered up the Town to him, marching out himself with about 2500 Foot and near 600 Horse. Not one Townsman remained behind him, such was their hatred to the Spaniards. It was generally agreed the Town could have held out some days longer, and the Governour being accused of not having performed his duty, but to have made a hasty and dishonourable surrender, was first kept prisoner at Lisbon; and afterwards banished the Kingdom for ever. The breaches of the Town being repaired and a good Garrison put into the place, the Duke marched towards his Enemy, burning and wasting all the Country before him, by this means intending to draw the Count to a battle; but perceiving this nothing moved him, he sits down with his Army before Moron. This Town is feared upon

Moron  
surrendered.

upon the River *Guadiana*, secures the passage of that River, and covers *Olivenza*. About the Town there was only an old wall, but the Castle was of greater strength. The inhabitants terrified by the fate of *Olivenza*, no sooner saw the Cannon begin to play upon their Walls but they abandoned the Town, and retired into the Castle which was well fortified. This success caused the Duke to alter his resolution of fighting, and now he resolved to make himself Master of the Castle before he would come to a battle. On the other side the Count *de St. Lorenzo* who before carefully shunned hazarding his Army, seeing now the ill consequence of suffering the Enemy to encroach so far upon him, was wholly bent upon engaging, but the River being betwixt him and the Enemy who carefully guarded all the Fords, and some Skirmishes being unsuccessfull to the *Portugueses*, still the generall dreaded to expose his whole Army to the fury of the Enemy, and of the River at once. *John Ferreira* the Governour of the Castle being now sore pressed by the besiegers, and no less by want of provisions, and seeing no likelihood of relief, on the Eleventh day after the Castle was invested, delivered it up: all the inhabitants marching out with the garrison. After this success the Victorious Duke marched back to *Badajoz*, intending to return and besiege *Jurumenba*, but the excessive heats made him defer that enterprize for a more favourable Season. Nothing more of moment passed this year, but that the *Portugueses* raised the Fort of *Oliva*, which before they had taken from the *Spaniards*, as not tenable after the loss of *Olivenza*.

Anno, 1658.

The Queen  
prepares to  
invade Ca-  
stile.

Queen *Luisa* a Woman naturally ambitious and haughty, was extremely perplexed to see her great designs against *Spain* miscarry, and her Enemies triumphant in the taking of *Olivenza*, and daring of her Army the last Summer. She feared the unconstant multitude, who always judge of things according to the success, and when that fails immediately flye at the government. To strike a Terror therefore into her Enemies and to still the murmuring of the People, she re-

solved

solved once more to carry the War into the Borders of *Castile*. To this purpose she renewed the Alliance, concluded by the late King, with *France* and *England*, and having sent to both for Supplies of Men, caused 13000 Foot, and near 4000 Horse, to be speedily drawn together. The command of these Forces she gave to *John Mendez de Vasconcellos*, an old Soldier, who had served under the Catholick King in the low Countries. This done, it was decreed in Council, in compliance to her Will, that *Badajoz* should be Besieged, because that Place if taken, would add much Reputation to her Government, and would be as a Bridle upon the *Spanish* Garrison in *Olivenza*. The Duke of *St. Germain*, who was then at *Badajoz*, having by his Spies, received Intelligence of these great Preparations and the design of them, immediately dispatch'd an Express to acquaint *D. Luis de Haro*, the prime Minister of *Spain* therewith; as also to inform him of the weakness of the Garrison of *Badajoz*, and the ill posture of defence of the Place. Whilst Relief was expected, he lost no time, but drew together all the Forces he could, and gather'd such stores of Ammunition and Provisions, as the time and his Exigencies would permit. Few days were passed, before the *Portuguese* Army appeared on the further side of the River *Guadiana*, near which *Badajoz* is seated. The River in Summer, is fordable in many Places, and is joyned to the Town by a good Stone-Bridge, at the Foot whereof, is the strong Fort of *St. Christophers*. On the top of the Hill, on whose side the Town lies, stands the Castle; but the Walls of the Town were at this time decayed and unfit for Defence. The Duke not being as yet provided for a Siege, sent out his Horse to give some stop to the Enemies sudden approach. But the *Portuguese* General, who ought to have immediately past the River, and invested the Town then unprovided, missed his Opportunity, by setting down before the Fort of *St. Christopher*. This Fort is seated on a Hill, on the further Bank of the River from the Town, and about a Musquet shot from the City; being a regular Fortification after the modern manner. *D. Ventura de Tarragona* General of the Artillery, commanded in the Fort. The *Portugueses* immediately possessed themselves of two Hills, on each of which there was a small redoubt, on which they planted their Cannon, and thence

The Por-  
tuguese  
Army lays  
Siege to  
Fort St.  
Christopher near  
Badajoz.



thence battered the Fort. Next day they opened their Trenches, and carried them on with great Application; the Besieged on their side, doing all that could be expected for their Defence, in which they made many vigorous Sallies; in one whereof, after a hot Dispute, they drove the Besiegers before them with much Slaughter, and destroyed their Works. However, the Besieged soon repaired the Works, and began to press the place, which obliged the Duke of St. German to send in all haste for two Regiments that were in Andalusia, one of Spaniards, commanded by the Marquess of Lanzarote; the other of Irish, under the command of Colonel Walter Dungan, who was afterwards Earl of Limerick. These two Regiments, the Spanish General had decreed should relieve the Fort, which began to be distressed; but the Portuguese had appointed 6000 chosen Men to be always in readiness to oppose such Attempts, and had broke the Line of Communication betwixt the Foot of the Bridge and the Fort, by which supplies used to come from the Town, so that this same was now an Obstacle against those that were to succour the Besieged. Thus the Fort was reduced to the last Extremity. This moved the Spanish General, to order a Spanish Major, with two Captains, and 160 Men to attempt breaking through the Enemies Line, which they most resolutely performed, and got into the Fort. No sooner were they entred, but D. Ventura the Governor, commanded them to attack the Besiegers in the redoubt they had possessed themselves of; but this answered not their former Success, for being overpowered by the multitude of Enemies, the Major was killed, one of the Captains shot through the Arm, and such of the Men as could escape, fled in disorder to the Fort. Hereupon the Governor sent to acquaint the Duke that he could not hold out 24 Hours, unless he was considerably reinforced, so as to be able to remove the Besiegers from the Posts they had possessed themselves of. Immediately the Duke ordered the Marquess of Lanzarote with 800 of the best Men, and some Volunteers, to march to the Relief of the Fort, and to recover the two redoubts. It was a desperate piece of Service, for such a handful of Men to attempt against such a multitude; yet they charged with such Fury, that having broke through the Enemies Line, and being supported by

sally, from the Fort, they gained the redoubts, and drove the Enemy from their Camp. This Success cost the Marquess his Life; however, though the Portuguese twice attempted to recover their loss, they were both times repulsed, and at last forced to desist. John Mendez de Vasconcellos the Portuguese General, having spent a whole Month before this place without any Success, but with great loss, and despairing of carrying it, resolved now at last to remove and lay Siege to the Town. He had before sent over some Troops to invest the place, and work upon the Lines, but now he marched over, and bent his whole Force against it. The first considerable Action in this Siege, was the taking of two Hills which the Spaniards had fortified and strongly garrisoned. John Mendez attacked them with all his Forces, and after a sharp dispute, in which he lost many Men, made himself master of them, the Defendants being all killed or taken. Next he assaulted the Fort of St. Gabriel, which being but weakly Manned, was easily carried. But he found not the reducing of the Fort of St. Michael, a work of so much ease; for Colonel Dungan who commanded there, defended it with extraordinary Bravery, till it was no longer tenable, and then surrendered it upon Articles; when the Besiegers had lost 1300 Men before it, and among them many Persons of note. Having made himself master of this Fort, John Mendez finished his Lines, encompassing the whole Town with them, which before the reduction of these Forts he could not do. Then he began to batter the Place, to cast in Bombs, and to press the Besieged on all sides. Within the Town much harm was done by the Enemies shot; but scarcity of Provisions, and Diseases proceeding from ill Food, were more terrible than all other Dangers, and now no hope remained, but in the relief they expected from without. The News of this Siege being brought to Madrid, highly incensed the multitude, and perplexed the Council, in which at length it was decreed, that D. Luis de Haro, the King's Favourite and prime Minister of State, should march in Person with all the Forces he could gather to the relief of the Town. Accordingly he immediately set forward with a gallant train of Volunteers, and came to Merida, where the Rendezvous of the Army was appointed. His Army consisted of 12000 Foot, and 3500 Horse.

The Siege raised from before the Town. Castle, and delayed to Badajoz.

The Spanish Army advances to relieve Badajoz.

The Duke of St. German being informed of *D. Luis's* Arrival at *Merida*, resolved to meet him at that place, and having in order to it forced the Lines of the Besiegers, he broke through with 1000 Horse, and arrived safe at *Merida*. Thence the *Spanish* Army marched with all possible Speed to the relief of the Besieged, but the *Portuguese* General, not thinking it prudent to expose his Army, now much diminished and harrassed to the Enemy, who came fresh into the Field, drew off in the Night, and retired hastily into *Portugal*. *D. Luis de Haro* the next day, entered the Town in triumphant manner.

Having given the necessary Orders for repairing the Damage done by the Enemy, *D. Luis* marched with his Army, now increased to 13000 Foot, and near 6000 Horse, into the Frontiers of *Portugal*, burning and destroying all where he came, as he did the Town and Castle of *Villa Buim*. Thence, though contrary to the advice of the Duke of St. German, because Winter drew on, he marched to *Elvas*, and laid Siege to that place. The Town is seated on a Hill of difficult Ascent, and was then under the Government of *Sancho Manuel*, a resolute and fortunate Commander. The first attempt of the *Spaniards*, was upon the Monastery of St. Francis standing within Musquet shot of the Town, which though well defended, they made themselves masters of, as also of the Church of *Santagracia*, seated on a Hill without the Town. This done, they fell to work upon their Lines, and took their Posts about the Town. Nothing was omitted by the Governour that might conduce to a vigorous Defence; but the Besiegers by degrees, having cut off all their Communication abroad, and possessed themselves of all advantageous Posts, the place was no longer in a posture to hold out long, had it not been speedily relieved. In order to it, all the Garrisons were drained, and the *Portuguese* Army rendezvoused at *Estremoz*, under the command of the Count de *Castagneda*. Here the Count received Advice from the Governor of *Elvas*, that his Garrison was extremely weakened through Want, Sicknes, and continual Labour, for which Reason he should be obliged to surrender, unless speedily succoured. Upon this Advice the Count de *Castagneda* set forward with 12000 disciplined Foot, and 3500 Horse, besides a confused mul-

tude of all sorts of Rabble that followed the Army as Volunteers. With this Force he came and drew up before the Hill of *Santagracia*, whither also the Duke of St. German drew up the best part of the Troops to receive him. In this posture both parties continued all that Night. By break of day the *Portuguese* began to advance towards the Lines, and made their first effort upon the quarter where *Nicholas of Cordova* commanded, the fight was obstinate for a considerable space, and the *Portuguese* were twice forced to give back. Meanwhile the Besieged making a furious Sally, endeavoured to ruin their Enemies Works, that they might open themselves a passage to their Army. Thus the *Spaniards*, who were the lesser Number, being charged in Front and Rear, made a desperate and bloody Fight, till their right Wing of Horse being overpowered, was put to flight. The Duke of St. German seeing the Foot left naked on that side, came himself to their Succour, with a party of chosen Horse. Hence rushing furiously upon his Enemy, he received a shot in the Head, which made him fall from his Horse. This accident of the Generals who was esteemed dead, so discouraged the *Spaniards*, that they presently gave way on all sides, yet so that they carried off their General. In the mean while the *Portuguese* meeting no opposition, cleared their passage to the Town. *Roderick Moxica* who was Major General, and next in command to the Duke of St. German, lying at this time at his post near the River *Cailla*, fortified himself, and received all that fled from the Battle, still skirmishing with the Enemy till Night, when he drew off, and saved the remainder of the *Spanish* Army. For the Count de *Castagneda* satisfied with having relieved the place, thought not fit to hazard any more by pursuing the Enemy. Of the *Spaniards*, above 2000 were killed, as many wounded, but very few taken. On the *Portuguese* side, about 1000 fell. *D. Luis de Haro*, who had been a spectator of the fight, at a distance, seeing all lost, made his way to *Badajoz*. Thus ended this present Year.

The Battle of Elvas.

The Spaniards defeated.

Anno, 1659, and 1660.

*No Warlike exploits for two Years.* After the mighty efforts of the last Year, both parties being exhausted and wearied, as if it had been by mutual consent, kept themselves so quiet, that these two Years do not furnish us any Military Action worth the writing. The Spaniards had bent all their Thoughts upon concluding a Peace with France, that so they might wholly apply themselves to the War with Portugal. To this effect a Treaty was set on Foot, and the whole affair managed by the two prime Ministers, Cardinal *Mazarine* for France, and *D. Luis de Haro* for Spain. After long debates, which belong not to this History, a Peace was Concluded betwixt the two Crowns; the French renouncing their League with Portugal, upon Condition that King should quit all claim to the Crown, and be restored by the Spaniard to all his ancient Patrimony, as Duke of *Braganza*. The Portuguese Ambassador, who attended the Cardinal, during the whole time of the Treaty, had not failed to use his utmost endeavours, to obstruct the whole Negotiation taking effect, or at least, to prevent his Master's interest being abandoned. But the particular interest of France, outweighed all that could be urged in behalf of an Ally; and the Cardinal assured the Ambassador, that notwithstanding the Peace, his master's Interest should not be forsaken for that the French would be in a better Condition to support him, and could not want a pretence for so doing. This Promise of the Cardinals proved not Vain, as will appear by the Sequel. Count *Schomberg*, an experienced French Commander, was already in the Portuguese Service, and had under him some French Troops, which were afterwards increased to a greater Number. The Spaniard immediately, after the Conclusion of the Peace with France, began to apply himself to carry on the War against Portugal with all his Force; and to that end, several old Regiments were brought over out of Italy and Flanders. *D. John of Austria*, the King's Bastard Son, who had commanded in the Low-Countries and in Catalonia, was appointed General, the Duke of *St. German* his Lieutenant General, *Alonso Paderico* Major General, *James Cavallero*, General of the Horse

and *Gaspar de Cueva* General of the Artillery. On the Portuguese side, whether through want of Intelligence of the Storm that threatned, or through want of Means is uncertain, but the War-like Preparations were not Proportionable. Since these Years afford nothing material, let us pass on to the next, wherein we shall meet with more Action.

Anno, 1661.

*D. John of Austria*, having received the Command of the Army, and finding all things provided suitable to his Expectation, in the Spring entered the Frontiers of Portugal, with 13000 Foot, and above 6000 Horse, a Force not so considerable for its number, as for that they were all old tryed Troops. The Count *de Castañeda* General of the Portuguese Army, could scarce gather 10000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, so that he was in no Condition to make head against the Enemy. Hereupon *D. John* being master of the Field, marched his Army in sight of *Campomayor*, as if he intended to have set down before it, but having put the place into a Consternation, he suddenly wheeled off; in his way, took and destroyed the small Town and Castle of *Origuela*, and then unexpectedly invested *Aronches*. This Town is seated upon the River *Alegrete*, contains about 500 Houses, its chief Trade is Cloath, but at this time the Walls of it were ruinous, though it had a Castle, which was of no Strength. No sooner was the Cannon planted, and began to play, but the place surrendered upon Articles; all the Inhabitants out of hatred to the Spaniards, retiring with what they could carry away. Here *D. John* continued, till he had strongly repaired the old Works, and cast up new ones, then having plundered all the Country about, without any Opposition, he marched back the Army to *Badajoz*.

This loss stirred up the Portuguese to a rash Action, *Don Count Schomberg*, with 16 Squadrons of Horse, had the boldness to appear about the Bridge of *Badajoz*, as it were provoking the whole Force of the Spanish Army, which then lay in and about that place, to revenge this excess. *D. John* immediately sent out *D. John Pacheco*, Lieutenant General of the Horse, who attacked

K k 3

the

the *Portugueses* with a small handfull of men at first, yet with such resolution that they gained no advantage, till he was shot dead upon the place, but then fresh Supplies still comming from the Town, at last the *Portugueses* were overpowered, many of them slain, many taken, and the rest Forced to save themselves by Flight. This success was the less pleasing to the *Spaniards*, because of the Loss of *D. John Pacheco*, who was a person of tryed Valour and Conduct.

*D. John of Austria takes Alconchel.*

*D. John* being informed that much damage was done on the Frontiers of *Castile*, by the excursions of the garrison of *Alconchel*, sent *D. James Cavallero* with the best part of the Army to invest it, and himself followed soon after him. *Alconchel* is near the River *Guadiana*, has a Castle and had been lately fortified by the *Portugueses*. The Seige was carryed on but coldly, either to draw the *Portugues* Army to attempt the releif of the place, or else because the inhabitants being divided in factions, it was not doubted but they must speedily surrender. Nor was *D. John* deceived in his expectation, for the Governour perceiving the heats within to increase, and the Enemy without to threaten the utmost extremity if he proved obstinate, was forced to submit, and accept of honourable conditions. The Fortifications were speedily repaired and a *Spanish* Garrison put into the place. This done *D. John* returned to *Badajoz* and put his Army into Winter-Quarters.

Anno, 1662.

1. **T**He Last years losses, and the present preparations of the *Spaniards*, had sufficiently alarmed *Portugal*, to oblige the Queen to use her utmost industry to be in a condition to oppose her Enemy. In order to it the Treasury being exhausted, heavy Taxes were imposed upon the People, which they did not pay without much murmuring, and reluctance. To strengthen herself by foreign allyances, she had concluded a match for her daughter the Princess *Catherine* with his Majesty *Charles the Second*, King of *Great Britain*. The Queen had Entertained hopes of Marrying this Princess to the King of *France*, but he having chosen the Infanta of *Spain*, her next recourse was by that affinity, to secure

*Catherine Infanta of Portugal married to King Ch. the II. of England.*

the Friendship of the King of *England*. The new Queens portion was a considerable Sum of Money, the City of *Tangier* upon the mouth of the Streights in *Barbary*, and the Island of *Bombain* in the *East-Indies*. On the other side the King of *England* was to assist the *Portugueses* with a body of Foot, to serve as auxiliaries under the Command of Count *Schomberg*. The Earl of *Sandwich* with the Royal-Navy, conveyed the Queen into *England*. Upon the News of this match and that *Tangier* was to be delivered up to the *English*, the King of *Spain* once more attempted the fidelity of the governour of that City *D. Lewis de Almeida*, endeavouring to perswade him rather to betray the place to him upon hopes of a considerable Reward, than to put it into the hands of the *English*; but the governour was not to be moved, who rather fearing that the inhabitants and Garrison would never be brought to consent, to their Kings orders of delivering up the place, as soon as the *English* Fleet appeared in sight to take possession of it, he sent out the greatest part of the garrison, and many of the inhabitants upon pretence to repell the *Moors*, who appeared then in bodies about the Town, and whilst they were abroad ingaging and pursuing the *Infidels*, gave possession of the City to the *English*.

2. Notwithstanding all the Queens care and diligence, the *Spaniards* were first in the field, and much superiour the *Portugueses* in Strength. *D. John* of *Austria* took the field at the beginning of *May* with 13000 Foot and 5000 Horse all old Troops. His first design was to lay Siege to *Estremoz*, but the Count *de Castaneda* the *Portugues* General prevented him, by planting himself before the place with his whole Army, which then consisted of 8000 Foot and 3000 Horse. Hereupon *D. John* turned away as if he intended to march directly to *Lisbon*, which put that City into a consternation, and no less surprized the Count *de Castaneda* fearing least the Capitall of the kingdom should fall into the hands of the Enemy; and had the *Spanish* Army held on their march, as they began, in all likelihood they must have made themselves masters of it without any opposition. But *D. John* spent his time in plundering and burning the Country, and having made a halt near a brook called *Zapateros*, he sent then *D. James Cavallero* with Two Regiments of Foot, and most of the Horse,

*D. John of Austria burns and plunders the Country.*

K k 4

to



He takes  
and raises  
Villabuim.

to attack the Town of *Villabuim*, a place considerable both for it's Riches and Strength, nevertheless the Governour who was a *French* man, upon the first approach of the *Spaniards* resolved to Surrender, having privately Articled with the *Spanish* General, that for the saving of his Reputation, he might be permitted to fire his Cannon for an hour without ball, that so he might be thought to have made some defence. Yet the Surrender was not without blood, for some of the inhabitants encouraged by a Parish-Priest, endeavoured to make some opposition, but were soon quelled by the *Spaniards*. The Town and Castle were raised down to the Ground, for a Terror to other places. Hence the Army moved towards *Villaviciosa*, and having taken an express that was going to *Elvas* and *Jurumenba*, to encourage those governours to defend themselves courageously, upon promise of speedy relief *D. John* sent him back to the Count de *Castaneda* to let him know he would be with him the next day. He performed his word, but the Count who was much inferior to him in numbers, kept himself close in his Camp under the Walls of *Estremoz*. *D. John* intending to attack him in his Camp, was dissuaded by the Duke of *St. German*, and marched away to *Borba*, a place of small Strength, but that had a Castle, and the governour *Roderick da Cunha* being a desperate man, had periwaded the Townsmen to joyn with the Garrison, to defend it. Such was his Folly or rashness, that he reproached and fired upon the Trumpet that came to bring him the Summons to Surrender, whereupon the Town was assaulted on all sides and taken. The governour with a few men retired into the Castle, which having for a while stood the shock of the Canon, and beginning now to give way to it's fury, *Acunha's* heat being somewhat allayed, he sent out to beg he might be admitted to conditions. No intreaties could prevail with *D. John*, who being incensed, would admit of nothing but that they should Surrender upon discretion, which was accordingly done. The Soldiers were all made prisoners of War, the Town plundered, and Burnt, the Castle Demolished, and *da Cunha* the Governour, with Two Captains were strangled in the Market-place.

*Borba* delivered to him.

*Jurumenba* besieged by *D. John*.

3. Hence the *Spanish* Army directed its course to *Jurumenba*, an antient and noted Town seated upon a hill a long

along the East side of it runs the River *Guadiana*, on the West is a pleasant hilly Country for the most part covered with Trees, Gardens and Vineyards. On the top of the hill over the Town stands the Castle which is strong, and has 17 Towers. The Fortifications of the Town were all New, and consisted of Five very large bastions, severall half Moons, a good ditch, and Trench, with other modern works. *Emanuel Lobato Pinto* was at this time Governour of *Jurumenba*, the garrison consisted of 3000 men and was plentifully stored with provisions, and all Sort of warlike-ammunition, when the Enemy sat down before it. *D. John* posted his Army about the Town, drew his lines, whereof the extremes ended at the River, which as has been said, waters one side of the Town, and then opened his Trenches and began to raise batteries. The line of circumvallation was carryed on with the utmost diligence, and fortified to perfection, least the *Portugues* Army, as was expected, should find an opportunity of relieving the place. On the other side the Governour omitted nothing, that might conduce to the security of his garrison, yet so as that he always spared to expose his men, reserving them for the last extremity. The *Portugues* Generall understanding how *Jurumenba* was beset, sent thither *Emanuel de Sequeira* an able Commander, to assist the Governour in defence of the place. He got in by a boat in the Night unperceived by the Enemies Guards. *D. John* raised two strong Forts, one on each side of the River, and betwixt them layd over a bridge of boats, by which he received plentifully supplies from *Olivenza*, and with his Cannon cut off from the besieged the use of the River. All things being disposed for an attack, he ordered the *Spaniards* and *Italians* upon a signal given in two severall places, to attack the covered way. The *Spaniards* going on too precipitatory after a long fight, were repulsed and drove back to their Trenches with the Loss of many men, among which were several Officers; but the *Italians*, whose Conduct was better, with small loss lodged themselves on the counterscarp, and yet the next day it being thought a work of too much difficulty to force the Town on that side, they were ordered to quit the Post they had taken. Being moved thence, they were ordered to joyn the *Germans*, who lay before the great

great bastion, which, it was hoped, might with more ease be ruined, and four more pieces of Cannon were there planted to batter it, which played with good success and began to fill the ditch. In the mean while a French Ingenier sent from the Portugues Camp to view the Spanish Lines being taken, discovered to D. John that the Count de Castaneda had resolved to attack him in his works, having with him at that time 13000 Foot and 3000 Horse, and only expecting the auxiliary English, which according to the contract of marriage with his Majesty of Great Britain would soon be with him. This intelligence caused D. John to fortify his Lines, having by the advice of the Duke of St. German, resolved, to receive the Enemy within them, tho' others advised to march out and meet them. Having disposed all things for the reception of the Portugues General, to forward the Seige, he orders a general assault to be given to all the works of the besieged, the Italians and Germans without much difficulty lodged themselves in the counterescarp, and the Spaniards upon whom lay the hottest Service, after four hours fight with great slaughter on both sides, made themselves masters of two great bastions, and all the space betwixt them; so that now the Town had no other defence left it but it's bare wall. This was the condition of the place, when the Count de Castaneda with the Portugues Army, came and encamped within a League of the Town, but after severall movements to discover the weakest part of the Enemies works, finding it a matter of too great difficulty to Force their Lines, he marched away, having before his departure sent a Letter to the Governour, directing him to make the best conditions he could for his garrison, for that it was impracticable to relieve him. All hopes of releif being Lost, and the Town now reduced to extremity, the Governour upon a fresh Summons from D. John, capitulated and delivered up the Town upon such Terms as he could obtain. Thus after a months Seige D. John took possession of Jurumenha, but void of inhabitants, who all marched away out of their hatred to the Spaniards, yet well stored with provisions and Ammunition, tho' the Portugueses had spoiled most of their Corn before they quitted the place. D. Ferdinand de Escovedo, was left Governour there after the works had been sufficiently repaired.

Having

4. Having secured Jurumenha, D. John lost no time, but immediately marched away towards V. viciosa, where the Portugues Army then lay strongly intrenched. He used all his endeavours to draw them to a battle, burning and wasting all the Country about, but perceiving the Count de Castaneda was unmoved, he removed and planted himself betwixt Aveiro and Monforte, both which places, tho' well Fortified, being terrified with the success of the Spanish Arms, surrendered upon the first Summons. Both places being secured with good garrisons he moved thence without delay to Crato, a Town belonging to the Knights of Malta, encompassed only with an old ruined wall, and a small Trench, but very Rich and at this time filled with great Stores of Provisions. Tho' the place was not Tenable, the Count de Castaneda, fearing to lose all those stores, put out the former governor and sent to succeed him an old rash Major. This man never regarding the weakness of the place, answered the summons sent him by D. John with scorn and contempt, whereupon the Cannon began on all sides to ruin the old walls, and from the higher grounds to beat down the houses and kill the People in the Streets. The inhabitants and even the garrison Souldiers perceiving themselves exposed to inevitable ruin through the fool hardiness of their new governor, being also headed by the old one, in a mutinous manner beset his house and obliged him to send to beg conditions which when offered he had slighted, but it was now too late, D. John sought Revenge for the insolence of the Foolish Governor and would not hearken to any Termes. In this deplorable condition, the inhabitants sent out again two Antient-Priests, to move the Spanish General to Compassion, but whilst they were pleading for the Town, the Enemy without expecting any Command from their Officers, broke in and made themselves Master of the place. D. John by his Authority took care that none but such as were in Arms should be put to the Sword, no woman Ravished, nor no Churches sacked. Through a mistake both the Governours were led to Execution, till D. John being informed of the innocence of the former that had been layed aside, caused him to be honourably dismissed, and the latter for his rashness was Shor to Death in the Market-Place. The Town of Crato was plundered.

Jurumenha  
surrendered.

dered and burnt down to the Ground, and the Castle blown up. From *Crato*, the victorious Army marched to *Oguela*, which at first stood out against the Summons sent in, but soon after, whilst the Governor had sent out to treat of a Surrender, the *Spanish* Soldiers as they had done at *Crato*, attacked and entered the Place. Of which dishonourable Action, when the Governor complained to *D. John*, he caused all their Goods to be restored to the Inhabitants, and granted honourable Conditions to them and to the Garrison. The Count *de Sartinara* was appointed Governour of this place, and with him were left two *Italian* Regiments. After which Actions, *D. John* put his Army into Quarters, and so ended the Affairs of this Year.

Anno, 1663.

1. **B**OTH Crowns were earnestly intent upon renewing the War this Year, and nothing was omitted on either side, that seemed conducing to a vigorous Campaign. King *Alfonso* being now at Age, to take upon him the Government of his Kingdom, according to the custom of *Portugal*, had removed his Mother from the publick Administration of Affairs, and was therefore ambitious to begin his Rule with some important Action, which might gain him Reputation both at Home and Abroad. His first step hereto was to remove the prime Ministers and Officers of the Kingdom, and to supply their places with others more suitable to his own Inclination, or less offensive in the Eyes of the People, than the former had been. He called to him the Count *de Castaneda*, who had of late commanded the *Portuguese* Army, pretending he had need of his Counsel at Court, but in reality to ease himself of a Man, who being preferred by the Queen, was likely to adhere to her party, and she who was of a haughty proud Spirit, and had been removed from the Government against her Will, now was forming a Faction to support her Authority. *D. Sancho Manuel*, Count *de Villafior*, who had commanded in the Province of *Beira*, was made General of the Army, in the place of the Count *de Castaneda*. It was this *D. Sancho Manuel* who bravely defended *Elvas*, when besieged by *D. Luis de Haro*. Den-

King Al-  
fonso takes  
upon him  
the Govern-  
ment.

*de Melo*, was appointed General of the Horse, *Luis de Meneses* of the Artillery, Count *Schomberg* was continued in the post of Camp-Master General, and now was the Custom first introduced into *Portugal*, of using Major Generals, which they had not in their Armies before. The Army also was considerably reinforced by the accession of the *English* and *French* Auxiliaries. The Count *de Villafior* having spent a few days at *Lisbon* to receive Orders, took a Progress, and visited all the Garrisons of his Province of *Alentejo*, giving the necessary Orders in all places.

2. *D. John* of *Austria* had thought to take the Field very early in the Spring, but was disappointed by the late coming of the *Spanish* Regiments from *Milan*. As soon as they arrived, he took a review of his Army, which he found to consist of 15000 Foot, and about 6000 Horse. With these Forces he marched into the Frontiers of *Portugal*, the same way he had taken the Year before, when he besieged *Jurumenha*. His design was not known to any Man, except the Duke of *St. German*, but it was given out he intended directly for *Lisbon*. At first, the Count *de Villafior* was in Confusion, not knowing what place this Storm would fall upon; but upon second thoughts, seeing *D. John* still advance into the Country, he concluded that *Ebora* was the place he aimed at, because he well knew it was that Generals custom to attempt the conquest of Towns, that were of great Name and small Strength, such as *Ebora* was. Being fixed in this his Opinion, he threw into that City 3000 Foot, and about 1000 Horse, which with 5000 Men of the Inhabitants able to bear Arms, he thought would so long defend the Town, till he could be in a posture to relieve it. In the mean while the *Spanish* Army advanced through the Countrey, burning and wasting all in their way, without the least Opposition, till at last the Count *de Villafior* with a small Army on a sudden fell in upon their Rear, and for the present, put all into some Disorder; but *D. John* having given Orders for all to halt, and then brought his Light Horse about to relieve those that were engaged in the Rear, he was forced to draw off and retire to *Estremoz* with some loss. Three days after, the *Spanish* Army encamped near *Ebora*. *D. James Cavallero*, the General of the Horse, was sent before to secure all Posts about it; which done, the whole Army fol-

*D. John*  
of *Austria*  
in *Portu-  
gal*, with  
an Army of  
21000  
Men.



followed, and took its Posts about the Town, at such time as they seized all the Cattle; which was then too late to be drove from the Country about into the place.

3. *Ebora* is one of the largest, and most antient Cities of *Portugal*, seated in a large Plain. On the South, its prospect is terminated by beautiful and fruitful Hills, as sieged by the foot whereof is the stately Monastery of the *Carthusians*. On the North of it runs a small River, which being drawn out into little Trenches, fertilizes the Plain. About the Town is a Mud Wall, and at this time some other small Works had been cast up, such as the present Exigency would permit. The Water for the use of the City, is brought from the Neighbouring Hills, upon a continued row of Arches. This Aqueduct they thought to secure by a Fort, but the Enemies sudden approach prevented them. *Luis de Mesquita* was now Governor of the Town, a Man of noble Extraction, but no Souldier, whom the Garrison disdaining to submit to, *Emanuel de Miranda* an old Commander, was substituted in his Place. The Spanish Army having invested this place, the general Officers were intent upon securing all the advantageous Posts. In the mean while the Portuguese Horse made some Skirmishes to keep them off at a distance, but being beaten back to the Town, the Battering in the pursuit, possessed themselves of the Monastery of *St. Antony*, which they found but slenderly guarded, and lay commodiously to offend the Town. But the Spaniards sped not so well at the Carmelite Monastery, which lay betwixt that of *St. Antony*, and the City; for after six Hours sharp dispute, they were forced to leave the besieged possessed of it. This done, *D. John* distributed the Posts to his Army, but thought it needless to intrench himself, not doubting to be master of so weak a place, before the Portuguese General could gather a sufficient Force to attempt the relief of it. However the Trenches were opened against the Town, and Batteries raised, but the first that gained a post were the *Italians*, who with much bravery stormed, and took the Monastery of the *Carmelites*, whence planting their Cannon, they made a great havock in the Town. The Spaniards ashamed to be outdone by the *Italians*, carried on their Works with great diligence, and having with much slaughter repulsed the Besieged, who sallied upon them, made themselves master of the Church

Church of *St. Dominick*, which overlooking the Town, they planted their Cannon upon it, to the great Damage of the Besieged. *D. John*, seeing the miserable condition of the Place, sent another Summons, offering honourable Conditions if they surrendered in time, which all the Officers of the Garrisons, seeing no possibility of holding the Place, or likelihood of Relief, thought it time to accept of, but *Lewis de Sousa*, Elect Bishop of *Porto*, and Administrator of the Church of *Ebora*, a Man fitter for the Army than the Church, crossed their design, raising Factions among the People and Garrison, and by this means obstructed the surrender that and the following day. The Clergy and Laity, Women and Children flocked to the Works, and endeavoured to make up the Breaches, but all in Vain, for more was already ruined than could be retrieved, and the continual Fire of the Enemies Cannon, rendered all their efforts unsuccessful. This Fury being spent, and the People coming to themselves, at length they capitulated, and delivered up the City upon such Conditions as could be obtained, which were not very Honourable. On the 9th. day, after it was invested, the City was surrendered. There *Ebora* marched out 2000 Foot, and 300 Horse of the Garrison, who according to Articles were to be conducted *D. John* into *Castile*, and there to remain Prisoners of War during the Summer.

4. The News of the Siege of *Ebora* being brought to *The Port-Lisbon*, caused mighty commotions and tumults in that *Portuguese* City, whereupon the Young King by the advice of his General Counsel, sent orders to the Count de *Villafior*, to relieve *Count de Evora* at any rate, and at the same time commanded the Count de *Castaneda*, with what Troops he had, and ordered to relieve *Ebora*, could raise to suppress all Seditions in *Lisbon*. The Count de *Villafior* received his orders the very day that *Evora* was Surrendered of which as yet he had no notice, and therefore having called a Council of War, the advice of the Count *Sabugal* was followed, which was not to hazard a battle at any disadvantage, but to cut off the Enemies Provisions. In order hereto, the Army being now 12000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, and having received intelligence of the Surrender of *Evora*, marched and incamped at *Laondil* where they had plenty of Provisions and streightened the Enemy. In the mean while the News of the Surrender of *Evora*, being brought to

*Lisbon*



A mutiny at  
Lisbon for  
the loss of  
Ebor.

the multitude ran headlong into all Sorts of Licentiousness, and not only the vulgar rabble appeared in the sedition, but great Numbers of the more substantial sort joyned with them. The First effort of their fury fell upon the Arch-Bishops Pallace, which they plundered, burning and carrying away all that was in it, the Arch-Bishop himself having before made his escape to Court. Thence they turned their rage against the Count of *Castaneda*, whose house they ransacked as they had done the Arch-Bishops, he himself being also fled; and after him they exercised the same barbarity, towards the principal Magistrates and other great Men of the City. Whilst this passed in the City, the King consulted with the Arch-Bishop, the Count de *Castaneda* and other great Men, about the means of quelling this Sedition. The Count advised to fall upon the raging Multitude, with such Forces, as were in the Town, whereof the greatest part were Forreigners, and therefore would be faithful, in the performance of their duty. But the Arch-Bishop's opinion prevailed; which was to let the fury of the multitude pass over, and then of themselves they would Return to their Duty. The Rabble having raged all about the Town, came at last to the Kings Pallace, where many being weary, and coming to themselves began to sink away, and at last the King Looking out of the Window, and telling them that his Army now besieged those, who had before layed Siege to *Evora*, they all retired with confusion to their houses, blaming one another, for what they had all done. No Notice was for the present taken, of what had hapned, but some time after, several of the Ring-leaders were punished under other pretences.

D. John. 5. During these Transactions, D. John of Austria, repaired the Fortifications of *Evora*, and finding Provisions began to grow short, having left a small garrison in the City, marched out to give the Portugueses battle, tho' contrary to the advise of the Duke of St. German, who was utterly against hazarding a battle, till the Forces they daily expected from *Castile* were arrived, and for the subsistence of the Army, advised the turning out of the inhabitants, upon whose stores the Souldiers might live many days. The Portugues Army lay within half a League of *Evora*, having a small River before it. Thither D. John marched thinking either the Portugueses would

would give him battle upon equal Terms, or else that he should remove them from their advantageous Posts, by 17 pieces of Canon which he planted upon an Eminence. But the Count de *Villastor* resolving not to quit his Advantage, and the Canon which was ill planted, doing as much Execution among his own, as among the Enemies men, D. John drew back and encamped without Canon Shot of the River. Thus both Armies continued all Night ready for Action. At break of Day, D. John moved in order of battle, to force the passage of the River, where a bloody dispute ensued, till, after a considerable Loss on both sides, the Portugueses standing their ground, the Spaniards who fought at great disadvantage, were forced to give way, and retire into the plain of *Ebor*. D. John discouraged at this repulse, put 3000 Foot, and 600 Horse, under the Command of Francis Gattinara Count of *Sartirane* into *Ebor*, resolving to march back into *Castile* without coming to a battle, if possible to avoid it by marching over the Mountains. His first days march met with no obstruction, because the Count de *Villastor* was marched before, in order to choose an advantageous Post to give battle in, where the Horse might be of small use, in which the Spaniards were much Superior to him. Some there were, who advised to march on all Night, but D. John thinking that would look too like flying, refused that wholesome advice. In the Morning he was informed, that the Portugues Army was at hand, being covered from him by the tops of the hills. It was no time now to think of avoiding a battle, and therefore D. John drew up his Army, and being possessed of a high hill, thought good to remove and make himself master of two others that lay in the way to *Estremoz*. At the same time the Portugueses not knowing any thing of the Enemies design, had resolved to possess himself of the same place. Hereupon the Count de *Villastor* advancing with the Horse, fell upon the rear of the Spaniards, whose Horse were upon the Plain, their Foot having already gained the hill. D. James Cavallero facing about with his Horse, received the charge and made good his ground, so that the Portugueses having spent half the day and gained no advantage, began now to faint under the toil and heat, which D. John perceiving, he speedily possessed himself of the two hills he aimed at,

The battle  
of Ebro.

drew up his Horse in four bodies upon the Plain, placed his baggage in their Rear, and planted his Canon upon the hills. On the other side, the *Portugueses* seized the hill which *D. John* had quitted, looking upon it as part of Victory, to possess the ground the Enemy had designedly abandoned. About three hours both Armies continued in these Posts, refreshing their wearied men, when *D. John* thinking he had given them the slip, began to continue his march, but the Count *de Villastor* perceiving it, resolved not to suffer him to go off, without hazarding a battle. The signal being given, he advanced, and the *Portugues* Left wing of Horse first charged the Right of the *Spanish*, who received them with such Resolution, that the Fight continued a long time doubtful, till *Emanuel Freire* one of the *Portugues* Generals of Horse wheeling about with some Squadrons he had reserved, set upon the Enemies flank and broke through them, whereupon the whole wing was soon put to flight, as was the reserve coming to their relief, and the Left wing which was ordered to relieve the Right by reason of the distance and badness of the way, could never be brought to engage. Mean while Count *Schomberg*, who commanded the *Portugues* Foot, resolved to attack the Enemy upon the hill. This being an Action rather rash than valiant, the *English* auxiliaries undertook climbing the hill upon their hands and feet, and, tho' many of them fell, yet the greater part gained the top, which encouraged three Regiments of *Portugues* Foot, to ascend a farther way about which was much easier. This extravagant rashness, of the *English*, so terrified the *Spanish* Foot, that they immediately without sense of shame betook themselves to flight. In a moment their whole infantry was put to the rout, notwithstanding *D. John* alighting from his Horse, performed all that man could do to make them rally and face the Enemy. But now the victorious *Portugues* Horse, coming in to second their Foot, there ensued a terrible slaughter, for it was no longer a Fight. The Duke of *St. German* who had been sent before to mark out a Camp, hearing the noise of the Canon, halted back, and finding the whole Army dispersed and routed, with much difficulty perswaded *D. John* to save himself by flight. So both the Generals halted away to *Aronches*. *D. James* *Maçadin* whole Squadron

Squadron had not been broke, gathering as many of the Horse as he could, made the last effort against the victors, but being overpowered, he was forced to give way to the stronger side. Of the *Spaniards* were slain in this *D. John's* Fight about 4000, the wounded were more, and above of *Austria* 3000 taken, and among them the Marquis *del Carpio*, defeated, Eldest Son to *D. Lewis de Haro*. Of the *Portugueses* above 1000 were killed, and many wounded. All the Enemies Canon, and baggage, as also *D. John's* most splendid Equipage was taken.

6. The Prisoners taken in Fight were all sent to *Lisbon*, where the joy of the multitude was as extravagant, as their rage had been for the loss of *Evora*. The King therefore finding all was secure at home, sent those Troops he had kept at *Lisbon*, to bridle the Rabble, under the Command of the Count *de Castanbeda*, to join the Count *de Villastor*, with orders to lay Siege *The Count to Evora*. These two Generals put their orders in Execution, and finally besieged that City, yet knowing for reconno Enemy could come to its relief, forbore any assaults *vers Ebu-* to spare their Men. The Count *de Sartirane*, who as *ra* has been said, was made Governour of that City by the *Spaniards*, defended it with much bravery, the Space of Eleven days, being ignorant what was become of the *Spanish* Army, but being then informed of its defeat by a Letter from *D. John*, in which he ordered him to provide for the safety of his garrison, he then Surrendered the place upon honourable conditions.

7. *D. John* having gathered the remains of his broken *D. John* Army, and received some recruits out of *Gallicia*, sent *attempts* *D. James Cavallero*, with a good body of Horse and Foot, *Elvas*, to endeavour to Surprise *Elvas*, but the garrison having *but is re-* taken the Alarm, he was repulsed, and forced to retire *presed* without effecting any thing. To add to the misfortunes of the *Spaniards*, their great Magazine of powder which they had layed up at *Aronches*, was accidentally blown up, which ruined many of the new works they had made about the Town since they took it, and killed above 2000 of the garrison and inhabitants.

8. Winter put not an end to Action, for the Duke of *Offuna*, who Commanded upon the *Spanish* Frontiers, *The Duke of Offuna* about *Cuidad Rodrigo*, tho' he could gather but a small *builds* Force, yet being ambitious of Fame, he resolved to *a Fort not* *Almeida* a Royal Fort, not far from *Almeida* the *Portugues* far from *Frontier. Almeida*

Frontier. He marched to the place he had pitched upon with what strength he could make, and began the work which was extremely difficult by reason of the unseasonableness of the weather, and the danger from the Enemy, to oppose whom he incamped before the work with all his Force to cover the Labourers. *Peter Jaques de Magallaens*, who commanded upon those Frontiers, was then sick; and *Alfonso Furtado de Mendoza* was substituted in his place. *D. John of Austria* who was now returned to *Bajadoz* from Court, where he had been to answer to what was objected against him upon account of his late defeat, hearing of this undertaking of the Duke de *Offuna*, sent him large Supplies under the Command of the Count *Bouette*, with which accession the Duke was now increased to about 7000 Foot and about 2000 Horse. Not above a Canon shot from him lay the Portuguese Army, consisting of a like Force. *Mendoza* perceiving the Duke was not to be drawn to a battle, his only design being to cover his work, and it being a rashness to attack him in his Camp, thought the only way to draw him thence would be to enter the borders of *Castile*, and put all things to Fire and Sword. To this intent he sent out a party of Horse to *Aimida*, which the Duke perceiving, charged and there ensued a hot dispute; the Portuguese giving way, and drawing on the Enemy till the rest of their Forces came up with them. Thus the Fight was protracted till the gross of both Bodies came to Engage, and then the Spanish Horse gave ground, and had been utterly routed, had not the Count de *Bouette* stood firm with his Troops, and given those that fled time to Rally. But the Duke perceiving there was no likelihood of standing the shock of the Portuguese, sent a Squadron of Horse to fall into their Camp, which they understanding, drew back to secure their works, and the Spaniards design, being no other than to discharge themselves of them, both parties as it were by consent, returned to their Camps. The execution on both sides was equal, in all about 800 Horse fell, but not so many Foot. This drawn battle was the last, neither side being desirous too far to provoke the other. However the Duke finished the Fort he had begun, into which he put a strong garrison, under the Command of *D. Gregorio Tapia*. Thus ended the Action of this Year, with the Year it self.

Anno,

Anno, 1664.

1. NO sooner the Spring begun to open then the Portuguese Army to repair to their general Rendezvous at *Estremoz*. Being assembled to the number of 15000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, under the Command of the Count de *Castanbeda*, they marched into the Frontiers of *Castile*, with a Resolution to besiege *Valencia de Alcantara*, a place strong by Nature, but not regularly fortified. In their way they spent some days upon the Banks of the River *Caia*, about the Bridge of *Badajoz*, shewing themselves there, as it were to provoke the Enemy to Battle. *D. John of Austria*, who was then in that City, had a sufficient Body of Horse, but neither Foot enough, nor any store of Ammunition to encounter the Portuguese, having lost all the foregoing Summer. However to do what the time would permit; he caused all the Frontier Towns to be strongly Garrisoned, and his Horse to attend the motions of the Portuguese Army, so as to keep them from straying to waste the Country, but not to hazard an Engagement. The Count after a few days, marched and invested *Valencia*. This Town is seated upon a cragged and rocky Ground, by it runs a head rapid Stream, and on its North side is a large plain; it had no modern Fortification, as was said before, however some new Works lately cast up, added to the Natural Situation of the place, rendered it of a considerable Strength. *Fabritius Roffa*, an Italian of known Valour and Conduct, was Governour of the Place, and had with him a resolute Garrison of Spaniards and Italians. The Count de *Castanbeda*, perceiving the strength of the Place, and resolution of the Garrison, resolved formally to besiege it, and to that purpose, possessing himself of the Monastery of *St. Francis*, which was within Cannon shot of the Wall, planted there his first Battery, and then raised several others in convenient Places. Mean while *D. John of Austria*, being in care for the Town, sent *D. James Correa* with all the Horse, either to attempt putting some Succour into the Town, if he found an Opportunity, or at least by his Presence, to encourage the Defendants. *Correa* having marched up to the Portuguese Lines, and finding them in a posture to receive him

L 1 3

him, attempted nothing, but wheeled off again, and marched back till Night over-took him. Then having ordered his Troops to halt, he sent out Count Bouette with a Party, to bring in some Provisions for his weary-ed Men. The Count being departed, a sudden cloud of Dust which arose, being driven by the strength of the Wind, so terrified the Spaniards, who imagined the whole Portuguese Army was coming upon them, that they dispersed and fled about all the Hills, casting away their Arms, and leaving their Baggage, so that all their Commander James Corréa could do, was not of any effect to bring them again into a Body. Count Bouette returning with the Provisions he had gather'd, found only the scatter'd Baggage, and marks of their flight, where-upon he went after, and having overtaken them in the Morning, they returned together with dishonour to Badajoz. But the Count de Castanbeda making use of his time, and having now made several Breaches in the Walls fit for an assault, sent to summons the Governor to surrender in time, since all hope of Relief was vanished, and the place was in no condition to hold out. The Governour to gain time, entred upon a Treaty, but proposed such high Terms that they were scornfully rejected by the Portugues, and immediately the Batteries were renewed with more fierceness than before. Then followed a furious Assault, which the besieged stood with such undaunted Resolution, that after a great slaughter on both sides, the Portugueses were compelled to give it over. This repulse moved the Count to carry on his Works more deliberately, and endeavour to spare the Blood of his Soldiers. But it was not long before Ammunition began to grow scarce in the Town, which obliged the Governor to hearken to a Capitulation offered him by the Portugues, for fear least they becoming sensible of his want, should afterwards impose harder Conditions upon him. However, though the Proposal was most grateful, yet he carryed himself very high, and would not seem to comply, but upon powerful Arguments and Perswasions. At length, after much debate, it was concluded, that besides all other Honourable Conditions, the Governour should be allowed to send to D. John of Austria for Relief, and that if he were not then relieved, he should surrender the Town. In the mean while all Hostilities were to cease, and a Messenger

Valencia  
taken by  
the Portu-  
guese Ge-  
nerals.

having brought this account to D. John, he sent D. James Correa with 3000 Foot, and what Horse he had to attempt to succour the Town, but he being much inferior in all respects to the Beliegers, thought not fit to expose his small Forces to certain Destruction. After the expiration of the four Days, the Governour delivered up the Place, marching out with his Garrison upon as honourable Conditions, as he could himself demand.

2. Whilst D. John of Austria's Credit daily decreased on account of these many losses, the Duke of Ossuna <sup>The Duke</sup> thought it fit to raise his own Reputation. In order <sup>of Ossuna</sup> hereto, he marched to Castel Rodrigo, a Portuguese Town, <sup>Castel Rodri-</sup> encompassed with an old but strong Wall, and several Out-works; yet better secured by the Courage and Ex- <sup>perience</sup> perience of its Governour, John Ferreira, who had <sup>repulsed</sup> there in Garrison a Regiment of tried Valour. This place the Duke hoped to have carryed by Storm, but having been several times beaten off with great loss; he sat down quietly before it with 7000 Foot, sending about his Horse to gather Provisions. After a few days lying still, as if he had no further design against the Place, he marched off, that he might the better surprize the Garrison, for in the dead of a dark Night, he returned again, attempted to scale the Walls, where the Watch was negligently kept, yet being discovered, and the Town taking the Alarm, he was beaten off, and no hope left of prevailing, either by an Assault, or Surprise. Both these Designs failing, he resolved upon a formal Siege, and accordingly raised his Batteries, whence he shook and ruined the Walls with his heavy Cannon. Peter Jaques de Magallans, who commanded the Portuguese Forces in those Parts, and to whom the defence of that Garrison belonged, having gathered all the Forces of that Province, marched with speed to its relief, and posted himself on a Hill, opposite to the Town, so disposing his Troops that the Enemy could not judge of their number, hoping thereby to move them to raise the Siege, which fell out as he expected; for the Duke not being able to judge of his Strength, thought not good to expose himself to uncertainties, and therefore drew off from the Place. Peter Jaques having gained this Point, resolved to pursue the Enemy, and force him to a Battle before he received the Reinforcement he expected.



The Duke  
overthrown  
by Peter  
Jaques de  
Magalla-  
ens.

ed from *D. John*. It was no hard matter to draw the Duke to a Battle, he being a Man that relyed more upon Chance and Fortune, then Prudence and Conduct; therefore as soon as he perceived the *Portugueses* were not superiour to him in number, he chose his Ground, and drew up his Men. Both parties being disposed for the Fight, the *Spaniards* made the first onset, advancing hastily and Firing; but their Precipitation threw them into Disorder, which the *Portugueses* taking the advantage of, they fell in with their Horse and Foot, and in a moment put them to the rout. The Duke, who had rather play the part of a Soldier then a General, having in person several times charged the Enemy, seeing himself almost abandoned by his own People, and beset by his Adversaries, at last saved himself by Flight. Of the *Spaniards*, about 2000 were killed, and near 500 taken; of the *Portugueses*, 800 were lost: All the *Spaniards* Baggage and Cannon, with the Duke's Equipage were taken. This Action was performed about the beginning of the Summer; afterwards the Heats increasing, and both Parties being sufficiently worn and tired, they retired into quarters of Refreshment, and nothing more happened worth the relating; let us therefore pass on to the ensuing Year.

Anno, 1665.

1. **W**E are now drawing to the end of this tedious War, and though betwixt the death of King *John*, and the Conclusion of the Peace, there happened several things remarkable enough in the Civil Government; yet I have thought fit not to interrupt the Series of Marshal Affairs now drawing to a Period, but rather to put an end to the course of these extern contentions, and when I come to relate the intestine Troubles and Confusions, then at once to sum up those Accidents that preceded in order to them, that then the Reader may with the more ease to his Memory, take first a view of the whole War, and next of the strange Catastrophe that ensued, with all the previous Accidents tending to it.

2. Before the main Armies could take the Field, both parties ceased not to infect their Enemies Frontiers with frequent IncurSIONS. But for the most part, these Acti-

ons

ons were inconsiderable, being rather like Robberies, *A Body of* then publick Hostilities. The first Action of moment *Spanish* we find this Year, was an incurSION made by 1000 *Portuguese* Horse, towards *Badajoz*, plundering and burning *Horse round* all the Country before them. Count *Marsini* at this time, commanded on the *Spanish* Frontiers, who upon the news of the Spoil made by the *Portugueses*, commanded *D. James Correa* General of the Horse, with 500 Men to oppose the Enemy. *Correa* after representing the weakness of that number, having received a check for his seasonable Advice, marched out. The *Portugueses* were then dispersed, but hearing of the Approach of the Enemy, assembled their Troops, and having lay'd part of them in Ambush, with the remainder charged the *Spaniards*, who meeting less opposition then they had expected, thought themselves secure of the Victory, till being encompassed by those that rose out of the Ambush, most of them were either killed or taken. *D. James Correa*, with those few that could escape, fled to *Badajoz*, not much troubled at his loss, because he had been contrary to his Judgment and Advice, sent upon the Action with so small a Force.

3. Whether it was that the *Portugueses* were resolved to stand upon the Defensive, and therefore spared their Forces; or that the Difficulties their new rising King-*The Mar-* dom labour'd under, would not permit them to be so *ques of* forward as the Enemy, is hard to determine; but cer- *Caracena* tain it is, the *Spaniards* were generally the first that *General of* took the Field. So this Year, the Marquess of *Caracena* *the Spani-* *ards.* *Caracena*, who with a general Applause for his good Service in *Italy*, and the *Low-Countries*, had been appointed General for this War, having taken a review of his Army, which he found to consist of 12000 Foot, and about 6500 Horse, marched into *Portugal*, with a full Resolution to besiege *Villaviciosa*. This Town is the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the Dukes of *Braganza*, and is properly called *Villaviciosa*, because of the pleasantness of the Air, the fruitfulness of the Soil, the beauty of its Forrests, and other Delights wherewith that Territory abounds. The Town it self is seated on a high Hill, and is divided into three parts. The first which is in the nature of a Suburb, contains several Monasteries, many Inhabitants, and the stately House of the Duke of *Braganza*. To this joyns the Town, en-

com-

The Mar-  
quess of  
Caracena,  
besieges  
Villavicio-  
sa.

compassed with an old Wall, but little inhabited. Above all, stands the Castle, well enough fortified for that time, having a Ditch, a covered Way, a Half-Moon, and other Works. *Christopher Brito*, was at this time Governor of the place, and had under him several expert Commanders, and 1000 Garrison Soldiers, besides the Towns-men that were fit to bear Arms. As soon as *Brito* understood the Enemy advanced towards him, he secured and strengthened three strong Posts without the Walls, viz. the Duke of *Braganza's* House, which was built like a Castle; the Fort of *St. Benedict*, and the Gate called *No.* Eighteen Companies of *Spanish* Musquetiers immediately assaulted these three Posts at the same time with much Bravery, but they were all three with no less Valour made good by the Defendants. However, *Brito* considering those places were too far remote from the Town, to be kept without great hazard of weakning his main Strength, drew off his Men the Night following, and abandoned them. As soon as Day appeared, the *Spaniards* commanded by *Roderick Moxica*, entred the Houses next to the Town, without any Opposition, all that were able to bear Arms, being withdrawn into the Town. Here the Soldiers committed all the Outrages that could be expected from the cruellest Enemy, sparing neither Sex nor Age; ravishing Women, and prophaning even the Churches, till some religious Men who had made their Escape, giving an account of these barbarous Proceedings to the Marquess of *Caracena*, he took Order to cure this Licentiousness of the Soldiers. Being thus possessed of the Suburb, the Marquess planted his Cannon against the Town, but being impatient of delay, he assaulted the Wall with Scaling Ladders, and at the same time applyed a Petard to one of the Gates, yet all in Vain, for he met with such vigorous Resistance, that he was compelled to draw off his Men. Next he applyed himself to undermining, but the Earth being unfit, this Work proved more prejudicial to him than to the Besieged. At last, having made some Breaches in the Walls, the *Italian* Foot were ordered to mount them, which they performed with as much Gallantry as could be imagined, but those who to divert the Besieged, were to Scale the Walls, being easily repulsed with great Loss, by reason their Ladders were too short, and all the Strength of

the

the besieged making good the breaches, all that the *Italians* could do was to lodge themselves under the Walls. In the Mean while the *Spaniards* who besieged the Castle were not Idle, but having battered it gave a most furious assault tho' with no better success than the *Italians* had done, yet with greater slaughter on both sides. In this Action *Brito* the Governour received three wounds, and lost several Officers and Soldiers of good Note. After these repulses, the Marquess proceeded cautiously, yet never ceasing to batter the works with his Cannon. At length receiving intelligence that the *Portugues* Army was upon it's march from *Estremoz* to relieve the place, least he should find his Forces divided betwixt the Town and the Castle, he resolved to bend his whole strength against the Town and to leave the Castle for another time. However least the besieged should have the opportunity of relieving the Town from the Castle, he commanded the *Spanish* Foot to attack the palisade of the Castle, whilst the *Italians* gave the General assault to the Town. This Action was very hor, both parties being obstinately set down not to give way, but at last Valour must give place to number, and the *Italians* having gained the tops of the Walls and breaches, such of the defendants as escaped were forced to retire into the Castle: Nothing being now left the besieged but the Castle, the Marquess sent to Summons the Governour to Surrender, threatening the danger of delay, who nevertheless sent the messenger back with a very slight answer. The Marquess being now wholly intent upon taking the Castle, raised a battery against it upon the top of the Church, dedicated to the Conception of our Blessed-Lady.

4. Whilst the Castle was thus prest by the *Spaniards*, the Count *Castanbeda* General of the *Portugues* Army, *The Count de* advancing to its relief, sent *Francis Carneiro* a Captain of *Castanhe-* Foot, with only two Soldiers, who with an unparalleled da the Por led boldness rode through the besiegers, to give the go- rugueses vernour an account of the approaching relief, and the General, two Souldiers with the same bravery and success, retur- advances to ned to their General with the News of what they had relieve Vil- done. In the next place, the Count called a Council of laviciofa. War, to consult whether it were fit to hazard a battle, where it was unanimously decreed to Fight the Enemy. The Count being joyful at this universal agreement, sent presently

presently a Trumpeter, to advertise the Marquess of *Carazena* of his approach, and to let him know how pleasing it was to him to give battle to so great a General. The Marquess looked upon this message only as a bravado, and sent back an answer accordingly, then calling a Council of War, after sundry opinions had been heard, the Marquess his opinion prevailed which was to give the Enemy battle. This done he made choice of a Plain below the Castle, whether he marched with his Army, leaving 1500 Foot, which he judged a sufficient strength to keep in the besieged.

The Battle  
of Montec-  
claros.

5. Near to *Villaviciosa* is a Plain commonly called the Plain of *Monteclaros*, encompassed about with Hills and Rocky cliffs, but pleasant and diversified with Trees and Vineyards, and full of ditches and other impediments to Armies. Into this Plain, the *Portugueses* came first leading 16000 Foot, and 6000 Horse. The *Spaniard* was much weaker, having lost many men in the siege besides those he had left at the Castle. The Marquess of *Carazena* knowing the nearer the Enemy drew to him, the more advantageous the ground was for him, because there was not Room to spread abroad, he caused his men to possess themselves of that ground, his Foot stretched out, keeping the side of the Mountain, and his Horse marching in the Plain on the Left. This his celerity did not a little startle the Count of *Castanhena*, for that his Foot and Artillery were not as yet come up, and he feared to be Forced to engage before they could reach him, but Count *Schomberg* upon advice from him, hastning their march, delivered him from this perplexity. The Marquess drew up his Foot in two Lines, the Horse because the ground would allow no more Front were drawn up in five, the *Spanish* Horse had the Right wing, the *Forreigners* the Left. In the *Portugues* Army, almost all the Horse were on the Right, and the Foot on the Left, the nature of the place not allowing the Horse to be imbattled on both wings, yet among the Horse were disposed some Companies of chosen Foot. That wing which consisted only of Foot, was in two Lines, yet all was so contrived that the Horse could speedily relieve the Foot, or the Foot the Horse as occasion required. Things being in this posture, after the Canon had played, The Marquess Commands *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, General

of

of the *Forreign* Horse, to charge the *Portugues* Right wing, which he performed with such Valour and fury, that he drove the first Line of the *Portugueses* in great disorder upon their Rear. The *Spaniards* having in the pursuit broke their Ranks, fell in upon the pikes of the Foot, that had been mixed with the Horse, which sorely galling them, quite changed the Face of Affairs; for whilst they Laboured to extricate themselves from that peril, the Horse who before had fled, rallying charged them afresh. They that before thought themselves victorious, being thus pressed on all sides began to give way and fall into disorder: Then Count *Rabata* who Commanded the *German* Horse, seeing them just ready to fly, rode up a in Rage, and upbraiding the cowardize of his men, brought them on to the Charge afresh. The Prince of *Parma* also rallying those that were dispersed, the battle was again renewed, and the *Portugueses* charged more fiercely than at the first onset; insomuch that the *Spaniards* prevailed driving their Enemies, and the *Germans* having made their way through the Right, were falling in upon the Left wing. The *Portugues* General perceiving the danger, sent Count *Schomberg*, the Count de *St. Lorenzo*, and other chief Officers, to give a check to the Enemy. These having gathered the dispersed Troops, and drawn fresh succours from all sides, restored the Fight, yet so that both wings were joyned together, and so pressed the harder upon the *Spanish* Troops, almost tired with the fatigue of the long Service. Hereupon the Marquess of *Carazena*, who from a Hill viewed the Action and gave orders, seeing his Left wing born down, sent orders to *James Correa* who Commanded on the Right, either to come immediately to the relief of the Left, or else by charging upon the Left of the *Portugueses* to draw them away to him. *Correa* obeyed not his orders, whether through cowardice, or Treachery, or that the ground would not permit, is uncertain. Thus the *Italians* and *Germans* being forsaken by their Friends, and beset on all sides by their Enemies, were almost all cut off, yet dyed not unrevenged, having made a great slaughter, and amidst the multitude, slain many Officers of note, Count *Schomberg* narrowly escaping when his Horse was killed under him. Now at length the *Spanish* Right wing came on, after their Left was utterly lost, but it was a matter of much difficulty to charge

over

over the heaps of dead Bodies, and scatter'd Arms. Besides the Horse were gauled by the scattering Companies of Foot, who with their Pikes, discomposed and broke their Ranks, so that they were forced to wheel often, and rather defend themselves, then offend their Enemies. At length being seconded by their Foot, they gave such a violent Charge, that the Portuguese, who had stood long to it before with various Fortune, fainting, began again to decline, till their General, the Count of *Castanheda* seeing that was the last effort, coming in with his Guards and what Troops he could gather, and acting the part of a Soldier, as well as of a General, inspir'd new Courage into them, and restored the Fight. In this Heat, when the Success stood doubtful, two things concurred to bestow the Victory on the Portuguese. One was the taking of *James Correa*, General of the Spanish Horse, the other, that the Swissers serving in the Spanish Army, being discontented for want of their pay, went over to them. The Spanish Horse dismayed at these two unexpected Accidents, immediately fell off, the Portuguese pressing upon them, yet so as not being suffer'd to pursue, the others rather retired then fled. Nothing remained now but the Foot, who being beset, for that Count *Schomberg* had seized all the advantageous Posts, fought desperately, having scarce any hopes left to escape. The Fight had lasted seven Hours, and both sides being tired, both the Spanish Horse and Foot, because the Portuguese did not pursue, marched off with Speed, and began to gather up such as had fled farther, so that they made a considerable Body. Count *Castanheda* unwilling to suffer so great a Party to escape, sent *Vasconcellos* and *John de Silva* with some Troops of Horse, who wheeling about a Monastery, fell in with them, and stayed their March till the Count came up with the rest of the Army. The Spaniards being thus enclosed without hope of safety, either by fighting or flying, were finally overthrown and cut to pieces. About 4000 Foot of several Nations, who before the Spaniards were enclosed, had retired to a place of Strength, seeing the whole Army lost, surrendered upon Discretion. Near 1000 more, who had fled to the Woods, were either taken, or perished there. In all about 5000 of the Spaniards are reported to have been killed, and not fewer taken, and

The Spanish Army  
totally routed.

of both sorts were many Officers of Note. Nor was the Victory cheaply bought, above 2000 of the Victors being slain, among which were several remarkable Persons. This was the decisive Battle of *Montesclaros*, which finally settled the Crown upon the Head of the new King of Portugal. The Marquess of *Carazena* seeing all lost, made his way to *Villaviciosa*, where he ordered the Forces he had left there, to continue the Siege, to rise from before the Place, lest they should be overwhelmed by the Victorious Army. They with all speed drew off their Artillery, and marching in good Order, though often attacked by the Portuguese, made good their Retreat, first to *Jurumenha*, and thence to *Badajoz*, whither the small remainder of the Army was fled. Thus the Marquess in his old Age, tarnished that Reputation he had gained in his Youth.

6. This great Battle was the last Action of Note, that King Philip concluded the War betwixt Spain and Portugal; for lip of this Year, on the 17th. of October, dyed Philip the IV. Spain's King of Spain, leaving that Crown to his Son *Charles II.* Death. then but four Years of Age, and the Government being in the Queen his Mother, she soon after concluded a Peace with Portugal. Having now put an end to the War, we shall in the few remaining Years, have occasion only to treat of the Deposition of King *Alphonso*, which ensued, and the tendencies to it.

7. However, to the end that Narration may be no ways interrupted, though this be not exactly the proper place, we will proceed without interruption to what remains. Great debates had been at the Court of *Madrid*, after the death of King *Philip* upon the subject of Peace or War. Not only the multitude, but even the most considerable of the Nobility, considering the great Expence, the many Losses, and the little Progress made in the War, were inclinable to Peace. The Queen herself was for it, but politick seemed averse, the better to discover the dispositions of the People. Nor would she seem to comply with their desires alone, till the English Ambassador then Resident at *Madrid*, had signified to her, that unless she would hearken to some Proposals of Peace, the King his Master should be obliged to protect and defend his Brother the King of Portugal, with all his Forces both by Sea and Land. These Threats joyn'd to the general consent of her own Subjects,



jects, at length drew the Queen to assent to a Treaty. By her the King of *England* was chosen Mediator, and Guarantee for the Treaty and Peace that was to ensue. Commission was given to the Marquess *del Carpio*, then a Prisoner at *Lisbon*, to make the Overtures, and Treat with full Power. Not to enter into the tedious Transactions of the Treaty, or to fill up too much space with the Articles at large, the substance of them whereupon the Peace was finally concluded was this. That both Kings should restore all Places taken during the War, which either of them possess, appertaining to the jurisdiction of the other, except *Centa*, on the Coast of *Africk*, which the Marquess *del Carpio* served to his King. That all Confiscations made during the War, should be restored by the Peace. That all Trade and Commerce should be free betwixt the two Crowns, and the *Portugueses* in *Spain* to enjoy the same Priviledges as the *English* did; the *Spaniards* in *Portugal* the same they stood possessed of in the time of King *Sebastian*. That all Prisoners on both sides be set at liberty without Ransom. That the *Portugueses* have free passage through all the Dominions of the Catholick King, either by Sea or Land. That all Controversies arising on account of Trade, or otherwise, shall be amicably composed betwixt the two Kings, without having recourse to Arms. That the King of *Portugal*, if he think fit, may be admitted into the League that is betwixt his Catholick Majesty, and the King of *Great Britain*. All other points to remain in the same Condition they were in during the Reign of King *Sebastian*. That the King of *England* be Guarantee for these Articles concluded, and Mediator in all such Differences as may happen to arise. Upon these Conditions the Peace was concluded betwixt his Catholick Majesty, and the King of *Portugal*, through the Interposition and Mediation of the King of *Great Britain*; this was the end of that War, which had now continued 28 Years, and thus the House of *Braganza* was established upon the Throne of *Portugal*.

The

## The Conclusion of the History.

HAVING now brought the War to this happy Conclusion, for the House of *Braganza*, it remains we should shew into what Troubles and Confusions they brought themselves to the endangering of the new gotten Kingdom, to the ruin of their Head, the then King, to the perpetual in fame of the disloyal Actors, and to the astonishment of all their Neighbours, who were spectators of their monstrous proceedings. It will not suit with the brevity of this History, to clear all the matters of lesser moment, which others have handled at large, and for the most part with more Partiality, then solid Truth. Let it suffice, that nothing shall be omitted which is worthy of Memory, and might seem to influence, or promote those alterations that happened in the State. The account of the War with *Spain* has been taken from the best Authors that have treated thereof, but in the ensuing Discourse, I have not only consulted Authors, who as was said before, are too Partial, or else wanted Information; but having had the advantage of living a considerable time in *Portugal*, I have received great Light into those Affairs from several Persons of Prudence and Judgment, who were Eye-witnesses to all the Transactions. But because it may be offensive to some to lay the Truth too naked, I shall abridge the Relation as much as may be, giving all the respect to the Living, that the Subject will bear without wronging the Dead. Nothing of Favour nor Affection can draw my Pen to favour either side, as well in regard I am a Stranger to both, as for that I can expect no Reward or Interest from those that are deprest, but ought rather to mistrust being cryed down by the prevalent Faction. Whatever my Fortune is, I will not conceal the Truth, but to avoid all Reflection, will barely relate the matter of fact, without discanting upon it.

King *Alfonso* in his Infancy, when he was but three Years of Age, had been taken with a Palsie, which during those very tender Years, was hard to be removed; but as he grew up in Strength, fit Remedies being applied, he became perfectly cured, so that no sign of it remained, except some small Contraction in his Right

M m

Hand

A word  
concerning  
the follow-  
ing Sheets.

The Curie  
of King  
Alphon-  
so's Mis-  
fortunes.

Hand. This fatal Palfie, may be said to have been the very Source of all this unfortunate King's Calamities, for though, as has been said, there was scarce any token of it left in him; yet his Enemies made their use of it, to perswade the ignorant, that it had affected his Brain, and that he was consequently become unfit for Government. To gain their flanders the more Reputation, they never ceased to accuse him of false Crimes, and to blacken in the most odious manner, his youthful Overights and Extravagancies, which in themselves were no more then what are daily seen in those raw Years, where Power is joyned to heat of Blood. The Nobility were averse to him, because he was naturally vehement, and therefore they feared he would in time crush their Pride, and make them sensible of that distance which ought to be betwixt a Monarch and a Subject. His Mother a haughty Woman, became implacable, because being always used to rule, she must against her Will resign up the Power to him. His Queen it is most likely, bore more Affection to his Brother then to him, as is visible by the Privacies that passed betwixt them, from her first coming into the Kingdom. His Brother could not withstand the Temptation of a Crown, which by stretching out his Hand might be secured, and by delaying too long, might have slipped away for ever, if the King had either had Issue, or out-lived him. And in fine, the giddy multitude were ever lovers of Change, and so artificially prepared by the horrid Reports daily spread against the King, that many of them looked upon him no otherwise, then as a Monster, or a Fury, for so was he represented to them, and the custom of Portugal is such, as their Kings are but little seen by the People.

The Count de Ode-  
mira Go-  
vern to  
the young  
King. His  
manner of  
proceeding.

King John dying, and his Queen entering upon the Regency, D. Francis de Faro, Count of Odemira, was appointed Governor to the young King Alphonso, who being a Man of excellent parts, and allyed to the Blood-Royal, omitted nothing that might be conducing to the Improvement of his Charge, taking care that he should be instructed in such Learning, as became a Prince, and inuring him in such notions of Politicks, as his Age was capable of. Alphonso was not naturally addicted to study, and therefore perhaps made not so great an Improvement, as his Governor expected, who not con-  
sidering

dering his Age, would perhaps have him to be a Man before his time, and therefore was much offended, that he would addict himself to the Company of other Boys like himself, and follow the Sports used among them. But generally speaking, the King's greatest delight was in violent Exercises, and particularly in making parties of Boys, and seeing them fight. Among the rest that used to divert him, was one Antony Conti de Vintimiglia, the Son of a Genoese Merchant, but born at Lisbon, who being crafty above his Years, by always applauding and furthering the King's Designs, so worked himself into his Affection, that he took no Delight in any pastime without him. Conti knew so well how to improve his Fortune; and the King's Favour, that at length, he became by his continual attendance upon him, an Eye-sore to the Count de Odemira, and generally to all the Nobility, who were jealous that a Man of mean extraction should have the Ear of their Prince, fearing he might in time grow up so as to cope with their Grandeur. Hereupon the Queen joyned her Authority to that of the Count, to forbid the King's farther entertaining of young Conti. He obeyed for a while, or at least saw him but by stealth, till at length impatient to be curbed, he slighted their injunctions, and fell again to his former familiarities with him. The Queen and Count who had no power to constrain, seeing their advice rejected, were forced to connive at this return of their Familiarity, hoping that Time, or some Accident would change the King's Inclination. The King being of Age to be able to mount a Horse, his Governour instructed him carefully in that manly Exercise, as believing this might conduce to draw him from other less honourable Pastimes, but it proved not as he expected; For Alphonso took the advantage of the riding place, to admit not only Conti, but also many others of the meanest sort, whom he delighted to see wrestle, pitch the Bar, and Fight, not sparing at times to mix himself among them. The Count not knowing what other course to take to break the King of that Company, adventured one day to cast them all out of the Place in the King's sight, reproaching and threatening them all, but particularly Conti, to whom he denounced Death, if he were seen again with the King, who though at that time he said nothing, yet he highly resented it, and

afterwards was mindful of this Boldness of his Governor. The absence of *Conti* lasted not long, for the King's Mind being wholly bent upon him, and some who thought to make their Fortunes by flattery, representing this Separation as a Diminution of the Royal Authority, he was soon recall'd. Being to return to Court the more to terrifie his Enemies, he endeavoured, and that successfully, to incline the King to mischievous Sports, such as fighting of Mastives, Bulls and Horses, and to flinging of Stones with Slings, which often flying at Rovers, did harm to People at a distance. These accidents were the cause that no Murther, or other Mischief, was committed in the City, but what was improved by his Enemies, as if Countenanced by *Alphonso*. But now the Count *de Odemira* to draw him from these unseemly Exercises, put him upon Fencing, in which he made no great Improvement, because he would not observe Rule, but wholly put himself upon cutting and thrusting with all his Force in such sort, as he often eluded Art it self.

The Queens  
Ambition,  
and Differences  
betwixt the  
two Brothers.

Within the same Pallace with the King, lived his Brother *Peter*, and their Mother the Queen Regent, a Woman not so zealous for her Children, as careful to preserve the power she had got, being used to rule, and disdaining to part with it. The *Infante*, so all the Children of Kings are called, (except the Heir to the Crown, who alone has the Title of Prince) and his Brother were ever at Variance, nor was it possible to reconcile them, because the Elder looked upon it as a Presumption in the younger, who blamed and condemned all his Actions, and the younger being supported by his Mother and the great ones of his Parry, never ceased to give him fresh provocations. *Antony Conti* perceiving the King was now at those Years, that the Charms of Beauty began to work upon him, lost not this opportunity of securing himself in his Favour, but by all possible means endeavoured to heighten his Desire, and promote his Pleasure. The Queen Mother observing that her Son, though he carried it with great Dissimulation in respect to her, could not forbear casting many amorous glances upon her Ladies, and fearing least the splendor of the Crown might induce some of them to submit to his Will, found no expedient to secure their Honour, but by taking away all Opportunity. To this purpose, she appointed him a separate Retinue, and a particular

apart-

apartment in the Pallace, which, tho' he was of Age she had forbore doing before, least he should wrest the Government, she was so unwilling to part with, out of her hands. This sudden change for some time withheld *Alphonso*, always beset with the great men of the Kingdom, from the mean company he before took delight in. But *Conti* fearing least if he took to a solid deportment, his favour would soon decline, never ceased till he drew him back from those grave formalities, to the practice of his former violent and extravagant Exercises. It is worth the observing, that tho' in *Portugal* it be one of the things the Nobility and Gentry most value themselves upon, to ride at a Bull with a spear and strike him therewith, yet, one of the great crimes objected against *Alphonso*, is that as he was riding in the Plain beyond *Tagus*, he ran with his spear at a Bull, but so unfortunately, that his Horse being gored he was cast to the ground and taken up for dead. His delighting in unruly Horses, his liking to fierce Dogs and many other such youthful excesses are urged against him and painted out as the blackest infamies. Yet nothing has since been more improved to his disadvantage, or then made a greater noise, than his attacking alone three men in a dark Night, whom for a considerable space he set very hard, till Number prevailing he at length fell, having received at their hands two wounds and was saved from farther perill by his servants coming in. These very Actions alledged against him, prove that he was not so Lamed with the Palsy, as was pretended by his adversaries. And as for the extravagancy of quarrelling in the street, it is a fault so habitual to Youth in all parts, that to object it to him, as a crime unpardonable, looks as if indeed there were none real to accuse him of. But it is most certain that what in the unfortunate is accounted Vice, in the fortunate passes for Virtue. However after he was recovered of his wounds, the Council of State in the Name of the Kingdom made a remonstrance to him, upbraiding him with things past and desiring him for the future to have more regard to the safety of his Person. Indeed as it proved a course piece of Courtship to pray their King to spare his Life that he might afterwards End it miserably in imprisonment. This remonstrance had such effect upon the King, that tho' he did not abandon Vice, yet he

Slanders  
cast upon  
the King.

M m 3

changed

changed those his fierce inclinations, for others more soft and secure, such as are the intrigues of Love, so that now his whole delight was in Feasting and Women. He walked the streets of *Lisbon* at Night with a Train of bravoës, ranging to lewd houses, and sometimes those that accompanied him committed outrages upon such as they met: Neither was this all, for at length even by day he would slip out or suffer women to be brought to him to the Court. To divert him from these scandalous courses, his Mother with some of the Nobility, contrived to fill his mind with business, giving him some part in the administration of publick Affairs, yet so as that the supreme Authority might still remain in her hands. Thus *Alphonso* was brought to give audience with his Mother, and to assist in Council, and was not at all averse to it, so that tho' he did not quite forsake his vices, yet he had not so much leisure to indulge them. *Conti* was not at all displeased at these proceedings, hoping this would be the means for advancing his Fortune, and therefore lost no time or opportunity, but plyed the King with immoderate suits for himself and his companions. The first thing the King asked for him of his Mother, was that he might be admitted into the order of Knighthood called of *Christ*, which as she durst not absolutely refuse for fear of provoking her Son, so she delayed granting it, still putting him off from time to time with several excuses. *Conti* perceiving her subtilty, failed not to press the King, urging how unworthy his grandeur it was to be refused that which was in his power to take, and by these and other insinuations so fired his mind, that at length he forced the Queen to condescend to all that was asked for him. Being thus raised from the degree of a Merchant to that of a Minister of State, not only the meaner sort made application to him in their Suits, but even the Nobility had recourse to him in matters of moment least his interest should thwart their designs, nay even the Queen herself, tho' contrary to her haughty inclination, refused not to truckle to his greatness, fearing she could not maintain her Authority by opposing him. But he knowing all this Courtship was Feigned, used Art against Art. shewing a good countenance to all yet at the same time arming himself against all Emergencies. To this purpose he began to make a party in the Court, introducing instead of the experienced Nobility, all the Youth,

youth into places of honour, and preferring some of mean parentage; till the Queen, fearing least the increase of his party should prove her downfall, began openly to oppose him. Thus the Court was divided into factions, some siding with the King, others with the Queen, and others adhering to Neither. *Conti* ceased not to blow the Coles, but his chief aim was to persuade the King to take upon himself the Government, urging, as the truth was, *Dennis*, *Alphonso* the 5th and *Sebastian* Kings of *Portugal* took upon them the administration being yet younger than he. That which most moved the King, was that his Mother falling sick at this time, the whole Court was made to him, which gave him to understand what a diminution it was to his splendor, and therefore he began to be inflamed with a desire of absolute command. The Queen recovering and resuming the care of the government, found the King more intractable than he had been before, as being wholly bent upon wresting the power from her by force, if she should refuse to resign. This was a deadly stroke to her ambitious Spirit, which abhorred the thought of falling from that height wherein she had upheld herself for so many Years; nor could she be without some care for the Kingdom, if it were wholly left at the disposal of a wilful and unexperienced Youth, beset with a croud of dangerous and unskilful favourites and Councillors. Being perplexed and tormented with these thoughts, she resolved to set up her Younger Son *Peter* against the King, that so he in hopes of attaining the Crown through her means might be wholly at her devotion, and at the same time *Alphonso* fearing to lose his right might be kept in awe. There-fore to prepare the *Infante* who of himself was willing enough, she persuaded him he ought to be declared Prince and Heir to the Crown, alledging that his Brother was impotent, and consequently the Kingdom must devolve to him. For the Executing of this design, she tampered with all the Nobility and Magistrates, intending to call the *Cortes* or Parliament to confirm her resolution, but finding it a matter of greater difficulty than she had expected, most men abhorring to set up two Brothers, as it were two King's, to rend the Kingdom and destroy themselves, and thinking it a rashness to condemn *Alphonso* as impotent before any proof were made of his Ability, she desisted from the method, but



not from the design. Her next practice then was to set out the *Infante* in the most splendid apparel, to cause him to show himself often to the People, to give him a Family composed of all such as were disaffected to his Brother, and to put him into a house the best in *Lisbon* built by *Christopher de Moura* Marquess of *Castelrodrigo*. Having thus set up the *Infante* in opposition to his Brother, and secured him to herself, her next artifice was to counterfeit a desire of quitting the regency and retiring into a *Monastery of Nuns*. For this purpose she drew up a subtle writing intimating her pretended desire, and yet so worded it that the great men and principal Ministers to whom she sent it for their advice, soon saw into the depth of it, which was that she desired to be, as it were, constrained to continue the Regency, yet so as she must be drawn to condescend by the removal of *Antony Conti* and the rest of his party from about the King. Those to whom the writing had been communicated being all her creatures, and fearing least if she were suffered to abandon the government, they should by the King be deprived of the preferments they enjoyed, resolved not to forsake her least they should be involved in her fall. Therefore by writing they gave her to understand, that tho' she were resolved to lay down the administration of the Kingdom, it was not yet time to do it, till she had removed from the Person of the King, those that seduced and led him into ill courses. Nothing could be more pleasing to the Queen than this answer so pat to her purpose, since they had fulfilled all her wishes without obliging her to express them. However that all might seem to be carried by the advice of the Council, knowing they were all resolved to perform her will, she would have nothing done but what should be there discussed and given under their hands. The Council met accordingly, and, tho' some of the gravest among them opposed the design, as too visible an affront to the King, yet it was carried, that *Conti* and his adherents should be seized, and sent into banishment contrary to the will of the King, for this Council sat not to serve him, but his Mother. In pursuance to this resolution, the Queen having secured the King in her Lodgings upon pretence of business, the Duke of *Cadaval* with his Party Entered the King's apartment, where *Conti* then was. He seeing a Throng and suspecting some danger locked himself in,

The Council  
combine  
with the  
Queen.

The faction  
seize *Conti*  
the King's  
favourite in  
the King's  
apartment  
and send  
him to Bra-  
zil.

but

but the Duke without respect to the Sacredness of the place, or to the Remonstrances of the Count *de Castellomelhor* who would have diverted him from that Action, offered to break open the door, whereupon *Conti* seeing no hopes of escaping, and the Count not able to relieve him or acquaint the King, delivered himself up to the Duke upon promise of Life. At the same time some others of *Conti's* partizans were secured partly in the palace and partly in the Town, all which were immediately put aboard a Ship that lay ready to sail in the River and sent away to *Brazil*. The Queen being informed that all she had commanded was put in Execution, led the King forth into the great Hall, whither she had assembled all the Nobility, Ministers of State, and Magistrates of the City, the better to appease, and terrify the King. Here a Remonstrance was made to him in the Name of the Kingdom, full of grievous complaints against his Conduct, and against his Favourites, whom to prevent any farther ill consequences they declared they had been obliged to send into banishment. This done having kissed his hand they departed. It was no small surprize to the King to be brought so unexpectedly into that assembly, and therefore not rightly conceiving the drift of what had been said, he began to ask the meaning of it. *Garcia de Melo* told him that to satisfy the complaints of his People, they had sent *Conti* and his adherents into banishment. He scarce believing they durst offer him such an indignity, began loudly and in a rage to call upon *Conti*, and running to seek for him threatened to follow him, wheresoever they had sent him. *Melo* told him his search would be in vain for that he was now under sail for *Brazil*, that as the case stood he must have either parted with *Conti* or his Crown. At this answer he seemed somewhat to compose himself. Then calling for *Emanuel Antunes*, who only had escaped of all his former Favourites, he shut himself up with him and the Count of *Castellomelhor*. These two gave him a full Relation of what had passed, and here were layed the first Foundations of the Count's ensuing greatness. After this meeting, the King appeared unconcerned at what had hapned, and rid according to custom that Afternoon, but he had learned to counterfeit, and had other thoughts within his breast than what appeared by his countenance.

This

Count Castelmelhor succeeds in the King's Favour.

This mighty act of policy which the Queen had contrived to perpetuate her Regency, was the very cause of her speedy falling from it. Count Castelmelhor, a Man above exception for his Birth and Parts, had now succeeded in the Kings Favour, in the place of Conti, and omitted not to encourage him in the resolution of taking upon him the Government. Besides a young Lady belonging to the Queen, for whom the King had a more than ordinary Affection, made him the more earnest, discovering to him all his Mothers private Discourses. For the better carrying on his Design, the King ordered the Count, whose waiting Week was expired to wait on another, least one might succeed him, whom he could not so well confide in. This done, he retired according to custom to *Alcantara*, a House near *Lisbon*, carrying with him his Brother and a great Train. That same day he returned to *Lisbon*, and visited his Mother, discoursing so lovingly with her, that all resentment seemed to be passed, but on a sudden, without acquainting her, he went back to *Alcantara*, accompanied only by the Count de Castelmelhor, and the Count de Antouguia. From thence he dispersed Letters into all parts of the Kingdom, to the Officers of the Army, and Governors of Towns, acquainting them, that being now at Age, he had taken upon him the Government. Then he ordered all the Nobility and Ministers of State that were at *Lisbon*, to repair to him to *Alcantara*. The Queen astonished at this News, and fearing to be cast down from her Regency, assembles the Council of State, where it was resolved that *Emanuel Pacheco*, should be placed upon the Road to stop all those that should offer to repair to the King; that the Queen should write a Letter to him in soft Terms, desiring him either to delay some time his taking the Government upon him, or at least to admit her to bear a great part with him, and that in case persuasions failed, she should then use Force to constrain him. Accordingly *Pacheco* turned back those that were going to *Alcantara*; the Guards, and all the Queens Adherents, were ordered to be ready in Arms to support her, and a Letter was sent to the King from her, full of alluring and soft, but all deceitful Expressions. But before the sending of the Letter, the People of *Lisbon* perceiving that the Court armed against the King, began to

The King resolves to take the Government upon him.

run

run into tumult for his Defence, fearing least any violence might be offered him. This zeal of the Multitude was what humbled the Queen, and therefore seeing no hope left of prevailing by open force, she had recourse to Artifice and Entreaty, and therefore, as has been said, sent a submissive Letter by the Bishop of *Targa*. In this Letter among other things, the Queen urged to have the Cortes or Parliament call'd, that she might there resign the Government, but the King and the Count perceiving this was only a contrivance to gain time, an answer was sent her by the same Bishop. The purport of this Answer was, that the King considering the great Burthen of care that attended the Government, was willing to ease his Mother, who had long laboured under it, of that Toil, and to take it upon himself. She now plainly perceiving that there was no longer hope, either by Force or Art, of retaining the Government, resolved at length to quit it, least it should be violently taken from her. However, she wished it might be done in the Pallace, that the World might believe it had been freely resigned, and not to be forcibly extorted from her. Those who were acquainted with her Subtilties, advised the King not to trust himself to her Power, which made him delay some time at *Alcantara*. However, at length finding himself secured on all sides, and the Queens Interest declining, since the People of *Lisbon* had declared for him; he repaired to the Pallace, where in the presence of the Nobility, Ministers of State, and Magistrates of the City, the Queen delivered up the Seals into his Hands, which is the usual Ceremony in Portugal, when a King takes upon him the Government. This Ceremony was perform'd on the 23d. of June, 1662, the King then wanting but one Month of 19 Years of Age, whereas according to the antient custom of Portugal, their Kings were always reputed of Age at 14, and accordingly at those Years, the Regency ought to cease.

The Queen Mother thus discharged of the care of Government, began again to talk of retiring, but that after such a manner, that no Body believ'd she truly meant it. For first she talked of building a new Monastery, but could never find out a convenient Place, then of erecting an Apartment for her self, near some of the old ones, but none would admit her. And this it was believed was her desire, only to protract time, and to continue

She is at length forced to resign.  
She pretends to retire, but stays at Court in hopes to wrest the Power from her Son.  
in

in the Pallace, till some new emergency might again call her to the Government. But now all the Court was made to the King, all the Nobility attended him, and there wanted not crouds of Flatterers and Sycophants to fawn on him. His principal Ministers and Favourites were the Counts of *Castelmelhor*, and *Atouguia*, and *Sebastian Cesar de Meneses*. These managed all principal matters of State, and on their Counsel he chiefly relied. His Enemies however never ceased to slander him, spreading it abroad, that being wholly void of Sense, he only spoke such Words as they put into his Mouth. Count *Castelmelhor* endeavouring to establish himself absolutely in the King's Favour, eased him as much as was possible of the publick cares, indulging his Inclination to Horses, Arms, and even to Women, but without any publick Scandal. At this time the Count delivered out of Prison, *Henry Enriquez de Miranda*, who had been confined by the Queen, and he being now brought to Court, became one of the King's greatest Favourites, and yet though he was raised to this Degree, there never happened the least Disorder betwixt the Count of *Castelmelhor* and him. Much otherwise was it with the Count of *Atouguia*, *Cesar de Meneses*, and Count *Castelmelhor*, but the latter not thinking himself yet thoroughly established, would not attempt so soon to cast them down. At length having wholly gained the ascendant over the King, and having all things as prime Minister at his disposal, he lodged himself in the Apartment that had belonged to Prince *Theodosius* the King's eldest Brother. He only wanted now some charge that might always keep him about the King's Person, and there being none at that time vacant, he thought of one that of late had been suppressed, or incorporated into that of the Secretary of State; in Portuguese it is called *Escrivao da Puridade*, that is the private Secretary. This employment he begged of the King, who readily granted it, and though the Secretary of State insolently enough disputed it, caused him immediately to settle him in the possession thereof. By this charge he also obtained the right to a Seat in the Counsel of State. Being thus raised to the highest pitch of Favour, he began to bestow preferments without measure upon all his Friends and Adherents, and at the same time omitted not to crush and terrifie his Enemies, that the power of the one party,

Count Castelmelhor rises,

ty, and the dread of the other might be a sure stay to his greatness. In the next place, he advised the King to shew some resentment for the Affronts done to his Person, during the Queen's Regency; as particularly in the forcing away of *Conti* out of his Apartment, and other the like Insolencies, which if not punished, might draw him into contempt. In pursuance of this Advice, the Duke of *Cadaval*, *Garcia*, and *Emanuel de Melo*, the Counts of *Soure*, *Pombeiro*, *Peter Vieira*, Secretary of State, who had often audaciously reprov'd the King, and some others, all guilty enough, were sent into Banishment.

This proceeding against so many persons of Note, though but an act of Justice, ministred occasion to their partizans to revile anew the King and his Government. And now the Queen seeing her self excluded from all publick Affairs, began again to cherish the *Infante*, and to hold frequent and private Consultations with him, wherein it was always inculcated that the King was stupid and unfit for Rule. Count *Castelmelhor* who was not ignorant of all their Machinations, contrived all ways he could to separate them, but all in vain. For the *Infante* building upon the notion of his Brothers Incapacity, had more mind to be himself a King, then to be next to a King. Therefore he carryed himself with profound Dissimulation, studying all ways to elude the Arts of the Favourite. But the Count seeing he could not otherwise prevail upon him to desist from his Cabals, perswaded the King to change all his Servants, putting in their places such as he could confide in, that so he should have the less opportunity of carrying on his Designs. The next thing was to perswade the Queen at length to retire from Court, as she had so often pretended to desire, though by her proceedings it plainly appeared nothing was more distastful to her than the thoughts of a private Life. Yet seeing the King so inclinable to have her retire, she again has recourse to her Dissimulation, and sends to ask leave to withdraw to some private House, because the Apartment she had begun to build was not yet finished. The King's Answer was, that it became not her Granedur to quit the Palace for a private House, but that if she were so desirous of a retreat, she might cause more Diligence to be used in finishing her Structure, which till then, had gone on very

The Queen  
Infante,  
and their  
party bold  
Consultations  
against  
the King.

very slowly. Soon after, *Alfonso* being informed that his Mother never ceased to use all Arts to advance his Brother *Peter* to the Throne, being terrified with the danger of his Crown, which yet at last, by these same Practices, was ravished from him; he sent an absolute Order for her to depart from the Palace. This positive command pressing, and fearing to be forced away, she at length resolved to depart, and accordingly on the 17th. of March, 1663, withdrew to the new Apartment she had built at a small distance from *Lisbon*, being attended thither by the King, the *Infante*, and all the Nobility. The Queen Mother being thus removed, the *Infante* seemed now wholly devoted to please the King, except in one only thing which he knew to be offensive to him, and that was in frequently visiting his Mother, and entertaining private Discourses with her. Nor was she wanting often in publick to warn him of the danger of this his assiduosity towards her, whether she really meant it as dangerous to him, or rather did it artificially to make the King the more odious, and procure themselves the greater Commiseration. Thus with great difficulty, Queen *Luisa* was at the last not only put out of the Regency, but even out of the Palace.

The Queen  
at last for-  
ced to re-  
tire.

*Alfonso*, to whom the nearness of his Mother had been a curb, being now delivered from that restraint, ran more licentiously into all the Vices of Youth. Count *Castelmelhor* fearing a disorderly Life might hasten his fall, in whose Ruine he must himself be involved, studied several means to reclaim him, or at least to conceal his Extravagancies, but it is a work of great difficulty to correct the vicious Inclinations of Youth, especially when supported by the lustre of a Crown. In short, his Vices were too visible to be excused, but to lay to his Charge all the Villanies his Adversaries have aspersed him withal, were too much to wrong his Memory; for it is certain, that no insolence was committed during his Reign, which the malice of his Enemies has not reproached him withal. However, so certainly it was, that the King-indulging his Appetites and Vicious desires, the whole burthen of the Government was in a manner devolved upon the three Favourites, that is, the Counts of *Castelmelhor*, and *Antouguia*, and *Sebastian Caesar de Meneses*. *Castelmelhor* had long meditated to overthrow the other two, but as long as the Queen continued

The King  
grows more  
loose in his  
Life.

nued at Court durst not attempt it, least they having lost the King should become an accession to and strengthen her party. Now she being removed, there remained no other obstacle to the fulfilling his desire, and therefore by often buzzing false informations into the King's Ears, he first caused the Count *de Atouguia* to be expelled the Court and soon after to be banished the City. None remained now to cope with him but *Meneses*, who to support himself perswaded the King to recall *Antony Conti* from *Brazil*, hoping that he being returned and restored to his former Favour, would not in gratitude omit to stand by the man that had been the cause of bringing him back from banishment. The Count could not be long ignorant of this practice, and therefore immediately so worked the King, that *Meneses* was banished before *Antony Conti* could arrive to support him. Soon after *Conti* arrives from *Brazil*, the Ship that brought him being received into the port of *Lisbon* with sound of Trumpets, firing of Cannon, and all other demonstrations of joy, as if it had been the reception of some Sovereign Prince. Yet all this was but a glimmering of happiness to *Conti*, for Count *Castelmelhor* having perswaded the King, that as it was a Vindication of his Royal Authority to recall him from banishment, whither he had been sent in contempt of Majesty, so to entertain him at Court would only serve to provoke the Nobility, to whom the very name of *Conti* was odious, for these reasons without suffering him to Land at *Lisbon*, he was sent away into the Country with express Command, not to presume to come near the Court. Nevertheless to the End it might be thought this exile was not the effect of his jealousy, but rather of his care both for the safety of the King and *Conti*, he omitted not to caress him at that distance, sending him frequent presents, and a considerable employment at Court falling, he caused it to be conferred upon him tho' absent, and bestowed a Rich Benefice upon *John Conti* Brother to *Antony*, who was in orders. *Conti* was not so dull, but he could easily see through these Artifices. Therefore he used all his endeavours to obtain an interview with the King, not doubting but if he once saw him, he should be restored to his former favour. Such industry was used to compass his design, that at length he had a private meeting with *Alfonso* at *Alcantara*

Conti re-  
called from  
Brazil.

But bani-  
shed the  
Court.

Conti pri-  
vately  
meets the  
King.



A conspiracy against the King discovered and mercifully punished.

ra the Count being then absent. At this conference the King's former affection was so revived, that he offered to carry him immediately to Court. But *Conti* fearing his sudden and unexpected return might prove dangerous, desired it might be put off for the present, only praying the King, that he would recal from banishment those Noblemen who had been exiled for adhering to his Mother. This interview, and the proposal made by *Conti* being made known to the Count by one that had overheard their discourse, he soon discovered the design was to make a party to ruin him. To the End then to prevent his Enemy and turn that destruction upon himself, he employed several Spies to observe all his words and Actions, not sparing any expence for intelligence. By these means at length he discovered that *Conti* had conspired with the Noblemen to restore the Queen to the regency, leaving the King nothing but the empty name and Title without any power or Authority. Having got knowledge of this Treasonable practice, and found witnesses to prove it, he instantly acquaints the King, who appointed judges to examine the matter. Upon a full hearing and sufficient proof, several of the conspirators were convicted, and yet (tho' by his Enemies the King had always been accused of excessive cruelty) not one of the Criminals suffered death, only *D. Theodosius de Melo* Brother to the Duke de *Cadaval* was banished Five Leagues from *Lisbon*, *Sebastian Cesar de Meneses* into *Algarve*, and *Antony de Conti* to *O Porto*. The General depositions involved the Queen Mother in the common guilt, whereupon a Secretary was sent to examine her, but she refusing to answer, the King let that fall. Count *Castelmelhor* puffed up with this success, removed from the apartment he was in before to another nearer the King, where it being observed by such as envied him, that more Court was made to him than to the King himself, his name was thereby rendered the more odious, and he being now arrived to the highest pitch of his greatness, and capable of no increase, began soon after to decline.

The Counts brother favourite to the Infante. *Simon Vasconcellos* Brother to Count *Castelmelhor*, after serving in the Army several Years with great Reputation, coming now to Court, so gained the ascendant over the *Infante*, that it was observed as very remarkable to see the two Royal Brothers so vastly differing otherwise

wife in inclinations, yet so addicted to these two Brothers, that they seemed not to move without them. Soon after the *Infante* falling sick, *Vasconcellos* attended him with such dilligence, that he not only confirmed himself in his favour, but incurred the ill will of all his other principal Servants, who upon this disgust quitted the *Infante's* Service, but very few days past before they were all recalled by the King except only the Count de *Eri-ceira*. All things being thus restored the King preferred *Vasconcellos* not only to be Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber to his Brother, but also constituted him Superintendent of his House. This his preferment again displeasing the Family they all quitted their Employments, and it being too great a condescension to recal them again, others were put into their places, for the most part creatures of Count *Castelmelhor*, and therefore not acceptable to the *Infante*. He thereupon thinking himself beset with so many Spies, resolved to alter his course of Life, so as he might become less suspicious to his Brother and at the same time more popular. No-thing could be more fit for these designs than Religion, to that therefore he seemed wholly addicted being sedulous at Prayers, visiting Churches, reading pious Books, conversing with Religious Persons, and employing the rest of his time in other Studies. Being thus taken up he seldom visited the King, as if he had been wholly bent upon Heavenly Affairs. Some thought his change of Life to proceed from a Disaster which happened, and was that *Augustin de Ceuta* fell suddenly dead at his and the King's Feet; but those who pretended to see farther thought it only a politick device to gain applause, and get the Crown from his Brother. Whilst these things were in agitation, on the 17th. of March, 1665, arrived at *Lisbon* the Marquess de *Sande* from France, where he had concluded a Match for the King with the Princess of *Nemours*, and by the *Infante's* order had made overtures on his behalf to the Duke of *Bouillon's* daughter, which also had taken effect, so far as they were agreed in words, tho' the Articles were not signed. This Marriage was proposed in order to secure the succession of the Crown, in case the King as had been given out should be incapable of getting Children. But now the *Infante* having changed his mind, upon what account is uncertain, could by no persuasions be prevailed upon

The Infante counterfeits a Religious Life to gain followers.

A match concluded for the King.

to consent to this marriage, although the King himself pressed it very home. This match being thus broke off, the Marquess *de Sande* having in order to conclude for the King first enquired whether the report that went of the King's impotency were true, was assured by the Count *Castelmelhor*, that the King had already several illegitimate Children, which was a sufficient evidence against that imputation. All things being then disposed for the coming of the Royal-Bride, the Marquess returned to *France*, to Conduct her to *Lisbon*.

The Queen  
motherdyes.

On the 25th of *February*, 1666, the Queen Mother falling sick and perceiving her End to approach, sent to both her Sons who according to custom were then at their diversion of Hunting at *Salvaterra*, to come and take their last Farewel of her. They came not till the 3d day after when having kissed her hand and received her blessing they departed, and within an Hour after she expired, making a very Pious and Religious End. She was a woman of a wonderful resolution, a great Soul, and singular wisdom which appear'd in the administration of the government both in Peace and War. It was she that pushed her husband to take the Crown, she helped to keep it on his head, and she by her industry and care secured it to his posterity. Her skill in matters of government was above the capacity of a woman, and she was so sensible of the danger of discord betwixt brothers, that she obstructed *Edward* brother to her husband King *John*, from making his escape when he was confined by the Emperor, least returning home he should not brook the greatness of the King his Brother. But what appeared most rare in her was that being a *Spaniard*, a name odious to the *Portugueses*, yet she knew so to carry herself that she gained the Love and esteem of the whole Country. Yet all these good Qualities were somewhat sullied by her unbounded ambition, and insatiable desire of rule, which were the cause she would never quit the government, or Court, till forced from them both, and that she increased the hatred betwixt her two Sons by setting up the younger in opposition to the Elder. In fine, to give her her due, her Vertues far surpassed her vices, and it may justly be said of her that she was the glory of her Family, the deliverer of *Portugal*, and the honour of *Spain*.

The

The Queen Mother being dead, the King believed himself more safe, and on the contrary the *Infante* deprived of her support, thought himself more exposed. Count *Castelmelhor* who till then had stood in some awe of him because of her power, acted now with more freedom. Thus the *Infante* growing more discontented, the King at the same time grew the more jealous of his reservedness, and consequently averse to all those he saw him favour, or cherish. Upon these discontents, some of his Servants fearing to offend quitted him, and others were removed from him, so that his retinue was much below the dignity of the Brother of a King. Some days he bore with this hardship, till the News of the New Queens being set forward, obliged him to press the King, that he might appear like himself at her reception. The King ordered him to give the Names of such as he desired should attend him, but not approving of those he made choice off, nothing was concluded upon, tho' many debates passed betwixt them on that account. At length on the 2d. of *August*, 1666, the Fleet which brought the Queen entred the River of *Lisbon*, the News whereof being brought to the King, he is reported to have received without the least demonstration of joy, or satisfaction, which was then looked upon as an ill omen of the future success of that Marriage. The Marquess *de Ruigny* who Commanded the *French* Fleet having sent to the *Infante* to beg leave to pay his respects to him, he layed hold of this opportunity, to put the King in mind how dishonourable it was to them both, that the Admiral should find him so ill attended. What could be done in so sudden an Emergency was, that the King sent his own Servants to attend his Brother during that Ceremony. This was no way pleasing to the *Infante*, who being highly incensed against Count *Castelmelhor*, as the only man that had obstructed his having those Servants he desired, forbore not openly to revile and threaten him with the severest punishment, when occasion should offer, which *Vasconcellos* the Counts Brother, who was present resenting, went away and quitted his Service. So now there remained with him but two Servants of any Note or Quality, whereupon he sent a message to the King, to desire he would give him leave to retire from Court, since he would not allow him to live in that Splendor that was due to him. Nothing could have

The Infante  
enraged a-  
gainst Count  
Castelmel-  
hor.

N n 2

more

more incensed the mind of the King than this message did; insomuch that tho' Count *Castelmelhor*, fearing least the discord betwixt the two brothers should run too high, used all his interest, to obtain of the King for the *Infante* those Servants he desired, he could never prevail. Therefore the *Infante* perceiving the King's obstinacy was not to be overcome, since it had not yielded to the intreaties and power of the Count, when he had amidst the rest of the crowd, hid his want of attendance at the Queens solemn entry into *Lisbon*, he withdrew himself to *Quelas* a League and a half from the City, accompanied only by *Roderick de Meneses*. Fame having immediately spread abroad, not only through the City but through the whole Kingdom, the News of his retreat; the universal report was that all things were preparing for a Civil War. At *Lisbon* *Peter's* party was already more numerous than *Alphonso's*, the virtues of the former were every where extolled, and the vices of the latter no less exaggerated; but above all the affection of the one, and the aversion of the other to Count *Castelmelhor* weighed more than all other things, with the People who bore him an implacable hatred. Many of the Nobility interposed to pacify the brothers, but all their endeavours proved in vain, for neither of them would abate any thing of his demands. When all other means failed, the Queen who then was indisposed sent for the *Infante*, who being come to her, they received one another with such affection, as seemed to be a sufficient earnest of the Love that was growing betwixt them. Here the Queen prevailed that he should not depart the Court, and should wholly leave that affair to her management, which he could not refuse her, being as was believed already somewhat fired with that Sight of her. At length the difference betwixt the Brothers was reconciled, the Prince chose other Servants and the King allowed of them. Yet tho' they seemed to have layd aside all animosities, the grudges betwixt them were of a highernature than to be so easily forgot. But *Peter* was supported with a deep dissimulation, *Alphonso* had little of that Art, and for the most part threatned much more than he would perform, which was the cause that he was often heard to let slip very harsh expressions against his Brother. He having long meditated how to rid himself of these displeasures, at last fixed upon a Method, which

Strange  
show of af-  
fection be-  
twixt the  
*Infante*, and  
the Queen.

which was to beg of the King the Post of Constable of *Portugal*, which is the same as *Generalissimo*. The more he insisted in demanding, the more positive the King was in refusing, as being not ignorant of the dagger of such a Grant. Count *Castelmelhor* was astonished at this Request, and spared not to tell the King, that it was not the General's Staff, but the Crown that he aspired to, and that it were well to crush his aspiring Spirit. Nor so satisfied, he used all his Endeavours to find out, who had advised him to demand that Post. At length it appeared to him, that Counsel could proceed from none but the Counts of *Torres* and *St. John*, who had been excellent Commanders in the *Portuguese* Army. Them therefore he instantly removed from him, sending them away to their Charges on the Frontiers. Nevertheless, though the abettors were removed, the causes of dissention still remaining, the differences betwixt the two Brothers, grew daily higher and higher, and at last the Queen who ought to have laboured to compose them, became her self a Party, leaving the Interest of her Husband to adhere to that of his Brother. Besides her proper Inclination to the *Infante*, two things perhaps might conduce to move the Queen to this unjust proceeding, the one that the King was already grown weary of her, and the other (from which perhaps his Aversion proceeded) that he was jealous of her too great Propension to his Brother. Count *Castelmelhor* contriving how to dissolve this knot of Affection that was betwixt the Queen and the *Infante*, thought nothing so effectual as marrying of him, which without delaying, he proposed to the King, who approving of the Advice commanded his Brother to make choice of a Wife. He having desired some time to consider of a matter of that Importance, returned his Answer in Writing, signifying in substance, that he was ready to comply with the King, only praying that a Servant of his might be employed to go to the Courts of *Europe* to find out a Lady fit for him to match with. Neither the King nor the Count saw into the design of this deceitful Answer, which was contrived only to protract time, and therefore they approved of it, and admitted of *John de Roxas*, whom he had named to go upon that Embassy.

Motives of  
the Queens  
Aversion to  
the King.

1667. About the beginning of the Year 1667, the King *The Queen* went to *Salvaterra*, according to custom, with all the *and Infant* Court. There the Cabals were continued betwixt the *te's Party* Queen and the *Infante*, and now the party they had *increases.* gained, was more numerous then that which adhered to the King. But some time after, an Accident that happened was improved to heighten their Animosities. A French Man belonging to the Queen, was murdered upon the Road in *Alentejo* by a Carrier, who fled and took Sanctuary, but being forced from thence, was carried Prisoner to *Coimbra*, and thence conducted to *Lisbon*. There he was tryed before all the Tribunals, till he came to the Council of State, none daring to pronounce Judgment against him, because he implored the protection of the Church, as having been taken out of Sanctuary, a thing never permitted in *Portugal*. The Queen, who thought nothing was done to thwart her, but through the Malice of Count *Castelmelhor* to her, being enraged, that Justice was not done upon the Murtherer of her Servant and Country-man, railed bitterly at him, laying all her discontents to his Charge. Nor yet so satisfied, she refused to be present at the Bull Feast, usually kept at *Lisbon* upon St. *Anthony's* Day, alledging she could not shew her self to the People, till Justice were done her. Among the rest that took upon them to vindicate the Queens cause, the *Infante* was the hottest, as looking upon the Injuries done to her, to be levelled at himself, who had wholly espoused her Interest. Therefore he ordered Count *Castelmelhor* to bring the Secretary of State, who had carried himself very disrespectfully towards the Queen, in the Affair of the Murtherer, before the Council, to answer for his Insolency. There contrary to his Custom, *Peter* inveighed largely against him, and with such vehemency, that the Council signed an Order for his Banishment, which notwithstanding all the Count's opposition, was obeyed, and he sent into Exile. This Success against the Favourite, encouraged the *Infante* to aim at greater things, his party daily encreasing; for besides the Queen, there adhered to him the Duke of *Cadaval*, who had been Banished by the Counts Procurement, *D. Sancho Manuel*, who after defeating the *Spanish* Army at *Estremoz*, had been remov'd from his command by the same Interest, and many more of the Nobility, on sundry other

*The Infante openly espou-  
ses the Queens  
quarrel.*

Ac-

Accounts, besides the thoughtless multitude, stirred up by the desire of Novelty, and animated with the name of so many Heads of Note. Notwithstanding the Strength of this Faction, it was yet thought too soon to attempt any thing against the King directly, and judged more proper to let the Storm fall upon his Favourite, *The Fashi-* who being once cast down, the King would be left *on level a-* posed to all their Practises. To consult of the means *gainst the* of removing the Count, there was a great Meeting *Favourite.* held of all the *Infante's* Confederacy; he also being present. There most Men being averse to Murther, if the thing might be otherwise performed, it was resolved to seize upon, and send him away, either into *India*, or some other remote parts of the World; yet so, that if he should make resistance, or attempt to escape, then he should be killed. Many days passed not, before the Count had intire Information of the whole Conspiracy against him, and having layed it before the King, he was by him empowered to use such means for their common Security, as he should think most effectual. He presently doubles the Guards at the Palace, arms all his own Creatures, set his Spies, and stirs not out of the Palace, without a sufficient Train and Guard for his Security. This sudden change at Court, alarm'd the City, so that the People ran in heaps to the Palace for Information, but finding that there was no interruption of publick Affairs, nor any thing but the increase of the Guards, they soon dispersed and returned to their Houses. The *Infante* finding his project defeated, to avoid all Suspicion, retired to his Country-House at *Quelas*. Whilst he was there almost in despair for the great disappointment he had received, a Discovery was made, or pretended to be made, for the certainty of it could never appear, that the Count had hired People to poison him. Hereupon his Partizans advise him to be very circumspect in securing himself, and they on their part were not wanting in spreading abroad the danger they pretended him to be in. Having thus prepared the Multitude, and being sensible that the Count could not but study to secure himself by his downfal, the *Infante* made instant application to the King, to punish him according to the heinousness of the Offence he alledged. To this effect he wrote to the King, acquainting him that he was convinced the Count practised against his Life; that therefore he



he demanded he should be banished from the Court, or else, that he himself should be forced to fly into Foreign parts for Safety. Both the King and Count having read this Letter, referred the whole matter to the Council of State. There it was fully discussed, one party affirming that it was a Presumption at one time to accuse the King's Favourite, and assign his Punishment in such a manner as seemed to threaten the King himself; that if the Count were justly accused, he ought to be tryed according to the known Laws of the Kingdom, and if convicted, to be punished; but that if it should appear he was wronged, care ought to be taken, least the Prince's aspiring practices should not be prejudicial to the King. The other side on the contrary being devoted to the *Infante's* Interest, urged all the plausible Reasons they could gather to shew that he ought to be complied with, Right or Wrong, either in regard he was the King's Brother, or for fear he might effect that by force, which he could not obtain by Entreaty. After conferring both Opinions, they came to this Resolution, That it should be put to the Tryal, whether the *Infante* could be appeased by Submission, and all manner of humble Application. To this effect the Marquess of *Marialva* was sent by the King to acquaint the *Infante*, that the Count was ready to come and beg his Pardon upon his Knees. But he considering, that to accept of this Submission would no way forward his End, for that the Count would still remain at Court, after two days delay, sent back the Marquess with his Answer, signifying that nothing but the Banishment of the Earl could satisfy him. *Alphonso* hoping his Brother's Fury might abate in time, delayed sending to him again for the present, whereat he being the more enraged, caused a Letter to be deliver'd to the King, among other things, threatening not to appear at Court, as long as Count *Castelmellor* continued in it. A Cabinet Council being called upon this second Biller, some were for apprehending the *Infante* himself, as now grown too dangerous, others more moderate, were only for securing his Family and Adherents, and so leaving him naked. This latter Advice was approved off, but the Execution being delayed, and *Peter* having received Intelligence thereof, he stood upon his Guard, arming all his Followers, and promising to live and dye by them. Next he

The King  
offers the  
*Infante*  
Satisfac-  
tion.

he summons the Counsellors of State, and Magistrates of *Lisbon*, who being met at his House, he inveighed before them against the King his Brother, and Count *Castelmellor*, impeaching him of Practices against his Life, and desiring their assistance to be revenged of him, since the King would not consent to his Banishment. After having spoken to this effect, he gave them the same in Writing, to which they unanimously answer'd, they would stand by him, and support his Dignity to their utmost.

It is easie to conceive how much the King and Count were concerned at this audacious proceeding, which was an absolute usurpation upon the regal Authority, for it was no less in the *Infante* to summon the Tribunals, and in them it was not much less than Treason to obey the Summons, but above all, to ingage to stand by him. Finding by this Tryal how great the strength of his Party was, they resolv'd if possible to mollifie him, and therefore the King sent to him to discover, who were the Count's Accusers, that so he might be proceeded against in due form of Law. The *Infante* positively refused to discover the Evidence, unless the Count were first removed from Court. *Alphonso* put it to the Council and ablest Lawyers, whether it were legal and becoming the King's Dignity, that the Count should be removed before the Witnesses were known, and it was carryed by the Majority, that the demand was unjust and unreasonable. This their result, under their Hands, the King sent to his Brother; at the same time sending away Expresses to the Commanders on the Frontiers and Sea-ports, to suffer no Man to depart the Kingdom. By these means the expectation of a Civil War, which till then, had gone no farther then *Lisbon*, was spread abroad throughout the whole Kingdom. The *Infante* advising with his Friends upon the result of the Council sent him by the King, they came to this Resolution, that in case his Majesty persisted in protecting the Count, then *Peter* without his consent should speed into the Province beyond the Mountains, where the Count of *St. John* had the command of the Forces, which he should march to *Lisbon*, and joyning with the multitude by open Force should constrain the King to comply with all his demands. Having fixed this Resolution, he sent the King a long Letter full of invectives against

The Coun-  
cil and  
Magistrates  
of Lisbon  
combine  
with the  
*Infante*.

The King  
fearing the  
faction, of-  
fers to  
compound  
with the  
*Infante*.

Lisbon  
mutinies at  
the instiga-  
tion of the  
Nobility.

gainst the Count, and complaints that he could not obtain Justice, concluding that his Majesty made more account of the Earl than of him, and seeing both could not live together, he had resolved to quit the Court. Upon what Account he intended to withdraw, we have seen but just before, not to submit to the King's Will, but to force him to comply with his. And though he pretended privately to withdraw himself, yet the preparations for his Journey were so publick, that there was none so blind, who could not discover it. Nor was this done without cause, for the report of his removal being spread abroad, and that it was in the nature of a Flight from the Favourite, the whole City began in a moment to rise in mutiny, several of the Nobility openly fomenting it, and declaring that was the day, on which according to an ancient Prophecie, the Streets of *Lisbon* were to run with human Blood. Seven Thousand Men are reckoned to have appeared that day in Arms, to stop the *Infante's* Journey, and to decide the Controversie betwixt the Count and him. This popular Fury being made known to the King and Count, they both perceiving themselves too weak to withstand the violence of that Storm, resolved instead of that lofty Course they had followed before, to stoop to Necessity, and try what good Words could work upon the *Infante*. To this purpose, the King sent him a Letter, full of most loving Expressions, desiring him to suppress that Tumult, which had been raised on his Account, and to come to Court, where all things should be disposed to his Satisfaction. The Answer to this Letter, was in no less obliging Terms, only in the Conclusion, the *Infante* again intimated, that the King must resolve either to part with the Count, or him, and must take his choice before things came to Extremity. Count *Castelmelhor* perceiving, that neither Threats nor Intreaties prevailed upon the *Infante*, and that the mutiny in the City was grown to such a head, it would endanger both the King and himself, resolved at last to consent to leave the Court, the King promising him, that as soon as that Storm were blown over, he would take a progress on pretence of visiting the Frontiers, and in his return, would restore him to the Court, and to his Favour. But lest his Banishment should seem wholly extorted by the *Infante*, he perswaded the Queen to interest her self in that affair, and

The Queen  
assists the  
Infante.

and beg it of the King, that he so might rather seem to have condescended to her intreaty, than to the necessity imposed upon him by his brother. She fearing to disoblige the *Infante*, or thwart his designs, would not intermeddle in it, till by a messenger sent to him she had his direction how to proceed. Nor was she satisfied with one message, but sent again for more particular instructions, so great was her concern for him, and so little for her husband. Being now fully informed of his will, she concludes the business with the King and Count, who submitted to withdraw himself upon faith given for the safety of his person. But before he departed, he would have articulated that the *Infante* upon his removal, should clear him from the imputation of the design of poisoning him. Whether his conscience accused him of any such practice, or whether he feared, being once cast down, his innocence could not protect him against the malice of his Enemies is uncertain. Thus the Count being assaulted on all sides by the *Infante*, by the Queen, by the Nobility, and by the multitude, and not able to stand the shock of so many Enemies, at length withdrew from the Court, and lodged himself in a Monastery about Seven Leagues from the City. But as his expulsion was not the End, but rather the means to compass the designs then carried on, so the divisions and distractions at Court instead of ceasing, increased, for as long as the ambition of the *Infante*, and the King's neglect of the Government lasted, only the pretence but not the cause of these troubles was removed.

The Count  
withdraws.

Nothing could be more grievous to the King, than to consider, that upon all occasions his brother being backed by the multitude extorted from him, whatever he desired, which made it plain to him, that at last he would not forbear to aim at, or fail of wresting from him the Crown. His violent nature made him more open, when he should have been most circumspect, and therefore his thoughts being filled with the hatred his Brother bore him, the jealousy he had of his Wife, the perfidiousness of the People, and the disloyalty of the Nobility; he could not forbear inveighing against his Brother in publick, and even before the Queen, who he knew gave the *Infante* a particular account of all his words and Actions. In this perplexity, he caused the extraordinary companies that had been raised by Count *Castelmelhor*,

The King in  
great per-  
plexity.

The Infante  
resolves to  
proceed.

The King  
betrayed by  
the Queen.

The King  
makes  
choice of  
Antony de  
Souza de  
Macedo  
in the place  
of the Count.

*Castelmelhor*, to be filled up for the security of the palace. On the other side the *Infante* flushed with success, resolved wholly to root out all that was left of the Favourites party about the King, for tho' the Count himself was removed, yet his creatures remained at Court, and nothing of moment was Transacted without his advice, had by messengers betwixt them. Before the *Infante* could put his designs in practice, he was advertized by the Queen of all the words the King daily let fall against him, and perhaps of more than ever had been spoken. This intelligence caused him to hasten the Execution of his projects. The principal men at that time remaining near the King of Count *Castelmelhor's* faction, were *Henry Enriquez de Miranda*, *Emanuel Antunez*, and *Antony de Souza de Macedo* the Secretary of State. Of these the chiefest was *Miranda* whom therefore the *Infante* resolved first to destroy, and to that end sent some privately to warn him to depart the Court, before he run himself into greater danger. Despair so seized the unfortunate man, considering the expulsion of the Count, that he attempted to kill himself, but being prevented, he fled fearing to be torn in pieces by the Rabble. Count *Castelmelhor* having received information hereof, instantly advised the King to be circumspect in all his words and Actions, for that it was easier by fair means to supplant his Brother, than by open Force. His advice being approved by the King, upon the next occasion that offered, he summoned his Brother to appear in Council where some important matter was to be debated, but no kind messages or Letters were of any Force to move him to come, till the Queen sent for him, when he appeared with a great Train of followers, and full of dissimulation. The King received him not so coldly as before, but being no Master of the Art of Counterfeiting, could not so well hide his just displeasure as the other. However this feigned reconciliation might have produced some good Effects, had it not been decreed by fate that the unhappy King must perish. To hasten his ruin it fell out that *Alphonso*, who was not used to that continual burden of business, seeking on whom he might lay that weight, pitched upon *Antony de Souza de Macedo* one of the Counts creatures, who for some words spoken to the Queen had been ordered into banishment, but unknown to her lay concealed at Court. In order to raise him to the

the Honour of prime Minister, the King begged of the Queen that she would forgive his offence, and consent that his banishment should be remitted, but notwithstanding his repeated instances, and submissive intreaties she remained implacable. *Alphonso* thinking to Conquer her obstinacy by extenuating the crime, put into her hands the order of Council for his banishment, wherein it was expressly set down, that rather for to satisfy her resentment, than for that his fault deserved such punishment, they had for some days thought fit to send him into exile. This which should have been a motive to appease, so enraged her, that she flew out into many extravagant speeches unbeseeming a private woman, and much more a Queen, and after venting her fury in this undecent manner without any regard to the King's presence, she flung into another Room, whence she sent a billet to him demanding to have *Antony de Souza* severely punished. The King hoping her passion would fall by degrees, and that she might be brought to reason, shewed not her billet according to custom to the Council of State, but she on the contrary becoming dayly more intractable, and he not able long to hide his resentment, their animosities swelled to such a pitch that the Court was almost empty, all men shunning him as declining, and she admitting none to her presence being wholly Transported with the desire of Revenge. Mean while *Antony de Souza* appeared more openly in the palace than he had done before, being always well attended to prevent danger, But there wanted not those who soon spread it among the People, that he threatened the City in case he were expelled the Court, that he would repair to the Army with the which he would return to punish their Rebellion with fire and Sword. Many such like discourses were framed and given out on purpose to incense the People against the King, and fix their affections upon his brother, as their deliverer from Tyranny and oppression. Things being thus disposed the *Infante* to requite the Queens Favours and raise himself one step nearer to the Crown, resolved by open Force, if other means failed, to expel *Antony de Souza* from the Court. In order hereto on the 5th of October, 1667, he went from his House to the Pallace accompanied by a great Number of the Nobility, and all the Rabble of the City following in a most Tumultuous manner. Being come to the Pallace, he

he stayed till all the Councillors of State summoned by him the day before, were come, that the foulness of the Action might be somewhat disguised by their presence. They being all come, he enters with them the King's Bed-Chamber before he was awake, who was not a little surprized to see such a croud Rush in upon him at so unseasonable an hour. Then the *Infante*, told him, that his Crown and Person were in extream danger, the multitude being in Arms about the Pallace, demanding, *Antony de Souza* should be delivered to them, to receive condign punishment for the affront he had done to the Queen. To these words he added more threats in the name of the People, but as he would have run on, the King in a rage interrupted him, calling aloud for his Sword. The *Infante* according to his usual dissimulation calmly offered him his, which he would not accept. The Noise of the Multitude filling the Pallace, brought the Queen to the King's apartment, where she found him in a violent passion, and enquiring, as if she had not known, what the matter was, he told her that *Antony de Souza* in malice and despite to his Authority had been murdered, and that now they came in Tumultuous manner to force him to pardon the murderers. But she who knew better, replied that *Souza* was living, which the King would not believe till the Duke of *Cadaval* having dragged him from his lurking place, brought him into his presence. At his sight he was somewhat appeased, and then the Queen, *Infante*, and the rest of their followers left him abruptly. When they were gone, the King said he forgave them, who had so undecently urged the expulsion of *Antony de Souza*, to which the Count *de Sabugal* then present insolently answered, they stood not in need of pardon but deserved praise, and this he repeated till the King told him, he would bestow pardon and praise where each was requisite. So much is regal Authority depressed, when faction prevails. *Antony de Souza*, this Tumult being over, continued still in the Pallace, which the *Infante* observing, consulted with his Friends what was next to be done. One among them hotter than the rest, said the next thing was to assume the Crown, whilst the Peoples affection stood for him, but he took him up very short, being unwilling as yet to have the secrets of his heart pryed into, as fearing an Action done in that Tumultuous manner could

could not be durable. It was resolved that *Antony de Souza* and *Emanuel Antunes* should be threatened with death, unless they departed the Pallace. They perceiving no power was left in the King, or their friends to protect them, stole away privately, without the King's knowledge by Night.

Next Morning the King missing them, ordered search to be made for them, but in vain, for his orders were wholly neglected. In this Condition, finding himself forsaken by his Friends, and oppressed by his Enemies, he knew not which way to turn himself, or of whom to ask Advice. His Council sided with the *Infante*, his Queen favoured him, the People followed, and the Nobility adhered to him. Thus all things being in extream Confusion, even the moderate party began to think no way was left to settle Peace, and restore Tranquillity; but the assembling of the *Cortes* or Parliament. The Magistrates of *Lisbon*, and the Common Council, were the first that petitioned the King to summon the three Estates, but he being sensible, the only design was to dethrone him, put them off from day to day, without any positive Answer: Whereupon they took the boldness to write to all the principal Towns of the Kingdom, exhorting them by importunate petitioning to extort the King's Consent. A few days after, the Council of State, at which were present, the King, Queen and *Infante*, unanimously made their Application to him, to the same effect, but he being the more convinced it was a design lay'd against his Person, became the more obstinate in refusing, so that nothing was done for that day. But the next day the Council meeting again, and sending him a most audacious remonstrance full of invectives against his Conduct, and urging the necessity of assembling the three Estates; and besides not only the Magistrates and multitude of *Lisbon*, but generally of the whole Country pressing upon him with Threats and open Violence, he was at last constrained contrary to his Inclination to comply with their demands: For it was now come to that pass, that the Council did not advise but command him, wheresoever he went, the clamours of a Parliament followed him, and from all parts Letters were brought, urging the same thing. It was now equally dangerous to him to refuse, or to call the *Cortes*, for the intent was not to do justice, by calling them,

*Antony de Souza, and Emanuel Antunes the remaining Friends of the King forced to fly. The King abandoned by all Men.*



*The King forced by his Enemies to call the Assembly of the States.*

them, but to palliate disloyal practices under that Name. Not content to have extorted a compliance to the meeting of the States, though the King desired it might be delayed till his return from *Salvaterra*, which would be about the middle of *February*, they obliged him to send out the Writs of Summons, for the first of *January*, 1668, so impatient is the desire of Rule. After this Violence committed upon him, the King finding himself beset on all sides by his Enemies, and no hope left of safety among them, his Crown, Liberty and Life being all in eminent danger, he resolved to fly to some other place. To this purpose he caused Horses to be provided, and Boats upon the River, thinking to try his Fortune in the Province of *Alentejo*, but his Brother who wanted not Intelligence, having all the Power, prevented his Design.

*He designs to fly to the Arm, but is prevented by his Brother.*

*The Queen knowing the King would be deposed flies to a Monastery.*

The time appointed for the meeting of the *Cortes* or Parliament being come; the Queen, who well knew the King would be deposed by them, disdaining to appear herself in a less Sphere than that she had been raised to, resolved before Hand to separate her self from him. Accordingly on the 21st. of *November*, 1667. she retired to the Monastery of *Franciscan Nuns*, called *Esperanca*, into which, when she was entred, she gave out she was a Maid, as being untouched by the King, and that she came thither for refuge amidst those Confusions that embroiled the Kingdom. Presently after, she sent the King a Biller, writ with her own Hand, to this effect, *That she had left her Country and Friends, to become his Wife, but finding she was not acceptable to him, and fearing the dangers that threatned on all sides, she had resolved to return into France. That she desired his leave, and the restitution of her Dower, since the Marriage was void for want of Consummation.* Having read this Biller, the King was so enraged, that he immediately took Coach, with a resolution to force her from the Monastery; but the *Infante* who was privy to the whole matter, was there before him with a vast Company, and withstood him, so that he was forced to return without doing any thing. Amidst all his Misfortunes, and the Affronts put upon him, nothing so nearly touched *Alphonso* as this last offered him by the Queen. As soon as settled, she sent for the *Infante* and conferred with him in

private,

private, as was then given out about her return into *France*, but the more received Opinion, and approved by the Event, was that there they agreed to be Married; as soon as her Marriage with the King could be made void. Her next Care was to send to the Chapter of the Cathedral Church of *Lisbon*, to desire their Judgment for the dissolution of the Marriage, then she sent for all the Nobility, who being come into her Presence, she demanded their Assistance and Protection; and lastly, she sent an Express into *France*, to acquaint the King and her Kindred with what she had done.

Mean while King *Alphonso* overwhelmed with such a continual stream of disasters, following one upon the Neck of another, being insulted by the Commonalty, contemned by the Nobility, deluded by his Brother, and forsaken by his Wife, stood as one amazed, and almost stupified, not knowing what course to take. Nor was there any left to extricate himself out of this Labyrinth of Confusions and Miseries. But now approached the last act of this Tragedy, and all that had been before acted under a mask, must appear bare-faced to the World. Therefore the Council of State being assembled together with the Magistrates of the City, it was resolved the King should be layed aside, and the Government put into the hands of his Brother. Yet that the Action might appear the more justifiable, they agreed to endeavour to persuade the King to resign up the Government to his Brother, but in case he refus'd, then it was concluded he should not only be deposed, but imprisoned. However that it should be left to the determination of the Parliament, whether the *Infante* should be enthroned as King, or the King restored to his Liberty. This Decree being passed in the morning by break of day, the whole Council went without the *Infante*, to acquaint the King with their Resolution. Amongst them the Marquess of *Cascaes* more insolent than the rest, being told by the King's Servants that he was still asleep, bid them awake him, at the same time fell himself a knocking rudely at his Door. The King being thus disturbed; ordered the Council to be admitted. Then the Marquess of *Cascaes*, with a loud Voice accosted the King in these very Words, without the least respect or common Civility. *Thou lyest wallowing in Sloath and Pleasures, when the ruin of the Kingdom threa-*

*Insolent words of the Marquess de Cascaes*

Alphonso  
rejoicetly  
denies to  
resign the  
Crown.

The Infante  
leads  
the multi-  
tude, and  
sets upon  
the King,  
and extorts  
from him  
an instru-  
ment of  
Resignati-  
on.

tens thee and us through thy Fault. Therefore since thou art unfit to Rule, or get Children, pass from thy Self willingly that Burthen, which thou art not able to bear, to thy Brother Peter, lest the Kingdom be deprived of a King, and the Royal Family of an Heir, and lest thou be forced to that against thy Will, which thou wilt not freely consent to. The rest of the Council spoke to the same effect, though not altogether in such audacious Language. The King, tho' surprized at so trayterous a Proposition, answered, That he was a lawful King, and brought to that pass, by the Malice and Perfidiousness of his Enemies; but that however, no Fear or Danger should force him to resign the Crown as long as he had Breath to draw; yet if they would use Violence to him, that then he would appeal for Justice to the supream Tribunal, which is above all Kings, against those that violated his Authority, and wrongfully snatched his Crown. Being thus disappointed of their first attempt, the Council repaired to the Infante, where they protracted their Debates till late at Night, for being resolved to use force, they feared least the People, who before took their part against the Favourites, should be of another Mind, when the matter came to touch the King's Person. However, after much time spent in fruitless projects, they came to this Resolution, That the King should be forcibly deposed and imprisoned, that for the better palliating that odious Action, and involving the People as a party in it, the Infante himself accompanied by all the Nobility and Magistrates, should put it in Execution, that the King's confinement should be at first concealed, till by spreading abroad several rumours, the People were prepared to allow of it; and lastly, that either by Art or Threats, the King should be obliged to sign an Act of Renunciation, to the end, it might be thought, the King had voluntarily given up the Government to his Brother. All things being thus disposed, at break of day the Infante repairs to the Palace, attended by an infinite multitude. There he set a Guard upon the King, and having locked all the Doors that led to his Apartment, he sent Antony Cavide to notify to him, that by the general consent of the Kingdom he was deprived of the Government and his Liberty, and also by the most terrible Threats to extort from him the signing of the Instrument of Resignation prepared for him. The unfortunate King see-

ing

ing himself wholly in the power of his Enemies, and fearing the utmost effects of their Malice, signed the Instrument which was immediately made publick as a justification of the Treasonable Practice. It contained in substance, that he freely resigned the Government to his Brother Peter and his Heirs, reserving only to himself Three Hundred Thousand Cruzados a Year, with the Mansion House of the Family of Braganza. A Cruzado is Four Hundred Reis of Portuguese Money, and Three Thousand Reis, is just Twenty Shillings English, so that 300000 Cruzados, makes the just Sum of 37500 £ Sterling. But how well even this miserable Composition for a Crown was observed, may appear by his being kept ever after a Prisoner, with only a few Servants of no Note, such as his Brother thought fit to allow him, so that in all probability his Expence could not amount to the tenth part of that Summ.

The unhappy King being thus dethroned, and made Prisoner, the Cortes or Parliament summoned by him met soon after at Lisbon, about the beginning of February, 1668, to destroy him by his own Authority. At first there were great Debates amongst them, whether it were at all lawful to take an Oath to Peter as Regent, and next Heir to the Crown, or whether the Crown should also be transferred to him; some doubting whether the first were justifiable, and others more violent, urging the latter ought to be done. At last the Majority agreed to the settling the Regency and Succession upon Peter, but were generally averse to his usurping the style of King, thinking it enough, that he who was judged unfit for Government, was removed from the Helm. Peter after having put it to the Vote, whether he should assume the Crown, finding his Pretension rejected, endeavoured to have it believed he was averse from it. But the Queen who intended to make him her Husband, and could not endure to think of losing any part of her Title, or abating any thing of her Pride, and being a Woman, that knew not how to dissemble her Vanity, urged the matter more home to the States, who nevertheless decreed, that he should exercise all the regal Power, without assuming the stile. The Controversie being decided, there arose another, which was whether the King should be allowed his Liberty, or confined, but in Conclusion, it was determined he should undergo perpetual Imprisonment. O o 2 There

The Cortes  
meet.

The Queen  
presses to  
have Peter  
declared  
King. He  
is received  
as Regent.

1668.

There had been a League offensive and defensive, concluded betwixt *France* and *Portugal*, at the beginning of the Year 1667, against *Spain*, by which the *French* were obliged to give the *Spaniards* a powerful diversion in *Flanders*, which they performed with great Success. After that some Overtures of Peace being made by the *Spaniards*, the *Portugueses* began readily to give ear to them, and though the *French* Ambassador pressed that the Negotiation might be in common with his Master, as in justice according to the League betwixt them, it ought to have been; yet the Prince who now had the Government, more mindful of the peculiar Interest, which was to secure the Power he had newly gotten, then of what in Honour was due to *France*, entered upon a separate Treaty of Peace with *Spain*. His Majesty of *Great Britain* was the Mediator, and in his Name the Earl of *Sandwich* assisted at the Conferences. At length the Peace was concluded betwixt the two Crowns, on the 13th. of *February*, 1668, and published 10th. of *March* following. This Peace was highly cryed up among the Rabble, as an effect of the Government of the Prince, when all Men plainly saw, and were sensible that in reality the victories obtained by King *Alphonso*, were the only motives that obliged the *Spaniards* to propose it, and that the Overtures had been made while he was yet at the Helm, which must have had as good a success, had he remained time enough in the Throne to bring things to Perfection, and perhaps he might have done it without the dishonour of abandoning his Confederates the *French*.

The Marriage of the King and Queen declared null.

On the 13th. of *February* 1668. the Chapter of the Cathedral of *Lisbon*, with others, they had culled out all prepared for the design, pronounced the Marriage betwixt King *Alphonso*, and the Princess *Mary Francis Elizabeth* of *Savoy* null, and that therefore both of them were left at Liberty to dispose of themselves. Then the three Estates and Magistrates of *Lisbon*, as they had been before directed, moved the Prince and Princess, that since the former Marriage was declared null, they would consent to match together, on pretence it was for the good of the Kingdom. This they were moved to, in regard they were unwilling to restore her Dower, and the Parties were no less ready to consent to what themselves had before contrived and agreed betwixt them-

themselves. However tho' there had been care taken for the disanulling the former marriage by such persons as were wholly in the interest of the cause, there was yet started a scruple, that it was not Lawful to proceed to a new match, especially with the Brother of the former husband without a dispensation. But the Prince, though pretending only to comply with the *Cortes* had not been negligent in that Affair, for not long after the Publication of the nullity, arrived in *Portugal* the dispensation from the Cardinal of *Vendosme* the *Popes* Legate a *Latere* in *France*, by which it appears the dispensation was granted by one that was a party interested in the Affair, and precedent to the sentence of nullity. Upon these grounds they made no difficulty to proceed to the Nuptials, the Ceremony whereof was performed at *Alcantara* by the Bishop of *Targa*, Ad-ries the ministrator of the Arch-Bishoprick of *Lisbon*, on the 2d *Queen*. of *April* 1668. After the marriage, fresh instances were made that the Prince might be declared King by the *Cortes*, but this attempt also proving ineffectual, he notified to them that on the 9th of *June* following, he would take his Oath to maintain the Laws of the Realm, and receive from them theirs of fidelity, which was accordingly performed. The three Estates continued their Session after this till the first day of *August*, 1668, when they broke up. Several months being passed after the consummation of this marriage, when the thing done was not to be retrieved without horrid scandal, and embroiling the whole State of the Church, then at last the Prince bethought himself of sending to the *Pope* to confirm the Cardinal's dispensation. *Pope Clement* the 9th who sat in *St. Peter's* chair, seeing no possibility of recalling what was past, and relying upon the information of the Chapter of *Lisbon*, did expedite a Brief directed to *James de Sousa* Chief Inquisitor, *Antony de Mendez* commissary for the Bull of the *Croisade*, *Martin Alphonso de Melo* Dean of *Evora*, *Lewis de Sousa* Dean of *Porto*, and *Emanuel de Meneses* Arch-Deacon of *Evora*, empowering them to dispense in his name with the said marriage. This Brief was dated *December* the 10th. 1668. These persons so authorized accordingly in the *Popes* name, declared the marriage of King *Alphonso* null, that of his *Queen* with the Prince to be good and valid, and all the Children that were, or should be gotten between them

them to be Legitimate, which sentence they pronounced upon the 18th of February 1669.

1669. When the unfortunate King had been detained a considerable time Prisoner in the Pallace of *Lisbon*, it was thought necessary to remove him, lest the People coming to themselves and commiserating the sufferings of their Sovereign, should make some commotion that might endanger the present government. It was therefore resolved to send him into the Island *Tercera*, whether he was conveyed by the Count *de Prado*, then Commanding the *Portuguese* Fleet, and there continued several years under a strict Guard. At length not only the People of *Lisbon*, but throughout all *Portugal* understanding by those who came from that Island, that he led a most miserable Life in that remote Island, and was almost reduced to the last extremity through sufferings and anguish of mind, there was cause to apprehend they would in time be moved to resent his calamities, and perhaps be stirred up to revenge them upon those who were the cause thereof. Besides it fell out that the King of *Spain* at the same time fitted out a Navy at *Cadiz* without declaring for what intent, which being known at *Lisbon*, those who dreaded the Return of the King, as having been the promoters of his Ruin, presently imagined it was to take him from his banishment. For these reasons he was sent for with all possible speed, and brought back into *Portugal*, where he was lodged in the Castle of *Cintra* upon the Sea Coast not far from *Lisbon*. In this place he was not only observed and Guarded, but as closely confined as if he had been a common Malefactor, the very Windows of his lodgings being made up, so that he could not look out, but that what Light he had, came from above his height. This account of his usage in that place I received from Dr. *Reis* a Physician at *Lisbon*, whose Son was Physician to the King, and who had several times the opportunity of seeing him, being sent for by his said Son to assist his Majesty when indisposed, for scarce any body else was admitted to see him. In this deplorable condition the wretched King continued till his death.

He is brought back and confined in the Castle of Cintra.

But before we give an account of his End, it will be fit to set down those few matters of moment that preceded it. And indeed there are but few things that can furnish matter for History. *Portugal* ever since the conclusion

conclusion of the Peace with *Spain*, having been engaged in no War, nor furnished any other important subject to treat of. Warlike Kings, and turbulent governments are the properest for swelling of Histories, the great accidents and Councils then occurring giving great variety to dilate upon; but in a peaceable and quiet State, there is little to be found more than the settled and regular proceedings which being always in a manner the same, are not worth the writing because they neither delight nor instruct in the reading. Some few things remain, which being of no mighty consequence shall briefly be set down, that we may at length put an End to this History. The new Prince regent, as has been said, was Married to his brothers Wife, *Mary Frances* *Birth of the* *Elizabeth* of *Savoy* on the 2d. of *April*. By her he had *Infante* before the End of the same year a daughter named *Mary Frances*. *Mary Frances*, the only fruit of that surprizing marriage. And tho' at first it was looked upon, as a great token that God approved of their proceedings by giving them issue so suddenly, yet afterwards those very persons who cried up this providence, could not but be undeceived when they perceived, that these Princes living together about 16 years never had any other Child, and even she dyed without being married. All things having succeeded prosperously to that Prince, as he that had established himself in the government, secured his Brother, gained his Wife, and now got a Daughter, his only care was how to continue in amity with all the World, that so he might firmly Establish his new attained power. He preserved Peace both at home, and abroad in such Tranquility, that for several years there will remain nothing else memorable of him to posterity.

In the Year 1677, the *Portugueses* of the continent of *Brazil* in *America* seeking to extend their borders, which reached to the great River called *de la Plata*, passed over the said River and Planted a Colony at *Buenos Aires*, *Colony at* *Rio de la* *Plata* in *America*, which the *Spaniards* looking upon as an incroachment upon them, they gathered to a body in those parts, and falling upon the *Portuguese* Planters, put them all to the Sword. Advice hereof being brought into *Portugal*, the Prince Regent expressed his resentment by his Embassage at the Court of *Madrid*, demanding Reparation of damages. The thing was long in debate, both parties arguing for their Right to the place and protracting time,



The difference adjusted.

1680.  
A match concluded betwixt the Infanta and the Duke of Savoy.

time. At length the Portuguese weary of delay began to let fall some threats of a War, but with so little preparation to it, that the Effects were not to be feared. However the Spaniards being more inclinable to compose the difference amicably, than to enter upon a War on so slight an occasion, sent into Portugal the Duke of Giovenazzo their Embassador extraordinary, who after several conferences with the Portuguese Ministers, concluded the matter to the satisfaction of both Parties. The Infanta only Daughter to the Prince, being now almost marriageable, and her Father despairing of having any more issue by his Wife, he thought of disposing of her, and having cast about to all parts for a fit match, at last pitched upon the present Duke of Savoy, then a youth under the tuition of his Mother. Embassadors were sent on both sides to Treat in the Year 1680, who so managed the affair, that all things were concluded and agreed upon. And to remove the only obstacle which was the Law of *Lamego*, whereby it is enacted, that the heirs of the Crown Marrying a Forreigner, she shall forfeit her Title, to provide I say against the obstacle of this Law, the Cortes were summoned and met at *Lisbon* the same Year. There they passed an Act for dispensing with the said Law for that time, provided it should not be a precedent for any other. This impediment being taken away, there seemed to remain nothing to obstruct the happy conclusion of the Nuptials but the distance of the Parties. the Duke of Savoy, who according to contract was to come into Portugal, sent before over Land a considerable Number of Coach and saddle Horses. On the other side the Prince Regent fitted out a Squadron of 12 men of War, to Conduct the Duke to *Lisbon*. All the Ships were gilt and painted, but above, all the Admiral was gilt from stem to stern, the poop and prow down to the surface of the Water, and the sides down to the gunwale. The great Cabin was painted by the best Masters in *Lisbon*, and the floor layed in squares of Ebony and Ivory. The Bed was most Rich, and the Royal Standard all of Cloath of tissue, with the arms of Portugal in the highest raised Embroidery. Portuguese Seamen being at that time scarce, especially able ones, great encouragement was given to all strangers that would enter into the Service. When all things were prepared, this mighty Squadron set Sail in the Year

1681,

1681, and arrived safe at the Port of *Villafranca* in *Savoy*, expecting there to take the Duke of *Savoy* on board. The Match In the mean time all things were preparing at *Lisbon*, broke off. with the greatest splendor imaginable for his reception. Triumphal Arches were built, extraordinary bull Feasts contrived, and all the Gentry strove to outvie one another (even to the ruin of their Estates and impoverishing their Families) in Gallantry. Yet all these mighty preparations were cast away, for when it was thought the Duke would have gone aboard the Fleet, he at first began to delay and protract time, and after deluding them in this sort as long as he could, he at last positively broke off the Match. His subjects had always been averse to it, and that with good cause, as being unwilling to part with their Sovereign without hope of ever seeing him again, as going to leave them for a Crown; and then if he should return, it must be with dishonour, as being disappointed of the End for which he left them. These considerations had at last prevailed upon his Mother, his Council, and himself, to alter their resolutions, so that tho' the Articles of the marriage had been ratified on both sides, and so great an expence made towards the consummating of it, all that had been done was dissolved and came to nothing. The Fleet returned to *Lisbon* with small satisfaction, and found as little there either at the Court for the affront put upon it, or in the City for the extravagant and useless expence it had been put to. This was the End of the designed marriage of the Infanta with the Duke of Savoy.

The year, 1683, put an End to the long sufferings of the most unfortunate *Alphonso* the 6th King of Portugal. He dyed on the 12th of December, at the Castle of *Cintra*, in the Fortieth year of his Age, and 16th of his imprisonment. It is impossible to give a just character of him, fear of offending the prevailing party having stopt the mouths of his Loyal Servants and Friends, who best knew and would speak honourably of him, and there being no credit to be given to the slanders of his adversaries, whose chief care it ever was to reproach his person, and blacken his Actions. And this perhaps is the greatest of calamities Kings are subject to, that their misfortunes do not terminate with their Lives, for never Prince was yet dethroned tho' never so barbarously, but his memory was also rendered odious to posterity,

Death of King Alphonso.

prosperity, by all the Arts that malice could invent, because prevailing wrong could not subsist but under the colour of Right, and to defame justice oppressed, is to flatter and support iniquity Reigning. To say King *Alphonso* had no vices, were to say he was not man, yet to make them so enormous, as some would have them believed, were only to vouch for malice, and countenance disloyalty. Through the course of his Reign, that is, whilst he was in power, there appears none of his actions that have been urged against him, tho' aggravated with the most malicious circumstances, which have not been seen in thousands of Subjects and yet passed unpunished, either as without the reach of the Law, or excused as the effects of extravagant Youth. For his judgment, as it could not be expected to be so solid at his Years, as in a riper Age, so neither can it be found by his words, or deportment that he was any way defective therein. And lastly as to his impotency in regard to procreation, that, if true, could have been no lessening of his personal right to government, but it is so far from being certain, that I have heard several persons affirm they knew his illegitimate issue, whose mothers if they durst, would upon Oath confirm the assertion. But there is nothing so certain, as that *Portugal* never was more successful both by Sea and Land than under this government, for under him were obtained four of the greatest victories against the *Spaniards*, which produced the Peace, the glory whereof was ascribed to his brother, who had done nothing to purchase it. And if any object that those Triumphs were due to the Generals, we must deprive all King's of the glory of warlike Exploits, who do not actually Command their Armies in person, besides that it is no small honour to him that he chose such Counsellors as could direct, and such generals as knew how to act so much for his advantage. And as for the maritime affairs greater Fleets came home yearly from *India* and *Brazil*, and far lesser losses were sustained by Ship-wrack during his Reign than in many years after. This may suffice in some measure to do right to the memory of this unhappy Prince. Yet it may not be ungrateful to add one word more, touching certain words reported to have been spoken of him just before his death. The closeness of his confinement, and the danger of reporting his words abroad by those who heard them, is the cause that we cannot

cannot be so positive in this particular therefore I do not avouch it for a certain known truth, but as a rumour whispered about where People durst speake. It is said of him that when he was in the last agony, and as it were breathing his last, he should say, *I am now going, but it will not be long before the Queen shall follow me, to give an account before the dreadful tribunal of the wrong she has done me.* As I do not averr this for a certainty, so it is very observable the said Queen outlived him but a very short time, that is, only three months and a few days. Her death was on the 27th of *December*, of the same year 1683, and since there is little to be said in her commendation, it will be better to be altogether silent than to make reflections upon the dead.

King *Peter II.* now seated on the Throne of *Portugal*, King *Peter* by the Death of his Brother, received the Compliments upon the of all Foreign Princes upon his accession to the Crown. death of his In the Year 1684. and the first of the new King's brother, Reign, *D. Francis de Tavora*, being Vice-Roy of *India*, succeeds in the City *Goa*, the Capital of all the *Portuguese* Con- his Throne. quests in those parts was besieged with a mighty Army 1684. by the *Raja Savagi* an *Indian* Prince, who took part *Goa besieged by the* with the eldest Son of the Great Mogul, *Aurenge Zeb*, Indians. then in Rebellion against his Father. The Inhabitants defended themselves with Resolution, and sent to acquaint *Aurenge Zeb*, with the danger they were in upon his Account, praying Relief. He presently commanded his second Son to march with an Army of 100000 Foot, and 80000 Horse, and a great Train of Artillery to their Succour. Upon the approach of this mighty Army, the *Raja* raised his Siege and departed, in his way destroying all the Country about *Goa*. The Siege The siege. raised. being raised, the young Prince sent to assure the *Portuguese*, that his Father would be always ready to assist them against their Enemies. They in return, sent a solemn Ambassy to the *Mogul*, by whom a settled Friendship was established with that great Monarch. The King having long continued a Widdower, and having no Issue, but only one Daughter, was earnestly pressed by his Subjects to Marry to secure the Succession. Hereupon, by the advice of his Council, he resolved to demand in Marriage one of the Daughters of the Elector *Palatine*, and accordingly in the Month of *October* 1686, he named the Count *de Villar Mayor*, his Ambassador

Ambassador Extraordinary to that Elector upon this occasion, who set forward in *December* following, for *Heydelberg*, where he arrived in the beginning of the Year 1687, with a very splendid Retinue. In *June* he made his publick Entry, which was extraordinary magnificent, and the next day after he had Audience, in which he demanded of the Elector, his Daughter, the Princess *Mary Sophia* in Marriage, for the King his Master. At the same time, in compliance to the Request of the King of *Portugal*, a Squadron of Men of War was fitted out in *England*, and sailed under the command of the Duke of *Grafton* to *Rotterdam*, there to take aboard the new Queen, and conduct her to *Lisbon*. On the 8th. of *July*, the Ceremony of the Marriage was performed at *Heydelberg*, on the 10th. the Queen set out on her Journey towards *Rotterdam*, on the 27th. she went aboard the *English* Squadron, at the *Briel*, and on the 11th. of *August*, arrived in the River of *Lisbon*. That same day the King went aboard to receive the Queen, and conducted her ashore, where the Marriage was consummated the same Night. The exact Neutrality which *Portugal* has observed during the late Wars, which have hatrassed and exhausted the greatest part of *Europe*, is the cause there is nothing worthy our Observation to add relating to that Kingdom. Only this may be observed, that as the War has impoverished other States, so they by continuing in Peace, have vastly enriched themselves, and so improved their Maritime Strength, that they have at this Present, near 100 Sea-Men, for one they had 20 Years ago, for now they Trade in their own Vessels to all parts of *Europe*, whereas at that time, all their Commodities were transported upon Foreign Bottoms. And moreover their own particular Trade to their Plantations in *America*, and to *India* is vastly augmented. Such are the Fruits of Peace, especially when other Nations sink under the Calamities of War. To conclude, there remains nothing more, but to set down the Royal Issue of *Portugal*. The Present King *Peter II.* on the 11th. of *August*, 1687. as was said before, married *Mary Sophia*, Princess of *Newburg*. He had issue by her, first *John*, born in 1689, and dyed the same Year. Secondly, another *John*, born in 1690. Thirdly, *Francis* born, 1691. Fourthly, *Louisa*, born in 1694. And lastly, *Emanuel* born in 1697.

F I N I S.

## An Alphabetical Table, containing the Principal Matters in this History.

## A.

A <i>Bidis</i> exposed, brought to Court, teaches the People to yoke Oxen, Plow and Sow,	page 13
He Reigns.	P. 14.
Actions of the <i>Lusitanians</i> in <i>Africk</i> .	P. 31
Actions in the Province of <i>Alentejo</i> .	P. 426
Actions of <i>John Fernandez Vieyra</i> in <i>Brazil</i> against the <i>Dutch</i> ,	P. 428
Actions in the Province of <i>Beira</i> ,	P. 433, and 468
Actions betwixt the Rivers <i>Duero</i> and <i>Minho</i> ,	P. 439
Actions in <i>Africk</i> ,	P. 305
An account of the <i>Portuguese</i> Conquests in <i>India</i> .	P. 319
<i>Adrian</i> the Emperour.	P. 78
Affairs of <i>America</i> .	P. 425
Of <i>Castile</i> .	P. 290
Of <i>Africk</i> and <i>India</i> .	P. 438
Of <i>India</i> .	P. 472
<i>Africans</i> invading <i>Spain</i> destroyed.	P. 104
<i>Africk</i> and <i>India</i> .	P. 452
<i>L. Agnes de Castro</i> cruelly murdered.	P. 228
<i>Alans</i> and <i>Suevians</i> in <i>Lusitania</i> .	P. 83
<i>Albertus</i> the Cardinal, Governour of <i>Portugal</i> .	P. 367
<i>Alcazer</i> and <i>Tangier</i> on the Coast of <i>Africk</i> taken.	P. 287
Alliances in <i>Africk</i> and <i>Asia</i> .	P. 413
<i>Almanzor</i> again makes great Spoil.	P. 135
<i>K. Alonso</i> the I. of <i>Leon</i> successful against the Infidels.	P. 114
<i>K. Alonso</i> the II. of <i>Leon</i> called the Chaste. His Conquests.	P. 117
<i>K. Alonso</i> the III. of <i>Leon</i> , called the Great.	P. 122
King <i>Alonso</i> the IV. of <i>Leon</i> , resigns the Government to his Brother <i>Ramiro</i> . He repents and raises War.	P. 127
<i>K. Alonso</i> the V. of <i>Leon</i> , under tuition. p. 137 Is slain. p. 139	King

## The Table.

K. <i>Alonso</i> the VI. of <i>Leon</i> , flies to the protection of the <i>Moors</i> . After his Brothers Death returns, and is received by the People as their King.	p. 148
His Wives and Issue.	p. 149
K. <i>Alonso</i> the I. of <i>Portugal</i> , his Birth.	p. 158
He Knights himself. Besieges his Mother, takes and puts her into Irons.	p. 159
Being himself besieged by King <i>Alonso</i> of <i>Castile</i> , he articles for his Deliverance, and breaks his Faith. Wars with the <i>Moors</i> . Then with <i>Castile</i> .	p. 160
Is saluted King.	p. 162
Defeats the King of <i>Castile</i> .	p. 163
Takes <i>Lisbon</i> . Particulars of the Siege.	p. 165
Overthrows the <i>Moors</i> with a handful of Men. Another like Exploit of his.	p. 166
Wars with <i>Leon</i> .	p. 167
Being put to flight breaks his Leg, fulfilling his Mothers Curse when he put Fetters upon her. Besieged in <i>Santarem</i> by the <i>Moors</i> , sallies out, and defeats them.	p. 168
His Death.	p. 172
His Armes, Wife and Issue.	p. 173
K. <i>Alonso</i> the II. of <i>Portugal</i> his Birth.	p. 180
He attacks the Towns given by his Father to his Sisters. Is routed by the King of <i>Leon</i> .	p. 181
Recovering, defeats the Army of <i>Leon</i> . Is reconcil'd to his Brethren.	p. 182
Laws enacted by him.	p. 183
His Death, Wife and Issue.	p. 184
K. <i>Alonso</i> the III. his Birth and Actions, till his Assumption to the Crown.	p. 192
He is received as Regent. Puts away his Wife and marries another.	p. 193
Conquers <i>Algarve</i> .	p. 194
His Cruelty towards his lawful Wife.	p. 196
Resumes his former Gifts, and opposes the Clergy.	p. 198
His Description, Death and Issue.	p. 199
His Arms, Men famous in his time.	p. 200
K. <i>Alonso</i> the IV. wholly addicted to his Pleasure. At variance with his Bastard Brother.	p. 219
Marries his Daughter to the King of <i>Castile</i> .	<i>Ibid.</i>
Enters <i>Castile</i> with an Army.	p. 220
Aids the <i>Castilians</i> against the <i>Moors</i> in Person.	p. 226
The two Kings overthrow the <i>Infidels</i> .	p. 227
His eldest Son privately marries the Lady <i>Agnes</i> de <i>Castro</i> .	p. 228
His Death, Wife and Issue.	p. 229
His Arms.	p. 230

King

## The Table.

King <i>Alonso</i> the V. his Birth. His accession to the Crown, and Differences betwixt the Queen and Nobility.	p. 279
He marries the Regents Daughter. Takes upon him the Government, and confirms all that had been done by the Regent.	p. 283
Takes <i>Alcazer</i> on the Coast of <i>Africk</i> .	p. 287
Takes <i>Arzila</i> and <i>Tangier</i> . Changes his Title.	p. 289
Wages War with <i>Castile</i> , in defence of the rightful Heir.	p. 290
Prosecutes the War.	p. 291
Sails into <i>France</i> .	p. 294
Resolves to end his days at <i>Hierusalem</i> .	p. 296
His Death.	p. 297
His Issue and Discoveries during his Reign.	p. 298
K. <i>Alonso</i> the VI. takes upon him the Government.	p. 300
The source of his Misfortunes.	p. 329
Slanders cast upon him.	p. 333
Resolves to take upon him the Government.	p. 338
Those that affronted him in the person of <i>Count</i> Banished.	p. 341
He grows more loose in his Life.	p. 342
A Match concluded for him.	p. 345
He offers the <i>Infante</i> satisfaction.	p. 352
Fearing the Faction offers to compound with the <i>Infante</i> .	p. 353
Is in great perplexity.	p. 355
Betrayed by his Queen. Makes choice of <i>Antony</i> de <i>Sousa</i> de <i>Macedo</i> , in the place of <i>Castelmelhor</i> .	p. 356
Is abandoned by all Men.	p. 359
Forced by his Enemies to call the assembly of the States.	
Designs to fly to the Army, but is prevented by his Brethren.	p. 360
Resolutely desires to resign the Crown.	p. 362
Is sent Prisoner to the Island <i>Tercera</i> . Brought back and confined to the Castle of <i>Cintra</i> .	p. 366
His Death.	p. 369
P. <i>Alonso</i> marries <i>Elizabeth</i> Daughter to the K. and Q. of <i>Castile</i> and <i>Aragon</i> .	p. 360
He is kill'd by a fall from his Horse.	p. 307
<i>Alonso</i> Son to K. <i>Edward</i> I. that had the Title of Prince in <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 275
An incredible Relation.	p. 121
An Astrological Prediction.	p. 275
<i>Antonius Pius</i> Emperour.	p. 78
D. <i>Antony</i> de <i>Ataide</i> Favourite to K. <i>John</i> the III. his Character.	p. 331
<i>Antony</i> de <i>Sousa</i> , and <i>Emanuel Anruenz</i> , the remaining Friends of the King, forced to fly.	p. 359
<i>Anto-</i>	



## The Table.

<i>Antony the Bastard, declared Protector by the Rabble.</i>	p. 356
<i>His Birth and Education. He enters Lisbon, and is saluted King.</i>	p. 357
<i>His Army routed. He is forced to fly and abscond.</i>	p. 360
<i>He arrives at the Terzeras with a Fleet from France.</i>	p. 361
<i>His Fleet destroyed by the Spaniards.</i>	p. 362
<i>He flies into England.</i>	p. 363
<i>Dyes in France.</i>	p. 364
<i>Arian Heresie first spread in Lusitania.</i>	p. 92
<i>Arms of Porto.</i>	p. 34
<i>Artilius again overthrows the Lusitanians.</i>	p. 31
<i>Augustus Caesar comes into Spain.</i>	p. 69
<i>Is acknowledged Emperour of the World, and temples erected to him.</i>	p. 70
<i>Azamor on the coast of Africk submits to the King of Portugal.</i>	p. 303
<i>is taken by force.</i>	p. 323

## B.

<b>B</b> abel-Tower built.	p. 3
<i>Bacchus in Spain.</i>	p. 11
<i>Badajoz Besieged.</i>	p. 497
<i>Baia recovered.</i>	p. 379
<i>Barbarities of the Rebellions Rabble.</i>	p. 253
<i>Barbarous Sacrifice.</i>	p. 17
<i>Battle betwixt two Kings.</i>	p. 292
<i>Betwixt private Men and their Forces.</i>	p. 199
<i>Of Ourique and Reflections upon it.</i>	p. 162
<i>Of Elvas. Spaniards defeated.</i>	p. 499
<i>Of Evora.</i>	p. 514
<i>Of Montesclaros.</i>	p. 524
<i>Beatrice Daughter to K. Emanuel married to the Duke of Savoy.</i>	p. 326
<i>Bemoy an African Prince flies into Portugal. Is murdered by Peter Vaz da Cunha.</i>	p. 305
<i>K. Bermudo advanced to the Throne, overthrows the Moors. He resigns the Crown.</i>	p. 117
<i>K. Bermudo the II. loses many places, and is routed by Almanzor.</i>	p. 134
<i>K. Bermudo the III. succeeds.</i>	p. 140
<i>Betus the VI. King of Spain.</i>	p. 3
<i>Birth of our Saviour.</i>	p. 71
<i>Of King Emanuel's fourth and fifth Sots.</i>	p. 320
<i>Of Camoen the great Portuguese Poet.</i>	p. 321

Of

## The Table.

<i>Of King John's Son Peter now reigning.</i>	p. 446
<i>Of the Infanta, Mary Frances.</i>	p. 567
<i>Bishop of Lamego going Ambassador to Rome, taken by the Spaniards.</i>	p. 402
<i>Blanch Divorced from the Prince.</i>	p. 221
<i>Body of Spanish Horse Routed.</i>	p. 521
<i>Bign the African ravages the Coasts.</i>	p. 65
<i>Both sides cease from Hostilities.</i>	p. 434
<i>D. of Braganza Beheaded for High-Treason.</i>	p. 301
<i>Brigus IV. King of Spain.</i>	p. 4
<i>Brutus the Consul takes the City Lacobrica, and destroys the Countrey about Braga.</i>	p. 42
<i>He destroys near 60000 Galicians, Conquers Lusitania and Galicia and Triumphs at Rome.</i>	p. 43

## C.

<b>C</b> acus chosen General.	p. 12
<i>Cadix Assaulted by the English.</i>	p. 380
<i>Caesar comes into Lusitania.</i>	p. 57
<i>Subdues the Herminij, and routs a vast multitude.</i>	p. 58
<i>His remaining Actions in Spain.</i>	p. 59
<i>He returns, and expels Pompey's party.</i>	p. 62
<i>Overthrows young Pompey at Munda.</i>	p. 63
<i>Conquers the Lusitanians and settling Peace at Beja, calls that City Pax Julia.</i>	p. 65
<i>Cains Caligula Emperor.</i>	p. 74
<i>Carthaginians come to relieve the Phenicians.</i>	p. 15
<i>They are defeated.</i>	p. 16
<i>Expelled by the Romans.</i>	p. 26
<i>M. of Caracena General of the Spaniards.</i>	p. 521
<i>Besieges Villaviciosa.</i>	p. 522
<i>C. Castenbeda Besieges Valencia de Alcantara.</i>	p. 517
<i>Advances to relieve Villaviciosa.</i>	p. 523
<i>Castile separates from Leon and erects a Government under two Judges.</i>	p. 126
<i>Castilians enter Portugal.</i>	p. 263
<i>C. Castelmelhor succeeds in the King's favour.</i>	p. 538
<i>He rises.</i>	p. 540
<i>His Brother favourite to the Infante.</i>	p. 544
<i>He withdraws from Court.</i>	p. 555
<i>Catherine Infanta of Portugal married to King Charles II. of England.</i>	p. 502
<i>Celta settle in Portugal.</i>	p. 14
<i>Cessation of Arms betwixt Spain and Portugal for three Years.</i>	p. 267
<i>With the Dutch.</i>	p. 403
<i>Charity of the Spaniards to the distressed Portugueses.</i>	p. 277
<i>Charles V. the Emperor marries Elizabeth, Sister to K. John III.</i>	p. 332
<i>K. Charles I. of England, then Prince of Wales, in Spain.</i>	p. 376
P P	Chindaju.

## The Table.

<i>Chindasvindus</i> possesses himself of the Kingdom by force.	p. 100
K. <i>Chintila</i> holds two Synods.	p. 100
Christian and Moorish Armies Engage.	p. 346
Christian Dominions in Spain divided betwixt the two Sons of K. <i>Alonso</i> .	p. 123
Church serled.	p. 80
Church of St. <i>James</i> the Apostle in <i>Galicia</i> Dedicated.	p. 123
<i>Cincinnatus</i> succeeds <i>Caesar</i> .	p. 60
City <i>Braga</i> founded by the <i>Carthaginians</i> .	p. 19
City <i>Mintiry</i> built by the <i>Tyrians</i> .	p. 21
Civil Broils.	p. 132
Civil War in <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 282
Citadel taken from the <i>Spaniards</i> .	p. 397
Conspirators incense the People against the <i>Spaniards</i> .	p. 392
Resolve to put their designs in Execution.	p. 387
Meet and execute their design.	p. 395
Their Deputies confer with the Duke at <i>Almada</i> .	p. 388
<i>Claudius</i> and <i>Aurelianus</i> Emperors.	p. 80
<i>Claudius</i> and <i>Nero</i> Emperors.	p. 75
Clergy joyns in Rebellion with the Laity.	p. 189
<i>Cneus</i> and <i>Sextus</i> the two Sons of <i>Pompey</i> in <i>Spain</i> .	p. 62.
<i>Coimbra</i> taken by the Advice and Assistance of the Monks of <i>Loruan</i> .	p. 144
<i>Columbus</i> after discovering <i>America</i> arrives at <i>Lisbon</i> .	p. 308
Combat betwixt two Women.	p. 267
Common complaints when subjects will rebel.	p. 186
Complaints made to the Pope and all things adjusted.	p. 186
Condition of <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 381
Considerable losses of the <i>Portuguese</i> in <i>India</i> .	p. 485
Conspiracy against the King of <i>Castile</i> , discovered.	p. 258
Against the Protector.	p. 261
Against the New King <i>John</i> .	p. 403
To seize <i>Cartagena</i> .	p. 416
Against King <i>Alonso VI</i> .	p. 544
<i>Constantine</i> the Great.	p. 80
<i>Conti</i> seized by the faction and sent to <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 536
Is recalled from <i>Brazil</i> , but Banished the Court, privately Meets the King.	p. 543
Conversion of <i>Lusitanians</i> from <i>Arianism</i> .	p. 94
<i>Corocota</i> a famous Robber.	p. 71
<i>Cortes</i> meet, and instead of settling Peace widen the breach.	p. 280
Meet again.	p. 415, 436, and 563.
First Council of <i>Braga</i> .	p. 83
Council and magistrates of <i>Lisbon</i> combine with the <i>Infante</i> .	p. 553
Counterfeits personate King <i>Sebastian</i> .	p. 348, and 367
Count <i>S. Lorerco</i> his Actions in <i>Alentejo</i> .	p. 452
<i>Crassus</i> destroys near 40000 <i>Spaniards</i> .	p. 61
	" <i>Croisade</i>

## The Table.

<i>Croisade</i> brought into <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 287
Customs of the Inhabitants.	p. 17
D.	
Death of Prince <i>Philip</i> , the Empress, and others.	p. 333
Debates about proclaiming the Protector.	p. 261
K. <i>Denis</i> his Birth and Succession to the Crown. He marries <i>Elizabeth</i> , Daughter of <i>Peter</i> , King of <i>Aragon</i> .	p. 209
Has differences with his Brother <i>Alonso</i> .	p. 210
Enters <i>Castile</i> the second time.	p. 211
Is chosen mediator betwixt the King of <i>Castile</i> and the lawful Heir then banished.	p. 213
An unjust sentence given by him against the rightful Heir.	p. 214
He is at variance with his Son.	p. 215
His structures and other Works.	p. 217
His Wife and Issue.	p. 218
<i>Denis</i> Son to K. <i>Peter</i> enters <i>Portugal</i> with an Army.	p. 269
Design to murder K. <i>John</i> .	p. 441
Differences betwixt <i>Castile</i> and <i>Portugal</i> , composed by the Pope.	p. 195
In the <i>Cortes</i> about ransoming Prince <i>Ferdinand</i> .	p. 278
Adjusted.	p. 568
Discoveries in North <i>America</i> .	p. 319
<i>Dolabella</i> again subdues the <i>Lusitanians</i> .	p. 44
Double Treachery.	p. 484
Duke de <i>Alva</i> with the Spanish Forces draws near to <i>Lisbon</i> .	p. 358
He passes the River <i>Tagus</i> .	p. 359
The Forts upon the River taken by him.	p. 364
Duke of <i>Braganza</i> refuses to go into <i>Castile</i> . Is made General.	p. 266
Duke of <i>Lancaster</i> invited by the <i>Portuguese</i> , Lands in <i>Galicia</i> with 2000 Horse and 3000 Archers.	p. 408
He meets K. <i>John</i> . P. <i>Henry</i> of <i>Castile</i> marries his Daughter.	p. 425
Duke of <i>Medina Sidonia</i> being suspected in <i>Spain</i> , Challenges K. <i>John</i> .	p. 437
<i>Dutch</i> contrary to Faith given, take several places in <i>India</i> .	p. 449
In <i>Brazil</i> receive succours.	p. 454
Beaten out of <i>Angola</i> in <i>Africa</i> .	p. 376
Prepare to make War upon <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 377
In <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 378
They take the Capital City called <i>Baja</i> .	
Other Actions of theirs after taking <i>Baja</i> .	
E.	
Earthquakes.	p. 57, and 332
Earthquakes, Inundations, and Storms, for 8 years.	p. 178
Eclipse of the Sun.	p. 245
	K.

## The Table.

<b>K. Edw.</b> holds a Parliament. His Expedition to <i>Tangier</i> .	p. 276
He dies of the Plague.	p. 278
His issue.	p. 279
<b>P. Edward</b> his Birth.	p. 274
<b>P. Edw.</b> contracted to <i>Ellenor</i> Sister to <i>Alonso</i> , K. of <i>Aragon</i> .	p. 272
<b>Edward</b> Brother to K. <i>John IV.</i>	p. 435
Effects of love.	p. 142
<i>Egica</i> King.	p. 106
<b>Q. Elizabeth's</b> provocations, and K. <i>Philip's</i> design against her.	p. 369
<b>Ellenor II.</b> Daughter to King <i>Alonso</i> , married to <i>Peter</i> King of <i>Aragon</i> .	p. 227
<b>Q. Ellenor</b> flies to <i>Castile</i> .	p. 256
Princess <i>Ellenor</i> contracted to the Emperor <i>Frederick III.</i>	p. 286
<i>Elvas</i> and other places delivered to K. <i>Philip</i> .	p. 356
<b>K. Emanuel</b> his Birth and descent. He is proclaimed King.	p. 313
Marries <i>Elizabeth</i> Widow of the late Prince <i>Alonso</i> .	p. 315
Then Marries the Sister of his last Queen. Sends succours to the <i>Venetians</i> against the <i>Turks</i> .	p. 316
Founds the Monastery of <i>Belem</i> .	p. 317
His Queen delivered of a Son.	p. 318
He receives the Order of the Garter from K. <i>Henry VIII.</i> of <i>England</i> .	
Punishes his Lord Steward for his Cruelty to a Servant.	p. 322
His Eighth Son Born.	p. 323
Birth of his Tenth Child, and Death of his Queen.	p. 324
He Marries again.	p. 325
His Death. His Structures and other Works.	p. 327
His Wives and Issue.	p. 328
Embassadors sent to all Courts of <i>Europe</i> .	p. 401
Embassadors of <i>Castile</i> sent away without Answer.	p. 281
<i>Emerita Augusta</i> , now <i>Merida</i> , Founded by <i>Augustus</i> .	p. 69
Endeavours used for obtaining of Bishops, but in vain.	p. 470
<i>Endeca</i> Usurps the Crown of <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 96
He is Deposed and shorn a Monk, by <i>Leovigildus</i> the Goth.	p. 97
Engagements by Sea.	p. 172, and 337
<i>English</i> and <i>Portugueses</i> take Towns in <i>Castile</i> .	p. 248
Enterprizes on the Frontiers of <i>Alentejo</i> .	p. 462
<b>C. Ericeira</b> succeeds <b>D. Roderick</b> de <i>Castro</i> in the Government of <i>Tangier</i> .	p. 489
<b>Ervigius</b> succeeds <i>Wamba</i> .	p. 105
His Actions.	p. 106
Exploits in <i>India</i> .	p. 342

## F.

<b>F</b> abius <i>Maximus</i> defeats the <i>Spanish</i> Army, and kills <i>Curius</i> their General.	p. 38
<i>Fabu-</i>	

## The Table.

<i>Fabulous's</i> relation.	p. 161
Faction levelled against the Favourite.	p. 551
Faithless proceedings of the Dutch in <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 429
False <i>Sebastian</i> executed.	p. 368
Famine in <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 318
Famous Battle of <i>Aljubarata</i> .	p. 263
The Account given of it by the <i>Spanish</i> Historians.	p. 264
<i>Favila</i> succeeds <i>Pelagius</i> .	p. 114
K. <i>Ferdinand</i> of <i>Navarre</i> , kills K. <i>Bermudo</i> , and becomes sole Monarch of <i>Castile</i> , <i>Leon</i> , <i>Portugal</i> , <i>Galicia</i> , and <i>Navarre</i> .	p. 141
He is called the Great. His Conquests over the <i>Infidels</i> .	p. 143
Dying, divides his Dominions.	p. 145
<b>Ferdinand</b> King of <i>Portugal</i> , his Birth. He engages in War against <i>Castile</i> .	p. 236
Enters into League with the <i>Moorish</i> King of <i>Granada</i> .	p. 237
Marries the Lady <i>Ellenor</i> divorced from her Husband.	p. 241
Joins in League with <i>John</i> of <i>Gaunt</i> against <i>Castile</i> .	p. 242
Enters into League with the King of <i>Castile</i> against him of <i>Aragon</i> .	p. 244
Underhand treats with the Dukes of <i>Lancaster</i> and <i>York</i> , about subduing <i>Castile</i> .	p. 245
After the Peace he again submits to the Antipope.	p. 249
He falls sick.	p. 250
He dies. His Character, and Issue.	p. 251
Fifteen Thousand <i>Spaniards</i> slain by <i>Mummus</i> .	p. 30
Five persons appointed to govern after the Death of the King, and Cardinal <i>Henry</i> ; the same to decide the Controversie concerning the succession.	p. 352
They rule <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 354
<i>Flavius Gundemarus</i> Reigns.	p. 99
<i>Flavius Suintila</i> Reigns. He utterly expels the <i>Romans</i> .	p. 100
Fleet of <i>Castile</i> worsted by the <i>Portugueses</i> .	p. 211
Fleet of <i>Castile</i> ravages the Coast.	p. 248
Fleet of <i>French</i> at <i>Porto</i> .	p. 163
Fleet of <i>English</i> , <i>French</i> , and <i>Flemmings</i> , in the River of <i>Lisbon</i> .	p. 164
Fleet sent against the Dutch.	p. 377
Forces of <i>Castile</i> overthrown by those of <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 146
Foreign Alliances concluded.	p. 410
Fort <i>S. George</i> on the Coasts of <i>Africk</i> .	p. 300
<b>Francis Barreto</b> prosecutes the War in <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 465
His further Actions in <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 470
He holds the Dutch close Besieged in <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 476
Turns his blockade at <i>Arrecife</i> into a formal Siege.	p. 480
<b>Francis de Lucena</b> the Secretary put to Death upon account of a supposed Conspiracy.	p. 419
<i>Froila</i> a <i>Portuguese</i> Count, rebels. His submission.	p. 138
K. <i>Fruela</i> kills 60000 <i>Moors</i> .	p. 115
<i>Fruela</i>	

## The Table.

<i>Fructa II. Usurps the Crown.</i>	P. 126
<i>Fulvius overthrows the Spaniards.</i>	P. 29
<i>Funeral Pomp of the Lady Agnes de Castro.</i>	P. 232
<i>Further Discoveries in Guinea.</i>	P. 307

### G.

<b>G</b> <i>Alba governs the Province.</i>	P. 32
<i>Galba Emperor.</i>	P. 76
<i>Galicians overrun the most part of Lusitania.</i>	P. 66
<i>Galiennus Emperor.</i>	P. 79
<i>Garzia has for his part Galicia, and the North of Portugal.</i>	P. 124
<i>Gargoris finds the use of Honey.</i>	P. 12
<i>Gascons come into Portugal and assist the Christians.</i>	P. 136
<i>General Council.</i>	P. 276
<i>Gerion comes into Portugal.</i>	P. 5
<i>He becomes King. Introduces Idolatry.</i>	P. 6
<i>S. German Duke Besieges Olivenca.</i>	P. 492
<i>Goa Besieged by the Indians. The Siege raised.</i>	P. 571
<i>Gonzalo Hermigues his Actions.</i>	P. 160
<i>Goths who they were.</i>	P. 82
<i>They enter Spain.</i>	P. 85
<i>Great and bloody Battle.</i>	P. 111
<i>Dearth and Storms.</i>	P. 20
<i>Famine.</i>	P. 177
<i>Flee from Lisbon for the Conquest of Ceuta.</i>	P. 271
<i>Floods, Storms, and Sickness in Spain.</i>	P. 65
<i>Preparations in Spain and Portugal.</i>	P. 422
<i>Guimaraens betrayed to the New King.</i>	P. 262

### H.

<b>H</b> <i>Amilcar subdues all Spain.</i>	P. 22
<i>Hannibal settles in Spain.</i>	P. 23
<i>Marches into Italy.</i>	P. 25
<i>Henry the Count, marries the Bastard Daughter of King Alonso of Castile.</i>	P. 149
<i>Opinions concerning him.</i>	P. 151
<i>His Original of Burgundy.</i>	P. 153
<i>His coming into Portugal. He gains the Affection of King Alonso, who marries his Aunt. He takes to Wife, Teresa the said King's Bastard Daughter, and has in Dower the City Porto, and its Territory.</i>	P. 154
<i>Overthrows the Infidels, and takes Almanzor Prisoner. For his good Services, receives other Territories of King Alonso.</i>	P. 155
<i>Another Overthrow given by him to the Moors. A Moorish King restored by him. He performs other great Actions.</i>	P. 157
<i>His Death, Character and Issue.</i>	P. 238
<i>Henry K. of Castile in Portugal.</i>	He

## The Table.

<i>He invades Portugal.</i>	P. 242
<i>Quarters in the Suburbs of Lisbon.</i>	P. 243
<i>Henry Prince of Portugal marries Blanch Aunt, to the King of Castile.</i>	P. 320
<i>He contracts with the Lady Constance, Daughter to D. John Emanuel.</i>	P. 221
<i>Henry the Cardinal Regent.</i>	P. 341
<i>His Birth. He is declared Protector, and crowned King.</i>	P. 349
<i>His Death. His Eulogy.</i>	P. 353
<i>Henry Son to the King of Congo, comes into Portugal.</i>	P. 322
<i>Hercules governs Spain, and leaves the Crown to Hesperus.</i>	P. 10
<i>Hercules the Theban in Spain, overthrows Cacus.</i>	P. 12
<i>Hesperus deposed, and Atlas set up in his place.</i>	P. 10
<i>Hestilius Mancinus overthrows 30000 Spaniards.</i>	P. 37
<i>How things stood in Africk and India.</i>	P. 444
<i>Hypocritie of a Nun.</i>	P. 367

### I.

<b>S.</b> <i>James the Apostle in Spain.</i>	P. 74
<i>D. James de Lima Governor of the Province betwixt Duero and Minho.</i>	P. 453
<i>Iberus II. King of Spain.</i>	P. 4
<i>Jews conspire against the King, and are punished.</i>	P. 106
<i>Fly out of Castile into Portugal.</i>	P. 304
<i>Banished the Kingdom.</i>	P. 314
<i>Ingratitude of certain Gentlemen.</i>	P. 350
<i>Inhuman Murder.</i>	P. 140
<i>Insolent Words of the Marquess de Cascais to the King.</i>	P. 561
<i>Interregnum of an Hundred Years.</i>	P. 11
<i>John, Bastard Son to K. Peter, aspires to the Crown.</i>	P. 252
<i>Before assuming the Crown, he murders Count John Fernandez Andeyro.</i>	P. 253
<i>He is declared Protector of the Kingdom.</i>	P. 254
<i>The Castle of Lisbon taken by him.</i>	P. 255
<i>His Contrivances to usurp the Crown.</i>	P. 256
<i>He falls Sick.</i>	P. 272
<i>He dyes, his Character, Wife and Issue.</i>	P. 273
<i>His Arms, discoveries in his time.</i>	P. 274
<i>His Funeral.</i>	P. 275
<i>John II. proclaimed King, his Father arrives 4 days after.</i>	P. 296
<i>His Birth.</i>	P. 299
<i>He is again proclaimed King.</i>	P. 300
<i>Stiles himself Lord of Guinea.</i>	P. 303
<i>Is poysoned. His Death.</i>	P. 309
<i>Is reputed a Saint, his Virtues.</i>	P. 310
<i>More of his good Qualities.</i>	P. 311
<i>His Issue, Discoveries during his Reign.</i>	P. 312
<i>John the III. King, his Birth.</i>	P. 329
<i>He is proclaimed King.</i>	P. 330
<i>Marries Catherine Sister to the Emperour Ch. the V.</i>	P. 331
	Sends



## The Table.

Sends Succors to the Emperour. p. 333	Ordinances made by him. p. 335	He dies. p. 338
Actions abroad during his Reign. p. 339		
John the IV. proclaimed King in India. p. 403		
He rewards those that suffered for the Conspiracy at Carthage. p. 420		His last Sickness and Death. p. 489
His Wife and Issue. p. 490		
John Prince of Portugal, privately marries Mary, Sister to Q. Elenor. p. 244		He murders her. p. 245
John Prince of Portugal, marries Joanna Daughter to Charles the V. He dies. His Princess delivered of a Son. p. 336		
D. John of Austria with the Spanish Army, invades Portugal. Takes Aronches. p. 501		Takes Alconchel. p. 502
Burns and plunders the Country. p. 503		
Takes Villabuim and Borba. Besieges Furumenba. p. 504		
Takes Furumenba. p. 506		Enters Crato. p. 507
Comes again into Portugal with an Army of 21000 Men. p. 509		
Besieges Evora. p. 510		Evora is delivered to him. p. 511
Marches out of Evora to give the Portugueses Battle. p. 512		
Is defeated. Attempts Elvas, and is repulsed. p. 515		
Islands of Bayona in Galicia. p. 45		
Fubelus III. King of Spain. p. 4		
Julian the Count Favourite to King Roderick. p. 108		
Is sent Ambassador into Africk. p. 109		
Meditates Revenge. Brings the Moors into Spain. p. 110		

### K.

Kings of the Alans and Suevians. p. 83
King of Castile obstructs the Marriage of the Lady Constance. p. 222
King of Castile marries the Daughter of K. Ferdinand. p. 249
King of Castile invades Portugal. Is at variance with Queen Ellenor. p. 257
Kings of France and Portugal meet. p. 294
King of Spain's Favourite disgraced. p. 421
King bent upon publick Rejoycing for Peace. p. 270
Kingdom of the Suevians united under Remismundus. p. 91

### L.

<b>L</b> <i>Erwigildus</i> the Goth wars upon his Son <i>Herminigildus</i> , on account of Religion.	p. 96
He persecutes the Catholicks, but dies one himself.	p. 97
<b>P.</b> <i>Lewis</i> dyes.	p. 338
<i>Lisbon</i> besieged by Sea and Land.	p. 258
The Siege raised.	p. 260
Mutinies at the instigation of the Nobility.	p. 554
Plundered by the <i>Spaniards</i> .	p. 360
Most of it burnt. p. 243	<i>Lisias</i> made King. p. 12
<i>Luminij</i> three Sons of <i>Gerion</i> .	p. 8
<i>Lusitania</i> governed by Lieutenants.	p. 99
<i>Lusita-</i>	<i>Lusita-</i>

## The Table.

Lusitanians revolt, and are reduced. p. 44
Lusus ascends the Throne. p. 19

### M.

<b>M</b> Agellan discovers the streights of his Name.	p. 325
<b>M</b> anner of lamenting the death of a King.	p. 174
Many places in <i>Portug.</i> taken and destroyed by the <i>Moors</i> .	p. 133
Recovered. p. 137	<i>Marcus Aurelius</i> Emperour. p. 79
<i>Margaret</i> of <i>Savoy</i> , Dutchess of <i>Mantua</i> , governs <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 382
<i>Mary Francis Elizabeth</i> , Wife to King <i>Alonso</i> the VI. assists the <i>Infante</i> .	p. 554
Motives of her aversion to the King.	p. 549
Her undecent Behaviour towards the King.	p. 557
Knowing the King would be deposed, she flies to a Monastery,	p. 560
She presses to have <i>Peter</i> declared King,	p. 563
Her Marriage with the King declared null,	p. 564
Her Death,	p. 571
A match concluded betwixt the <i>Infante</i> and D. of <i>Savoy</i> ,	p. 568
It is broke off.	p. 569
<i>Mauregatus</i> the Bastard usurps the Crown.	p. 116
<i>Mauritanians</i> ravage <i>Spain</i> .	p. 79
<i>Maximin</i> Emperour:	p. 79
Means proposed to reconcile different pretensions:	p. 351
Meeting at <i>Lisbon</i> about K. <i>Ferdinands</i> Marriage:	p. 241
Men famous for Learning.	p. 93
<i>Mezerbal</i> subdues <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 17
<i>Michael</i> . Prince sworn Heir of <i>Castile</i> , <i>Aragon</i> & <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 315
He dyes.	p. 316
Military Action in the Province of <i>Tralostmontes</i> .	p. 413
Monks of <i>Claraual</i> come into <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 159
<i>Monte Mayor</i> taken and demolished.	p. 145
<i>Moors</i> to the Number of 200000 Foot, and 40000 Horse landed in <i>Spain</i> .	p. 111
They over-run all <i>Spain</i> .	p. 112
Ravage the Country. p. 177	Vanquished at <i>Elvas</i> . p. 183
<i>Moriscoes</i> banished <i>Spain</i> .	d. 372
<i>Morocco</i> King slain.	p. 347
<i>Moron</i> surrendered:	p. 494
Mountainous People descend into the Plain.	p. 12
Murderers fly to <i>Castile</i> . p. 229	They are racked. p. 231
Mutiny at <i>Lisbon</i> for the loss of <i>Evora</i> .	p. 512
On account of a supposed Miracle.	p. 320

### N.

Nabuchodonosar in Spain.	p. 15
Negotiation abroad.	p. 488
At several Courts. p. 441	In Foreign Courts. p. 464
In France and Rome. p. 446	Nerva Emperor. p. 77
New Coin.	p. 336
New Governors placed in the Frontiers.	p. 401
New Queen gains Friends by her Generosity.	p. 242
Noah's	

## The Table.

Noah's Flood. p. 1	His Off-spring why dispersed. p. 2.
Normans invade Galicia, and are cut in pieces.	p. 132
Notable Example of Loyalty.	p. 193
Number of Infidels, and greatness of Booty.	p. 227

### O.

Observations on the Rise and Fall of Portugal.	p. 354
Odémira, Count Governour to the young K. Alonso the VI.	p. 530
His manner of proceeding.	p. 530
Of 18000 Men only 50 escaped.	p. 348
Olivia taken by the Portuguese.	p. 478
Only the Duke of Braganza could give the Spaniards jealousy.	p. 382
Ordono the 1st. King of Castile rebuilds many Towns. He is overthrown by the Moors.	p. 121
Ordono the II. K. of Castile succeeds Garcia. He twice overthrows the Moors.	p. 124
Being vanquished by the Infidels, recovers and spoils the Country.	p. 125
Ordono the III. King of Castile disturbed by Rebels subdues them. p. 130 He takes Lisbon.	p. 130
Ordono, surnamed the Wicked, advanced to the Crown: p. 131	
Orus Libicus, or Hercules comes into Spain, kills the Laminij, and makes his Son Hispalus King.	p. 8
Osiris comes into Spain, kills Gerion, and gives the Crown to his three Sons.	p. 6
He returns into Egypt.	p. 7
Offuna Duke builds a Fort not far from Almeida, Attacks Castel-Rodrigo, and is repulsed.	p. 515
Is overthrown by Peter Jaques de Magalhaens.	p. 519
Other Conspirators punished.	p. 520
Other military Actions.	p. 302
Other War like exploits.	p. 412
Otho Emperour.	p. 407
Overtures of Peace rejected.	p. 76
Out-laws surprize Evora.	p. 259
	p. 167

### P.

Particular Affairs of Portugal.	p. 115
Peace after the Birth of Christ.	p. 73
Concluded betwixt the Kings of Castile and Portugal. p. 212, 230, 243. Confirmed with mutual Alliances. p. 213	
Concluded at the instance of the Pope. p. 240. Concluded betwixt the two Crowns. p. 297. Betwixt France and Spain. p. 500. With Spain. 564 Concluded without the knowledge of the English. p. 249 Concluded: p. 266 Not observed. p. 269 At length established, p. 270 Ratified,	p. 271.
Pelayo, or Pelagius the first that opposed the Moors.	p. 113
People of Braga subdue Porto.	p. 68
Averse to the Queen: p. 281 Of Evora mutiny	p. 283
	Per-

## The Table.

Perpenna chosen General of the Lusitanians	p. 54
Vanquished by Pompey, and put to Death.	p. 53
Persecution under Galiennus.	p. 79
Peter the 1st. King of Portugal his Birth.	p. 230.
Begins his revenge whilst Prince. p. 229 He punishes the Murderers of the Lady Agnes de Castro. p. 230. His Death, Justice, and Magnanimity. p. 234. Laws Established by him. His Person, and Interment, p. 235. His Issue.	p. 236
Peter King of Castile flying from his Rebellious Subjects, refused protection in Portugal.	p. 233
Peter the II. now King of Portugal, whilst Infante and Brother to K. Alonso, counterfeits a Religious Life to gain followers. 545 Grows discontented, and the King his Brother jealous. Is enraged against Count Castelmelhor. p. 547. Strange shew of Affection betwixt him and the Q. 548: His and the Q. party increases. He openly espouses her quarrel: p. 550 Resolves to proceed. p. 556 Heads the Rabble, p. 557 Heads the Multitude again. Sets upon the K. and extorts from him an instrument of Resignation, 562 Is received as Regent, p. 563 Marries the Queen, p. 565 Upon the Death of his Brother succeeds in the Throne, d. 571 Marries the Princess of Newburg.	p. 572
Peter, Bastard Brother to K. Alonso the first of Portug.	p. 170
Peter the Infante made Regent, by a Cooper and a Taylor heads the Rabble.	p. 282
Takes up Arms and is declared Rebel, 284 Comes to a Battle with the King. And is killed.	p. 285
Philip Prince of Spain, marries Mary Princess of Portugal. p. 334	
Philip the II. of Spain, and first of Portugal, armes to secure the Crown of Portugal, whilst they prepare to oppose him.	p. 355
His Birth, 364 He enters Portugal. Grants an Amnesty, Holds a Parliament, 365 Grants Priviledges to Portugal. His publick entry into Lisbon, p. 366 Holds another Parliament, Returns to Castile, p. 367 He dyes, p. 370 His Description, Wife and Issue.	p. 371
Philip the III. of Spain and II. of Portugal his Birth. He comes into Portugal, His Reception, p. 372 He holds a Parliament, His stay and return to Madrid, p. 374 His death, Wife and Issue.	p. 374
Philip the IV. of Spain, and III. of Portugal, his Birth. p. 375 His accession to the Crown. p. 376 Rewards the Portuguese, p. 380 His Death.	p. 527
Pinto the D. Agent conspires with some of the Nobility, p. 380	
Piso kills 5000 Lusitanians,	p. 56
Plague.	p. 228
At Lisbon, p. 277, 301: 353: In Portugal, p. 306 In Lisbon where the Queen dyes of it,	p. 270
	Pompey

## The Table.

<i>Pompey</i> subdues many places,	p. 55
<i>Pope Alexander</i> grants the Investiture of the Kingdom of <i>Portugal</i> to <i>Alonso</i> under a Tribute,	p. 171
<i>Porto</i> rebuilt, its Armes,	p. 84
<i>Portugal</i> , how divided by <i>Augustus</i> ,	p. 71
Governed by Commissioners,	p. 370
<i>Portuguese Fleet</i> wastes the Island of <i>Cadiz</i> ,	p. 240
<i>Portuguese Army</i> destroyed by the <i>Moors</i> , and the King's Standard taken,	p. 277
<i>Portuguese Ambassadors</i> Brother beheaded for a Murder in <i>England</i> ,	p. 475
<i>Portuguese Army</i> routed.	p. 293
<i>Portuguese General</i> endeavours to draw away the <i>Spanish Army</i> from <i>Olivencia</i> , by giving a diversion.	p. 492
<i>Portug. Army</i> lays siege to Fort <i>S. Christoph</i> : near <i>Badajoz</i> .	p. 495
<i>Portuguese Horse</i> under Count <i>Schombergh</i> routed near <i>Badajoz</i> ,	p. 501
<i>Portuguese Colony</i> at <i>Rio de la Plata</i> in <i>America</i> , destroyed by the <i>Spaniards</i> .	p. 567
<i>Portug. Fleet</i> all but one Galley taken by the <i>Castilians</i> .	p. 246
<i>Portuguese Ambassador</i> at <i>Rome</i> .	p. 409
Not being admitted, returns home.	p. 422
<i>Portuguese Army</i> in <i>Estremadura</i> .	p. 423
<i>Portuguese Affairs</i> at <i>Rome</i> .	p. 434
<i>Portuguese Fleet</i> slips up the River to <i>Lisbon</i> .	p. 259
<i>Portuguese Nobility</i> insult their King on account of his Favourite.	p. 146
<i>Portuguese</i> attempting <i>Barcarota</i> repulsed with loss.	p. 491
<i>Portuguese</i> ravage the Frontiers of <i>Estremadura</i> . The same in the Province of <i>Beira</i> . They take <i>Codissera</i> .	p. 431
They attempt <i>Badajoz</i> .	p. 432
Preamble to the Conclusion.	p. 529
Presents of the first fruits of <i>India</i> sent to the Pope.	p. 323
Prime Ministers of <i>Spain</i> resolve to draw the Duke out of <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 389
Princes <i>Rupert</i> and <i>Maurice</i> , fly to <i>Lisbon</i> from the <i>English</i> , and are protected.	p. 457
They put to Sea with a <i>Portuguese Squadron</i> , and return without fighting.	p. 459
Prince proceeds in his disobedience.	p. 216
Prince marches off with the scattered Army.	p. 293
Princess governs <i>Spain</i> .	p. 337
Principal Conspirators seized and punished.	p. 405
<i>Priscilian</i> the Heretick Condemned.	p. 88
Proceedings ordered to run in the name of <i>D. John</i> of <i>Portugal</i> .	p. 397
Proceedings of several Ambassadors.	p. 460
Prodigies seen in the Sky.	p. 128, 223, 375, 345
Prodigious Birth.	p. 91
Progress of the <i>Carthaginians</i> in <i>Spain</i> .	p. 21

## The Table.

Of the War in the Province of <i>Alentejo</i> ,	p. 412
Of the <i>Portuguese Arms</i> in <i>Brazil</i> .	p. 455
Prosecution of the War in <i>Brasil</i> .	p. 443
Protector proclaimed King.	p. 262

### Q.

Queen <i>Luisa</i> prepares to invade <i>Castile</i> .	p. 494	Her Ambition.	p. 532
She sets up <i>Peter</i> the Infante against King <i>Alonso</i> .	p. 537	The Council combines with her.	p. 536
She is forced to resign the Government. Pretends to retire, but stays at Court in hopes to wrest the Power from her Son.	p. 537		
She, the Infante, and their party hold Consultations against the K. She is at last forced to retire.	p. 542	Her Death.	p. 546

### R.

<b>R</b> Amiro I. King of <i>Leon</i> , his Actions.	p. 119
<i>Ramiro</i> II. of <i>Castile</i> and <i>Leon</i> , destroys a great Army of Infidels.	p. 128
<i>Ramiro</i> III. succeeds under the tuition of his Mother, and Aunt.	p. 132
Rebels seize the Queen.	p. 180
<i>Recaredus</i> succeeds. He becomes a Catholick.	p. 97
He dies.	p. 98
Remarks upon the number eight.	p. 111
Upon some conceits of the <i>Portuguese</i> Authors.	p. 152
<i>Remismundus</i> marries the Daughter of <i>Theodoricus</i> .	p. 92
<i>Ricciarius</i> his Reign.	p. 88
He is overthrown by <i>Theodoricus</i> , King of the <i>Goths</i> . His end.	p. 89
<i>Richila</i> makes himself master of <i>Lusitania</i> and <i>Andaluxia</i> .	p. 88
<i>Robert Labril</i> and <i>Richard Cambil</i> English men, with a Fleet of 63 Ships, arrive at <i>Lisbon</i> , and assist the <i>Portuguese</i> against the <i>Moors</i> .	p. 177
<i>Roderick</i> last King of the <i>Goths</i> .	p. 108
He ravishes <i>Florinda</i> the Daughter of Count <i>Julian</i> .	p. 109
His Army of 120000 Foot and 10000 Horse.	p. 111
<i>Roderick de Alencastre</i> defeats a Party of <i>Moors</i> at <i>Tangier</i> .	p. 477
<i>Roderick de Bivar</i> commonly called <i>Cid</i> , his Birth.	p. 139
<i>Roderick de Castro</i> in the Province of <i>Beira</i> .	p. 454
<i>Romans</i> come into <i>Spain</i> . p. 25	Twice defeated.
ards. p. 27	Defeated by the <i>Spaniards</i> . p. 28
Romantick Story of King <i>Ramiro</i> .	p. 129
Root of the <i>Christians</i> .	p. 347

### S.

<i>Saguntum</i> destroyed.	p. 24
<i>St. Vincent's Body</i> translated to <i>Lisbon</i> .	p. 171
<i>Sancho I.</i> of <i>Castile</i> an Usurper called the Fat. Returns and expels <i>Ordon</i> .	p. 131
<i>Sancho II.</i> overthrows his Brother <i>Garcia</i> and takes him prisoner.	p. 147
After	

## The Table.

After subduing Portugal, he Conquers Leon and becomes sole monarch. p. 148  
**Sancho I. King of Portugal**, succeeds his Father **Alonso**. p. 174  
 His Actions under his Father. p. 174 He repairs and builds many Towns. p. 175 Takes *Silves* in Algarve with the help of a Foreign Fleet. Subdues Algarve, and adds that Title to Portugal. p. 176 His Death and Illness. p. 179 His Arms. p. 180  
**Sancho II. King of Portugal** ascends the Throne. p. 181  
 He entirely defeats the *Moors* at *Elvaz*. p. 186 His Subjects ripe for Rebellion, tho' he is blameless. They cavil at all his Actions. p. 188 He is betrayed by all his Ministers. p. 189 His Brother **Alonso** made Vicar of the Kingdom by the Rebels. He flies to *Castile*. His Death. p. 190 His person described. p. 191  
**Sappho** the *Carthaginian* gathers Gold in *Spain*. p. 192  
 Schism in the Church. p. 247  
**Sebastian King of Portugal** his Birth. p. 340  
 His accession to the Crown. Odd Actions of his. p. 341  
 He prepares for an expedition into *Africk*. p. 342  
 Passes over into *Africk*. Defeats the *Moors*, and returns to *Lisbon*. p. 343 Has an interview with the King of *Spain*. makes preparations for a second Voyage into *Africk*. p. 344  
 Not to be moved from his resolution. p. 345 He and the Nobility embark in a Fleet of 1000 Sail, with 18000 Landmen, they land at *Arzila*. p. 346 His Character. p. 348  
**Sertorius** his origin. p. 45  
 He comes into *Lusitania*, his practices, his Warlike exploits. p. 46 He is worsted by **Pompey** and **Metellus**. p. 46  
 Routed by **Metellus**. p. 50 The *Romans* sustain great losses by him. p. 51 Is again overthrown by **Metellus** and **Pompey**. p. 52 Recovers, and worsts the *Romans*. p. 53  
 Is murdered. p. 54  
 Several people plant new Colonies. p. 17  
 Great Battles. p. 19 Towns founded. p. 20 Pretend to the Crown. p. 350 Military expeditions. p. 239, 406  
 Persons suffer martyrdom in *Japan*. p. 421 Enterprizes on the Frontiers of *Alentejo*. p. 438 Synods. p. 95  
**Sextus Pompejus** appears again and makes great commotion. p. 63  
 Sham Conspiracy. p. 424  
**Sicanus** succeeds in the Throne. p. 10  
**Sicceus** resigns. p. 10  
**Siculus** the next King. p. 11  
**Sidonians** in *Spain*. p. 14  
 Signs of our Saviour's Birth in *Spain*. p. 72  
*Silves* again recovered. p. 187  
 Single Combat. p. 221  
**Sisibutus** chosen King. p. 99  
 Sisyphus.

## The Table.

**Sisenandus** succeeds in the Throne. p. 100  
 Small incursions made by the *Spaniards*. p. 485  
 Small incursions in *Beira*. p. 484  
**Sultan of Egypt** threatens *Hierusalem*. p. 319  
 Some persons apprehended upon a false information of their corresponding with *Spain*. p. 479  
*Spain* divided by the *Romans*. p. 26  
*Spain* and *Portugal* divide the World betwixt them. p. 308  
*Spaniards* return and rout the Consul. p. 29  
 They try the Governor of *Tangier* without success. p. 417  
 They carry off a great Booty. p. 479 They besiege *Olivenza* without success. p. 445 Overthrown. p. 112  
*Spanish* Army advances to relieve *Badajoz*. p. 497  
*Spanish* and *Portuguese* Fleets arrive at *Brazil*. p. 379  
*Spanish* Forces defeated. p. 424  
*Spanish* Army on the Frontiers of *Portugal*. p. 427  
 Storms. p. 239  
 Strange Action of a jealous Woman. p. 197  
 Strange trial of an innocent Bishop. p. 135  
 Stratagem of the Christians against the *Moors*. p. 141  
 Success of the *Portuguese* against the *Dutch* in *Brazil*. p. 447  
*Suevians*, *Vandals*, *Alans*, *Burgundians*, and *Selingi*. p. 82  
*Suevians* incorporate with the ancient *Lusitanians*. p. 86  
*Suevians*, *Alans*, and *Selingi*, joyn in League against the *Romans*. p. 87  
 Suppression of the Knights Templers. p. 214  
 Synod at *Toledo*. p. 98

## T.

**Tagus V. King of Spain**. p. 5  
 Taking of *Santarem*. p. 164  
 Talent used in *Portugal*. p. 178  
*Tangier* and *India*. p. 456, 461, 465  
**Tantulus** commands the *Lusitanians*. p. 41  
*Tercera* Islands for **Antony** the Bastard. p. 361  
 They are reduced. p. 362  
**Theodoricus** having Conquered *Spain*, puts it under Governors. p. 90  
**Theodosius** Prince of *Portugal*, made Captain-General of all the Forces in the Kingdom. p. 466 He dies. p. 475  
 Three Brothers fall at variance. p. 145  
 Three *Spanish* Galeons secured in the River of *Lisbon*. p. 293  
**Tiberius** succeeds **Augustus** in the Empire. p. 74  
**Titus** and **Domitian**. p. 76  
 Total Eclipse. p. 177  
**Trajan** Emperor. p. 77  
 He reduces the *Lusitanians* revolting. p. 78  
 Truce for a year. p. 225  
 Truce not duly observed. p. 267  
 Trial of Ordeal in use. p. 119  
 Tubal



## The Table.

**T**ibal Lands in Portugal. p. 2  
 He is first King of Spain. p. 2  
 Talga succeeds. p. 2  
 Tumults against the Queen. p. 2  
 Two great losses to Portugal. p. 2  
 Two Kings set up in Lusitania. p. 90  
 Two Kings meet in friendly manner. p. 244  
 Two Synods held by Reccesuindus. p. 101

### V.

**V**alencia de Alcantara taken by the Portuguese Gener. p. 518  
 Vasco de Gama sent to discover India. p. 314  
 Very small matter of martial exploits in the year 1655. p. 483  
 Vespasian Emperor. p. 76  
 Vice Queen and others seized. p. 396  
 Villafior Count and Portuguese General marches to relieve Evora. p. 511  
 Recovers Evora. p. 155  
 Viriatus his Original. p. 33 He is worsted by Metellus. p. 34  
 Routs Vetilius, defeats Plancius, and overthrows Cl. Vaimanus. p. 35  
 Worsts Nigidius. p. 36 Is obliged to retire by Fabius Emilianus. p. 37  
 Routs Popilius and is himself put to flight by Pompey. p. 38  
 He again defeats the Romans, makes Peace with them. The Peace broken. p. 39  
 He is killed by Treachery. His Funeral Pomp. p. 40  
 Viscount de Villa Pouca burns two Towns in Galicia. p. 463  
 Visco Duke conspires against the King's Life. Is stabbed by the King himself. p. 302  
 Vitellius Emperor. p. 67  
 Ulysses in Portugal. p. 13

### W.

**W**amba his strange advancement to the Crown. His Wars in France and Spain. p. 102  
 Rebels in France subdued by him. p. 103  
 War betwixt the people of Braga and Porto. p. 76  
 Betwixt Castile and Portugal. p. 210, 224 In the Provinces betwixt Duero and Minho, and Tarlos Montes. p. 428  
 In Brazil. p. 436 Betwixt the Romans and Suevians p. 87  
 Prosecuted in Brasil. p. 461 Betwixt the Christian Kings of Spain. p. 140 In India with the Dutch. p. 477  
 In India unsuccessful to Portugal. p. 482 Proceeds coldly on both sides. p. 474  
 Renewed with Castile. p. 296  
 Wetericus Usurps. p. 99  
 Wise Son to Egica Reigns in Portugal. After his Fathers Death he is Monarch of all Spain. His cruelties. p. 107  
 Wonderful Dearth. p. 14

### Y.

**Y**ork Duke arrives at Lisbon with 3000 Men. His Son contracted to the Princess Beatrix. p. 247  
 The End of the Table.